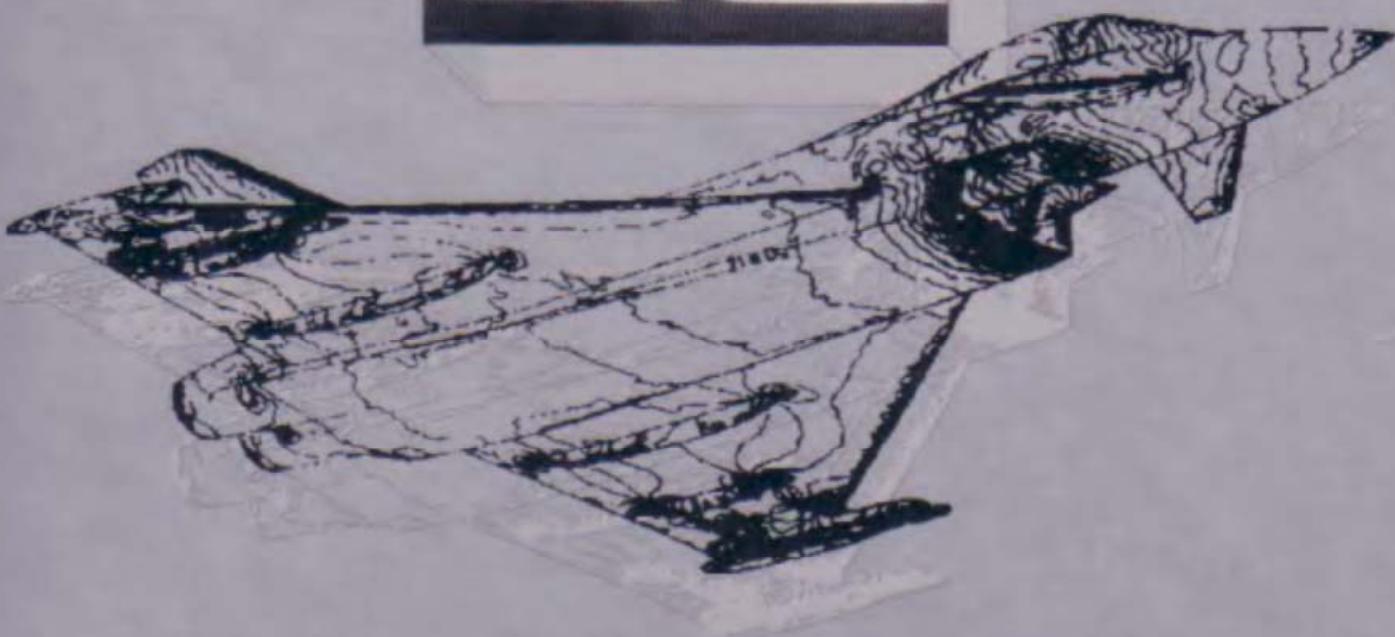
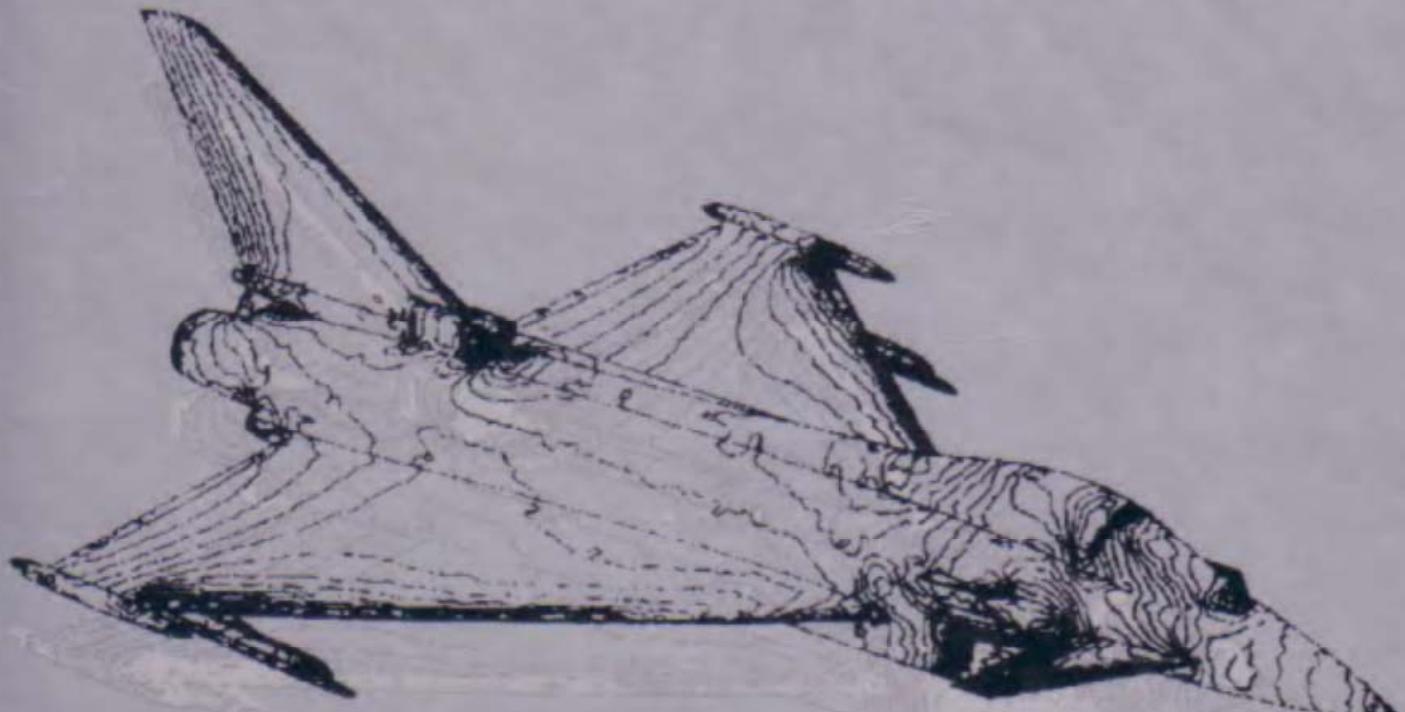


JOHN D. ANDERSON, JR.

# Computational Fluid Dynamics

THE BASICS WITH APPLICATIONS



---

**COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS**

The Basics with Applications

---

# **McGraw-Hill Series in Mechanical Engineering**

## **Consulting Editors**

**Jack P. Holman**, *Southern Methodist University*

**John R. Lloyd**, *Michigan State University*

**Anderson**: *Computational Fluid Dynamics: The Basics with Applications*

**Anderson**: *Modern Compressible Flow: With Historical Perspective*

**Arora**: *Introduction to Optimum Design*

**Bray and Stanley**: *Nondestructive Evaluation: A Tool for Design, Manufacturing, and Service*

**Burton**: *Introduction to Dynamic Systems Analysis*

**Culp**: *Principles of Energy Conversion*

**Dally**: *Packaging of Electronic Systems: A Mechanical Engineering Approach*

**Dieter**: *Engineering Design: A Materials and Processing Approach*

**Driels**: *Linear Control Systems Engineering*

**Eckert and Drake**: *Analysis of Heat and Mass Transfer*

**Edwards and McKee**: *Fundamentals of Mechanical Component Design*

**Gebhart**: *Heat Conduction and Mass Diffusion*

**Gibson**: *Principles of Composite Material Mechanics*

**Hamrock**: *Fundamentals of Fluid Film Lubrication*

**Heywood**: *Internal Combustion Engine Fundamentals*

**Hinze**: *Turbulence*

**Holman**: *Experimental Methods for Engineers*

**Howell and Buckius**: *Fundamentals of Engineering Thermodynamics*

**Hutton**: *Applied Mechanical Vibrations*

**Juvinal**: *Engineering Considerations of Stress, Strain, and Strength*

**Kane and Levinson**: *Dynamics: Theory and Applications*

**Kays and Crawford**: *Convective Heat and Mass Transfer*

**Kelly**: *Fundamentals of Mechanical Vibrations*

**Kimbrell**: *Kinematics Analysis and Synthesis*

**Kreider and Rabl**: *Heating and Cooling of Buildings*

**Martin**: *Kinematics and Dynamics of Machines*

**Modest**: *Radiative Heat Transfer*

**Norton**: *Design of Machinery*

**Phelan**: *Fundamentals of Mechanical Design*

**Raven**: *Automatic Control Engineering*

**Reddy**: *An Introduction to the Finite Element Method*

**Rosenberg and Karnopp**: *Introduction to Physical Systems Dynamics*

**Schlichting**: *Boundary-Layer Theory*

**Shames**: *Mechanics of Fluids*

**Sherman**: *Viscous Flow*

**Shigley**: *Kinematic Analysis of Mechanisms*

- Shigley and Mischke:** *Mechanical Engineering Design*
- Shigley and Uicker:** *Theory of Machines and Mechanisms*
- Stiffler:** *Design with Microprocessors for Mechanical Engineers*
- Stoecker and Jones:** *Refrigeration and Air Conditioning*
- Ullman:** *The Mechanical Design Process*
- Vanderplaats:** *Numerical Optimization: Techniques for Engineering Design, with Applications*
- Wark:** *Advanced Thermodynamics for Engineers*
- White:** *Viscous Fluid Flow*
- Zeid:** *CAD/CAM Theory and Practice*

## McGraw-Hill Series in Aeronautical and Aerospace Engineering

### Consulting Editor

**John D. Anderson, Jr., University of Maryland**

- Anderson:** *Computational Fluid Dynamics: The Basics with Applications*
- Anderson:** *Fundamentals of Aerodynamics*
- Anderson:** *Hypersonic and High Temperature Gas Dynamics*
- Anderson:** *Introduction to Flight*
- Anderson:** *Modern Compressible Flow: With Historical Perspective*
- Burton:** *Introduction to Dynamic Systems Analysis*
- D'Azzo and Houpis:** *Linear Control System Analysis and Design*
- Donaldson:** *Analysis of Aircraft Structures: An Introduction*
- Gibson:** *Principles of Composite Material Mechanics*
- Kane, Likins, and Levinson:** *Spacecraft Dynamics*
- Katz and Plotkin:** *Low-Speed Aerodynamics: From Wing Theory to Panel Methods*
- Nelson:** *Flight Stability and Automatic Control*
- Peery and Azar:** *Aircraft Structures*
- Rivello:** *Theory and Analysis of Flight Structures*
- Schlichting:** *Boundary Layer Theory*
- White:** *Viscous Fluid Flow*
- Wiesel:** *Spaceflight Dynamics*

Also Available from McGraw-Hill

## Schaum's Outline Series in Mechanical Engineering

Most outlines include basic theory, definitions and hundreds of example problems solved in step-by-step detail, and supplementary problems with answers.

Related titles on the current list include:

*Acoustics*  
*Continuum Mechanics*  
*Engineering Economics*  
*Engineering Mechanics*  
*Fluid Dynamics*  
*Fluid Mechanics & Hydraulics*  
*Heat Transfer*  
*Lagrangian Dynamics*  
*Machine Design*  
*Mathematical Handbook of Formulas & Tables*  
*Mechanical Vibrations*  
*Operations Research*  
*Statics & Mechanics of Materials*  
*Strength of Materials*  
*Theoretical Mechanics*  
*Thermodynamics for Engineers*  
*Thermodynamics with Chemical Applications*

## Schaum's Solved Problems Books

Each title in this series is a complete and expert source of solved problems with solutions worked out in step-by-step detail.

Related titles on the current list include:

*3000 Solved Problems in Calculus*  
*2500 Solved Problems in Differential Equations*  
*2500 Solved Problems in Fluid Mechanics & Hydraulics*  
*1000 Solved Problems in Heat Transfer*  
*3000 Solved Problems in Linear Algebra*  
*2000 Solved Problems in Mechanical Engineering Thermodynamics*  
*2000 Solved Problems in Numerical Analysis*  
*700 Solved Problems in Vector Mechanics for Engineers: Dynamics*  
*800 Solved Problems in Vector Mechanics for Engineers: Statics*

Available at most college bookstores, or for a complete list of titles and prices, write to:  
Schaum Division  
McGraw-Hill, Inc.  
1221 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, NY 10020

---

# **COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS**

**The Basics with  
Applications**

---

**John D. Anderson, Jr.**

*Department of Aerospace Engineering  
University of Maryland*

**McGraw-Hill, Inc.**

New York St. Louis San Francisco Auckland Bogotá Caracas  
Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City Milan Montreal  
New Delhi San Juan Singapore Sydney Tokyo Toronto

This book was set in Times Roman.  
The editors were John J. Corrigan and Eleanor Castellano;  
the production supervisor was Denise L. Puryear.  
The cover was designed by Rafael Hernandez.  
R. R. Donnelley & Sons Company was printer and binder.

## **COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS**

### **The Basics with Applications**

Copyright © 1995 by McGraw-Hill, Inc. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a data base or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 DOC DOC 9 0 9 8 7 6 5

ISBN 0-07-001685-2

#### **Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Anderson, John David.

Computational fluid dynamics: the basics with applications / John  
D. Anderson, Jr.  
p. cm. — (McGraw-Hill series in mechanical engineering—McGraw-Hill series in aero-  
nautical and aerospace engineering)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-07-001685-2

1. Fluid dynamics—Data processing. I. Title. II. Series.

QA911.A58 1995

532'.05'015118—dc20

94-21237

---

## ABOUT THE AUTHOR

---

**John D. Anderson, Jr.**, was born in Lancaster, Pennsylvania, on October 1, 1937. He attended the University of Florida, graduating in 1959 with high honors and a Bachelor of Aeronautical Engineering Degree. From 1959 to 1962, he was a lieutenant and task scientist at the Aerospace Research Laboratory at Wright-Patterson Air Force Base. From 1962 to 1966, he attended the Ohio State University under the National Science Foundation and NASA Fellowships, graduating with a Ph.D. in aeronautical and astronautical engineering. In 1966 he joined the U.S. Naval Ordnance Laboratory as Chief of the Hypersonic Group. In 1973, he became Chairman of the Department of Aerospace Engineering at the University of Maryland, and since 1980 has been professor of Aerospace Engineering at Maryland. In 1982, he was designated a Distinguished Scholar/Teacher by the University. During 1986–1987, while on sabbatical from the university, Dr. Anderson occupied the Charles Lindbergh chair at the National Air and Space Museum of the Smithsonian Institution. He continues with the Museum in a part-time appointment as special assistant for aerodynamics. In addition to his appointment in aerospace engineering, in 1993 he was elected to the faculty of the Committee on the History and Philosophy of Science at Maryland.

Dr. Anderson has published five books: *Gasdynamic Lasers: An Introduction*, Academic Press (1976), and with McGraw-Hill, *Introduction to Flight*, 3d edition (1989), *Modern Compressible Flow*, 2d Edition (1990), *Fundamentals of Aerodynamics*, 2d edition (1991), and *Hypersonic and High Temperature Gas Dynamics* (1989). He is the author of over 100 papers on radiative gasdynamics, reentry aerothermodynamics, gas dynamic and chemical lasers, computational fluid dynamics, applied aerodynamics, hypersonic flow, and the history of aerodynamics. Dr. Anderson is in *Who's Who in America*, and is a Fellow of the American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics (AIAA). He is also a Fellow of the Washington Academy of Sciences, and a member of Tau Beta Pi, Sigma Tau, Phi Kappa Phi, Phi Eta Sigma, The American Society for Engineering Education (ASEE), The Society for the History of Technology, and the History of Science Society. He has received the Lee Atwood Award for excellence in Aerospace Engineering Education from the AIAA and the ASEE.

To SARAH-ALLEN, KATHERINE, AND ELIZABETH  
for all their love and understanding

---

# CONTENTS

---

Preface	xix
---------	-----

## Part I Basic Thoughts and Equations

---

<b>1 Philosophy of Computational Fluid Dynamics</b>	3
1.1 Computational Fluid Dynamics: Why?	4
1.2 Computational Fluid Dynamics as a Research Tool	6
1.3 Computational Fluid Dynamics as a Design Tool	9
1.4 The Impact of Computational Fluid Dynamics—Some Other Examples	13
1.4.1 Automobile and Engine Applications	14
1.4.2 Industrial Manufacturing Applications	17
1.4.3 Civil Engineering Applications	19
1.4.4 Environmental Engineering Applications	20
1.4.5 Naval Architecture Applications (Submarine Example)	22
1.5 Computational Fluid Dynamics: What Is It?	23
1.6 The Purpose of This Book	32
<b>2 The Governing Equations of Fluid Dynamics: Their Derivation, a Discussion of Their Physical Meaning, and a Presentation of Forms Particularly Suitable to CFD</b>	37
2.1 Introduction	38
2.2 Models of the Flow	40
2.2.1 Finite Control Volume	41
2.2.2 Infinitesimal Fluid Element	42
2.2.3 Some Comments	42
2.3 The Substantial Derivative (Time Rate of Change Following a Moving Fluid Element)	43
2.4 The Divergence of the Velocity: Its Physical Meaning	47
2.4.1 A Comment	48

2.5	The Continuity Equation	49
2.5.1	Model of the Finite Control Volume Fixed in Space	49
2.5.2	Model of the Finite Control Volume Moving with the Fluid	51
2.5.3	Model of an Infinitesimally Small Element Fixed in Space	53
2.5.4	Model of an Infinitesimally Small Fluid Element Moving with the Flow	55
2.5.5	All the Equations Are One: Some Manipulations	56
2.5.6	Integral versus Differential Form of the Equations: An Important Comment	60
2.6	The Momentum Equation	60
2.7	The Energy Equation	66
2.8	Summary of the Governing Equations for Fluid Dynamics: With Comments	75
2.8.1	Equations for Viscous Flow (the Navier–Stokes Equations)	75
2.8.2	Equations for Inviscid Flow (the Euler Equations)	77
2.8.3	Comments on the Governing Equations	78
2.9	Physical Boundary Conditions	80
2.10	Forms of the Governing Equations Particularly Suited for CFD: Comments on the Conservation Form, Shock Fitting, and Shock Capturing	82
2.11	Summary Problems	93
<b>3</b>	<b>Mathematical Behavior of Partial Differential Equations: The Impact on CFD</b>	95
3.1	Introduction	95
3.2	Classification of Quasi-Linear Partial Differential Equations	97
3.3	A General Method of Determining the Classification of Partial Differential Equations: The Eigenvalue Method	102
3.4	General Behavior of the Different Classes of Partial Differential Equations: Impact on Physical and Computational Fluid Dynamics	105
3.4.1	Hyperbolic Equations	106
3.4.2	Parabolic Equations	111
3.4.3	Elliptic Equations	117
3.4.4	Some Comments: The Supersonic Blunt Body Problem Revisited	119
3.5	Well-Posed Problems	120
3.6	Summary Problems	121
		121

## Part II Basics of the Numerics

---

<b>4</b>	<b>Basic Aspects of Discretization</b>	125
4.1	Introduction	125
4.2	Introduction to Finite Differences	128

4.3	Difference Equations	142
4.4	Explicit and Implicit Approaches: Definitions and Contrasts	145
4.5	Errors and an Analysis of Stability	153
4.5.1	Stability Analysis: A Broader Perspective	165
4.6	Summary	165
	<i>GUIDEPOST</i>	166
	Problems	167
<b>5</b>	<b>Grids with Appropriate Transformations</b>	168
5.1	Introduction	168
5.2	General Transformation of the Equations	171
5.2	Metrics and Jacobians	178
5.4	Form of the Governing Equations Particularly Suited for CFD Revisited: The Transformed Version	183
5.5	A Comment	186
5.6	Stretched (Compressed) Grids	186
5.7	Boundary-Fitted Coordinate Systems; Elliptic Grid Generation	192
	<i>GUIDEPOST</i>	193
5.8	Adaptive Grids	200
5.9	Some Modern Developments in Grid Generation	208
5.10	Some Modern Developments in Finite-Volume Mesh Generation: Unstructured Meshes and a Return to Cartesian Meshes	210
5.11	Summary	212
	Problems	215
<b>6</b>	<b>Some Simple CFD Techniques: A Beginning</b>	216
6.1	Introduction	216
6.2	The Lax-Wendroff Technique	217
6.3	MacCormack's Technique	222
	<i>GUIDEPOST</i>	223
6.4	Some Comments: Viscous Flows, Conservation Form, and Space Marching	225
6.4.1	Viscous Flows	225
6.4.2	Conservation Form	225
6.4.3	Space Marching	226
6.5	The Relaxation Technique and Its Use with Low-Speed Inviscid Flow	229
6.6	Aspects of Numerical Dissipation and Dispersion; Artificial Viscosity	232
6.7	The Alternating-Direction-Implicit (ADI) Technique	243
6.8	The Pressure Correction Technique: Application to Incompressible Viscous Flow	247
6.8.1	Some Comments on the Incompressible Navier–Stokes Equations	248

6.8.2	Some Comments on Central Differencing of the Incompressible Navier–Stokes Equations; The Need for a Staggered Grid	250
6.8.3	The Philosophy of the Pressure Correction Method	253
6.8.4	The Pressure Correction Formula	254
6.8.5	The Numerical Procedure: The SIMPLE Algorithm	261
6.8.6	Boundary Conditions for the Pressure Correction Method	262
	<i>GUIDEPOST</i>	264
6.9	Some Computer Graphic Techniques Used in CFD	264
6.9.1	<i>xy</i> Plots	264
6.9.2	Contour Plots	265
6.9.3	Vector and Streamline Plots	270
6.9.4	Scatter Plots	273
6.9.5	Mesh Plots	273
6.9.6	Composite Plots	274
6.9.7	Summary on Computer Graphics	274
6.10	Summary Problems	277 278

## Part III Some Applications

---

<b>7</b>	<b>Numerical Solutions of Quasi-One-Dimensional Nozzle Flows</b>	283
7.1	Introduction: The Format for Chapters in Part III	283
7.2	Introduction to the Physical Problem: Subsonic-Supersonic Isentropic Flow	285
7.3	CFD Solution of Subsonic-Supersonic Isentropic Nozzle Flow: MacCormack's Technique	288
7.3.1	The Setup	288
7.3.2	Intermediate Results: The First Few Steps	308
7.3.3	Final Numerical Results: The Steady-State Solution	313
7.4	CFD Solution of Purely Subsonic Isentropic Nozzle Flow	325
7.4.1	The Setup: Boundary and Initial Conditions	327
7.4.2	Final Numerical Results: MacCormack's Technique	330
7.4.3	The Anatomy of a Failed Solution	325
7.5	The Subsonic-Supersonic Isentropic Nozzle Solution Revisited: The Use of the Governing Equations in Conservation Form	336
7.5.1	The Basic Equations in Conservation Form	337
7.5.2	The Setup	340
7.5.3	Intermediate Calculations: The First Time Step	345
7.5.4	Final Numerical Results: The Steady State Solution	351

7.6	A Case with Shock Capturing	356
7.6.1	The Setup	358
7.6.2	The Intermediate Time-Marching Procedure: The Need for Artificial Viscosity	363
7.6.3	Numerical Results	364
7.7	Summary	372
<b>8</b>	<b>Numerical Solution of a Two-Dimensional Supersonic Flow: Prandtl-Meyer Expansion Wave</b>	<b>374</b>
8.1	Introduction	374
8.2	Introduction to the Physical Problem: Prandtl-Meyer Expansion Wave—Exact Analytical Solution	376
8.3	The Numerical Solution of a Prandtl-Meyer Expansion Wave Flow Field	377
8.3.1	The Governing Equations	377
8.3.2	The Setup	386
8.3.3	Intermediate Results	397
8.3.4	Final Results	407
8.4	Summary	414
<b>9</b>	<b>Incompressible Couette Flow: Numerical Solutions by Means of an Implicit Method and the Pressure Correction Method</b>	<b>416</b>
9.1	Introduction	416
9.2	The Physical Problem and Its Exact Analytical Solution	417
9.3	The Numerical Approach: Implicit Crank-Nicholson Technique	420
9.3.1	The Numerical Formulation	421
9.3.2	The Setup	425
9.3.3	Intermediate Results	426
9.3.4	Final Results	430
9.4	Another Numerical Approach: The Pressure Correction Method	435
9.4.1	The Setup	436
9.4.2	Results	442
9.5	Summary	445
	Problem	446
<b>10</b>	<b>Supersonic Flow over a Flat Plate: Numerical Solution by Solving the Complete Navier–Stokes Equations</b>	<b>447</b>
10.1	Introduction	447
10.2	The Physical Problem	449
10.3	The Numerical Approach: Explicit Finite-Difference Solution of the Two-Dimensional Complete Navier–Stokes Equations	450
10.3.1	The Governing Flow Equations	450
10.3.2	The Setup	452

10.3.3	The Finite-Difference Equations	453
10.3.4	Calculation of Step Sizes in Space and Time	455
10.3.5	Initial and Boundary Conditions	457
10.4	Organization of Your Navier–Stokes Code	459
10.4.1	Overview	459
10.4.2	The Main Program	461
10.4.3	The MacCormack Subroutine	463
10.4.4	Final Remarks	466
10.5	Final Numerical Results: The Steady State-Solution	466
10.6	Summary	474

## Part IV Other Topics

---

<b>11</b>	<b>Some Advanced Topics in Modern CFD: A Discussion</b>	479
11.1	Introduction	479
11.2	The Conservation Form of the Governing Flow Equations Revisited: The Jacobians of the System	480
11.2.1	Specialization to One-Dimensional Flow	482
11.2.2	Interim Summary	489
11.3	Additional Considerations for Implicit Methods	489
11.3.1	Linearization of the Equations: The Beam and Warming Method	490
11.3.2	The Multidimensional Problem: Approximate Factorization	492
11.3.3	Block Tridiagonal Matrices	496
11.3.4	Interim Summary	497
11.4	Upwind Schemes	497
11.4.1	Flux-Vector Splitting	500
11.4.2	The Godunov Approach	502
11.4.3	General Comment	507
11.5	Second-Order Upwind Schemes	507
11.6	High-Resolution Schemes: TVD and Flux Limiters	509
11.7	Some Results	510
11.8	Multigrid Method	513
11.9	Summary	514
	Problems	514
<b>12</b>	<b>The Future of CFD</b>	515
12.1	The Importance of CFD Revisited	515
12.2	Computer Graphics in CFD	516
12.3	The Future of CFD: Enhancing the Design Process	517
12.4	The Future of CFD: Enhancing Understanding	526
12.5	Conclusion	533

<b>Appendix A Thomas' Algorithm for the Solution of a Tridiagonal System of Equations</b>	534
<b>References</b>	539
<b>Index</b>	543

---

# PREFACE

---

This computational fluid dynamics (CFD) book is *truly for beginners*. If you have never studied CFD before, if you have never worked in the area, and if you have no real idea as to what the discipline is all about, then this book is for you. Absolutely no prior knowledge of CFD is assumed on your part—only your desire to learn something about the subject is taken for granted.

The author's single-minded purpose in writing this book is to provide a simple, satisfying, and motivational approach toward presenting the subject to the reader who is learning about CFD for the first time. In the workplace, CFD is today a mathematically sophisticated discipline. In turn, in the universities it is generally considered to be a graduate-level subject; the existing textbooks and most of the professional development short courses are pitched at the graduate level. The present book is a *precursor* to these activities. It is intended to “break the ice” for the reader. This book is *unique* in that it is intended to be read and mastered *before* you go on to any of the other existing textbooks in the field, *before* you take any regular short courses in the discipline, and *before* you endeavor to read the existing literature. The hallmarks of the present book are *simplicity* and *motivation*. It is intended to prepare you for the more sophisticated presentations elsewhere—to give you an overall appreciation for the basic philosophy and ideas which will then make the more sophisticated presentations more meaningful to you later on. The mathematical level and the prior background in fluid dynamics assumed in this book are equivalent to those of a college senior in engineering or physical science. Indeed, this book is targeted primarily for use as a one-semester, senior-level course in CFD; it may also be useful in a preliminary, first-level graduate course.

There are no role models for a book on CFD at the undergraduate level; when you ask ten different people about what form such a book should take, you get ten different answers. This book is the author's answer, as imperfect as it may be, formulated after many years of thought and teaching experience. Of course, to achieve the goals stated above, the author has made some hard choices in picking and arranging the material in this book. It is *not* a state-of-the-art treatment of the modern, sophisticated CFD of today. Such a treatment would blow the uninitiated reader completely out of the water. This author knows; he has seen it happen over

and over again, where a student who wants to learn about CFD is totally turned off by the advanced treatments and becomes unmotivated toward continuing further. Indeed, the purpose of this book is to prepare the reader to benefit from such advanced treatments *at a later date*. The present book provides a general perspective on CFD; its purpose is to turn you, the reader, on to the subject, not to intimidate you. Therefore, the material in this book is predominately an intuitive, physically oriented approach to CFD. A CFD expert, when examining this book, may at first think that some of it is “old-fashioned,” because some of the material covered here was the state of the art in 1980. But this is the point: the older, tried-and-proven ideas form a wonderfully intuitive and meaningful learning experience for the uninitiated reader. With the background provided by this book, the reader can then progress to the more sophisticated aspects of CFD in graduate school and in the workplace. However, to increase the slope of the reader’s learning curve, state-of-the-art CFD techniques *are* discussed in Chap. 11, and some very recent and powerful examples of CFD calculations are reviewed in Chap. 12. In this fashion, when you finish the last page of this book, you are already well on your way to the next level of sophistication in the discipline.

This book is in part the product of the author’s experience in teaching a one-week short course titled “Introduction to Computational Fluid Dynamics,” for the past ten years at the von Karman Institute for Fluid Dynamics (VKI) in Belgium, and in recent years also for Rolls-Royce in England. With this experience, this author has discovered much of what it takes to present the elementary concepts of CFD in a manner which is acceptable, productive, and motivational to the first-time student. The present book directly reflects the author’s experience in this regard. The author gives special thanks to Dr. John Wendt, Director of the VKI, who first realized the need for such an introductory treatment of CFD, and who a decade ago galvanized the present author into preparing such a course at VKI. Over the ensuing years, the demand for this “Introduction to Computational Fluid Dynamics” course has been way beyond our wildest dreams. Recently, a book containing the VKI course notes has been published; it is *Computational Fluid Dynamics: An Introduction*, edited by John F. Wendt, Springer-Verlag, 1992. The present book is a greatly expanded sequel to this VKI book, aimed at a much more extensive presentation of CFD pertinent to a one-semester classroom course, but keeping within the basic spirit of simplicity and motivation.

This book is organized into four major parts. Part I introduces the basic thoughts and philosophy associated with CFD, along with an extensive discussion of the governing equations of fluid dynamics. It is vitally important for a student of CFD to fully understand, and feel comfortable with, the basic physical equations; they are the lifeblood of CFD. The author feels so strongly about this need to fully understand and appreciate the governing equations that every effort has been made to thoroughly derive and discuss these equations in Chap. 2. In a sense, Chap. 2 stands independently as a “mini course” in the governing equations. Experience has shown that students of CFD come from quite varied backgrounds; in turn, their understanding of the governing equations of fluid dynamics ranges across the

spectrum from virtually none to adequate. Students from the whole range of this spectrum have continually thanked the author for presenting the material in Chap. 2; those from the “virtually none” extreme are very appreciative of the opportunity to become comfortable with these equations, and those from the “adequate” extreme are very happy to have an integrated presentation and comprehensive review that strips away any mystery about the myriad of different forms of the governing equations. Chapter 2 emphasizes the philosophy that, to be a good computational fluid dynamicist, you must first be a good fluid dynamicist.

In Part II, the fundamental aspects of numerical discretization of the governing equations are developed; the discretization of the partial differential equations (finite-difference approach) is covered in detail. Here is where the basic numerics are introduced and where several popular numerical techniques for solving flow problems are presented. The finite-volume discretization of the integral form of the equations is covered via several homework problems.

Part III contains applications of CFD to four classic fluid dynamic problems with well-known, exact analytical solutions, which are used as a basis for comparison with the numerical CFD results. Clearly, the *real-world applications of CFD* are to problems that do *not* have known analytical solutions; indeed, CFD is our mechanism for solving flow problems that cannot be solved in any other way. However, in the present book, which is intended to introduce the reader to the *basic aspects* of CFD, nothing is gained by choosing applications where it is difficult to check the validity of the results; rather everything is gained by choosing simple flows with analytical solutions so that the reader can fundamentally see the strengths and weaknesses of a given computational technique against the background of a known, exact analytical solution. Each application is worked in great detail so that the reader can see the direct use of much of the CFD fundamentals which are presented in Parts I and II. The reader is also encouraged to write his or her own computer programs to solve these same problems, and to check the results given in Chaps. 7 to 10. In a real sense, although the subject of this book is *computational* fluid dynamics, it is also a vehicle for the reader to become more thoroughly acquainted with fluid dynamics per se. This author has intentionally emphasized the physical aspects of various flow problems in order to enhance the reader’s overall understanding. In some respect, this is an example of the adage that a student really learns the material of course  $N$  when he or she takes course  $N + 1$ . In terms of some aspects of basic fluid dynamics, the present book represents course  $N + 1$ .

Part IV deals with some topics which are more advanced than those discussed earlier in the book but which constitute the essence of modern state-of-the-art algorithms and applications in CFD. It is well beyond the scope of this book to present the *details* of such advanced topics—they await your attention in your future studies. Instead, such aspects are simply *discussed* in Chap. 11 just to give you a preview of coming attractions in your future studies. The purpose of Chap. 11 is just to acquaint you with some of the ideas and vocabulary of the most modern CFD techniques being developed today. Also, Chap. 12 examines the future of

CFD, giving some very recent examples of pioneering applications; Chap. 12 somewhat closes the loop of this book by extending some of the motivational ideas first discussed in Chap. 1.

The matter of *computer programing per se* was another hard choice faced by the author. Should detailed computer listings be included in this book as an aid to the reader's computer programing and as a recognition of the importance of efficient and modular programing for CFD? The decision was *no*, with the exception of a computer listing for Thomas' algorithm contained in the solution for Couette flow and listed in App. A. There are good and bad programming techniques, and it behooves the reader to become familiar and adept with efficient programming. However, this is *not the role of the present book*. Rather, you are encouraged to tackle the applications in Part III by writing your own programs as you see fit, and not following any prescribed listing provided by the author. This is assumed to be part of your learning process. The author wants you to get your own hands "dirty" with CFD by writing your own programs; it is a vital part of the learning process at this stage of your CFD education. On the other hand, detailed computer listings for all the applications discussed in Part III are listed in the *Solutions Manual for this book*. This is done as a service to classroom instructors. In turn, the instructors are free to release to their students any or all of these listings as deemed appropriate.

Something needs to be said about *computer graphics*. It was suggested by one reviewer that some aspects of computer graphics be mentioned in the present book. It is a good suggestion. Therefore, in Chap. 6 an entire section is devoted to explaining and illustrating the different computer graphic techniques commonly used in CFD. Also, examples of results presented in standard computer graphic format are sprinkled throughout the book.

Something also needs to be said about the role of *homework problems* in an introductory, senior-level CFD course, and therefore about homework problems in the present book. This is a serious consideration, and one over which the author has mulled for a considerable time. The actual applications of CFD—even the simplest techniques as addressed in this book—require a substantial learning period before the reader can actually do a reasonable calculation. Therefore, in the early chapters of this book, there is not much opportunity for the reader to practice making calculations via homework exercises. This is a departure from the more typical undergraduate engineering course, where the student is usually immersed in the "learning by doing" process through the immediate assignment of homework problems. Instead, the reader of this book is immersed in first learning the basic vocabulary, philosophy, ideas, and concepts of CFD before he or she finally encounters applications—the subject of Part III. Indeed, in these applications the reader is finally encouraged to set up calculations and to get the experience of doing some CFD work himself or herself. Even here, these applications are more on the scale of small *computer projects* rather than homework problems per se. Even the reviewers of this book are divided as to whether or not homework problems should be included; exactly half the reviewers said yes, but the others implied that such problems are not necessary. This author has taken some middle ground. There are homework problems in this book, but not very many. They are included in several

chapters to help the reader think about the details of some of the concepts being discussed in the text. Because there are no established role models for a book in CFD at the undergraduate level for which the present book is aimed, the author prefers to leave the generation of large numbers of appropriate homework problems to the ingenuity of the readers and instructors—you will want to exercise your own creativity in this regard.

This book is in keeping with the author's earlier books in that every effort has been made to discuss the material in an easy-to-understand writing style. This book will *talk to you* in a conversational style in order to expedite your understanding of material that sometimes is not all that easy to understand.

As stated earlier, a unique aspect of this book is its intended use in *undergraduate* programs in engineering and physical science. Since the seventeenth century, science and engineering have developed along two parallel tracks: one dealing with pure experiment and the other dealing with pure theory. Indeed, today's undergraduate engineering and science curricula reflect this tradition; they give the student a solid background in both experimental and theoretical techniques. However, in the technical world of today, computational mechanics has emerged as a new third approach, along with those of experiment and theory. Every graduate will in some form or another be touched by computational mechanics in the future. Therefore, in terms of fluid dynamics, it is *essential* that CFD be added to the curriculum at the *undergraduate* level in order to round out the three-approach world of today. This book is intended to expedite the teaching of CFD at the undergraduate level and, it is hoped, to make it as pleasant and painless as possible to both student and teacher.

A word about the *flavor* of this book. The author is an aerodynamicist, and there is some natural tendency to discuss aeronautically related problems. However, CFD is *interdisciplinary*, cutting across the fields of aerospace, mechanical, civil, chemical, and even electrical engineering, as well as physics and chemistry. While writing this book, the author had readers from all these areas in mind. Indeed, in the CFD short courses taught by this author, students from all the above disciplines have attended and enjoyed the experience. Therefore, this book contains material related to other disciplines well beyond that of aerospace engineering. In particular, mechanical and civil engineers will find numerous familiar applications discussed in Chap. 1 and will find the ADI and pressure correction techniques discussed in Chap. 6 to be of particular interest. Indeed, the application of the pressure correction technique for the solution of a viscous incompressible flow in Chap. 9 is aimed squarely at mechanical and civil engineers. However, no matter what the application may be, please keep in mind that the material in this book is *generic* and that readers from many fields are welcome.

What about the sequence of material presented in this book? Can the reader hop around and cut out some material he or she may not have time to cover, say in a given one-semester course? The answer is essentially yes. Although the author has composed this book such that consecutive reading of all the material in sequence will result in the broadest understanding of CFD at the introductory level, he recognizes that many times the reader and/or instructor does not have that luxury.

Therefore, at strategic locations throughout the book, specifically highlighted GUIDEPOSTS appear which instruct the reader where to go in the book and what to do in order to specifically tailor the material as he or she so desires. The location of these GUIDEPOSTS is also shown in the table of contents, for ready reference.

The author wishes to give special thanks to Col. Wayne Halgren, professor of aeronautics at the U.S. Air Force Academy. Colonel Halgren took the time to study the manuscript of this book, to organize it for a one-semester senior course at the Academy, and to field-test it in the classroom during the spring of 1993. Then he graciously donated his time to visit with the author at College Park in order to share his experiences during this field test. Such information coming from an independent source was invaluable, and a number of features contained in this book came out of this interaction. The fact that Wayne was one of this author's doctoral students several years ago served to strengthen this interaction. This author is proud to have been blessed with such quality students.

The author also wishes to thank all his colleagues in the CFD community for many invigorating discussions on what constitutes an elementary presentation of CFD, and especially the following reviewers of this manuscript: Ahmed Busnaina, Clarkson University; Chien-Pin Chen, University of Alabama-Huntsville; George S. Dulikravich, Pennsylvania State University; Ira Jacobson, University of Virginia; Osama A. Kandil, Old Dominion University; James McDonough, University of Kentucky; Thomas J. Mueller, University of Notre Dame; Richard Pletcher, Iowa State University; Paavo Repri, Florida Institute of Technology; P. L. Roe, University of Michigan-Ann Arbor; Christopher Rutland, University of Wisconsin; Joe F. Thompson, Mississippi State University; and Susan Ying, Florida State University. This book is, in part, a product of those discussions. Also, special thanks go to Ms. Susan Cunningham, who was the author's personal word processor for the detailed preparation of this manuscript. Sue loves to type equations—she should have had a lot of fun with this book. Of course, special appreciation goes to two important institutions in the author's life—the University of Maryland for providing the necessary intellectual atmosphere for producing such a book, and my wife, Sarah-Allen, for providing the necessary atmosphere of understanding and support during the untold amount of hours at home required for writing this book. To all of you, I say a most heartfelt thank you.

So, let's get on with it! I wish you a productive trail of happy reading and happy computing. Have fun (and I really mean that).

*John D. Anderson, Jr.*

---

**COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS**  
The Basics with Applications

---

---

# PART I

---

## BASIC THOUGHTS AND EQUATIONS

In Part I, we introduce some of the basic philosophy and ideas of computational fluid dynamics to serve as a springboard for the rest of the book. We also derive and discuss the basic governing equations of fluid dynamics under the premise that these equations are the physical foundation stones upon which all computational fluid dynamics is based. Before we can understand and apply any aspect of computational fluid dynamics, we must fully appreciate the governing equations—the mathematical form and what physics they are describing. All this is the essence of Part I.

---

# CHAPTER

# 1

---

## PHILOSOPHY OF COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS

*All the mathematical sciences are founded on relations between physical laws and laws of numbers, so that the aim of exact science is to reduce the problems of nature to the determination of quantities by operations with numbers.*

James Clerk Maxwell, 1856

*In the late 1970's, this approach (the use of supercomputers to solve aerodynamic problems) began to pay off. One early success was the experimental NASA aircraft called HiMAT (Highly Maneuverable Aircraft Technology), designed to test concepts of high maneuverability for the next generation of fighter planes. Wind tunnel tests of a preliminary design for HiMAT showed that it would have unacceptable drag at speeds near the speed of sound; if built that way the plane would be unable to provide any useful data. The cost of redesigning it in further wind tunnel tests would have been around \$150,000 and would have unacceptably delayed the project. Instead, the wing was redesigned by a computer at a cost of \$6,000.*

Paul E. Ceruzzi, Curator, National Air and Space Museum, in *Beyond the Limits*, The MIT Press, 1989

## 1.1 COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS: WHY?

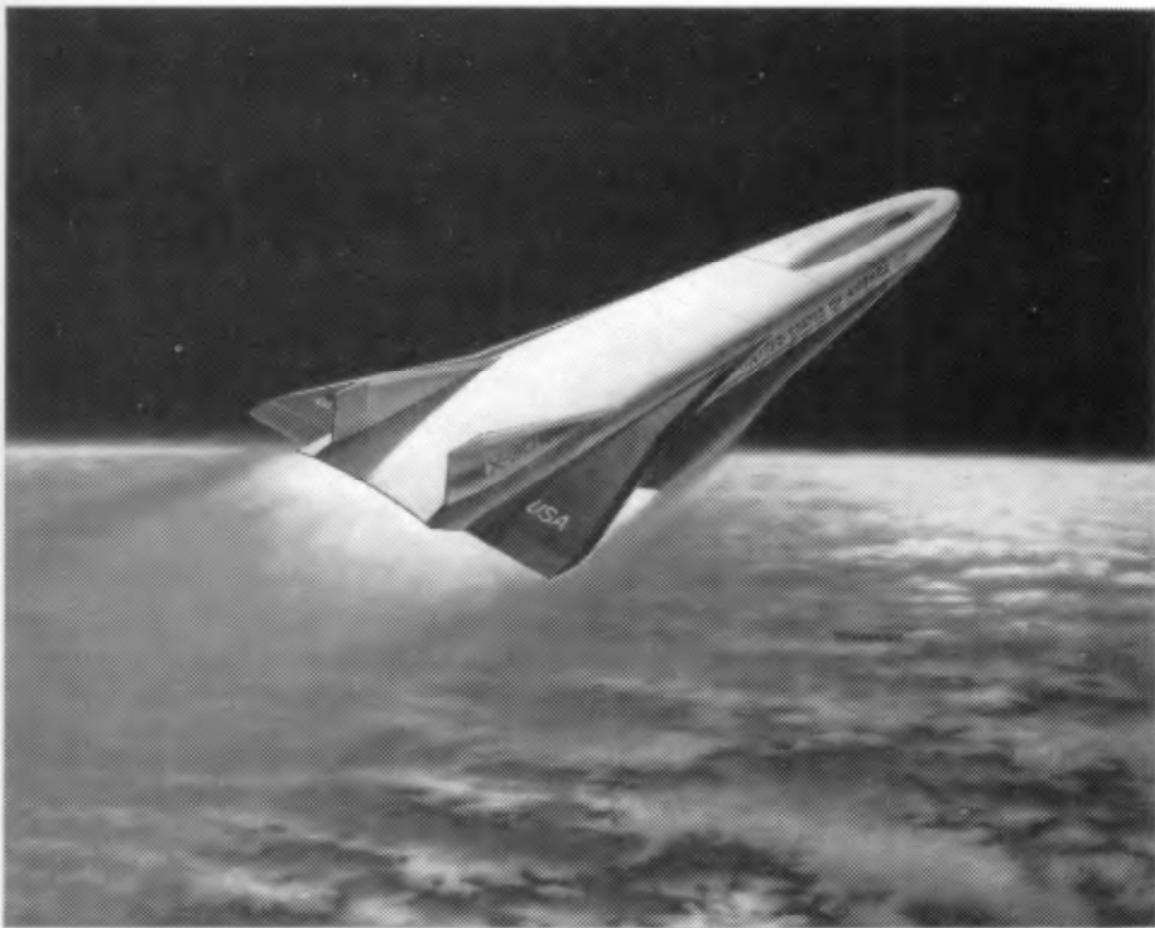
*The time:* early in the twenty-first century. *The place:* a major airport anywhere in the world. *The event:* a sleek and beautiful aircraft roles down the runway, takes off, and rapidly climbs out of sight. Within minutes, this same aircraft has accelerated to hypersonic speed; still within the atmosphere, its powerful supersonic combustion ramjet engines\* continue to propel the aircraft to a velocity near 26,000 ft/s—orbital velocity—and the vehicle simply coasts into low earth orbit. Is this the stuff of dreams? Not really; indeed, this is the concept of a transatmospheric vehicle, which has been the subject of study in several countries during the 1980s and 1990s. In particular, one design for such a vehicle is shown in Fig. 1.1, which is an artist's concept for the National Aerospace Plane (NASP), the subject of an intensive study project in the United States since the mid-1980s. Anyone steeped in the history of aeronautics, where the major thrust has always been to fly faster and higher, knows that such vehicles will someday be a reality. But they will be made a reality only when computational fluid dynamics has developed to the point where the complete three-dimensional flowfield over the vehicle and through the engines can be computed expeditiously with accuracy and reliability. Unfortunately, ground test facilities—wind tunnels—do not exist in all the flight regimes covered by such hypersonic flight. We have no wind tunnels that can simultaneously simulate the higher Mach numbers and high flowfield temperatures to be encountered by transatmospheric vehicles, and the prospects for such wind tunnels in the twenty-first century are not encouraging. Hence, the major player in the design of such vehicles is computational fluid dynamics. It is for this reason, as well as many others, why computational fluid dynamics—*the subject of this book*—is so important in the modern practice of fluid dynamics.<sup>†</sup>

Computational fluid dynamics constitutes a new “third approach” in the philosophical study and development of the whole discipline of fluid dynamics. In the seventeenth century, the foundations for *experimental* fluid dynamics were laid in France and England. The eighteenth and nineteenth centuries saw the gradual development of *theoretical* fluid dynamics, again primarily in Europe. (See Refs. 3–5 for presentations of the historical evolution of fluid dynamics and aerodynamics.) As a result, throughout most of the twentieth century the study and practice of fluid dynamics (indeed, all of physical science and engineering) involved the use of pure theory on the one hand and pure experiment on the other hand. If you were learning

---

\* A supersonic combustion ramjet engine, SCRAMJET for short, is an air-breathing ramjet engine where the flow through the engine remains above Mach 1 in all sections of the engine, including the combustor. Fuel is injected into the supersonic airstream in the combustor, and combustion takes place in the supersonic flow. This is in contrast to a conventional ramjet or gas turbine engine, where the flow in the combustor is at a low subsonic Mach number.

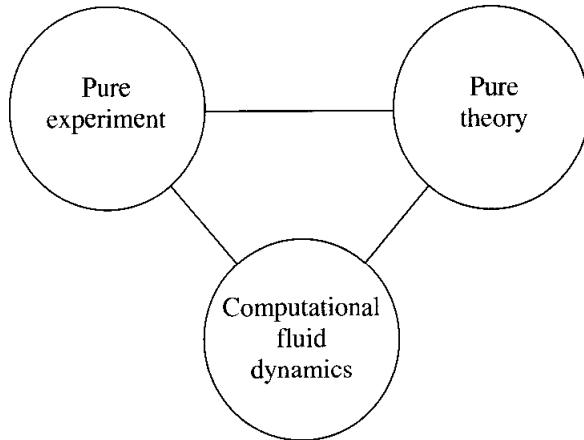
† For a basic introduction to the principles of hypersonic flight, see chap. 10 of Ref. 1. For an in-depth presentation of these principles, see Ref. 2.



**FIG. 1.1**  
Artist's conception of an aerospace plane. (*NASA*)

fluid dynamics as recently as, say, 1960, you would have been operating in the “two-approach world” of theory and experiment. However, the advent of the high-speed digital computer combined with the development of accurate numerical algorithms for solving physical problems on these computers has revolutionized the way we study and practice fluid dynamics today. It has introduced a fundamentally important new third approach in fluid dynamics—the approach of *computational fluid dynamics*. As sketched in Fig. 1.2, computational fluid dynamics is today an *equal* partner with pure theory and pure experiment in the analysis and solution of fluid dynamic problems. And this is no flash in the pan—computational fluid dynamics will continue to play this role indefinitely, for as long as our advanced human civilization exists. Therefore, by studying computational fluid dynamics today, you are participating in an awesome and historic revolution, truly a measure of the importance of the subject matter of this book.

However, to keep things in perspective, computational fluid dynamics provides a new third approach—but nothing more than that. It nicely and synergistically complements the other two approaches of pure theory and pure experiment, but it will never *replace* either of these approaches (as sometimes suggested). There will always be a need for theory and experiment. The future advancement of fluid dynamics will rest upon a proper balance of all three

**FIG. 1.2**

The “three dimensions” of fluid dynamics.

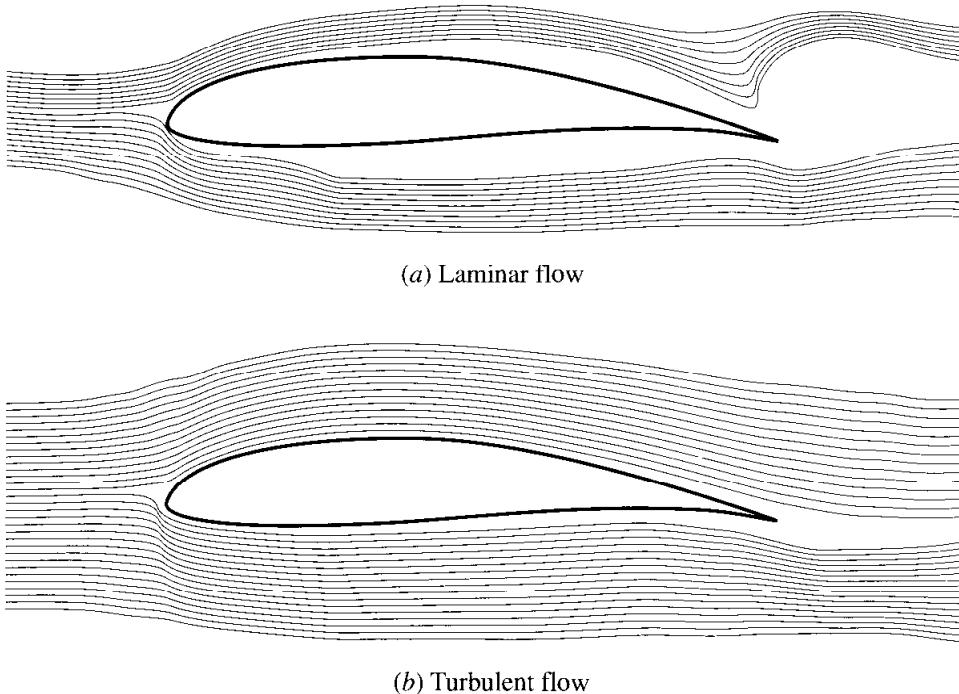
approaches, with computational fluid dynamics helping to interpret and understand the results of theory and experiment, and vice versa.

Finally, we note that computational fluid dynamics is commonplace enough today that the acronym CFD is universally accepted for the phrase “computational fluid dynamics.” We will use this acronym throughout the remainder of this book.

## 1.2 COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS AS A RESEARCH TOOL

Computational fluid dynamic results are directly analogous to wind tunnel results obtained in a laboratory—they both represent sets of data for given flow configurations at different Mach numbers, Reynolds numbers, etc. However, unlike a wind tunnel, which is generally a heavy, unwieldy device, a computer program (say in the form of floppy disks) is something you can carry around in your hand. Or better yet, a source program in the memory of a given computer can be accessed remotely by people on terminals that can be thousands of miles away from the computer itself. A computer program is, therefore, a readily transportable tool, a “transportable wind tunnel.”

Carrying this analogy further, a computer program is a tool with which you can carry out *numerical experiments*. For example, assume that you have a program which calculates the viscous, subsonic, compressible flow over an airfoil, such as that shown in Fig. 1.3. Such a computer program was developed by Kothari and Anderson (Ref. 6); this program solves the complete two-dimensional Navier-Stokes equations for viscous flow by means of a finite-difference numerical technique. The Navier-Stokes equations, as well as other governing equations for the physical aspects of fluid flow, are developed in Chap. 2. The computational techniques employed in the solution by Kothari and Anderson in Ref. 6 are standard approaches—all of which are covered in subsequent chapters of this book. Therefore, by the time you finish this book, you will have all the knowledge necessary to construct, among many other examples, solutions of the Navier-Stokes equations for compressible flows over airfoils, just as described in Ref. 6. Now, assuming that you have such a program, you can carry out some interesting *experiments* with it—experiments which in every sense of the word are analogous to those you could carry out (in principle) in a wind tunnel, except the experiments you

**FIG. 1.3**

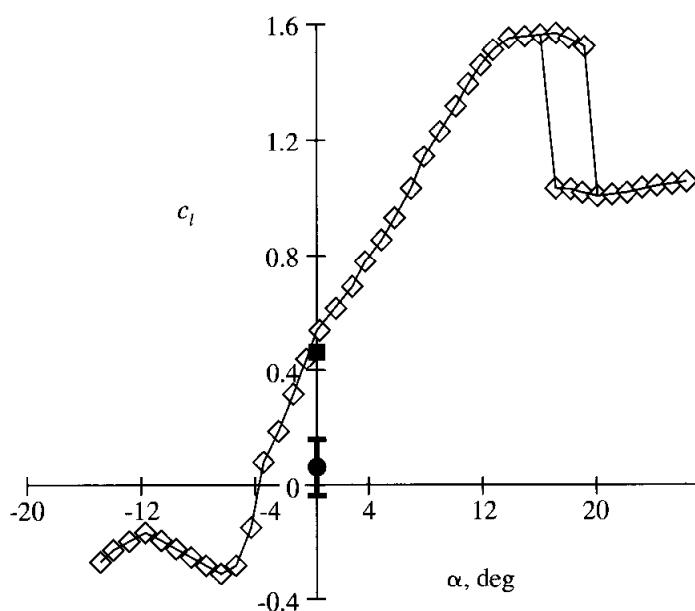
Example of a CFD numerical experiment. (a) Instantaneous streamlines over a Wortmann airfoil (FX63-137) for laminar flow.  $Re = 100,000$ ;  $M_\infty = 0.5$ ; zero angle of attack. The laminar flow is unsteady; this picture corresponds to only one instant in time. (b) Streamlines over the same airfoil for the same conditions except that the flow is turbulent.

perform with the computer program are *numerical experiments*. To provide a more concrete understanding of this philosophy, let us examine one of these numerical experiments, gleaned from the work of Ref. 6.

This is an example of a numerical experiment that can elucidate physical aspects of a flow field in a manner not achievable in a real laboratory experiment. For example, consider the subsonic compressible flow over the Wortmann airfoil shown in Fig. 1.3. *Question:* What are the differences between laminar and turbulent flow over this airfoil for  $Re = 100,000$ ? For the computer program, this is a straightforward question—it is just a matter of making one run with the turbulence model switched off (laminar flow), another run with the turbulence model switched on (turbulent flow), and then comparing the two sets of results. In this fashion you can dabble with Mother Nature simply by turning a switch in the computer program—something you cannot do quite as readily (if at all) in the wind tunnel. For example, in Fig. 1.3a the flow is completely laminar. Note that the calculated flow is separated over both the top and bottom surfaces of the airfoil, even though the angle of attack is zero. Such separated flow is characteristic of the low Reynolds number regime considered here ( $Re = 100,000$ ), as discussed in Refs. 6 and 7. Moreover, the CFD calculations show that this laminar, separated flow is *unsteady*. The numerical technique used to calculate these flows is a time-marching method, using a time-accurate finite-difference solution of the unsteady Navier-Stokes equations. (The philosophy and numerical details associated with time-marching solutions will be discussed in subsequent chapters.) The streamlines shown in Fig.

1.3a are simply a “snapshot” of this unsteady flow at a given instant in time. In contrast, Fig. 1.3b illustrates the calculated streamlines when a turbulence model is “turned on” within the computer program. Note that the calculated turbulent flow is *attached flow*; moreover, the resulting flow is *steady*. Comparing Fig. 1.3a and b, we see that the laminar and turbulent flows are quite different; moreover, this CFD numerical experiment allows us to study in detail the physical differences between the laminar and turbulent flows, all other parameters being equal, in a fashion impossible to obtain in an actual laboratory experiment.

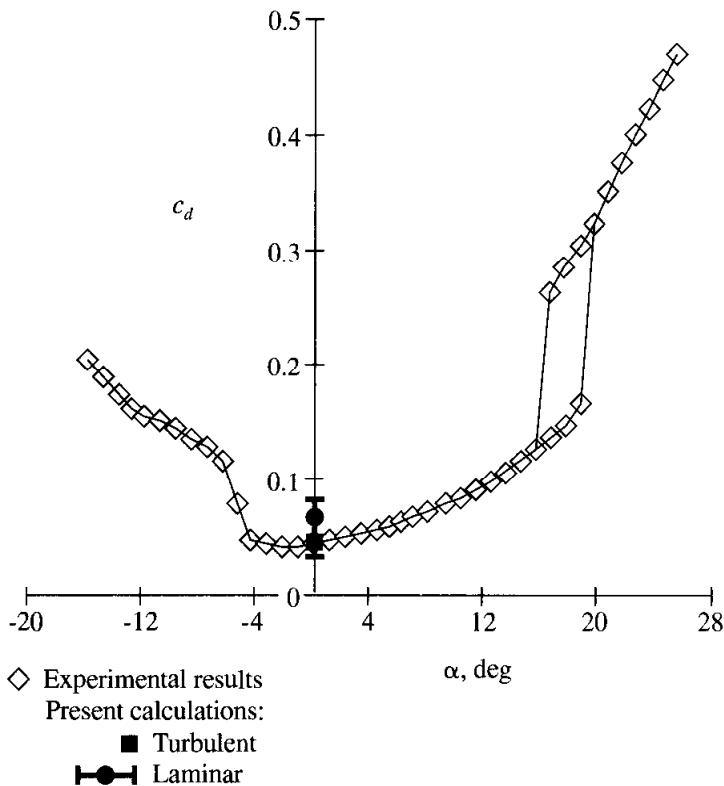
Numerical experiments, carried out in parallel with physical experiments in the laboratory, can sometimes be used to help *interpret* such physical experiments, and even to ascertain a basic phenomenological aspect of the experiments which is not apparent from the laboratory data. The laminar/turbulent comparison reflected in part in Fig. 1.3a and b is such a case. This comparison has even more implications, as follows. Consider Fig. 1.4, which is a plot of experimental wind tunnel data (the open symbols) for lift coefficient  $c_l$  as a function of angle of attack for the same Wortman airfoil. The experimental data were obtained by Dr. Thomas Mueller and his colleagues at Notre Dame University. (See Ref. 7.) The solid symbols in Fig. 1.4 pertain to the CFD results at zero angle of attack, as described in Ref. 6. Note that there are two distinct sets of CFD results shown here. The solid circle represents a mean of the laminar flow results, with the brackets representing the amplitude of the unsteady fluctuations in  $c_l$  due to the unsteady separated flow, as previously illustrated in Fig. 1.3a. Note that the laminar flow value of  $c_l$  is not even close to the experimental measurements at  $\alpha = 0$ . On the other hand, the solid square gives the turbulent flow result, which corresponds to steady flow as previously illustrated in Fig. 1.3b. The turbulent value of  $c_l$  is in close agreement



- ◇ Experimental results
- Present calculations:
- Turbulent
- Laminar

**FIG. 1.4**

Example of a CFD numerical experiment. Lift coefficient versus angle of attack for a Wortmann airfoil.  $Re = 100,000$ ;  $M_\infty = 0.5$ .

**FIG. 1.5**

Example of a CFD numerical experiment. Drag coefficient versus angle of attack for a Wortmann airfoil.  $Re = 100,000$ ;  $M_\infty = 0.5$ .

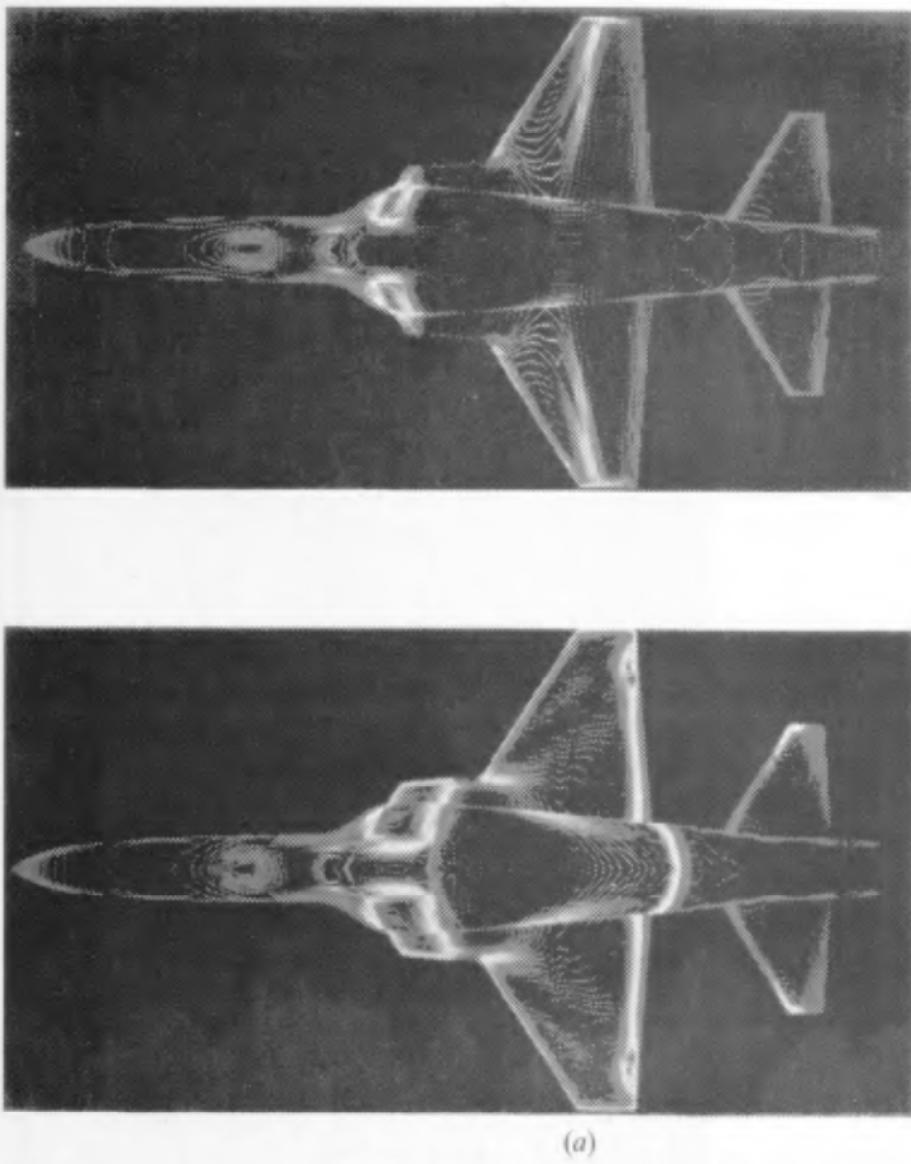
with the experimental data. This comparison is reinforced by the results shown in Fig. 1.5, which is a plot of the airfoil drag coefficient versus angle of attack. The open symbols are Mueller's experimental data, and the solid symbols at  $\alpha = 0$  are the CFD results. The fluctuating laminar values of the computed  $c_d$  are given by the solid circle and the amplitude bars; the agreement with experiment is poor. On the other hand, the solid square represents the steady turbulent result; the agreement with experiment is excellent for this case. The importance of this result goes beyond just a simple comparison between experiment and computation. During the course of the wind tunnel experiments, there was some uncertainty, based on the experimental observations themselves, as to whether or not the flow was laminar or turbulent. However, examining the comparisons with the CFD data shown in Figs. 1.4 and 1.5, we have to conclude that the flow over the airfoil in the wind tunnel was indeed turbulent, because the turbulent CFD results agreed with experiment whereas the laminar CFD results were far off. Here is a beautiful example of how CFD can work harmoniously with experiment—not just providing a quantitative comparison, but also in this case providing a means to *interpret* a basic phenomenological aspect of the experimental conditions. Here is a graphic example of the value of *numerical experiments* carried out within the framework of CFD.

### 1.3 COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS AS A DESIGN TOOL

In 1950, there was no CFD in the way that we think of it today. In 1970, there was CFD, but the type of computers and algorithms that existed at that time limited all practical solutions essentially to two-dimensional flows. The real world of fluid

dynamic machines—compressors, turbines, flow ducts, airplanes, etc.—is mainly a *three-dimensional* world. In 1970, the storage and speed capacity of digital computers were not sufficient to allow CFD to operate in any practical fashion in this three-dimensional world. By 1990, however, this story had changed substantially. In today's CFD, three-dimensional flow field solutions are abundant; they may not be routine in the sense that a great deal of human and computer resources are still frequently needed to successfully carry out such three-dimensional solutions for applications like the flow over a complete airplane configuration, but such solutions are becoming more and more prevalent within industry and government facilities. Indeed, some computer programs for the calculation of three-dimensional flows have become industry standards, resulting in their use as a tool in the design process. In this section, we will examine one such example, just to emphasize the point.

Modern high-speed aircraft, such as the Northrop F-20 shown in Fig. 1.6, with their complicated transonic aerodynamic flow patterns, are fertile ground for the use of CFD as a design tool. Figure 1.6 illustrates the detailed pressure coefficient variation over the surface of the F-20 at a nearly sonic freestream Mach number  $M_\infty$  of 0.95 and an angle of attack  $\alpha$  of  $8^\circ$ . These are CFD results obtained by Bush, Jager, and Bergman (Ref. 9), using a finite-volume explicit numerical scheme developed by Jameson et al. (Ref. 10). In Fig. 1.6a, the contours of pressure coefficient are shown over the planform of the F-20; a contour line represents a locus of constant pressure, and hence regions where the contour lines cluster together are regions of large pressure gradients. In particular, the heavily clustered band that appears at the wing trailing edge and wraps around the fuselage just downstream of the trailing edge connotes a transonic shock wave at that location. Other regions involving local shock waves and expansions are clearly shown in Fig. 1.6. In addition, the local chordwise variations of the pressure coefficient over the top and bottom of the wing section are shown for five different spanwise stations in Fig. 1.6b to f. Here, the CFD calculations, which involve the solution of the Euler equations (see Chap. 2), are given by the solid curves and are compared with experimental data denoted by the solid squares and circles. Note that there is reasonable agreement between the calculations and experiment. However, the major point made by the results in Fig. 1.6 relative to our discussion is this: CFD provides a means to calculate the detailed flow field around a complete airplane configuration, including the pressure distribution over the three-dimensional surface. This knowledge of the pressure distribution is necessary for structural engineers, who need to know the detailed distribution of aerodynamic loads over the aircraft in order to properly design the structure of the airframe. This knowledge is also necessary for aerodynamicists, who obtain the lift and pressure drag by integrating the pressure distribution over the surface (see Ref. 8 for details of such an integration). Moreover, the CFD results provide information about the vortices which are formed at the juncture of the fuselage strakes and the wing leading edge, such as shown in Fig. 1.7, also obtained from Ref. 9. Here, the values of  $M_\infty$  and  $\alpha$  are 0.26 and  $25^\circ$ , respectively. Knowing where these vortices go and how they interact with other parts of the airplane is essential to the overall aerodynamic design of the airplane.

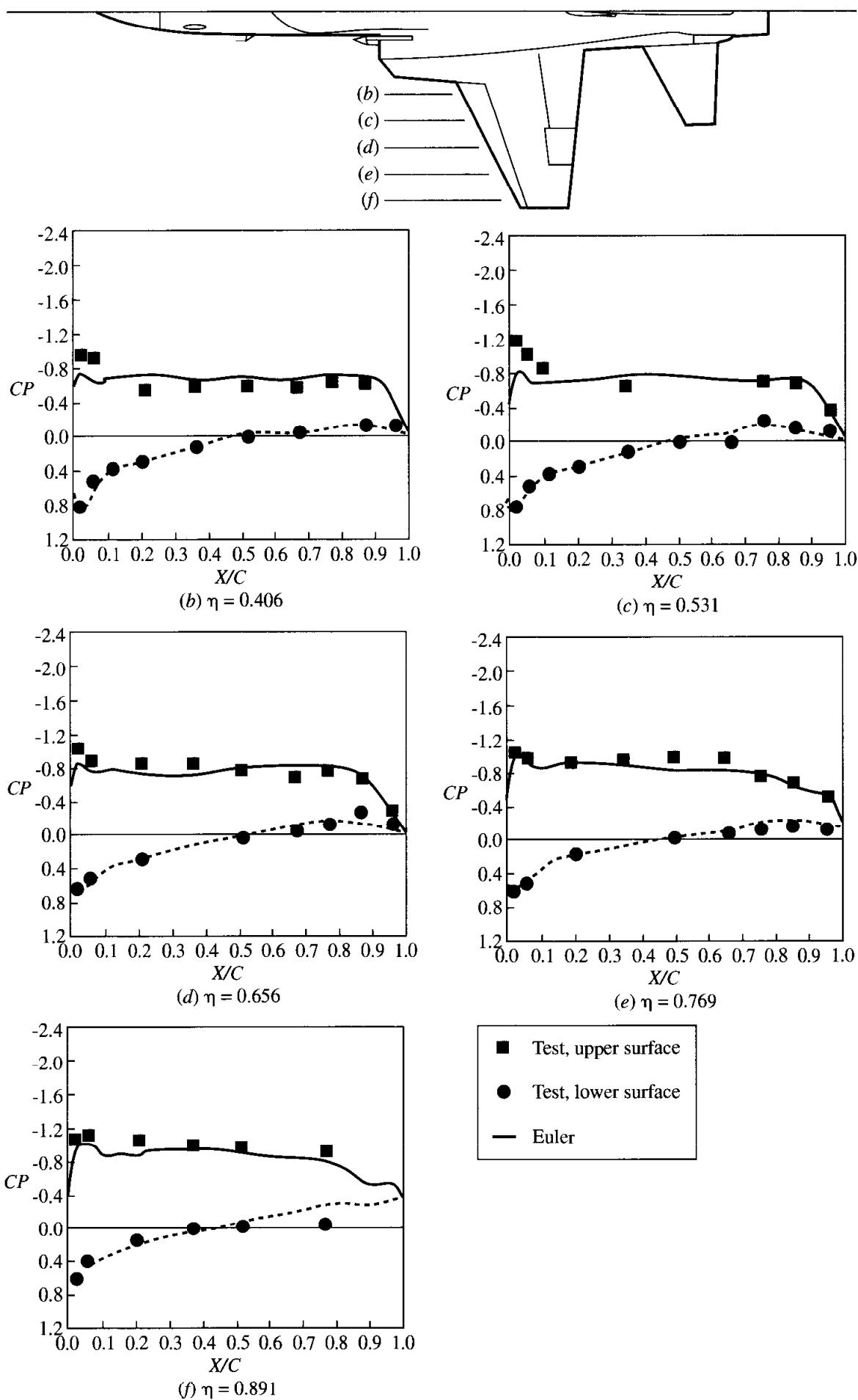


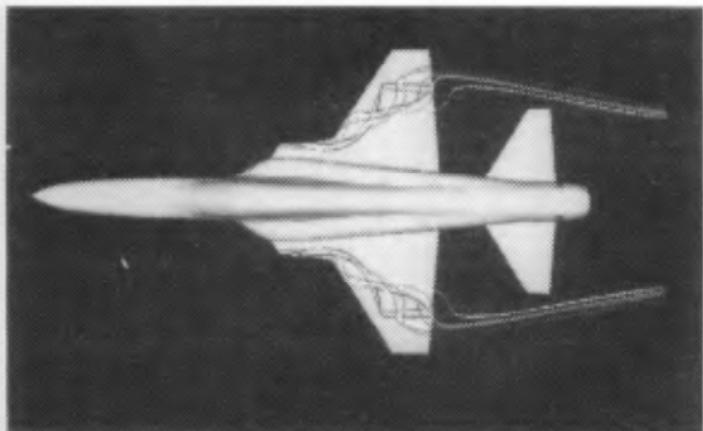
(a)

**FIG. 1.6**

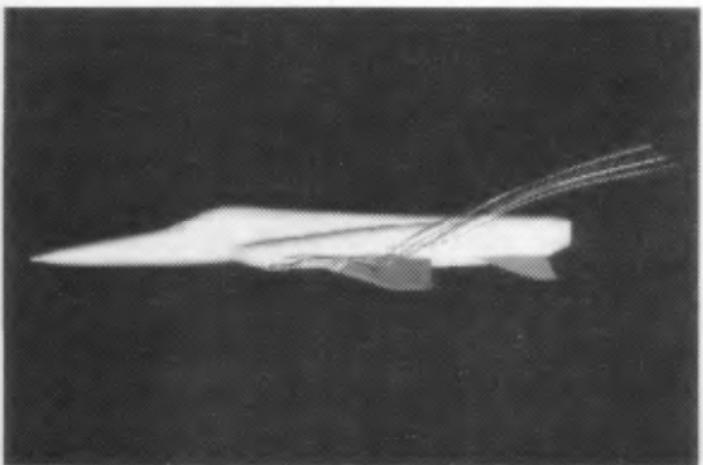
An example of the calculation of the aerodynamic flow field for a complete airplane configuration, the Northrop F-20 fighter. (a) Contours of pressure coefficient over the entire upper surface of the airplane are shown. (b)-(f) The graphs give the pressure coefficient variation over the top and bottom of the wing at various spanwise locations, denoted by  $\eta$ , which is the spanwise location referenced to the semispan of the wing. (From Ref. 9.)

In short, CFD is playing a strong role as a design tool. Along with its role as a research tool as described in Sec. 1.2, CFD has become a powerful influence on the way fluid dynamicists and aerodynamicists do business. Of course, one of the purposes of this book is to introduce you to means of developing and using this power.





(a)



(b)



(c)

**FIG. 1.7**

The wing vortex for the F-20, obtained from CFD calculations. (a) Top view; (b) side view; (c) isometric view. (From Ref. 9.)

## 1.4 THE IMPACT OF COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS—SOME OTHER EXAMPLES

Historically, the early development of CFD in the 1960s and 1970s was driven by the needs of the aerospace community. Indeed, the examples of CFD applications described in Sec. 1.1 to 1.3 are from this community. However, modern CFD cuts across *all* disciplines where the flow of a fluid is important. The purpose of this section is to highlight some of these other, *nonaerospace*, applications of CFD.

### 1.4.1 Automobile and Engine Applications

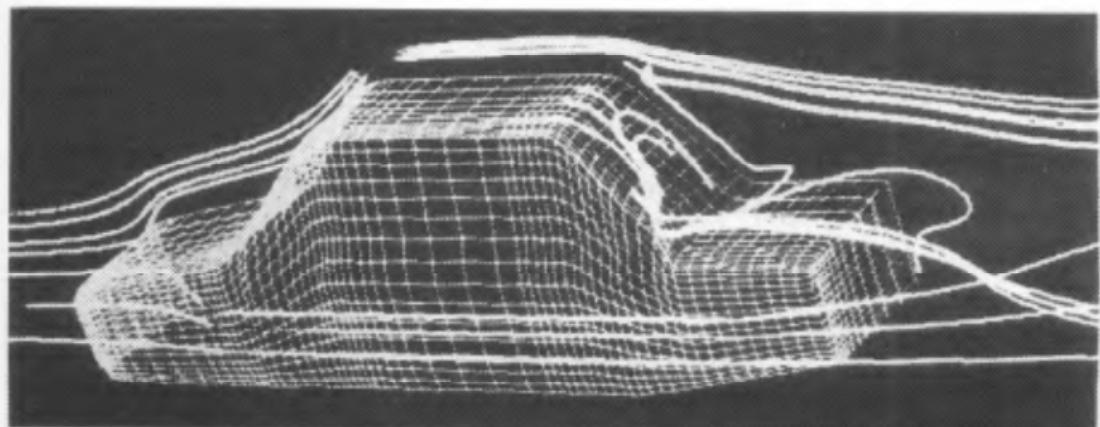
To improve the performance of modern cars and trucks (environmental quality, fuel economy, etc.), the automobile industry has accelerated its use of high-technology research and design tools. One of these tools is CFD. Whether it is the study of the external flow over the body of a vehicle, or the internal flow through the engine, CFD is helping automotive engineers to better understand the physical flow processes, and in turn to design improved vehicles. Let us examine several such examples.

The calculation of the external airflow over a car is exemplified by the paths of air particles shown in Fig. 1.8. The outline of the left half of the car is shown by the mesh distributed over its surface, and the white streaks are the calculated paths of various air particles moving over the car from left to right. These particle paths were calculated by means of a finite-volume CFD algorithm. The calculations were made over a discrete three-dimensional mesh distributed in the space around the car; that portion of the mesh on the center plane of symmetry of the car is illustrated in Fig. 1.9. Note that one of the coordinate lines of the mesh is fitted to the body surface, a so-called boundary-fitted coordinate system. (Such coordinate systems are discussed in Sec. 5.7.) Figures 1.8 and 1.9 are taken from a study by C. T. Shaw of Jaguar Cars Limited (Ref. 58). Another example of the calculation of the external flow over a car is the work of Matsunaga et al. (Ref. 59). Figure 1.10 shows contours of vorticity in the flow field over a car, obtained from the finite-difference calculations described in Ref. 59.\* (Aspects of finite-difference methods are discussed throughout this book, beginning with Chap. 4.) Here, the calculations are made on a three-dimensional rectangular grid, a portion of which is shown in Fig. 1.11. The fundamentals of grid generation—an important aspect of CFD—are discussed in Chap. 5, and special mention of cartesian, or rectangular, grids wrapped around complex three-dimensional bodies is made in Sec. 5.10.

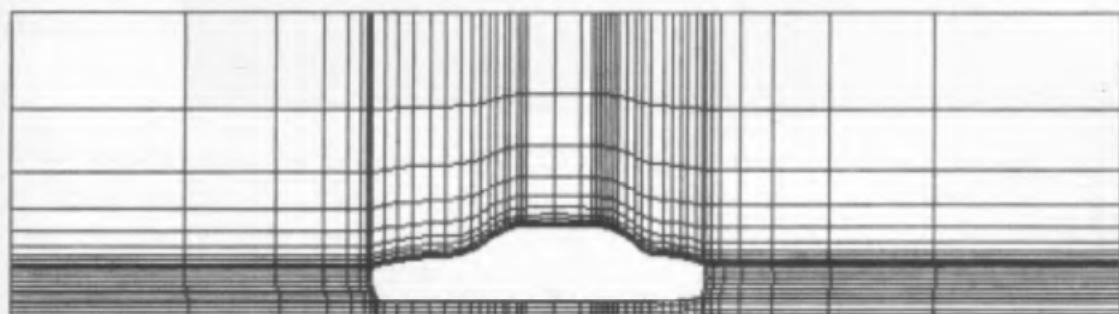
The calculation of the internal flow inside an internal combustion engine such as that used in automobiles is exemplified by the work of Griffin et al. (Ref. 60). Here, the unsteady flow field inside the cylinder of a four-stroke Otto-cycle engine was calculated by means of a time-marching finite-difference method. (Time-marching methods are discussed in various chapters of this book.) The finite-difference grid for the cylinder is shown in Fig. 1.12. The piston crosshatched at the bottom of Fig. 1.12 moves up and down inside the cylinder during the intake, compression, power, and exhaust strokes; the intake valves open and close appropriately; and an unsteady, recirculating flow field is established inside the cylinder. A calculated velocity pattern in the valve plane when the piston is near the bottom of its stroke (bottom dead center) during the intake stroke is shown in Fig. 1.13. These early calculations were the first application of CFD to the study of flow

---

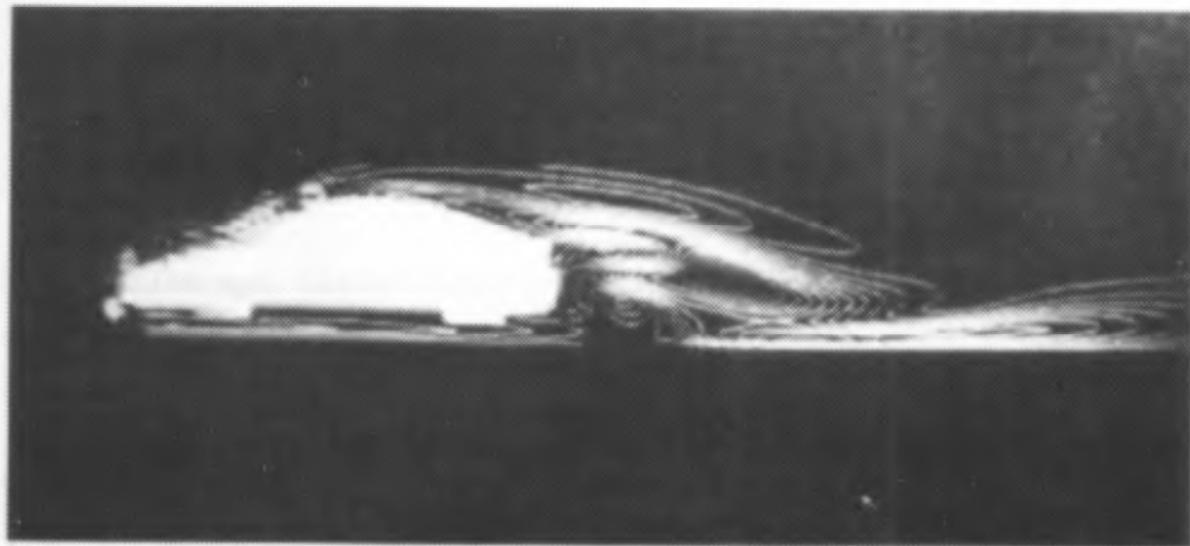
\* Recall that vorticity is defined in fluid dynamics as the vector quantity  $\nabla \times \mathbf{V}$ , which is equal to twice the instantaneous angular velocity of a fluid element. Contours of the  $x$  component of vorticity (in the flow direction) are shown in Fig. 1.10.

**FIG. 1.8**

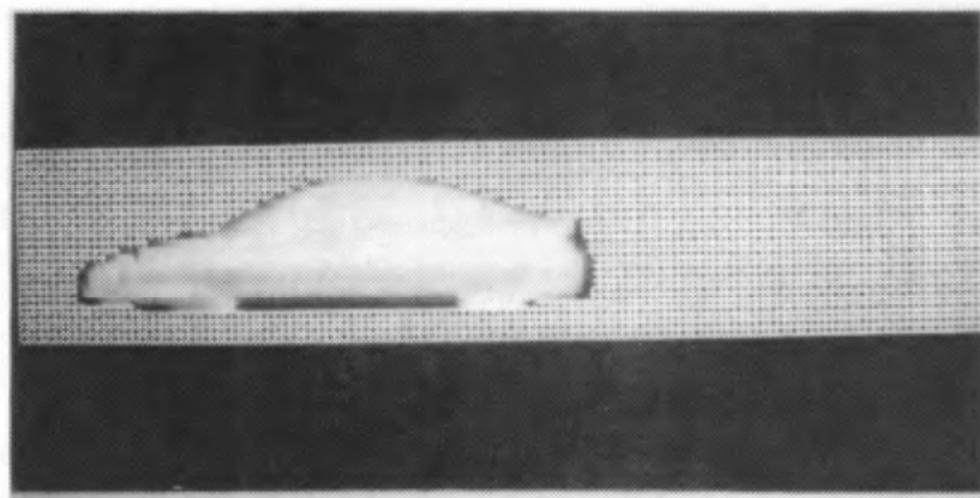
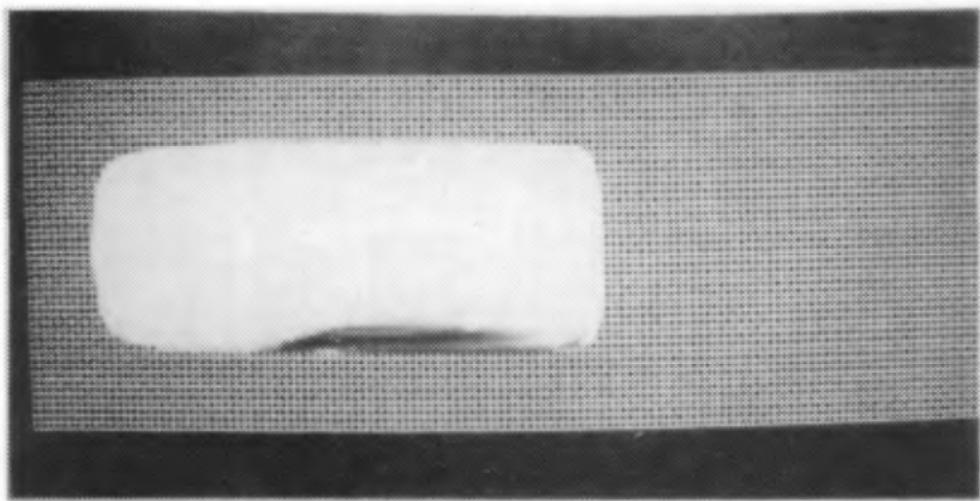
Computed particle paths in the airflow over an automobile. Flow is moving from left to right. (From C. T. Shaw, Ref. 58. Reprinted with permission from SAE SP-747, 1988, © 1988, Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc.)

**FIG. 1.9**

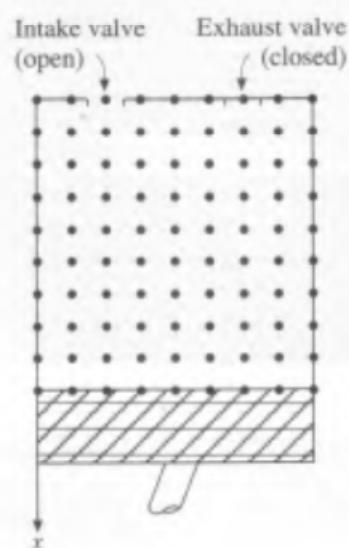
That portion of the computational mesh on the center plane of symmetry used for the calculation shown in Fig. 1.8. (From Ref. 58. Reprinted with permission from SAE SP-747, 1988, © 1988 Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc.)

**FIG. 1.10**

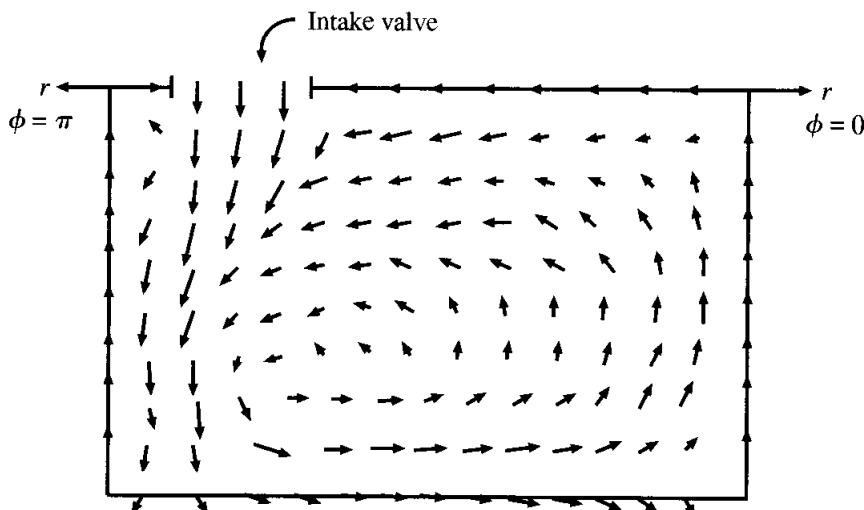
Computed contours of the  $x$  component of vorticity in the airflow over an automobile. Flow is moving from left to right. Results are shown in a vertical plane displaced 40% of the width of the car from the center plane. (From Matsunaga et al. Ref. 59. Reprinted with permission from SAE SP-908, 1992, © 1992 Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc.)

**FIG. 1.11**

A portion of a rectangular (cartesian) grid wrapped around a car, used for the calculations shown in Fig. 1.10. (From Ref. 59. Reprinted with permission from SAE SP-908, 1992, © 1992 Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc.)

**FIG. 1.12**

A portion of the grid in the valve plane in cylindrical coordinates for a piston-cylinder arrangement studied in Ref. 60. Only about half the grid points in the valve plane are shown (for clarity).

**FIG. 1.13**

Velocity pattern in the valve plane near bottom dead center of the intake stroke for a piston-cylinder arrangement in an internal combustion engine. (From Ref. 60.)

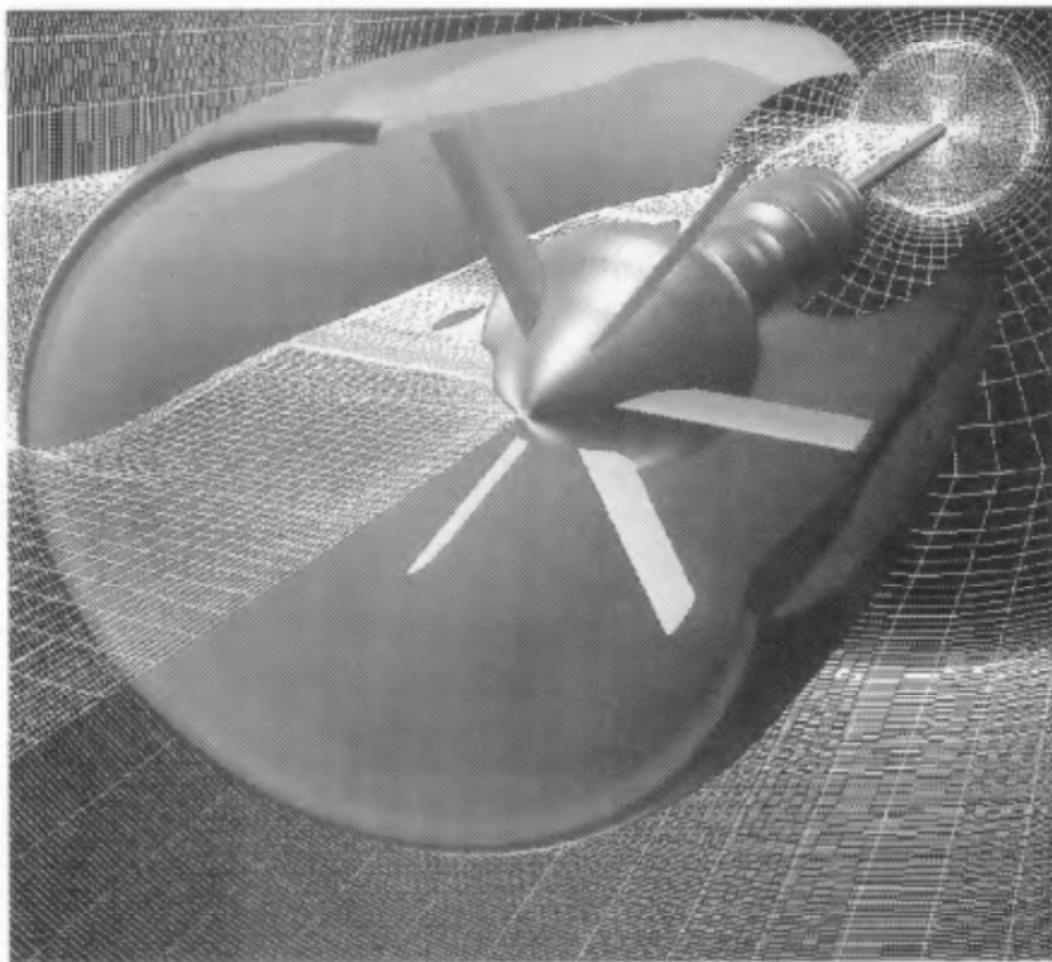
fields inside internal combustion engines. Today, the massive power of modern CFD is being applied by automotive engineers to study all aspects of the details of internal combustion engine flow fields, including combustion, turbulence, and coupling with the manifold and exhaust pipes.

As an example of the sophistication of modern CFD applications to a gas turbine engine, Fig. 1.14 illustrates a finite-volume mesh which is wrapped around both the *external* region outside the engine *and* the *internal* passages through the compressor, the combustor, the turbine, etc. (Grids and meshes are discussed in Sec. 5.10.) This complex mesh is generated by researchers at the Center for Computational Field Simulation at Mississippi State University and is a precursor to a coupled external-internal CFD calculation of the complete flow process associated with a gas turbine. In the author's opinion, this is one of the most complex and interesting CFD grids generated to date, and it clearly underscores the importance of CFD to the automotive and the gas turbine industry.

#### 1.4.2 Industrial Manufacturing Applications

Here we will give just two examples of the myriad CFD applications in manufacturing.

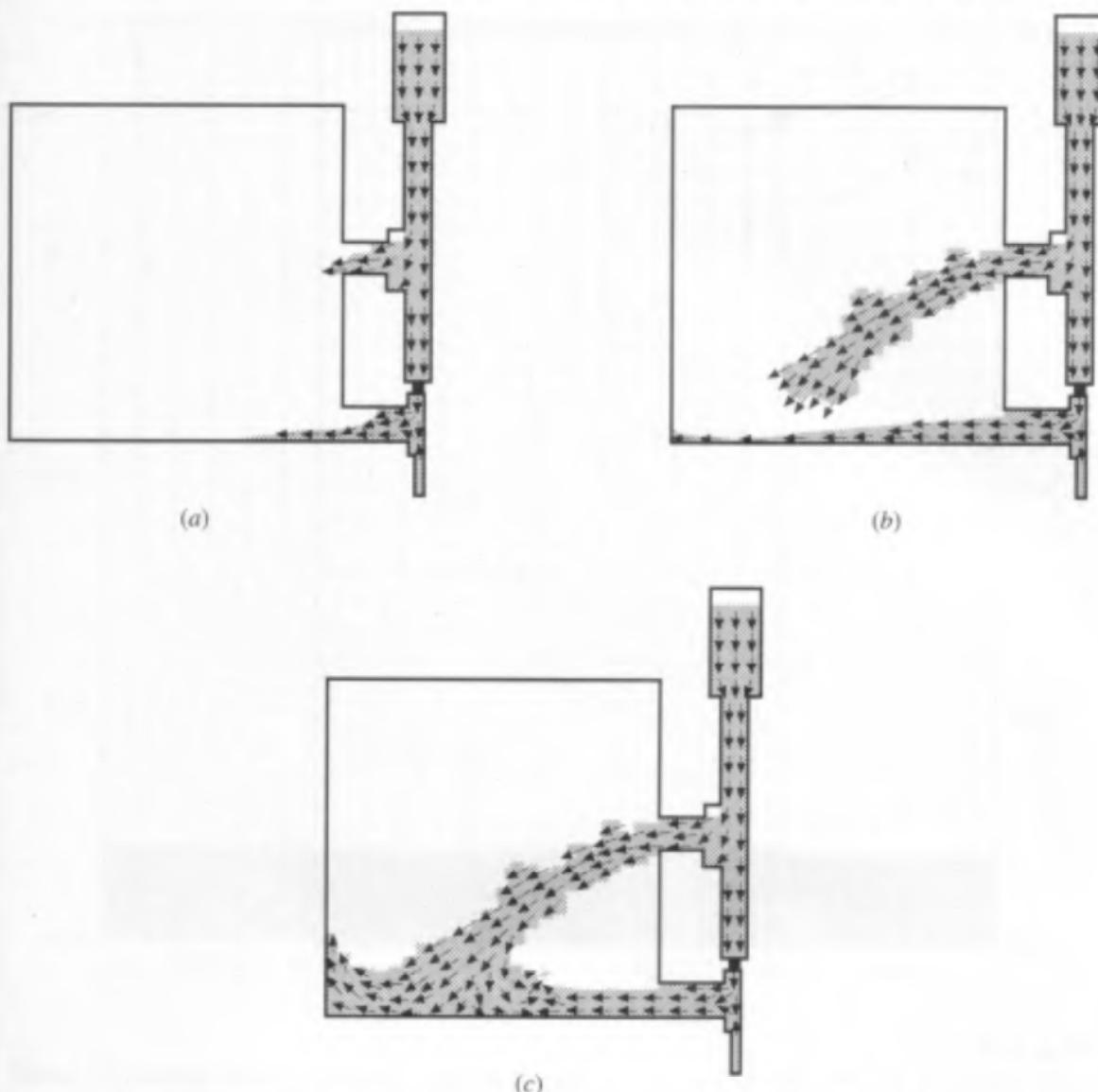
Figure 1.15 shows a mold being filled with liquid modular cast iron. The liquid iron flow field is calculated as a function of time. The liquid iron is introduced into the cavity through two side gates at the right, one at the center and the other at the bottom of the mold. Shown in Fig. 1.15 are CFD results for the velocity field calculated from a finite-volume algorithm; results are illustrated for three values of time during the filling process: an early time just after the two gates are opened (top figure), a slightly later time as the two streams surge into the cavity (center figure), and yet a later time when the two streams are impinging on each

**FIG. 1.14**

A zonal mesh which simultaneously covers the external region around a jet engine and the internal passages through the engine. (*Courtesy of the Center for Computational Fluid Simulation, Mississippi State University.*)

other (bottom figure). These calculations were made by Mampaey and Xu at the WTCM Foundry Research Center in Belgium (Ref. 61). Such CFD calculations give a more detailed understanding of the real flow behavior of the liquid metal during mold filling and contribute to the design of improved casting techniques.

A second example of CFD in manufacturing processes is that pertaining to the manufacture of ceramic composite materials. One method of production involves the chemical vapor infiltration technique wherein a gaseous material flows through a porous substrate, depositing material on the substrate fibers and eventually forming a continuous matrix for the composite. Of particular interest is the rate and manner in which the compound silicon carbide, SiC, is deposited within the space around the fibers. Recently, Steijnsiger et al. (Ref. 62) have used CFD to model SiC deposition in a chemical vapor deposition reactor. The computational mesh distribution within the reactor is shown in Fig. 1.16. The computed streamline pattern inside the reactor is shown in Fig. 1.17. Here, a gaseous mixture of  $\text{CH}_3\text{SiCl}_3$  and  $\text{H}_2$  flows into the reactor from a pipe at the bottom. The ensuing chemical reaction produces SiC, which then deposits on the walls of the reactor. The calculations shown in Fig. 1.17

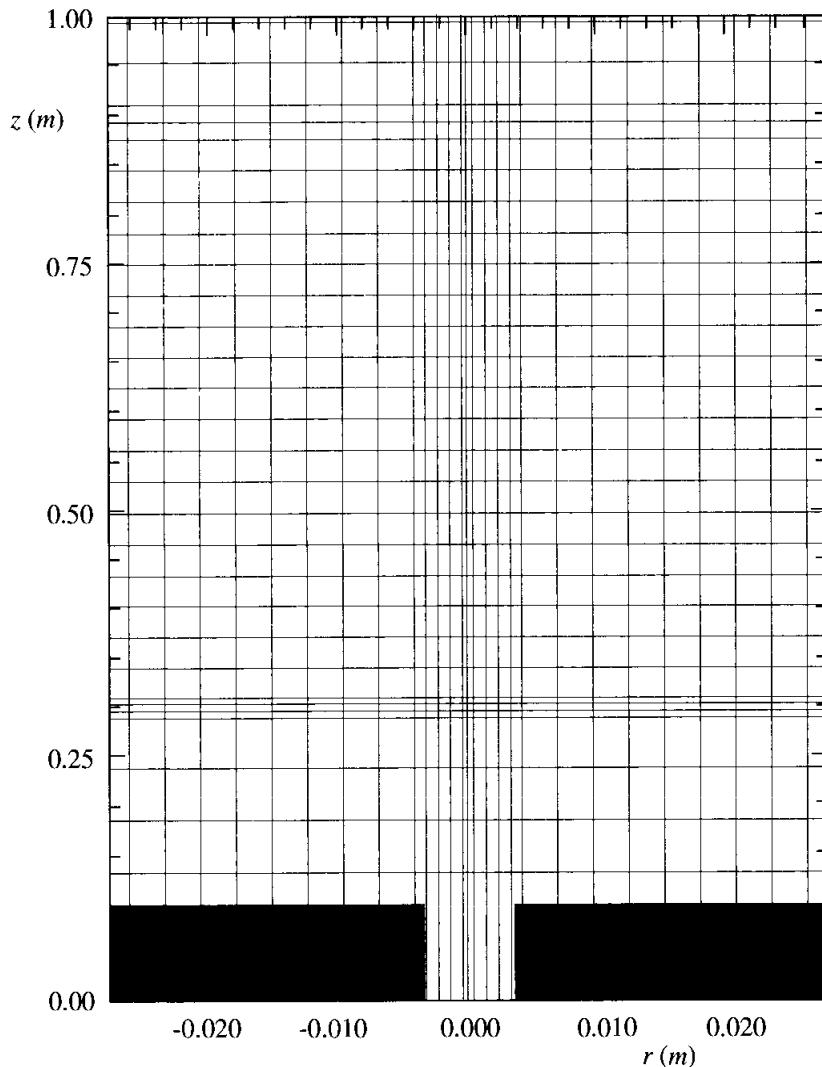
**FIG. 1.15**

Computed results at three different times for the velocity field set up by liquid iron flowing into a mold from two gates on the right side of the mold. (*After Ref. 61.*)

are from a finite-volume solution of the governing flow equations, and they represent an application of CFD as a research tool, contributing information of direct application to manufacturing.

#### 1.4.3 Civil Engineering Applications

Problems involving the rheology of rivers, lakes, estuaries, etc., are also the subject of investigations using CFD. One such example is the pumping of mud from an underwater mud capture reservoir, as sketched in Fig. 1.18. Here, a layer of water sits on top of a layer of mud, and a portion of the mud is trapped and is being sucked away at the bottom left. This is only half the figure, the other half being a mirror image, forming in total a symmetrical mud reservoir. The vertical line of symmetry

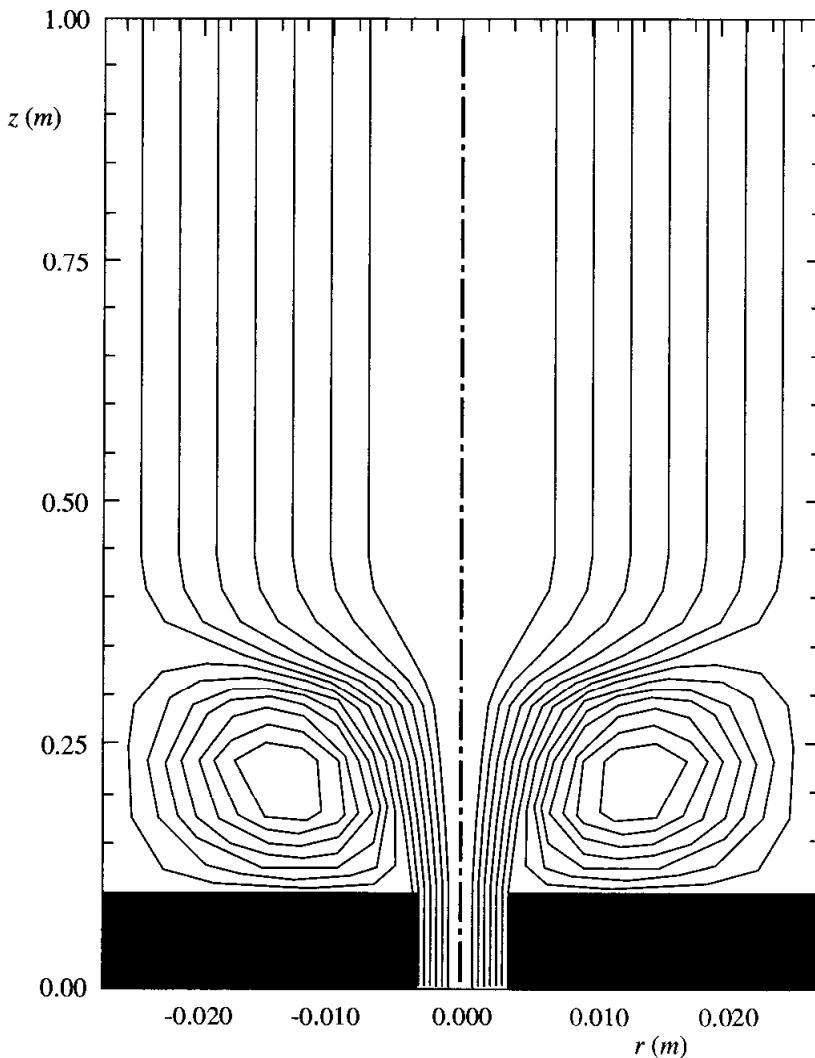


**FIG. 1.16**  
Finite-volume mesh for the calculation of the flow in a chemical vapor deposition reactor.  
(After Ref. 62.)

is the vertical line at the left of Fig. 1.18. As the mud is sucked away at the bottom left, a crater is formed in the mud layer which fills with water. The only motion of the water is caused by the filling of this crater. The computed velocity field in both the water and mud at a certain instant in time is shown in Fig. 1.19, where the magnitude of the velocity vectors are scaled against the arrow designated as 1 cm/s. These results are from the calculations of Toorman and Berlamont as given in Ref. 63. These results contribute to the design of underwater dredging operations, such as the major offshore dredging and beach reclamation project carried out at Ocean City, Maryland, in the early 1990s.

#### 1.4.4 Environmental Engineering Applications

The discipline of heating, air conditioning, and general air circulation through buildings have all come under the spell of CFD. For example, consider the propane-

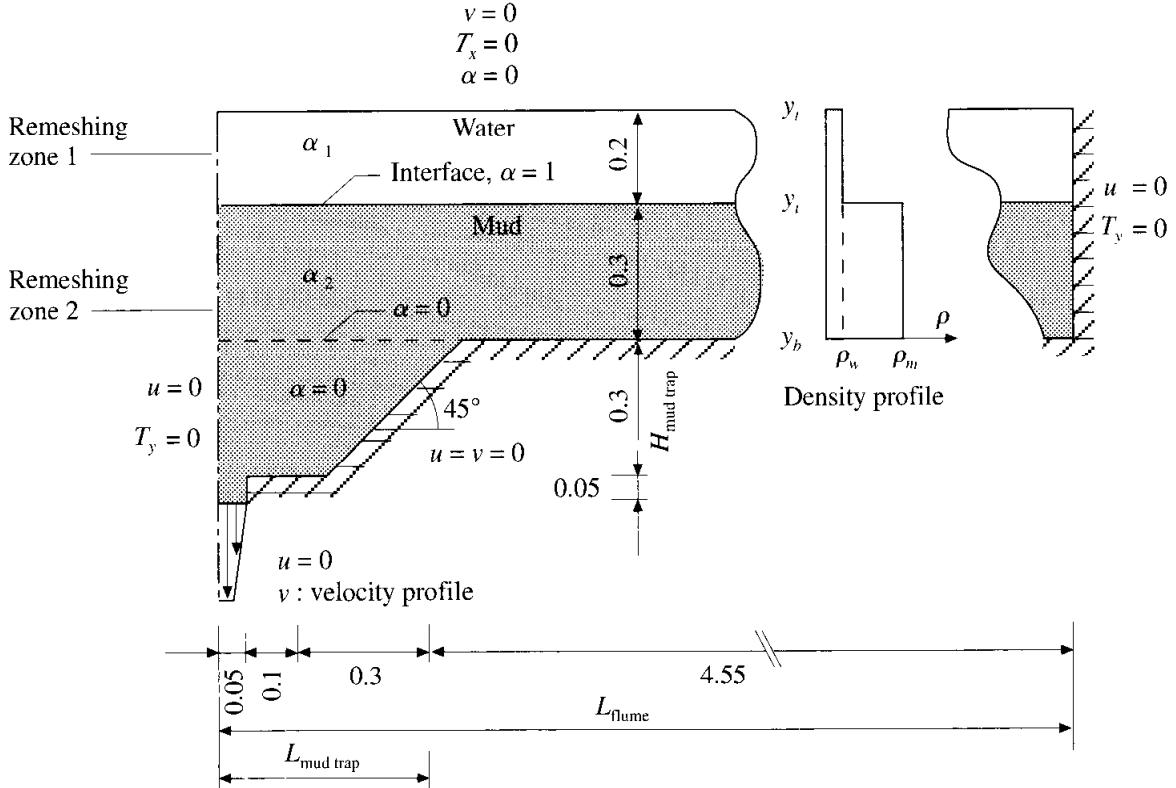
**FIG. 1.17**

Computed streamline pattern for the flow of  $\text{CH}_3\text{SiCl}_3$  and  $\text{H}_2$  into a chemical vapor deposition reactor.  
(After Ref. 62.)

burning furnace sketched in Fig. 1.20, taken from Ref. 64. The calculated velocity field through this furnace is shown in Fig. 1.21; the velocity vectors emanating from grid points in a perpendicular vertical plane through the furnace are shown. These results are from the finite-difference calculations made by Bai and Fuchs (Ref. 64). Such CFD applications provide information for the design of furnaces with increased thermal efficiency and reduced emissions of pollutants.

A calculation of the flow from an air conditioner is illustrated in Fig. 1.22 and 1.23. A schematic of a room module with the air supply forced through a supply slot in the middle of the ceiling and return exhaust ducts at both corners of the ceiling is given in Fig. 1.22. A finite-volume CFD calculation of the velocity field showing the air circulation pattern in the room is given in Fig. 1.23. These calculations were made by McGuirk and Whittle (Ref. 65).

An interesting application of CFD for the calculation of air currents throughout a building was made by Alamdari et al. (Ref. 66). Figure 1.24 shows the cross section of an office building with two symmetrical halves connected by a

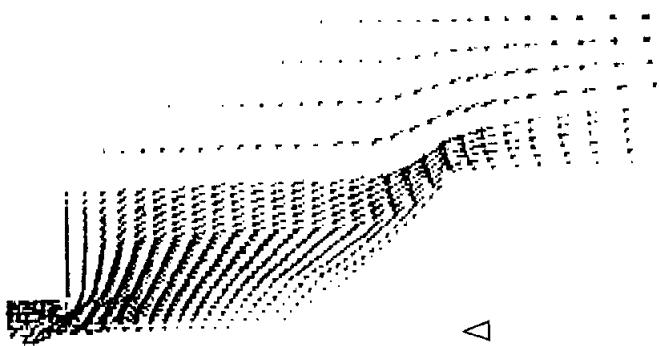
**FIG. 1.18**

Mud and water layers in a model of a mud trap, with mud being suctioned away at the bottom left. (After Ref. 63.)

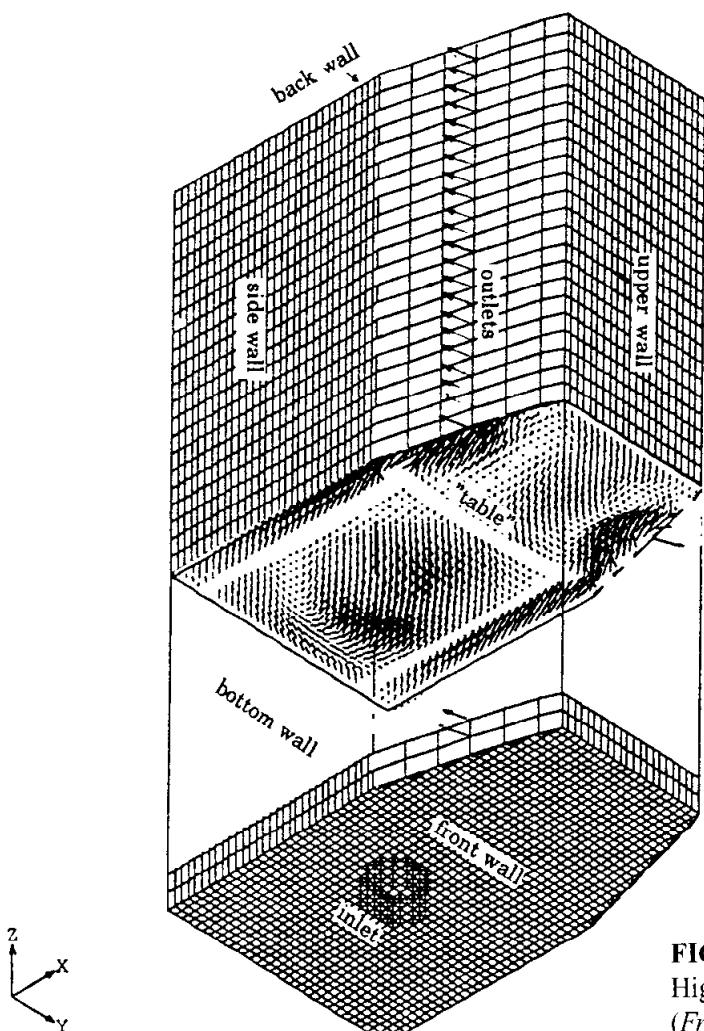
passageway. Each half has a large, glazed atrium, in keeping with a popular trend in architectural design. These atria, in connection with suitable locations for air inlet and exhausts, provide a natural ventilation system which is cost- and energy-efficient. A typical wintertime simulation of the velocity field in a cross section through the entrance hall, as calculated from a finite-volume CFD algorithm, is shown in Fig. 1.25.

#### 1.4.5 Naval Architecture Applications (Submarine Example)

Computational fluid dynamics is a major tool in solving hydrodynamic problems associated with ships, submarines, torpedos, etc. An example of a CFD application to submarines is illustrated in Fig. 1.26 and 1.27. These calculations were made by the Science Applications International Corporation and were provided to the author by Dr. Nils Salveson of SAIC. Figure 1.26 shows the multizonal grid used for the flow calculations over a generic submarine hull. (Such zonal grids are discussed in Sec. 5.9.) The three-dimensional Navier-Stokes equations for an incompressible flow are solved, including a turbulence model, for the flow over this submarine. Some results for the local streamline pattern at the stern of the submarine are given in Fig. 1.27. Flow is moving from left to right. Here we see an example of a numerical experiment, following the philosophy set forth in Sec. 1.2. The upper half of the figure shows the streamline with a propeller, and the lower half shows the

**FIG. 1.19**

Computed velocity field for the two-layer water and mud model shown in Fig. 1.18; results after 240 s of suctioning. (After Ref. 63.)

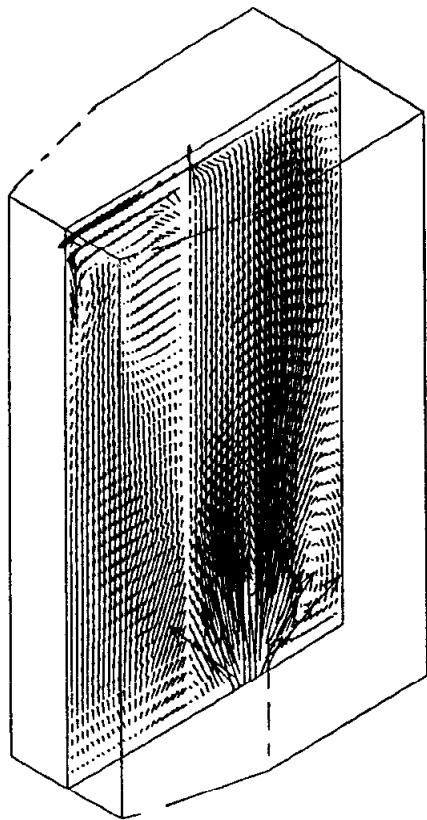
**FIG. 1.20**

High-efficiency propane furnace model.  
(From Ref. 64.)

streamlines *without* a propeller. In the latter case, flow separation is observed at the first corner, whereas with the propeller no flow separation takes place.

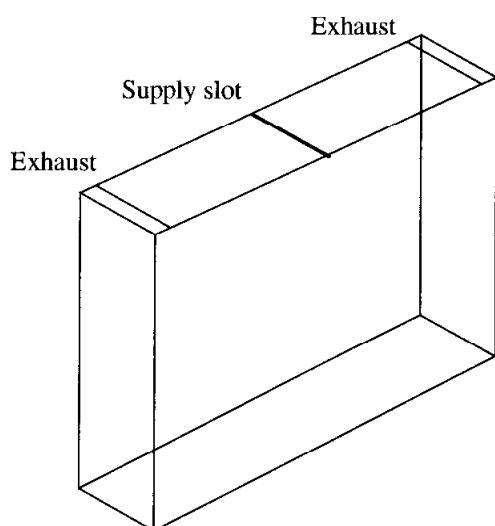
## 1.5 COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS: WHAT IS IT?

*Question:* What is CFD? To answer this question, we note that the physical aspects of any fluid flow are governed by three fundamental principles: (1) mass is conserved; (2) Newton's second law (force = mass  $\times$  acceleration); and (3) energy

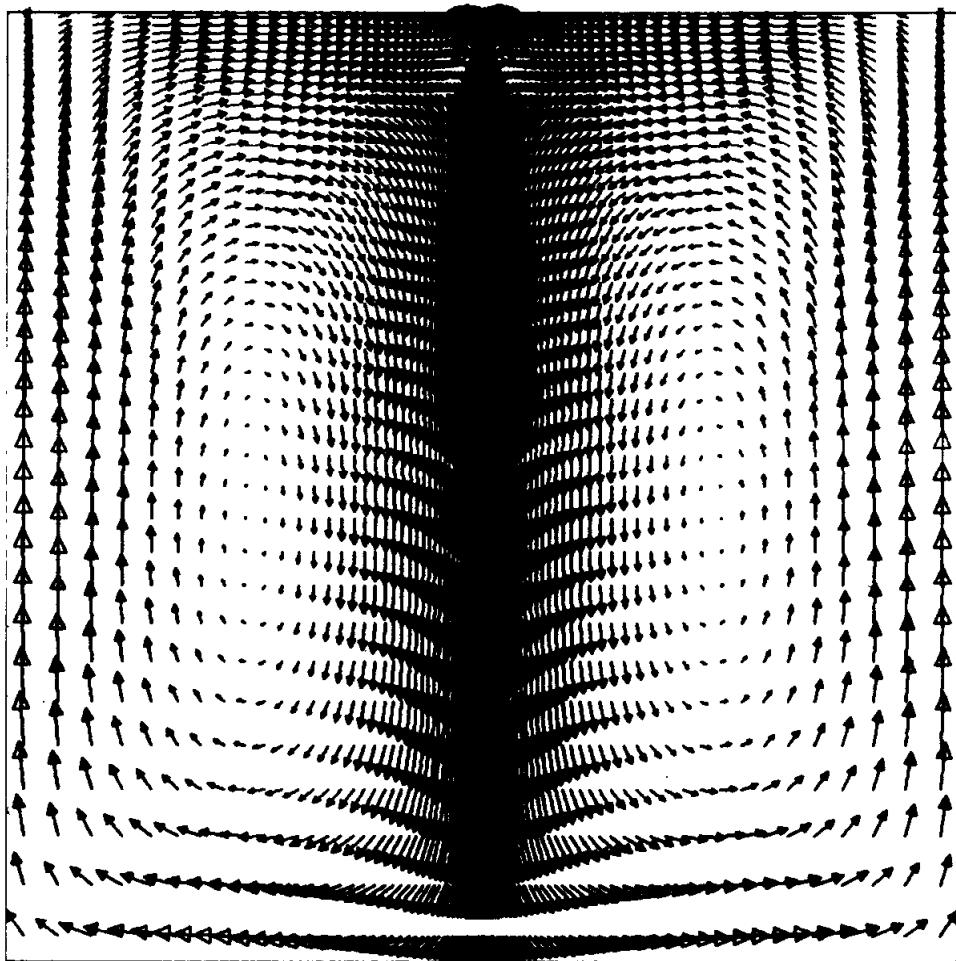
**FIG. 1.21**

Computed velocity field for the flow through the furnace in Fig. 1.20. Velocity vectors are shown emanating from points in a vertical perpendicular plane through the furnace. (*From Ref. 64.*)

is conserved. These fundamental physical principles can be expressed in terms of basic mathematical equations, which in their most general form are either integral equations or partial differential equations. These equations and their derivation are the subject of Chap. 2. Computational fluid dynamics is the art of replacing the integrals or the partial derivatives (as the case may be) in these equations with discretized algebraic forms, which in turn are solved to obtain *numbers* for the flow

**FIG. 1.22**

Schematic of a room module with air supply and exhaust ducts in the ceiling. (*After Ref. 65.*)

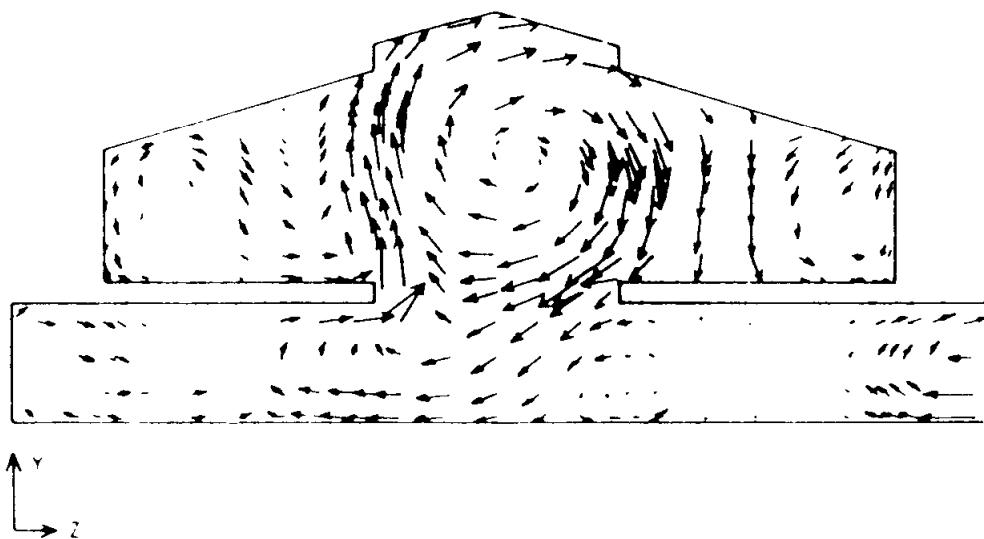
**FIG. 1.23**

Velocity vector pattern for the room sketched in Fig. 1.22. (Reprinted by permission of the Council of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers from Ref. 65. On behalf of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers, United Kingdom.)

field values at discrete points in time and/or space. The end product of CFD is indeed a collection of numbers, in contrast to a closed-form analytical solution. However, in the long run, the objective of most engineering analyses, closed form or otherwise, is a quantitative description of the problem, i.e., *numbers*. (It would be appropriate at this state to review the quote by Maxwell given at the start of this chapter.)

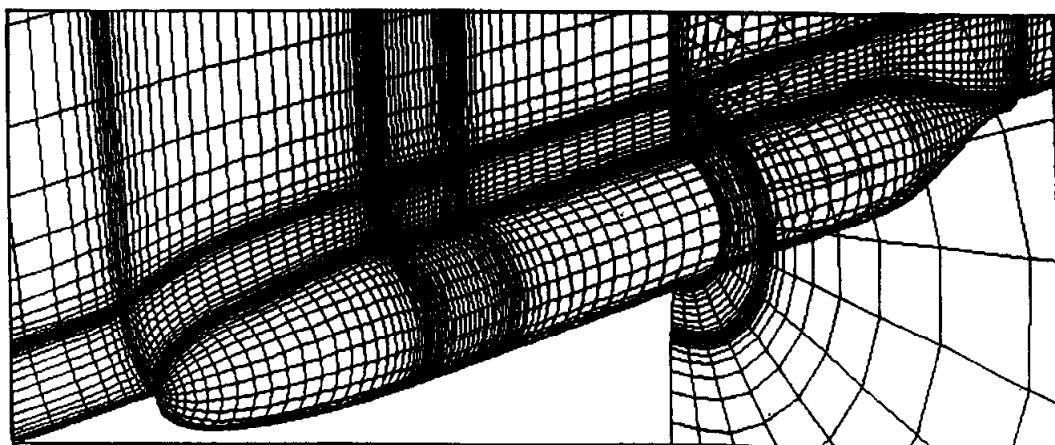
**FIG. 1.24**

Sketch of an office building. (Reprinted by permission of the Council of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers from Ref. 66. On behalf of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers, United Kingdom.)



**FIG. 1.25**

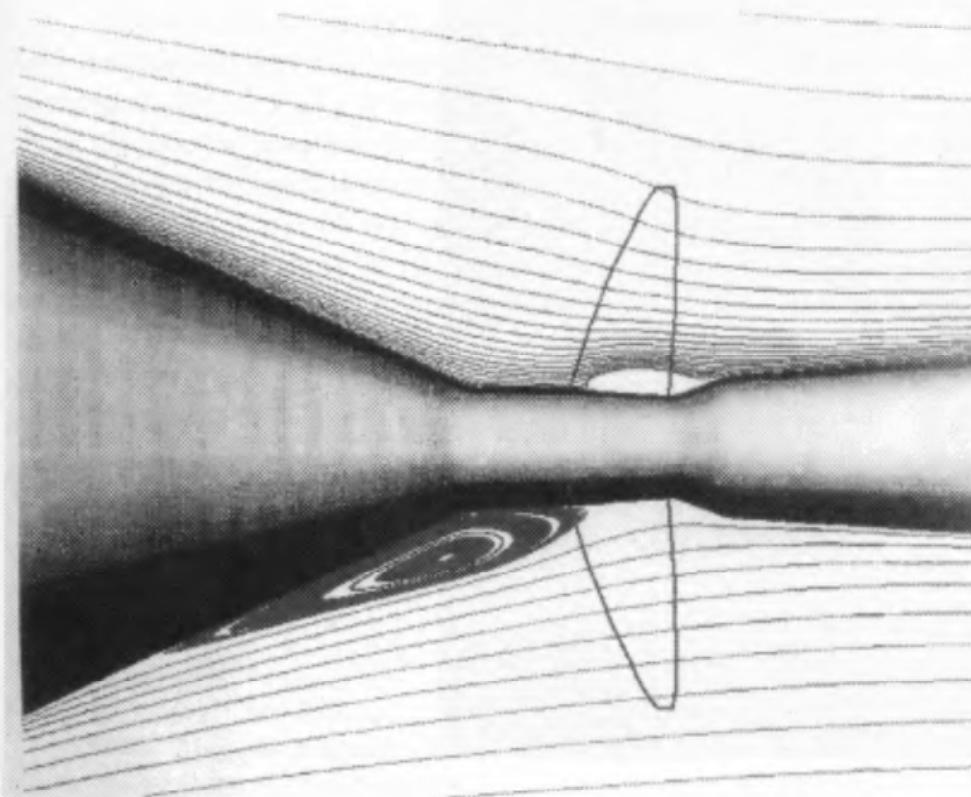
A simulation of the wintertime airflow velocity vector field in the office building sketched in Fig. 1.24. (Reprinted by permission of the Council of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers from Ref. 66. On behalf of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers, United Kingdom.)



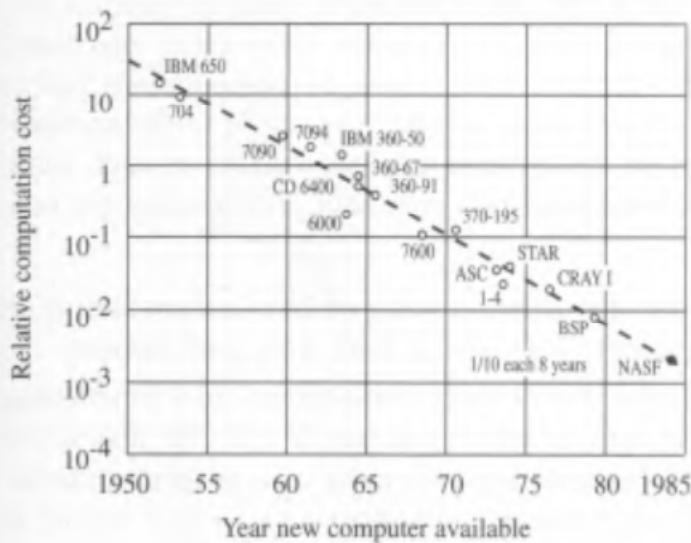
**FIG. 1.26**

Multizone grid for the calculation of water flow over a generic submarine hull. (Courtesy of the Science Applications International Corporation (SAIC) and Dr. Nils Salvesen.)

Of course, the instrument which has allowed the practical growth of CFD is the high-speed digital computer. CFD solutions generally require the repetitive manipulation of many thousands, even millions, of numbers, a task that is humanly impossible without the aid of a computer. Therefore, advances in CFD, and its applications to problems of more and more detail and sophistication, are intimately related to advances in computer hardware, particularly in regard to storage and execution speed. This is why the strongest force driving the development of new supercomputers is coming from the CFD community. Indeed, the advancement in large mainframe computers has been phenomenal over the past three decades. This is nicely illustrated by the variation of relative computation cost (for a given calculation) with years, as plotted in Fig. 1.28, taken from the definitive survey by

**FIG. 1.27**

Streamline patterns in the stern region of a submarine. The upper half of the figure illustrates the streamline pattern with a propeller; the lower half illustrates the streamline pattern without a propeller. (Courtesy of SAIC and Dr. Nils Salvesen.)

**FIG. 1.28**

Variation of relative cost of a given computation with time, reflecting the improvements in computer hardware over the years. (After Ref. 11.)

Chapman (Ref. 11). The data points on this graph correspond to specific computers, starting with the venerable IBM 650 in 1953, continuing through the development of the pioneering supercomputer, the CRAY I, in 1976, and extrapolating to the National Aerodynamic Simulator, a facility which was installed at the NASA Ames Research Laboratory in the late 1980s. Today, even more spectacular advances are

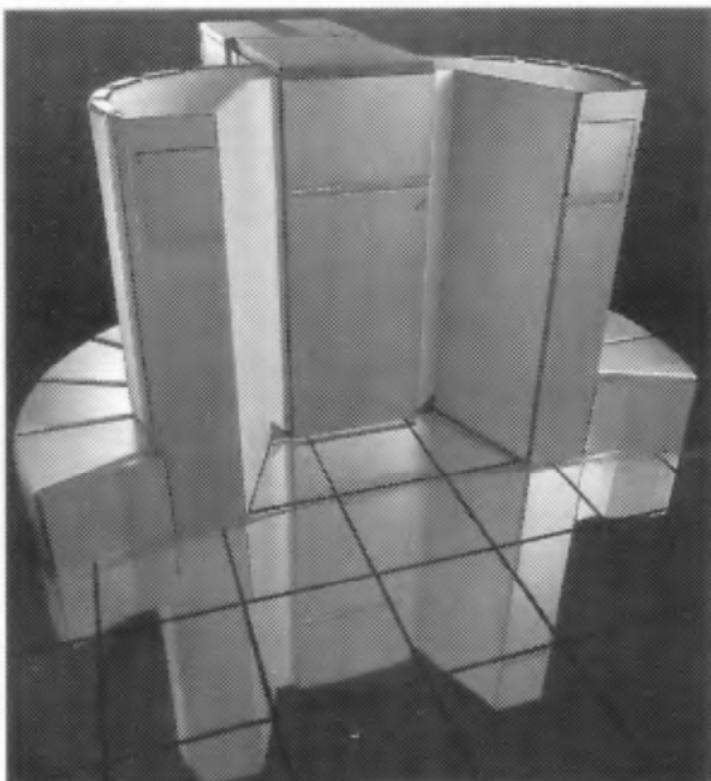


FIG. 1.29

An example of a modern supercomputer, the CRAY Y-MP. (Cray Research, Inc.)

being made in supercomputer architecture. An example of a supercomputer is the CRAY Y-MP, shown in Fig. 1.29; this machine has 32 million words of directly addressable central memory with an additional 512 million words available in a companion SSD (solid state device). The execution speed is close to one gigaflop ( $10^9$  floating-point operations per second); this should be compared to the one-megaflop computers of the 1970s. Moreover, new concepts in computer architecture are emerging. The earlier high-speed digital computers were serial machines, capable of one computational operation at a time; hence, all computations had to "get in line" to be processed. The finite speed of electrons, close to the speed of light, poses an inherent limitation on the ultimate execution speed of such serial computers. To detour around this limitation, two computer architectures are now being used:

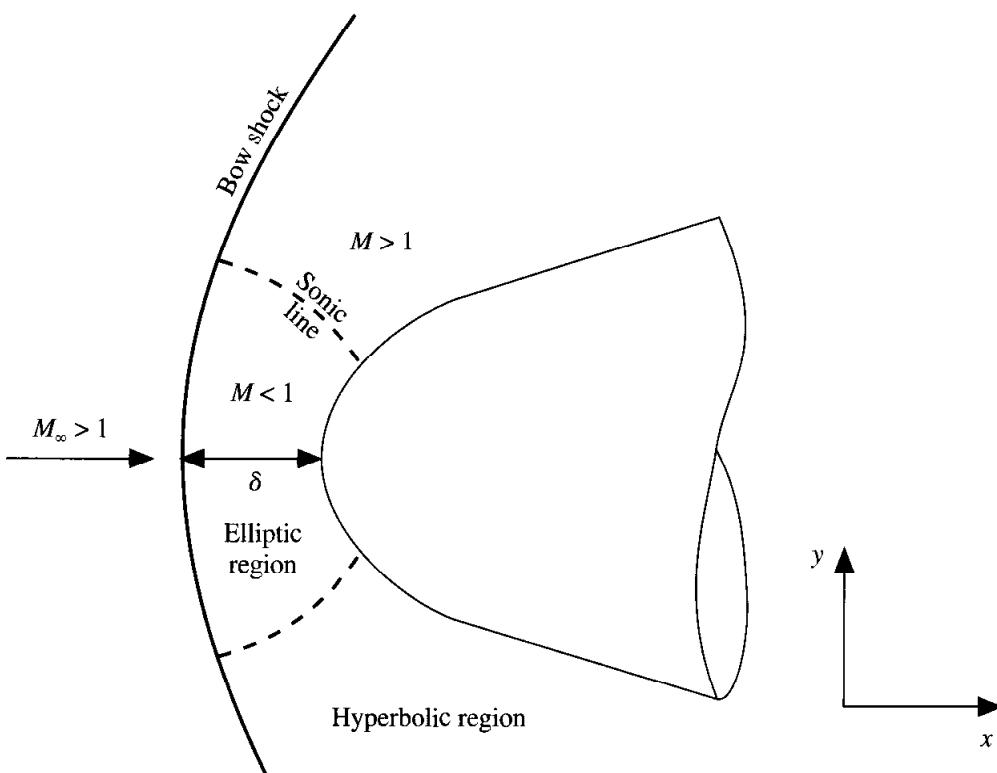
- 1.** *Vector processors*, a configuration that allows a string of *identical* operations on an array of numbers *simultaneously*, thus saving both time and memory
- 2.** *Parallel processors*, a configuration that is really two or more fully functioning central processing units (CPUs), each of which can handle different instruction and data streams and which can execute separate parts of a program simultaneously, working independently or in concert with other CPUs which belong to the same machine

Vector processors are in widespread use today, and parallel processors are rapidly coming on the scene. For example, the new Connection Machines, which are massively parallel processors, are now in use by many agencies. Should you choose to solve any problems in your professional future using CFD, and these problems are of any sophistication and complexity, the probability is high that you will be using either a vector computer or a parallel processor.

Why is CFD so important in the modern study and solution of problems in fluid mechanics, and why should you be motivated to learn something about CFD? In essence, Sec. 1.1 to 1.4 were devoted to some answers to this question, but we explicitly ask the question here in order to give another example of the revolution that CFD has wrought in modern fluid dynamics—an example that will serve as a focal point for some of our discussion in subsequent chapters.

Specifically, consider the flow field over a blunt-nosed body moving at supersonic or hypersonic speeds, as sketched in Fig. 1.30. The interest in such bodies is driven by the fact that aerodynamic heating to the nose is considerably reduced for blunt bodies compared to sharp-nosed bodies; this is why the Mercury and Apollo space capsules were so blunt and one of the reasons why the space shuttle has a blunt nose and wings with blunt leading edges. As shown in Fig. 1.30, there is a strong, curved bow shock wave which sits in front of the blunt nose, detached from the nose by the distance  $\delta$ , called the *shock detachment distance*. The calculation of this flow field, including the shape and location of the shock wave, was one of the most perplexing aerodynamic problems of the 1950s and 1960s. Millions of research dollars were spent to solve this supersonic blunt body problem—to no avail.

What was causing the difficulty? Why was the flow field over a blunt body moving at supersonic and hypersonic speeds so hard to calculate? The answer rests basically in the sketch shown in Fig. 1.30. The region of flow behind the nearly normal portion of the shock wave, in the vicinity of the centerline, is locally



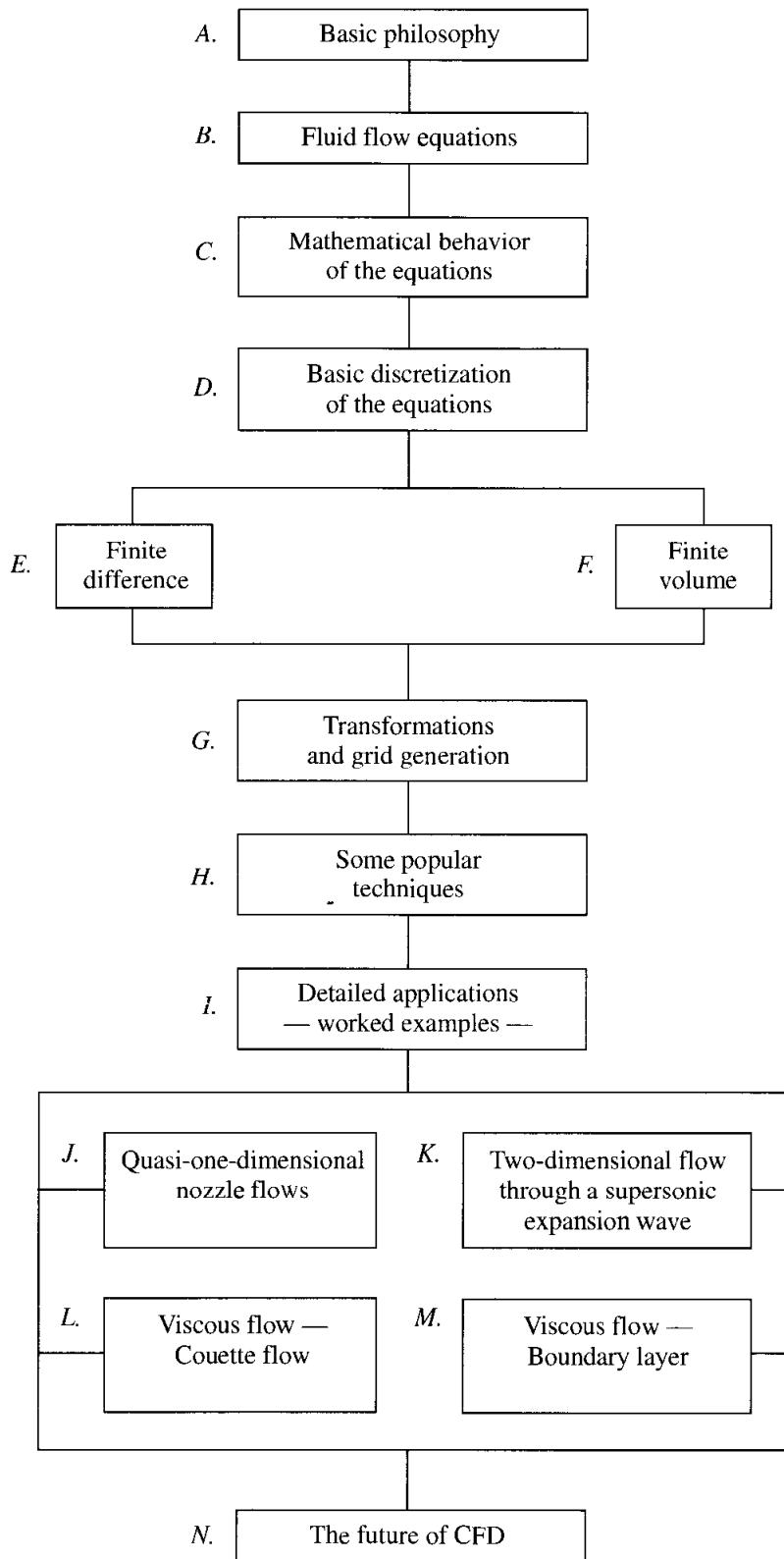
**FIG. 1.30**

Schematic of the flowfield over a supersonic blunt-nosed body.

subsonic, whereas further downstream, behind the weaker, more oblique part of the bow shock, the flow is locally supersonic. The dividing line between the subsonic and supersonic regions is called the *sonic line*, as sketched in Fig. 1.30. If the flow is assumed to be inviscid, i.e., neglecting the dissipative transport processes of viscosity and thermal conduction, the governing flow equations are the Euler equations (to be derived in Chap. 2). Although these equations are the same no matter whether the flow is locally subsonic or supersonic, their *mathematical behavior* is different in the two regions. In the steady subsonic region, the Euler equations exhibit a behavior that is associated with *elliptic* partial differential equations, whereas in the steady supersonic region, the mathematical behavior of the Euler equations is totally different, namely, that of *hyperbolic* partial differential equations. Such mathematical behavior, the definition of elliptic and hyperbolic equations, and the associated consequences to flow field analysis are discussed in Chap. 3. The change in the mathematical behavior of the governing equations from elliptic in the subsonic region to hyperbolic in the supersonic region made a consistent mathematical analysis which included both regions virtually impossible. Numerical techniques that worked for the subsonic region fell apart in the supersonic region, and techniques for the supersonic region broke down in the subsonic flow. Techniques were developed for just the subsonic portion, and other techniques (such as the standard method of characteristics) were developed for the supersonic region. Unfortunately, the proper patching of these different techniques through the transonic region around the sonic line was extremely difficult. Hence, as late as the mid-1960s, no uniformly valid aerodynamic technique existed to treat the entire flow field over a supersonic blunt body.

However, in 1966, a breakthrough occurred in the blunt body problem. Using the developing power of CFD at that time, and employing the concept of a *time-dependent* approach to the steady state, Moretti and Abbott (Ref. 12) at the Polytechnic Institute of Brooklyn (now the Polytechnic University) obtained a numerical, finite-difference solution to the supersonic blunt body problem which constituted the first practical, straightforward, engineering solution for this flow. After 1966, the blunt body problem was no longer a real “problem.” Industry and government laboratories quickly adopted this computational technique for their blunt body analyses. Perhaps the most striking aspect of this comparison is that the supersonic blunt body problem, which was one of the most serious, most difficult, and most researched theoretical aerodynamic problems of the 1950s and 1960s, is today assigned as a *homework problem* in a CFD graduate course at the University of Maryland.

Therein lies an example of the power of CFD combined with an algorithm which properly takes into account the mathematical behavior of the governing flow equations. Here is an answer to the questions asked earlier, namely, why is CFD so important in the modern study of fluid dynamics, and why should you be motivated to learn something about CFD? We have just seen an example where CFD and proper algorithm development revolutionized the treatment of a given flow problem, turning it from a virtual unsolvable problem into a standard, everyday analysis in the nature of an extended homework problem. It is this power of CFD which is a compelling reason for you to study the subject.



**FIG. 1.31**  
Road map for the book.

## 1.6 THE PURPOSE OF THIS BOOK

The previous discussions have been intended to put you in a proper frame of mind regarding the overall nature of CFD and to provide a certain incentive to forge ahead to the remaining chapters. As you read on, you will find sandwiched between the covers of this book a very basic, elementary, and tutorial presentation of CFD, emphasizing the fundamentals, surveying a number of solution techniques, and treating various applications ranging from low-speed incompressible flow to high-speed compressible flow. This book is truly an *introduction* to CFD; it is aimed at the completely uninitiated reader, a reader who has little or no experience in CFD. There are presently several very good texts on CFD at the graduate level, such as the standard text by Anderson, Tannehill, and Pletcher (Ref. 13) and the more recent books by Fletcher (Refs. 14 and 15) and by Hirsch (Refs. 16 and 17). A concise and readable presentation is given by Hoffman (Ref. 18). The present book is aimed at a level one notch below that of Refs. 13 to 17. Here we assume on the part of the reader a physical understanding of general fluid dynamics equivalent to most junior-level courses in mechanical and aerospace engineering and a mathematical understanding equivalent to basic calculus and elementary differential equations. This is intended to be a “first book” in the development of your thought processes in CFD. Its purpose is fourfold; it is to provide you with:

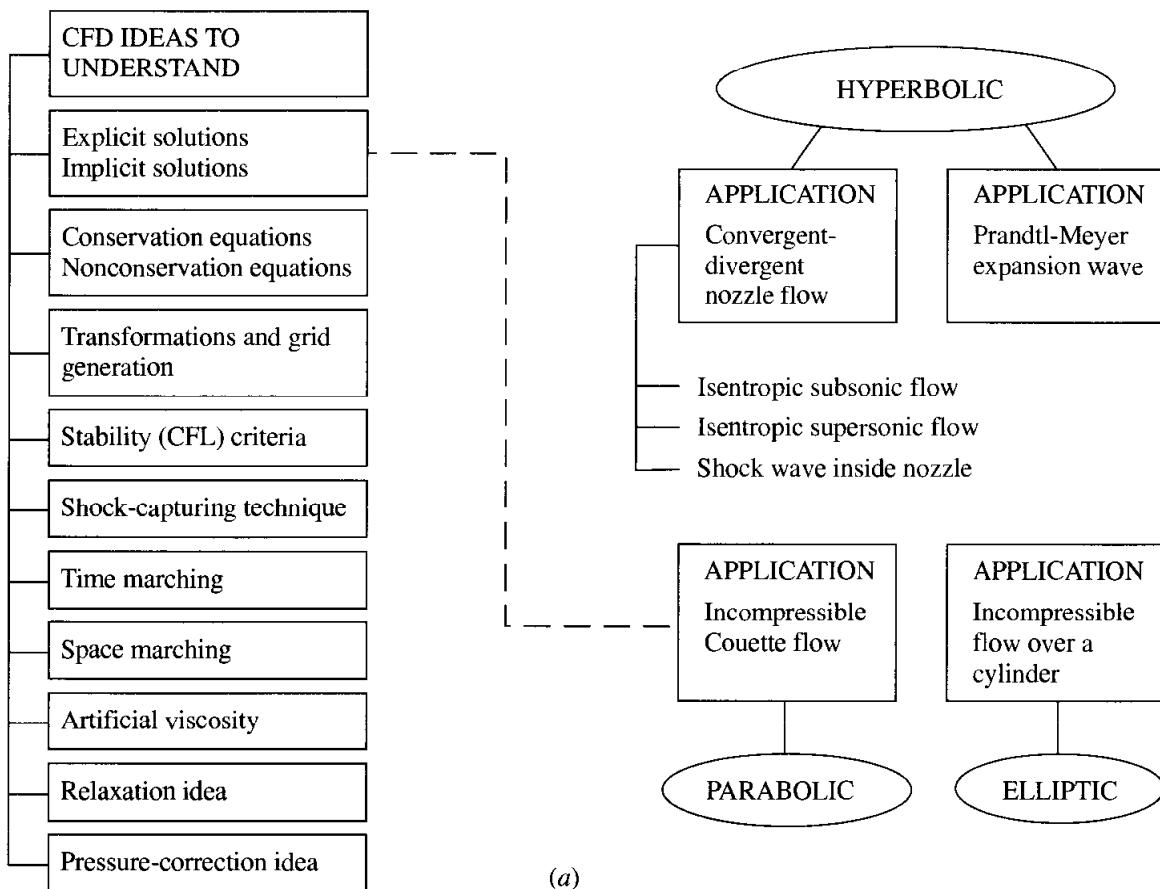
1. Some insight into the power and philosophy of CFD
2. An understanding of the governing equations of fluid dynamics in forms particularly suitable to CFD
3. A familiarity with some solution techniques
4. A working vocabulary in the discipline.

By the time you finish this book, this author hopes that you will be well-prepared to launch into more advanced treatises (such as Refs. 13–17), to begin reading the literature in CFD, to follow more sophisticated state-of-the-art presentations, and to begin the direct application of CFD to your special areas of concern. If one or more of the above is what you want, then you and the author share a common purpose—simply move on to Chap. 2 and keep reading.

A road map for the material covered in this book is given in Fig. 1.31. The purpose of this road map is to help chart the course for our thinking and to see how the material flows in some logical fashion. It is the author’s experience that when a student is learning a new subject, there is a tendency to get lost in the details and to lose sight of the big picture. Figure 1.31 is the big picture for our discussion on CFD; we will frequently be referring to this road map in subsequent chapters simply to touch base and to remind ourselves where the details fit into the overall scheme of CFD. If at any stage you feel somewhat lost in regard to what we are doing, please remember to refer to this central road map in Fig. 1.31. In addition, localized road maps will be included in most chapters to provide guidance for the flow of ideas in each chapter, in the same spirit as Fig. 1.31 provides guidance for the complete book. In particular, referring to Fig. 1.31, note that blocks *A* through *C* represent some basic thoughts and equations which are common to all of CFD; indeed, the

material of the present chapter is represented by block *A*. After these basic aspects are understood and mastered, we will discuss the standard ways of discretizing the fundamental equations to make them amenable to numerical solution (blocks *D–F*) as well as the important aspects of grid transformation (block *G*). After describing some popular techniques for carrying out numerical solutions of the equations (block *H*), we will cover a number of specific applications in some detail in order to clearly illustrate the techniques (blocks *I–M*). Finally, we will discuss the current state of the art as well as the future of CFD (block *N*). Let us now proceed to work our way through this road map, moving on to block *B*, which is the subject of the next chapter.

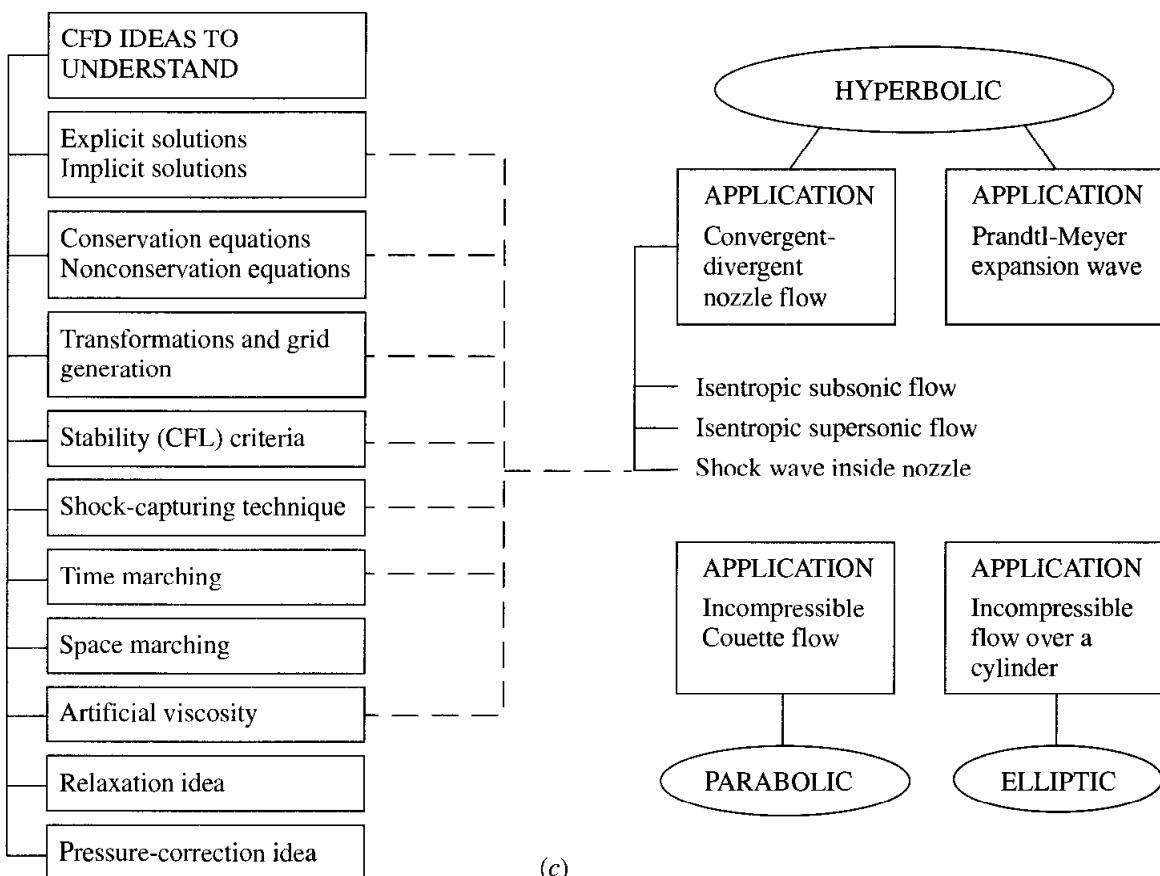
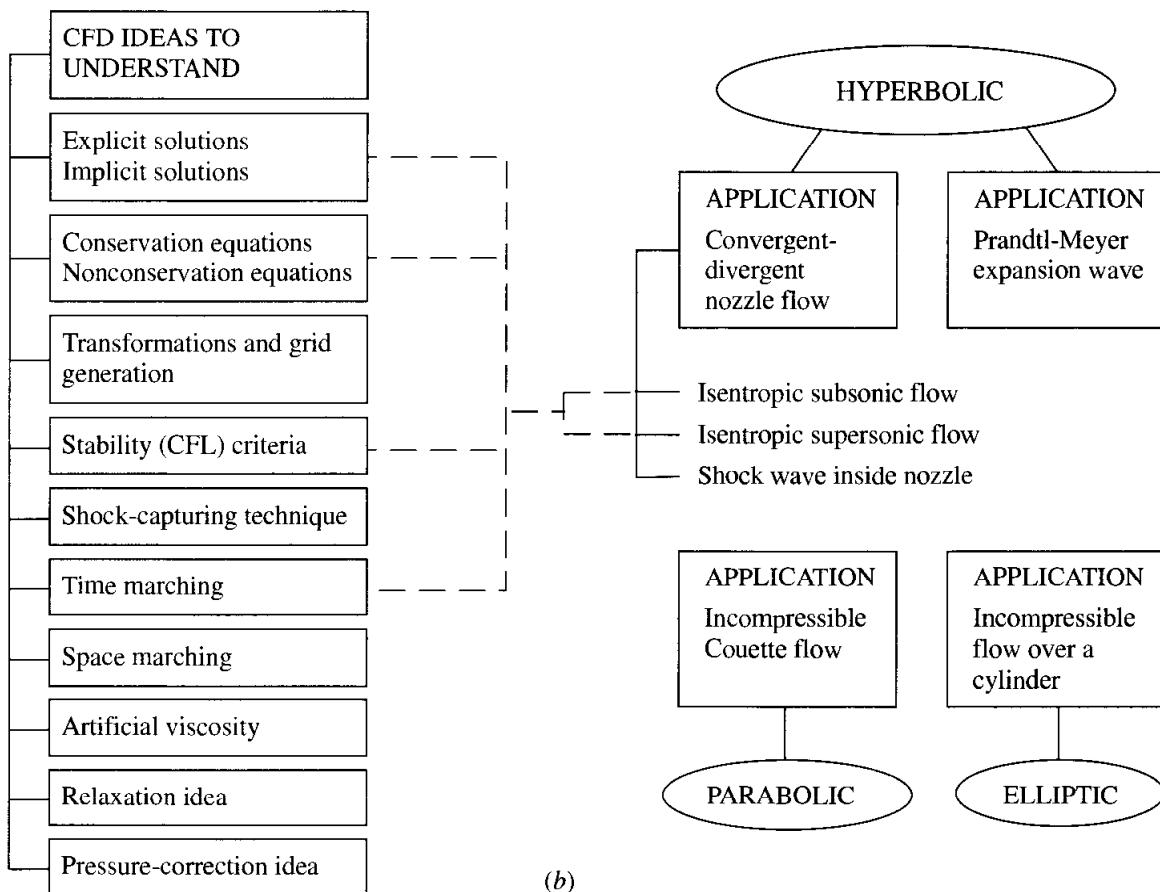
Finally, Fig. 1.32*a* to *f* contains diagrams that illustrate the flow of various concepts from parts I and II into the applications discussed in Part III. At this stage, simply note that these figures exist; we will refer to them at appropriate times in our discussions. They are located here simply for convenience and to indicate to you that there *is* a logical flow of the basic ideas from Parts I and II into the applications in Part III.

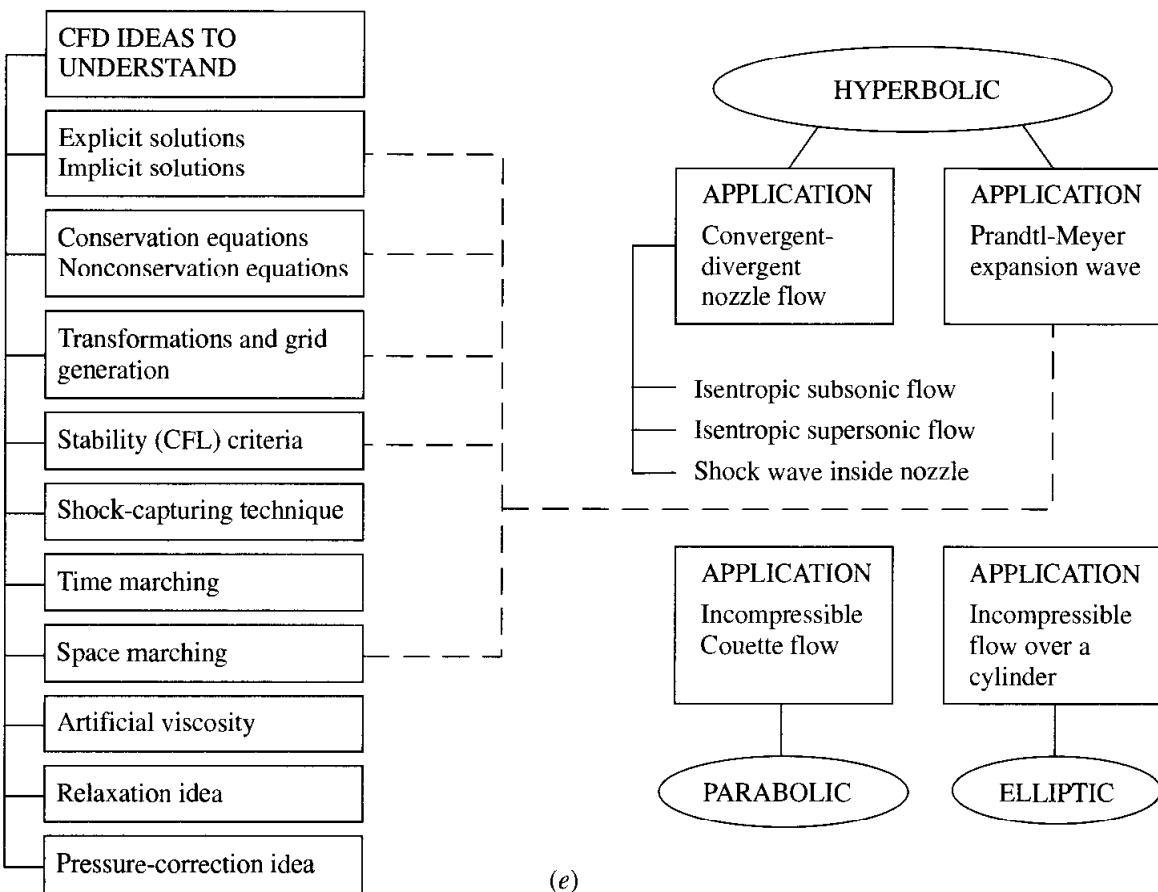
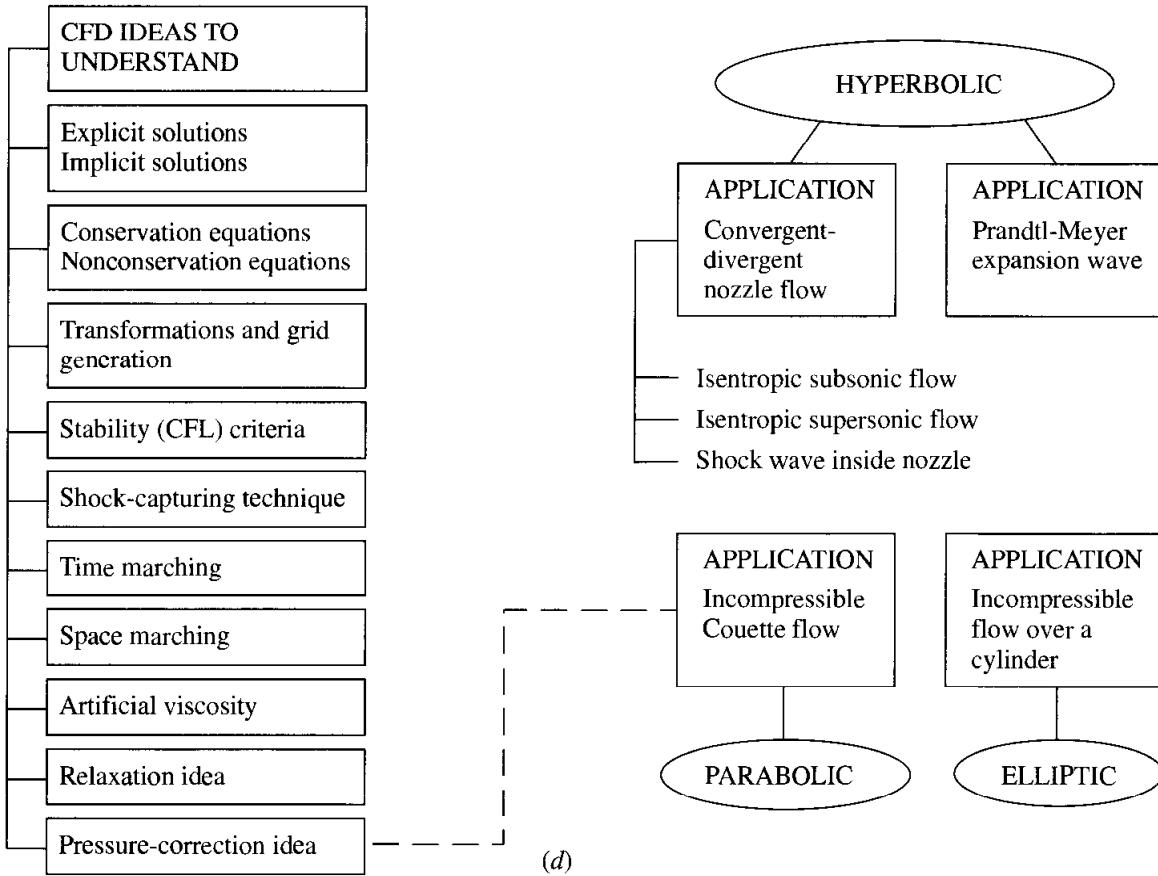


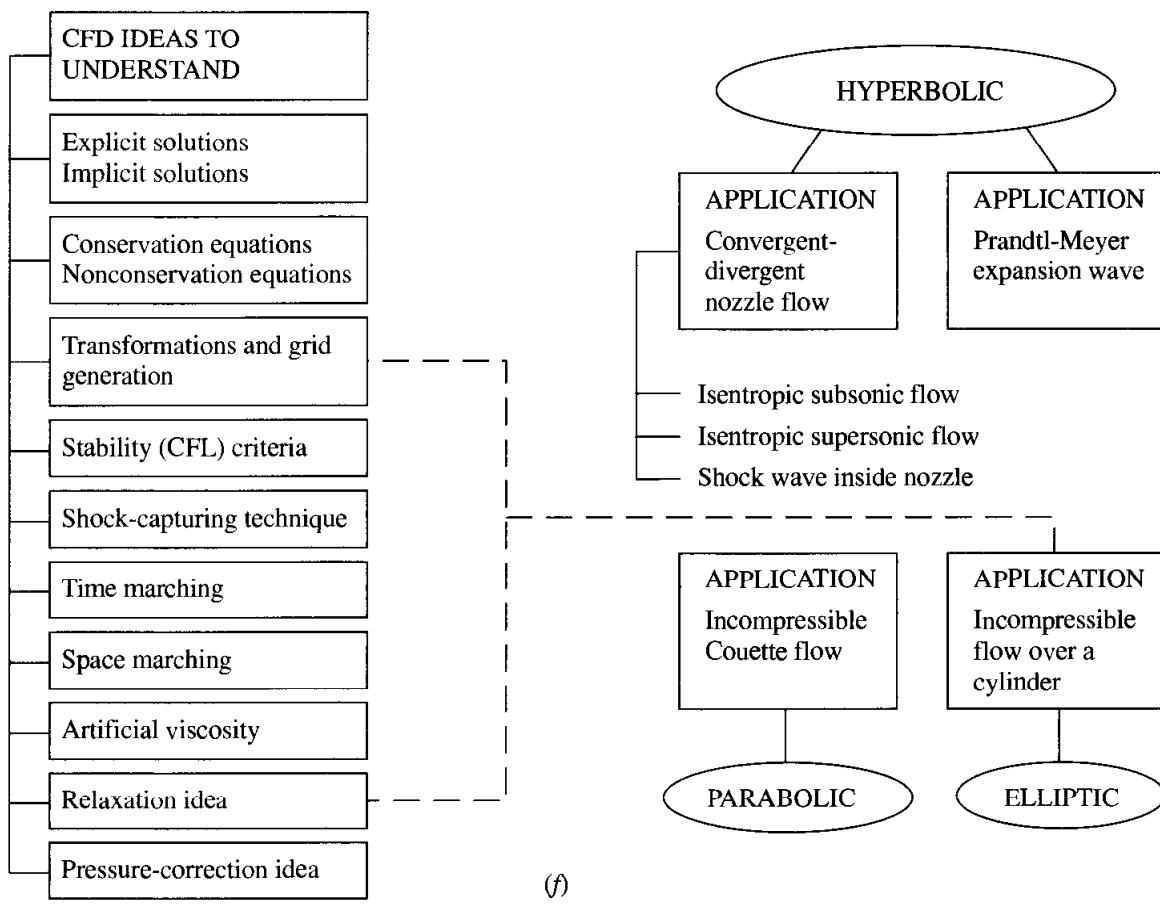
**FIG. 1.32**

(*a*) Flow of ideas to the incompressible Couette flow application (implicit solution). (*b*) Flow of ideas to the nozzle flow application (isentropic flow). (*c*) Flow of ideas to the nozzle flow application (with shock wave). (*d*) Flow of ideas to the Couette flow application (pressure correction solution). (*e*) Flow of ideas to the Prandtl-Meyer expansion wave application. (*f*) Flow of ideas to the incompressible inviscid cylinder flow application (relaxation solution).

### 34 PHILOSOPHY OF COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS







---

# CHAPTER

# 2

---

## THE GOVERNING EQUATIONS OF FLUID DYNAMICS: THEIR DERIVATION, A DISCUSSION OF THEIR PHYSICAL MEANING, AND A PRESENTATION OF FORMS PARTICULARLY SUITABLE TO CFD

*A fluid is any body whose parts yield to any force impressed on it, and by yielding, are easily moved among themselves.*

Isaac Newton, from Section V, Book II of the *Principia*, 1687

*We are to admit no more causes of natural*

*things than such as are both true and sufficient  
to explain their appearances . . . To this  
purpose the philosophers say that Nature does  
nothing in vain, and more is in vain when less  
will serve; for Nature is pleased with  
simplicity, and affects not the pomp of  
superfluous causes."*

Isaac Newton, from Rule I, Book II of the  
*Principia*, 1687

## 2.1 INTRODUCTION

All of CFD, in one form or another, is based on the fundamental governing equations of fluid dynamics—the continuity, momentum, and energy equations. *These equations speak physics.* They are the mathematical statements of three fundamental physical principles upon which all of fluid dynamics is based:

1. Mass is conserved.
2. Newton's second law,  $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{ma}$ .
3. Energy is conserved.

The purpose of this chapter is to derive and discuss these equations.

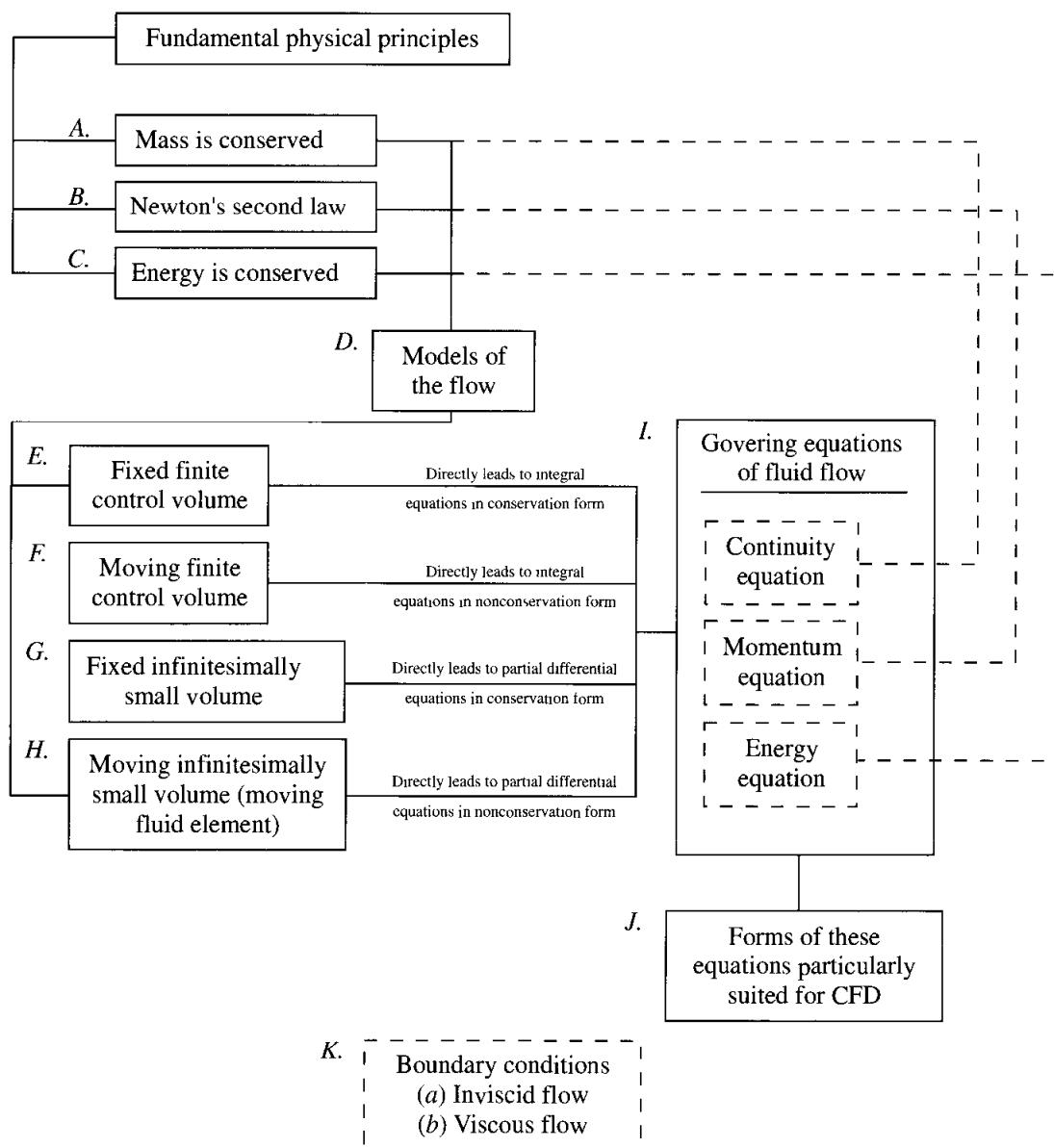
The reason for taking the time and space to derive the governing equations of fluid dynamics in this book is threefold:

1. Because all of CFD is based on these equations, it is important for each student to feel very comfortable with these equations before continuing further with his or her studies, and certainly before embarking on any application of CFD to a particular problem.
2. This author assumes that the readers of this book come from varied background and experience. Some of you may not be totally familiar with these equations, whereas others may use them every day. It is hoped that this chapter will be some enlightenment for the former and be an interesting review for the latter.
3. The governing equations can be obtained in various different forms. For most aerodynamic theory, the particular form of the equations makes little difference. However, for a given algorithm in CFD, the use of the equations in one form may lead to success, whereas the use of an alternate form may result in oscillations (wiggles) in the numerical results, incorrect results, or even instability. Therefore, in the world of CFD, the various forms of the equations are of vital interest. In turn, it is important to *derive* these equations in order to point out their differences and similarities, and to reflect on possible implications in their application to CFD.

The reader is warned in advance that this chapter may appear to be “wall-to-wall” equations. However, do not be misled. This chapter is one of the most

important in the book. It is driven by the question: If you do not physically understand the meaning and significance of each of these equations—indeed, of each *term* in these equations—then how can you even hope to properly interpret the CFD results obtained by numerically solving these equations? The purpose of this chapter is to squarely address this question. Here, we hope to present the development of these equations and to discuss their significance in such detail that you will begin to feel very comfortable with all forms of all the governing equations of fluid flow. Experience has shown that beginning students find these equations sometimes complex and mystifying. This chapter is designed to take the mystery out of these equations for the reader and to replace it with solid understanding.

The road map for this chapter is given in Fig. 2.1. Notice the flow of ideas as portrayed in this map. All of fluid dynamics is based on the three fundamental



**FIG. 2.1**  
Road map for Chapter 2.

physical principles itemized at the top left of Fig. 2.1. These physical principles are applied to a model of the flow; in turn, this application results in equations which are mathematical statements of the particular physical principles involved, namely, the continuity, momentum, and energy equations. Each different model of the flow (bottom left in Fig. 2.1) directly produces a different mathematical statement of the governing equations, some in conservation form and others in nonconservation form. (The distinction between these two different forms of the governing equations will be made clear by the end of this chapter.) After the continuity, momentum and energy equations are obtained (the large box at the lower right side of Fig. 2.1), forms particularly suited for use in formulating CFD solutions will be delineated (small box at lower right side of Fig. 2.1). Finally, the physical boundary conditions and their appropriate mathematical statements will be developed. The governing equations must be solved subject to these boundary conditions. The *physical* aspects of the boundary conditions are fundamentally independent of the forms of the governing equations, and hence the box representing the boundary conditions stands by itself at the bottom of Fig. 2.1, unconnected to any of the other boxes in the road map. (However, the appropriate *numerical* form of the physical boundary conditions is dependent on the particular mathematical form of the governing equations as well as the particular numerical algorithm used to solve these equations.) Such matters will be discussed as they naturally arise throughout this book. The road map given in Fig. 2.1 will be helpful in guiding our flow of ideas in this chapter. Also, when you finish this chapter, it would be useful to return to Fig. 2.1 to help consolidate your thoughts before proceeding to the next chapter.

## 2.2 MODELS OF THE FLOW

In obtaining the basic equations of fluid motion, the following philosophy is always followed:

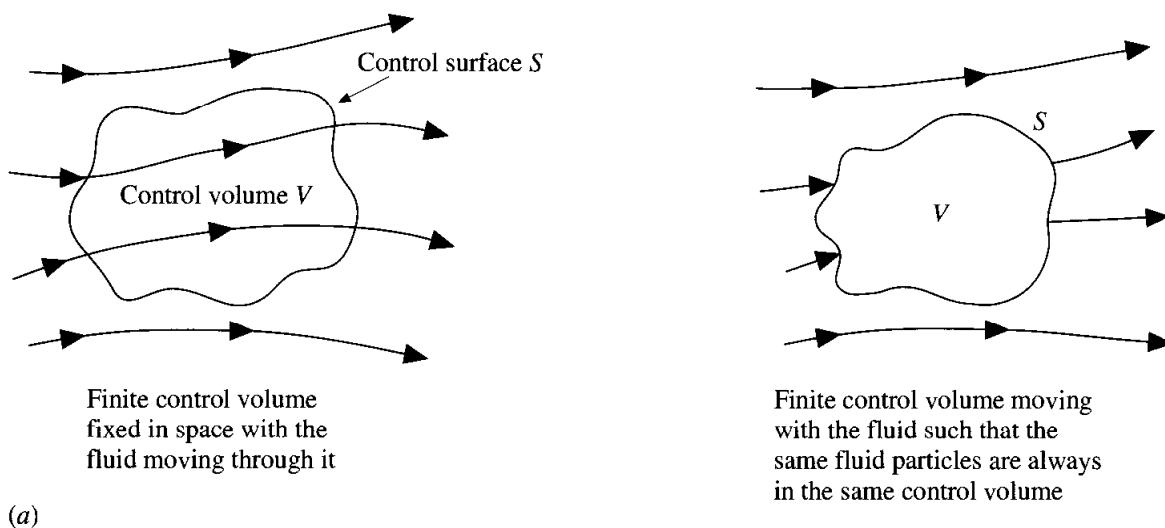
1. Choose the appropriate fundamental physical principles from the law of physics, such as:
  - a. Mass is conserved.
  - b.  $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{ma}$  (Newton's second law).
  - c. Energy is conserved.
2. Apply these physical principles to a suitable model of the flow.
3. From this application, extract the mathematical equations which embody such physical principles.

This section deals with item 2 above, namely, the definition of a suitable model of the flow. This is not a trivial consideration. A solid body is rather easy to see and define; on the other hand, a fluid is a “squishy” substance that is hard to grab hold of. If a solid body is in translational motion, the velocity of each part of the body is the same; on the other hand, if a fluid is in motion, the velocity may be different at each location in the fluid. How then do we visualize a moving fluid so as to apply to it the fundamental physical principles?

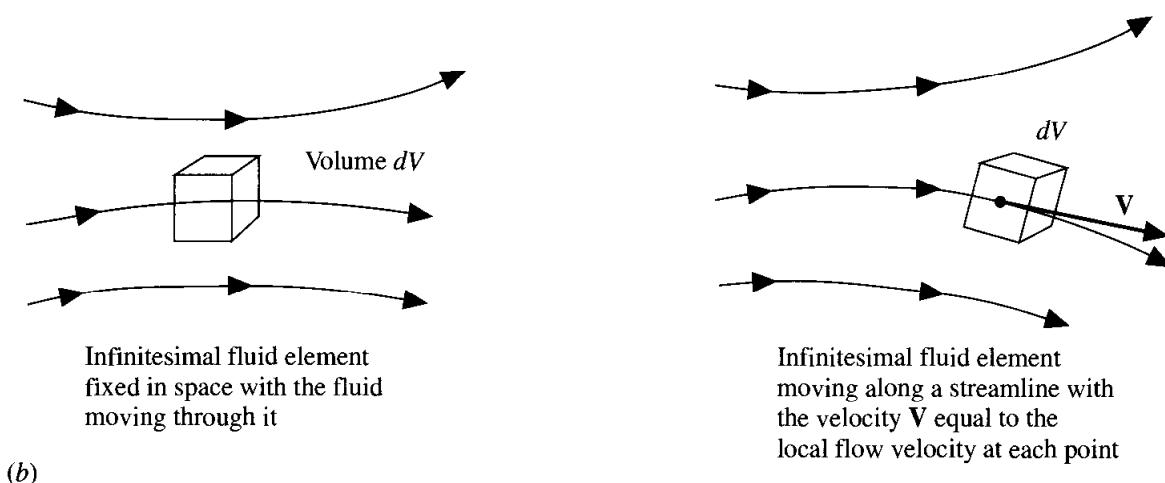
For a continuum fluid, the answer is to construct one of the four models described below.

### 2.2.1 Finite Control Volume

Consider a general flow field as represented by the streamlines in Fig. 2.2a. Let us imagine a closed volume drawn within a *finite* region of the flow. This volume defines a *control volume*  $\mathcal{V}$ ; a *control surface*  $S$  is defined as the closed surface which bounds the volume. The control volume may be *fixed* in space with the fluid moving through it, as shown at the left of Fig. 2.2a. Alternatively, the control volume may be moving with the fluid such that the same fluid particles are always inside it, as shown at the right of Fig. 2.2a. In either case, the control volume is a reasonably large, finite region of the flow. The fundamental physical principles are applied to the fluid inside the control volume and to the fluid crossing the control surface (if the control volume is fixed in space). Therefore, instead of looking at the whole flow field at once, with the control volume model we limit our attention to



(a)

**FIG. 2.2**

Models of a flow. (a) Finite control volume approach; (b) infinitesimal fluid element approach.

just the fluid in the finite region of the volume itself. The fluid-flow equations that we *directly* obtain by applying the fundamental physical principles to a finite control volume are in *integral form*. These integral forms of the governing equations can be manipulated to *indirectly* obtain partial differential equations. The equations so obtained from the finite control volume fixed in space (left side of Fig. 2.2a), in either integral or partial differential form, are called the *conservation form* of the governing equations. The equations obtained from the finite control volume moving with the fluid (right side of Fig. 2.2a), in either integral or partial differential form, are called the *nonconservation form* of the governing equations.

### 2.2.2 Infinitesimal Fluid Element

Consider a general flow field as represented by the streamlines in Fig. 2.2b. Let us imagine an infinitesimally small fluid element in the flow with a differential volume  $dV$ . The fluid element is infinitesimal in the same sense as differential calculus; however, it is large enough to contain a huge number of molecules so that it can be viewed as a continuous medium. The fluid element may be fixed in space with the fluid moving through it, as shown at the left of Fig. 2.2b. Alternatively, it may be moving along a streamline with a velocity vector  $\mathbf{V}$  equal to the flow velocity at each point. Again, instead of looking at the whole flow field at once, the fundamental physical principles are applied to just the infinitesimally small fluid element itself. This application leads *directly* to the fundamental equations in *partial differential equation form*. Moreover, the particular partial differential equations obtained directly from the fluid element fixed in space (left side of Fig. 2.2b) are again the *conservation form* of the equations. The partial differential equations obtained *directly* from the moving fluid element (right side of Figure 2.2b) are again called the *nonconservation form* of the equations.

### 2.2.3 Some Comments

In the above discussion, we have introduced the idea that the governing equations can be expressed in two general forms—conservation form and nonconservation form—without even defining what this really means. Do not be flustered. At this stage in our discussion, we do not have enough insight to understand what these two different terms mean. The definition and understanding will come only while we are actually deriving the different equation forms. So just hang on; at this stage it is sufficient just to be aware of the existence of these two different forms.

In general aerodynamic theory, whether we deal with the conservation or nonconservation forms of the equations is irrelevant. Indeed, through simple manipulation, one form can be obtained from the other. However, there are cases in CFD where it is important which form we use. In fact, the nomenclature which is used to distinguish these two forms (conservation versus nonconservation) has arisen primarily in the CFD literature.

The comments made in this section become clearer after we have actually derived the governing equations. Therefore, when you finish this chapter, it would be worthwhile to reread this section.

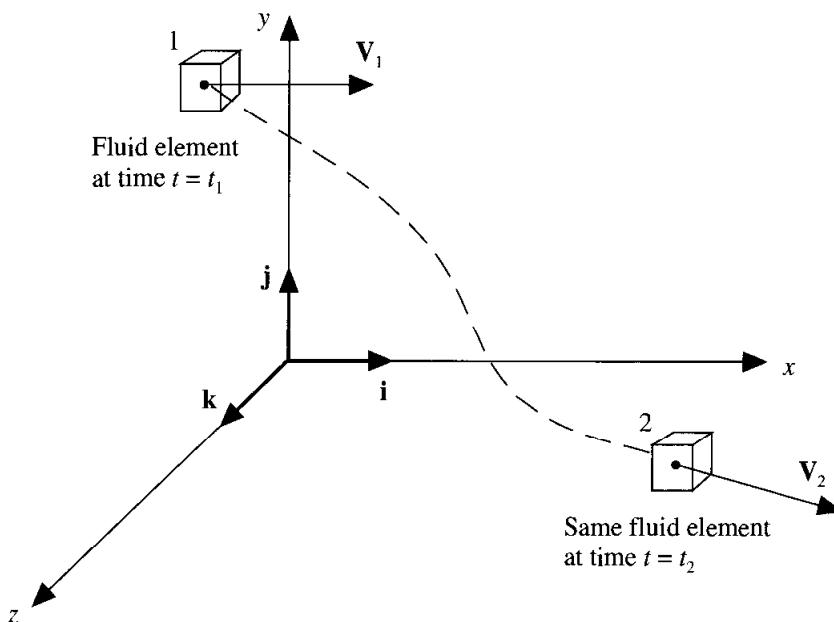
As a final comment, in actuality the motion of a fluid is a ramification of the mean motion of its atoms and molecules. Therefore, a third model of the flow can be a microscopic approach wherein the fundamental laws of nature are applied directly to the atoms and molecules, using suitable statistical averaging to define the resulting fluid properties. This approach is in the purview of *kinetic theory*, which is a very elegant method with many advantages in the long run. However, it is beyond the scope of the present book.

### 2.3 THE SUBSTANTIAL DERIVATIVE (TIME RATE OF CHANGE FOLLOWING A MOVING FLUID ELEMENT)

Before deriving the governing equations, we need to establish a notation which is common in aerodynamics—that of the substantial derivative. In addition, the substantial derivative has an important physical meaning which is sometimes not fully appreciated by students of aerodynamics. A major purpose of this section is to emphasize this physical meaning. The discussion in this section follows that in Ref. 8, which should be consulted for more details.

As the model of the flow, we will adopt the picture shown at the right of Fig. 2.2b, namely, that of an infinitesimally small fluid element moving with the flow. The motion of this fluid element is shown in more detail in Fig. 2.3. Here, the fluid element is moving through cartesian space. The unit vectors along the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  axes are  $\mathbf{i}$ ,  $\mathbf{j}$ , and  $\mathbf{k}$ , respectively. The vector velocity field in this cartesian space is given by

$$\mathbf{V} = u\mathbf{i} + v\mathbf{j} + w\mathbf{k}$$



**FIG. 2.3**

Fluid element moving in the fluid flow—illustration for the substantial derivative

where the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  components of velocity are given, respectively, by

$$\begin{aligned} u &= u(x, y, z, t) \\ v &= v(x, y, z, t) \\ w &= w(x, y, z, t) \end{aligned}$$

Note that we are considering in general an *unsteady flow*, where  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  are functions of both space and time  $t$ . In addition, the scalar density field is given by

$$\rho = \rho(x, y, z, t)$$

At time  $t_1$ , the fluid element is located at point 1 in Fig. 2.3. At this point and time, the density of the fluid element is

$$\rho_1 = \rho(x_1, y_1, z_1, t_1)$$

At a later time  $t_2$ , the same fluid element has moved to point 2 in Fig. 2.3. Hence, at time  $t_2$ , the density of this *same* fluid element is

$$\rho_2 = \rho(x_2, y_2, z_2, t_2)$$

Since  $\rho = \rho(x, y, z, t)$ , we can expand this function in a Taylor series about point 1 as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_2 &= \rho_1 + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial x}\right)_1 (x_2 - x_1) + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial y}\right)_1 (y_2 - y_1) + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial z}\right)_1 (z_2 - z_1) \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\right)_1 (t_2 - t_1) + (\text{higher-order terms}) \end{aligned}$$

Dividing by  $t_2 - t_1$  and ignoring higher-order terms, we obtain

$$\frac{\rho_2 - \rho_1}{t_2 - t_1} = \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial x}\right)_1 \frac{x_2 - x_1}{t_2 - t_1} + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial y}\right)_1 \frac{y_2 - y_1}{t_2 - t_1} + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial z}\right)_1 \frac{z_2 - z_1}{t_2 - t_1} + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\right)_1 \quad (2.1)$$

Examine the left side of the Eq. (2.1). This is physically the *average* time rate of change in density of the fluid element as it moves from point 1 to point 2. In the limit, as  $t_2$  approaches  $t_1$ , this term becomes

$$\lim_{t_2 \rightarrow t_1} \frac{\rho_2 - \rho_1}{t_2 - t_1} \equiv \frac{D\rho}{Dt}$$

Here,  $D\rho/Dt$  is a symbol for the *instantaneous* time rate of change of density of the fluid element as it moves through point 1. By definition, this symbol is called the *substantial derivative*  $D/Dt$ . Note that  $D\rho/Dt$  is the time rate of change of density of the *given fluid element* as it moves through space. Here, our eyes are locked on the fluid element as it is moving, and we are watching the density of the element change as it moves through point 1. This is different from  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)_1$ , which is physically the time rate of change of density at the fixed point 1. For  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)_1$ , we fix our eyes on the stationary point 1 and watch the density change due to transient fluctuations in the flow field. Thus,  $D\rho/Dt$  and  $\partial\rho/\partial t$  are physically and numerically different quantities.

Returning to Eq. (2.1), note that

$$\lim_{t_2 \rightarrow t_1} \frac{x_2 - x_1}{t_2 - t_1} \equiv u$$

$$\lim_{t_2 \rightarrow t_1} \frac{y_2 - y_1}{t_2 - t_1} \equiv v$$

$$\lim_{t_2 \rightarrow t_1} \frac{z_2 - z_1}{t_2 - t_1} \equiv w$$

Thus, taking the limit of Eq. (2.1) as  $t_2 \rightarrow t_1$ , we obtain

$$\frac{D\rho}{Dt} = u \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} + v \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial y} + w \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \quad (2.2)$$

Examine Eq. (2.2) closely. From it, we can obtain an expression for the substantial derivative in cartesian coordinates:

$$\frac{D}{Dt} \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + v \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + w \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \quad (2.3)$$

Furthermore, in cartesian coordinates, the vector operator  $\nabla$  is defined as

$$\nabla \equiv \mathbf{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \mathbf{j} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + \mathbf{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \quad (2.4)$$

Hence, Eq. (2.3) can be written as

$$\frac{D}{Dt} \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla) \quad (2.5)$$

Equation (2.5) represents a definition of the substantial derivative operator in vector notation; thus, it is valid for any coordinate system.

Focusing on Eq. (2.5), we once again emphasize that  $D/Dt$  is the substantial derivative, which is physically the time rate of change following a moving fluid element;  $\partial/\partial t$  is called the *local derivative*, which is physically the time rate of change at a fixed point;  $\mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla$  is called the *convective derivative*, which is physically the time rate of change due to the movement of the fluid element from one location to another in the flow field where the flow properties are spatially different. The substantial derivative applies to any flow-field variable, for example,  $Dp/Dt$ ,  $DT/Dt$ ,  $Du/Dt$ , etc., where  $p$  and  $T$  are the static pressure and temperature, respectively. For example

$$\frac{DT}{Dt} \equiv \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla) \equiv \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} + v \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} + w \frac{\partial T}{\partial z}$$

Local derivative      Convective derivative

(2.6)

Again, Eq. (2.6) states physically that the temperature of the fluid element is changing as the element sweeps past a point in the flow because at that point the flow-field temperature itself may be fluctuating with time (the local derivative) and because the fluid element is simply on its way to another point in the flow field where the temperature is different (the convective derivative).

Consider an example which will help to reinforce the physical meaning of the substantial derivative. Imagine that you are hiking in the mountains, and you are about to enter a cave. The temperature inside the cave is cooler than outside. Thus, as you walk through the mouth of the cave, you feel a temperature decrease—this is analogous to the convective derivative in Eq. (2.6). However, imagine that, at the same time, a friend throws a snowball at you such that the snowball hits you just at the same instant you pass through the mouth of the cave. You will feel an additional, but momentary, temperature drop when the snowball hits you—this is analogous to the local derivative in Eq. (2.6). The net temperature drop you feel as you walk through the mouth of the cave is therefore a combination of both the act of moving into the cave, where it is cooler, and being struck by the snowball at the same instant—this net temperature drop is analogous to the substantial derivative in Eq. (2.6).

The purpose of the above derivation is to give you a physical feel for the substantial derivative. We could have circumvented most of the above discussion by recognizing that the substantial derivative is essentially the same as the total differential from calculus. That is, if

$$\rho = \rho(x, y, z, t)$$

then the chain rule from differential calculus gives

$$d\rho = \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial y} dy + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z} dz + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} dt \quad (2.7)$$

From Eq. (2.7), we have

$$\frac{d\rho}{dt} = \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} \frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial y} \frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z} \frac{dz}{dt} \quad (2.8)$$

Since  $dx/dt = u$ ,  $dy/dt = v$ , and  $dz/dt = w$ , Eq. (2.8) becomes

$$\frac{d\rho}{dt} = \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} + v \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial y} + w \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z} \quad (2.9)$$

Comparing Eqs. (2.2) and (2.9), we see that  $d\rho/dt$  and  $D\rho/Dt$  are one and the same. Therefore, the substantial derivative is nothing more than a total derivative with respect to time. However, the derivation of Eq. (2.2) highlights more of the physical significance of the substantial derivative, whereas the derivation of Eq. (2.9) is more formal mathematically.\*

---

\* Dr. Joe Thompson of Mississippi State University points out, with some justification, that the terminology “substantial derivative” and “total derivative” are unnecessarily confusing, although this terminology is very prevalent in fluid dynamics; indeed, we have followed the standard terminology here. Based on the physical discussion in this section, Thompson suggests that the symbol  $(\partial/\partial t)_{\text{fluid element}}$  be used for the appropriate derivative in lieu of  $D/Dt$ . This clearly emphasizes the meaning of time rate of change of “something” *following a moving fluid element*.

## 2.4 THE DIVERGENCE OF THE VELOCITY: ITS PHYSICAL MEANING

In Sec. 2.3 we examined the definition and physical meaning of the substantial derivative; this is because the governing flow equations are frequently expressed in terms of the substantial derivative, and it is important to have a physical understanding of this term. In the same vein, and as one last item before deriving the governing equations, let us consider the divergence of the velocity,  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}$ . This term appears frequently in the equations of fluid dynamics, and it is well to consider its physical meaning.

Consider a control volume moving with the fluid as sketched on the right of Fig. 2.2a. This control volume is always made up of the same fluid particles as it moves with the flow; hence, its mass is fixed, invariant with time. However, its volume  $\mathcal{V}$  and control surface  $S$  are changing with time as it moves to different regions of the flow where different values of  $\rho$  exist. That is, this moving control volume of fixed mass is constantly increasing or decreasing its volume and is changing its shape, depending on the characteristics of the flow. This control volume is shown in Fig. 2.4 at some instant in time. Consider an infinitesimal element of the surface  $dS$  moving at the local velocity  $\mathbf{V}$ , as shown in Fig. 2.4. The change in the volume of the control volume,  $\Delta\mathcal{V}$ , due to just the movement of  $dS$  over a time increment  $\Delta t$  is, from Fig. 2.4, equal to the volume of the long, thin cylinder with base area  $dS$  and altitude  $(\mathbf{V} \Delta t) \cdot \mathbf{n}$ , where  $\mathbf{n}$  is a unit vector perpendicular to the surface at  $dS$ . That is,

$$\Delta\mathcal{V} = [(\mathbf{V} \Delta t) \cdot \mathbf{n}] dS = (\mathbf{V} \Delta t) \cdot \mathbf{dS} \quad (2.10)$$

where the vector  $\mathbf{dS}$  is defined simply as  $\mathbf{dS} \equiv \mathbf{n} dS$ . Over the time increment  $\Delta t$ , the total change in volume of the whole control volume is equal to the summation of Eq. (2.10) over the total control surface. In the limit as  $dS \rightarrow 0$ , the sum becomes the surface integral

$$\iint_S (\mathbf{V} \Delta t) \cdot \mathbf{dS}$$

If this integral is divided by  $\Delta t$ , the result is physically the time rate of change of the control volume, denoted by  $D\mathcal{V}/Dt$ ; that is,

$$\frac{D\mathcal{V}}{Dt} = \frac{1}{\Delta t} \iint_S (\mathbf{V} \cdot \Delta t) \cdot \mathbf{dS} = \iint_S \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{dS} \quad (2.11)$$

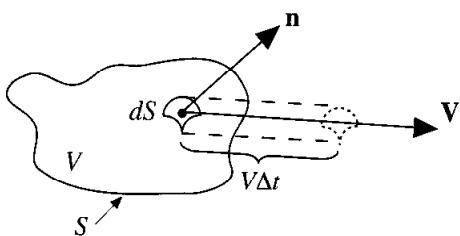


FIG. 2.4

Moving control volume used for the physical interpretation of the divergence of velocity.

Note that we have written the left side of Eq. (2.11) as the substantial derivative of  $\mathcal{V}$ , because we are dealing with the time rate of change of the control volume *as the volume moves with the flow* (we are using the picture shown at the right of Fig. 2.2a), and this is physically what is meant by the substantial derivative. Applying the divergence theorem from vector calculus to the right side of Eq. (2.11), we obtain

$$\frac{D\mathcal{V}}{Dt} = \iiint_{\mathcal{V}} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) d\mathcal{V} \quad (2.12)$$

Now, let us imagine that the moving control volume in Fig. 2.4 is shrunk to a very small volume  $\delta\mathcal{V}$ , essentially becoming an infinitesimal moving fluid element as sketched on the right of Fig. 2.2a. Then Eq. (2.12) can be written as

$$\frac{D(\delta\mathcal{V})}{Dt} = \iiint_{\delta\mathcal{V}} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) d\mathcal{V} \quad (2.13)$$

Assume that  $\delta\mathcal{V}$  is small enough such that  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}$  is essentially the same value throughout  $\delta\mathcal{V}$ . Then the integral in Eq. (2.13), in the limit as  $\delta\mathcal{V}$  shrinks to zero, is given by  $(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) \delta\mathcal{V}$ . From Eq. (2.13), we have

$$\frac{D(\delta\mathcal{V})}{Dt} = (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) \delta\mathcal{V}$$

or

$$\boxed{\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = \frac{1}{\delta\mathcal{V}} \frac{D(\delta\mathcal{V})}{Dt}} \quad (2.14)$$

Examine Eq. (2.14) closely. On the left side we have the divergence of the velocity; on the right side we have its physical meaning. That is,

$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}$  is physically the time rate of change of the volume of a moving fluid element, per unit volume.

### 2.4.1 A Comment

It is useful to keep the physical meaning of the divergence of the velocity in mind when you are dealing with the governing flow equations. Indeed, this is an example of an overall philosophy which this author urges you to embrace, as follows. Imagine that we are dealing with a vector velocity  $\mathbf{V}$  in cartesian ( $x, y, z$ ) space. When a pure mathematician sees the symbol  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}$ , his or her mind will most likely register the fact that  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = \partial u / \partial x + \partial v / \partial y + \partial w / \partial z$ . On the other hand, when a fluid dynamicist sees the symbol  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}$ , his or her mind should register *first* the physical meaning—he or she should first see in the symbol  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}$  the words “time rate of change of the volume of a moving fluid element, per unit volume.” Indeed, this philosophy is extrapolated to all mathematical equations and operations having to do with physical problems. Always keep in mind the physical meaning of the

terms in the equations you are dealing with. In this vein, note that in the phrase “computational fluid dynamics” the word “computational” is simply an adjective to “fluid dynamics”; when you are dealing with the discipline of CFD, it is vitally important to keep the physical understanding of *fluid dynamics* uppermost in your mind. This, in part, is the purpose of the present chapter.

## 2.5 THE CONTINUITY EQUATION

Let us now apply the philosophy discussed in Sec. 2.2; that is, let us (1) write down a fundamental physical principle, (2) apply it to a suitable model of the flow, and (3) obtain an equation which represents the fundamental physical principle. In this section, we will treat the following case:

Physical principle: Mass is conserved.

The governing flow equation which results from the application of this physical principle to any one of the four models of the flow shown in Fig. 2.2a and b is called the *continuity equation*. Moreover, in this section we will carry out in detail the application of this physical principle using *all four* of the flow models illustrated in Fig. 2.2a and b; in this way we hope to dispel any mystery surrounding the derivation of the governing flow equation. That is, we will derive the continuity equation four different ways, obtaining in a direct fashion four different forms of the equation. Then, by indirect manipulation of these four different forms, we will show that they are all really the *same* equation. In addition, we will invoke the idea of conservation versus nonconservation forms, helping to elucidate the meaning of those words. Let us proceed.

### 2.5.1 Model of the Finite Control Volume Fixed in Space

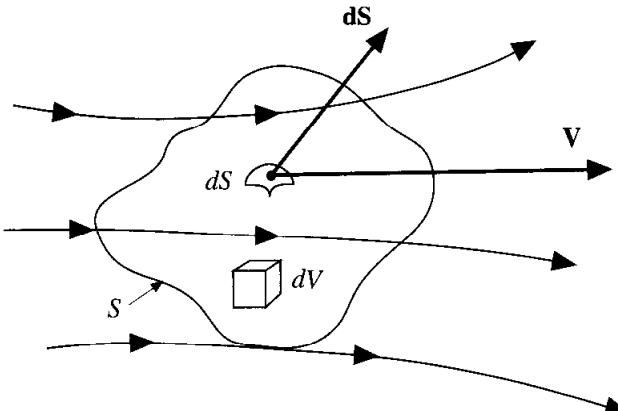
Consider the flow model shown at the left of Fig. 2.2a, namely, a control volume of arbitrary shape and of finite size. The volume is fixed in space. The surface that bounds this control volume is called the control surface, as labeled in Fig. 2.2a. The fluid moves through the fixed control volume, flowing across the control surface. This flow model is shown in more detail in Fig. 2.5. At a point on the control surface in Fig. 2.5, the flow velocity is  $\mathbf{V}$  and the vector elemental surface area (as defined in Sec. 2.4) is  $d\mathbf{S}$ . Also let  $dV$  be an elemental volume inside the finite control volume. Applied to this control volume, our fundamental physical principle that mass is conserved means

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Net mass flow out} \quad \text{time rate of} \\ \text{of control volume} = \text{decrease of mass} \\ \text{through surface } S \quad \text{inside control volume} \end{array} \quad (2.15a)$$

or

$$B = C \quad (2.15b)$$

where  $B$  and  $C$  are just convenient symbols for the left and right sides, respectively,



**FIG. 2.5**  
Finite control volume fixed in space.

of Eq. (2.15a). First, let us obtain an expression for  $B$  in terms of the quantities shown in Fig. 2.5. The mass flow of a moving fluid across any fixed surface (say, in kilograms per second or slugs per second) is equal to the product of (density)  $\times$  (area of surface)  $\times$  (component of velocity perpendicular to the surface). Hence the elemental mass flow across the area  $dS$  is

$$\rho V_n dS = \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{dS} \quad (2.16)$$

Examining Fig. 2.5, note that by convention,  $\mathbf{dS}$  always points in a direction *out* of the control volume. Hence, when  $\mathbf{V}$  also points out of the control volume (as shown in Fig. 2.5), the product  $\rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{dS}$  is *positive*. Moreover, when  $\mathbf{V}$  points out of the control volume, the mass flow is physically leaving the control volume; i.e., it is an *outflow*. Hence, a positive  $\rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{dS}$  denotes an outflow. In turn, when  $\mathbf{V}$  points into the control volume,  $\rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{dS}$  is *negative*. Moreover, when  $\mathbf{V}$  points inward, the mass flow is physically entering the control volume; i.e., it is an *inflow*. Hence, a negative  $\rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{dS}$  denotes an inflow. The net mass flow *out* of the entire control volume through the control surface  $S$  is the summation over  $S$  of the elemental mass flow expressed in Eq. (2.16). In the limit, this becomes a surface integral, which is physically the left sides of Eqs. (2.15a) and (2.15b); that is,

$$B = \iint_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{dS} \quad (2.17)$$

Now consider the right sides of Eqs. (2.15a) and (2.15b). The mass contained within the elemental volume  $d\mathcal{V}$  is  $\rho d\mathcal{V}$ . The total mass inside the control volume is therefore

$$\iiint_{\mathcal{V}} \rho d\mathcal{V}$$

The time rate of *increase* of mass inside  $\mathcal{V}$  is then

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \iiint_{\mathcal{V}} \rho d\mathcal{V}$$

$$\text{Time rate of mass increase} = \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} (dx dy dz) \quad (2.23)$$

The physical principle that mass is conserved, when applied to the fixed element in Fig. 2.7, can be expressed in words as follows: the net mass flow out of the element must equal the time rate of *decrease* of mass inside the element. Denoting the mass decrease by a negative quantity, this statement can be expressed in terms of Eqs. (2.22) and (2.23) as

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[ \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(\rho w)}{\partial z} \right] dx dy dz = - \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} (dx dy dz) \\ \text{or} \quad & \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \left[ \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(\rho w)}{\partial z} \right] = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (2.24)$$

In Eq. (2.24), the term in brackets is simply  $\nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V})$ . Thus, Eq. (2.24) becomes

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) = 0$$

(2.25)

Equation (2.25) is a *partial differential equation form of the continuity equation*. It was derived on the basis of an *infinitesimally small element fixed in space*. The *infinitesimally small* aspect of the element is why the equation is obtained directly in *partial differential equation* form. The fact that the element was *fixed in space* leads to the specific differential form given by Eq. (2.25), which is called the *conservation form*. As stated earlier, the forms of the governing flow equations that are *directly* obtained from a flow model which is fixed in space are, by definition, called the *conservation form*.

Equation (2.25) is displayed in box III in Fig. 2.6. It is the form that most directly stems from the model of an infinitesimally small element fixed in space. On the other hand, it can also be obtained by indirect manipulation from either of the integral equations displayed in boxes I and II, as will be shown in Sec. 2.2.5.

#### 2.5.4 Model of an Infinitesimally Small Fluid Element Moving with the Flow

Consider the flow model shown at the right of Fig. 2.2b, namely, an infinitesimally small fluid element moving with the flow. This fluid element has a fixed mass, but in general its shape and volume will change as it moves downstream. Denote the fixed mass and variable volume of this moving fluid element by  $\delta m$  and  $\delta V$ , respectively. Then

$$\delta m = \rho \delta V \quad (2.26)$$

Since mass is conserved, we can state that the time rate of change of the mass of the fluid element is zero as the element moves along with the flow. Invoking the physical meaning of the substantial derivative discussed in Sec. 2.3, we have

$$\frac{D(\delta m)}{Dt} = 0 \quad (2.27)$$

Combining Eqs. (2.26) and (2.27), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{D(\rho \delta \mathcal{V})}{Dt} &= \delta \mathcal{V} \frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \rho \frac{D(\delta \mathcal{V})}{Dt} = 0 \\ \text{or} \quad \frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \rho \left[ \frac{1}{\delta \mathcal{V}} \frac{D(\delta \mathcal{V})}{Dt} \right] &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (2.28)$$

We recognize the term in brackets in Eq. (2.28) as the physical meaning of  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}$ , discussed in Sec. 2.4 and given in Eq. (2.14). Hence, combining Eqs. (2.14) and (2.28), we obtain

$$\boxed{\frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = 0} \quad (2.29)$$

Equation (2.29) is a partial differential equation form of the continuity equation, different from that expressed by Eq. (2.25). It was derived on the basis of an *infinitesimally small* fluid element *moving* with the flow. Once again, the infinitesimally small aspect of the fluid element is why the equation is obtained directly in *partial differential equation* form. The fact that the element is *moving* with the flow leads to the specific differential form given by Eq. (2.29), which is called the *nonconservation form*. As stated earlier, the forms of the governing flow equations that are *directly* obtained from a flow model which is moving with the flow are, by definition, called the nonconservation form.

Equation (2.29) is displayed in box IV in Fig. 2.6. It is the form that most directly stems from the model of an infinitesimally small fluid element moving with the flow. On the other hand, it can also be obtained by indirect manipulation from any of the equations in the other boxes in Fig. 2.6. It is now appropriate to examine this indirect manipulation.

### 2.5.5 All the Equations Are One: Some Manipulations

Examining Fig. 2.6, we see four different forms of the continuity equation, each one a direct product of the flow model used in its derivation. Two of the forms are integral equations; the other two are partial differential equations. Two of the equations are in conservation form; the other two are in nonconservation form. However, these four equations are not fundamentally different equations; rather, they are four different forms of the *same* equation, namely, the continuity equation. Any of these four forms can be derived by manipulation from any of the others. This is symbolized by paths *A* through *D* sketched in Fig. 2.6. For a better understanding of the meaning and significance of the governing flow equations, we need to examine the details of these different paths. This is the purpose of the present subsection.

First, let us examine how the partial differential equation form can be obtained from the integral equation form; i.e., let us examine path C in Fig. 2.6. Repeating Eq. (2.19),

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int_{\mathcal{V}} \int \int \rho \, d\mathcal{V} + \int_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0 \quad (2.19)$$

Since the control volume used for the derivation of Eq. (2.19) is fixed in space, the limits of integration for the integrals in Eq. (2.19) are constant, and hence the time derivative  $\partial/\partial t$  can be placed inside the integral.

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}} \int \int \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \, d\mathcal{V} + \int_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0 \quad (2.30)$$

Applying the divergence theorem from vector calculus, the surface integral in Eq. (2.30) can be expressed as a volume integral:

$$\int_S \int (\rho \mathbf{V}) \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \int_{\mathcal{V}} \int \int \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) \, d\mathcal{V} \quad (2.31)$$

Substituting Eq. (2.31) into (2.30), we have

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}} \int \int \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \, d\mathcal{V} + \int_{\mathcal{V}} \int \int \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) \, d\mathcal{V} = 0$$

or

$$\int_{\mathcal{V}} \int \int \left[ \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) \right] \, d\mathcal{V} = 0 \quad (2.32)$$

Since the finite control volume is *arbitrarily* drawn in space, the only way for the integral in Eq. (2.32) to equal zero is for the integrand to be zero at every point within the control volume. Hence, from Eq. (2.32)

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) = 0 \quad (2.33)$$

Equation (2.33) is precisely the continuity equation in partial differential equation form that is displayed in box III in Fig. 2.6. Hence, we have shown how the integral form in box I can, after some manipulation, yield the differential form in box III. Again, note that both the equations in boxes I and III are in conservation form; the above manipulation does not change that situation.

Next, let us examine a manipulation that does change the conservation form to the nonconservation form. Specifically let us take the differential equation in box III and convert it to the differential equation in box IV. Consider the vector identity involving the divergence of the product of a scalar times a vector, such as

$$\nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) \equiv (\rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) + (\mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla \rho) \quad (2.34)$$

In words, the divergence of a scalar times a vector is equal to the scalar times the divergence of the vector plus the vector dotted into the gradient of the scalar. (See any good text on vector analysis for a presentation of this identity, such as Ref. 19.) Substituting Eq. (2.34) into Eq. (2.33), we obtain

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla \rho) + (\rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) = 0 \quad (2.35)$$

The first two terms on the left side of Eq. (2.35) are simply the substantial derivative of density. Hence, Eq. (2.35) becomes

$$\frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = 0 \quad (2.36)$$

Equation (2.36) is precisely the equation displayed in box IV in Fig. 2.6. Hence, by a slight manipulation of the partial differential equation in box III, which is in conservation form, we obtained the partial differential equation in box IV, which is in nonconservation form.

Can the same type of change be made to the integral forms of the equations; e.g., can the equation in box II be manipulated to obtain the equation in box I? This is represented by path *A* in Fig. 2.6. The answer is yes; let us see how. The equation in box II is Eq. (2.21), repeated below:

$$\frac{D}{Dt} \iiint_{\mathcal{V}} \rho \, d\mathcal{V} = 0 \quad (2.21)$$

Recall in Eq. (2.21) that the volume integral is taken over the whole *moving* control volume  $\mathcal{V}$  and that this volume is changing as it flows downstream. Indeed, the moving finite control volume consists of an infinite number of infinitesimally small volumes of fixed infinitesimally small mass, each of volume  $d\mathcal{V}$ , where the magnitude of  $d\mathcal{V}$  also changes as the control volume moves downstream. Since the substantial derivative itself represents a time rate of change associated with a moving element, and the limits of integration on the volume integral in Eq. (2.21) are determined by these same moving elements, then the substantial derivative can be taken inside the integral. Hence, Eq. (2.21) can be written as

$$\frac{D}{Dt} \iiint_{\mathcal{V}} \rho \, d\mathcal{V} = \iiint_{\mathcal{V}} \frac{D(\rho \, d\mathcal{V})}{Dt} = 0 \quad (2.37)$$

Noting again that  $d\mathcal{V}$  physically represents an infinitesimally small volume which itself is variable, the substantial derivative inside the integral in Eq. (2.37) is the derivative of a product of two variables, namely,  $\rho$  and  $d\mathcal{V}$ . The derivative must be expanded accordingly; Eq. (2.37) becomes

$$\iiint_{\mathcal{V}} \frac{D\rho}{Dt} \, d\mathcal{V} + \iiint_{\mathcal{V}} \rho \frac{D(d\mathcal{V})}{Dt} = 0$$

Dividing and multiplying the second term by  $dV$ , we have

$$\iiint_V \frac{D\rho}{Dt} dV + \iiint_V \rho \left[ \frac{1}{dV} \frac{D(dV)}{Dt} \right] dV = 0 \quad (2.38)$$

The physical meaning of the term inside the brackets is simply the “time rate of change of volume of an infinitesimally small fluid element per unit volume.” We recall from Sec. 2.4 and Eq. (2.14) that this term is the divergence of velocity. Hence, Eq. (2.38) becomes

$$\iiint_V \frac{D\rho}{Dt} dV + \iiint_V \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} dV = 0 \quad (2.39)$$

From the definition of the substantial derivative given by Eq. (2.5), the first term in Eq. (2.39) can be expanded as

$$\iiint_V \frac{D\rho}{Dt} dV = \iiint_V \left[ \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla \rho \right] dV \quad (2.40)$$

Substituting Eq. (2.40) into (2.39), and writing all terms under a single volume integral, we have

$$\iiint_V \left[ \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla \rho + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} \right] dV = 0 \quad (2.41)$$

From the vector identity given in Eq. (2.34), the last two terms in Eq. (2.41) can be written as

$$\mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla \rho + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V})$$

With this, Eq. (2.41) becomes

$$\iiint_V \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} dV + \iiint_V \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) dV = 0 \quad (2.42)$$

Finally, employing the divergence theorem from vector analysis, which relates a surface integral to a volume integral as

$$\iiint_V \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) dV \equiv \iint_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

(again, see any good vector analysis text, such as Ref. 19), Eq. (2.42) finally results in

$$\iiint_V \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} dV + \iint_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0 \quad (2.43)$$

Equation (2.43) is essentially the form of the equation in box I in Fig. 2.6.

We could go on, but we won't—for the sake of not boring you with essentially repetitive manipulations. The major point of this subsection has been made. We see that the four different equations displayed in the boxes in Fig. 2.6 in reality are not different equations at all but rather four different forms of the same equation—the continuity equation. However, each different form displayed in Fig. 2.6 comes most directly from the particular model of the flow adjacent to each equation, and hence the terms in each equation have slightly different physical implications. Also, the philosophy associated with these different forms, and how they were derived, is not limited to just the continuity equation—the same approach is used for the development of the momentum and energy equations, to follow.

### 2.5.6 Integral versus Differential Form of the Equations: An Important Comment

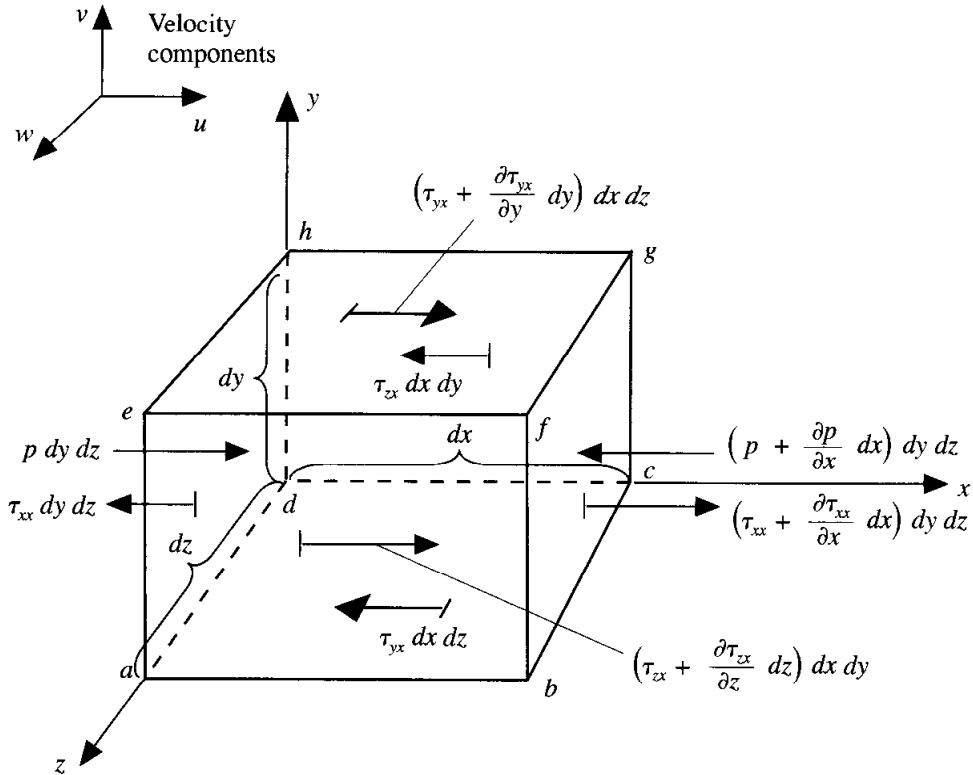
There is a subtle difference between the integral and differential forms of the governing flow equations which is best noted at this stage. The integral form of the equations allows for the presence of discontinuities inside the fixed control volume (fixed in space); there is no inherent mathematical reason to assume otherwise. However, the differential form of the governing equations assumes the flow properties are differentiable, hence continuous. This is particularly evident when we use the divergence theorem to derive the differential form from the integral form—the divergence theorem assumes mathematical continuity. This is a strong argument for the integral form of the equations to be considered *more fundamental* than the differential form. This consideration becomes of particular importance when calculating a flow with real discontinuities, such as shock waves.

## 2.6 THE MOMENTUM EQUATION

In this section, we apply another fundamental physical principle to a model of the flow, namely:

$$\text{Physical principle: } \mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a} \quad (\text{Newton's second law})$$

The resulting equation is called the *momentum equation*. Unlike the derivation of the continuity equation in Sec. 2.5, where great pains were taken to illustrate the use of all four models of the fluid and to highlight the different forms of the equations obtained therein, in the present section we will restrain ourselves and choose only one model of the flow. Specifically, we will utilize the moving fluid element model shown at the right of Fig. 2.2b because this model is particularly convenient for the derivation of the momentum equation as well as the energy equation (to be considered in Sec. 2.7). The moving fluid element model is sketched in more detail in Fig. 2.8. However, please keep in mind that the momentum and energy equations can be derived using any of the other three models of the fluid in Fig. 2.2a and b; as in the case of the continuity equation developed in Sec. 2.5, each different model of the flow leads directly to a different form of the momentum and energy equations, analogous to those for the continuity equation displayed in Fig. 2.6.

**FIG. 2.8**

Infinitesimally small, moving fluid element. Only the forces in the  $x$  direction are shown. Model used for the derivation of the  $x$  component of the momentum equation.

Newton's second law, expressed above, when applied to the moving fluid element in Fig. 2.8, says that the net force on the fluid element equals its mass times the acceleration of the element. This is a vector relation, and hence can be split into three scalar relations along the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  axes. Let us consider only the  $x$  component of Newton's second law,

$$F_x = ma_x \quad (2.44)$$

where  $F_x$  and  $a_x$  are the scalar  $x$  components of the force and acceleration, respectively.

First, consider the left side of Eq. (2.44). We say that the moving fluid element experiences a force in the  $x$  direction. What is the source of this force? There are two sources:

1. *Body forces*, which act directly on the volumetric mass of the fluid element. These forces "act at a distance"; examples are gravitational, electric, and magnetic forces.
2. *Surface forces*, which act directly on the surface of the fluid element. They are due to only two sources: (a) the pressure distribution acting on the surface, imposed by the outside fluid surrounding the fluid element, and (b) the shear and normal stress distributions acting on the surface, also imposed by the outside fluid "tugging" or "pushing" on the surface by means of friction.

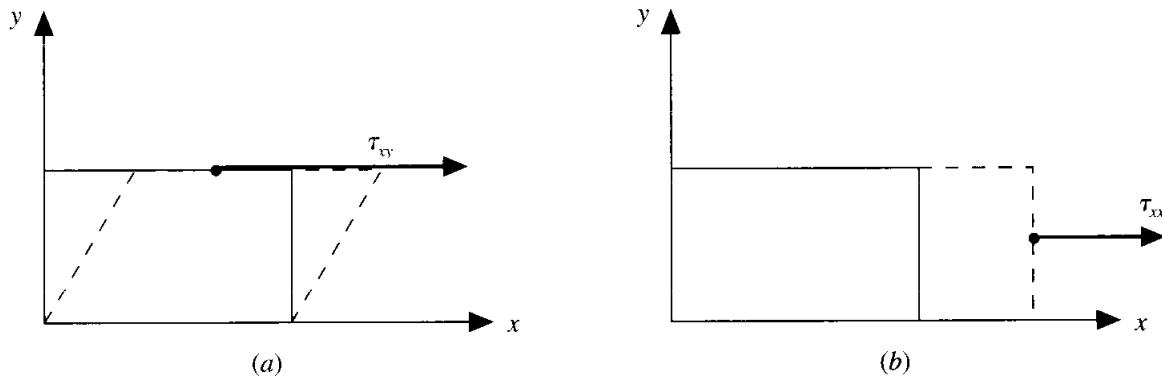


FIG. 2.9

Illustration of (a) shear stress (related to the time rate of change of the shearing deformation and (b) normal stress (related to the time rate of change of volume).

Let us denote the body force per unit mass acting on the fluid element by  $\mathbf{f}$ , with  $f_x$  as its  $x$  component. The volume of the fluid element is  $(dx dy dz)$ ; hence,

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Body force on} \\ &\text{fluid element acting} = \rho f_x (dx dy dz) \\ &\text{in } x \text{ direction} \end{aligned} \quad (2.45)$$

The shear and normal stresses in a fluid are related to the time rate of change of the deformation of the fluid element, as sketched in Fig. 2.9 for just the  $xy$  plane. The shear stress, denoted by  $\tau_{xy}$  in Fig. 2.9a, is related to the time rate of change of the shearing deformation of the fluid element, whereas the normal stress, denoted by  $\tau_{xx}$  in Fig. 2.9b, is related to the time rate of change of volume of the fluid element. As a result, both shear and normal stresses depend on velocity gradients in the flow, to be designated later. In most viscous flows, normal stresses (such as  $\tau_{xx}$ ) are much smaller than shear stresses and many times are neglected. Normal stresses (say  $\tau_{xx}$  in the  $x$  direction) become important when the normal velocity gradients (say  $\partial u / \partial x$ ) are very large, such as *inside* a shock wave.

The surface forces in the  $x$ -direction exerted on the fluid element are sketched in Fig. 2.8. The convention will be used here that  $\tau_{ij}$  denotes a stress in the  $j$  direction exerted on a plane perpendicular to the  $i$  axis. On face  $abcd$ , the only force in the  $x$  direction is that due to shear stress,  $\tau_{yz} dx dz$ . Face  $efgh$  is a distance  $dy$  above face  $abcd$ ; hence the shear force in the  $x$  direction on face  $efgh$  is  $[\tau_{yx} + (\partial \tau_{yx} / \partial y) dy] dx dz$ . Note the directions of the shear force on faces  $abcd$  and  $efgh$ ; on the bottom face,  $\tau_{yx}$  is to the left (the negative  $x$  direction), whereas on the top face,  $\tau_{yx} + (\partial \tau_{yx} / \partial y) dy$  is to the right (the positive  $x$  direction). These directions are consistent with the convention that positive increases in all three components of velocity,  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$ , occur in the positive directions of the axes. For example, in Fig. 2.8,  $u$  increases in the positive  $y$  direction. Therefore, concentrating on face  $efgh$ ,  $u$  is higher just above the face than on the face; this causes a “tugging” action which tries to pull the fluid element in the positive  $x$  direction (to the right) as shown in Fig. 2.8. In turn, concentrating on face  $abcd$ ,  $u$  is lower just beneath the face than on the face; this causes a retarding or dragging action on the fluid element, which acts in the negative  $x$  direction (to the left) as shown in Fig. 2.8. The directions of all the other viscous stresses shown in Fig. 2.8, including  $\tau_{xx}$ , can be justified in a like fashion. Specifically on face  $dcgh$ ,  $\tau_{zx}$  acts in the negative  $x$ -direction, whereas on

face *abfe*,  $\tau_{zx} + (\partial\tau_{zx}/\partial z) dz$  acts in the positive *x* direction. On face *adhe*, which is perpendicular to the *x* axis, the only forces in the *x* direction are the pressure force  $p dy dz$ , which always acts in the direction *into* the fluid element, and  $\tau_{xx} dy dz$ , which is in the negative *x* direction. In Fig. 2.8, the reason why  $\tau_{xx}$  on face *adhe* is to the left hinges on the convention mentioned earlier for the direction of increasing velocity. Here, by convention, a positive increase in *u* takes place in the positive *x* direction. Hence, the value of *u* just to the left of the face *adhe* is smaller than the value of *u* on the face itself. As a result, the viscous action of the normal stress acts as a "suction" on face *adhe*; i.e., there is a dragging action toward the left that wants to retard the motion of the fluid element. In contrast, on face *bcfg*, the pressure force  $[p + \partial p/\partial x] dx dy dz$  presses inward on the fluid element (in the negative *x* direction), and because the value of *u* just to the right of the face *bcfg* is larger than the value of *u* on the face, there is a "suction" due to the viscous normal stress which tries to pull the element to the right (in the positive *x* direction) with a force equal to  $[\tau_{xx} + (\partial\tau_{xx}/\partial x) dx] dy dz$ .

With the above in mind, for the moving fluid element we can write

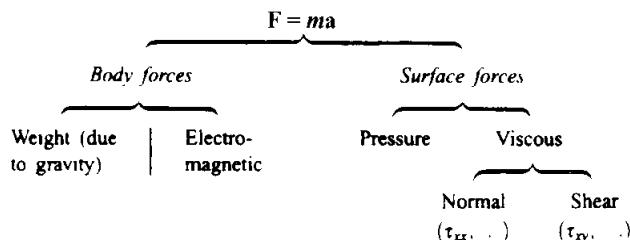
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Net surface force in } x \text{ direction} &= \left[ p - \left( p + \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} dx \right) \right] dy dz \\ &+ \left[ \left( \tau_{xx} + \frac{\partial\tau_{xx}}{\partial x} dx \right) - \tau_{xx} \right] dy dz + \left[ \left( \tau_{yx} + \frac{\partial\tau_{yx}}{\partial y} dy \right) - \tau_{yx} \right] dx dz \\ &+ \left[ \left( \tau_{zx} + \frac{\partial\tau_{zx}}{\partial z} dz \right) - \tau_{zx} \right] dx dy \quad (2.46) \end{aligned}$$

The total force in the *x* direction  $F_x$ , is given by the sum of Eqs. (2.45) and (2.46). Adding, and cancelling terms, we obtain

$$F_x = \left[ -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\tau_{xx}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial\tau_{zx}}{\partial z} \right] dx dy dz + \rho f_x dx dy dz \quad (2.47)$$

Equation (2.47) represents the left-hand side of Eq. (2.44).

To summarize and reinforce the physical significance of the force on a moving fluid element, let us display Newton's second law in diagrammatic form as follows:



Considering the right-hand side of Eq. (2.44), recall that the mass of the fluid element is fixed and is equal to

$$m = \rho dx dy dz \quad (2.48)$$

Also, recall that the acceleration of the fluid element is the time rate of change of its velocity. Hence, the component of acceleration in the *x* direction, denoted by  $a_x$ , is

simply the time rate of change of  $u$ ; since we are following a moving fluid element, this time rate of change is given by the substantial derivative. Thus,

$$a_x = \frac{Du}{Dt} \quad (2.49)$$

Combining Eqs. (2.44) and (2.47) to (2.49), we obtain

$$\rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xx}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} + \rho f_x \quad (2.50a)$$

which is the  $x$  component of the momentum equation for a viscous flow. In a similar fashion, the  $y$  and  $z$  components can be obtained as

$$\rho \frac{Dv}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xy}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yy}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zy}}{\partial z} + \rho f_y \quad (2.50b)$$

and

$$\rho \frac{Dw}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yz}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zz}}{\partial z} + \rho f_z \quad (2.50c)$$

Equations (2.50a) to (2.50c) are the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  components, respectively, of the momentum equation. Note that they are partial differential equations obtained *directly* from an application of the fundamental physical principle to an infinitesimal fluid element. Moreover, since this fluid element is moving with the flow, Eqs. (2.50a) to (2.50c) are in *nonconservation* form. They are scalar equations and are called the *Navier-Stokes equations* in honor of two men—the Frenchman M. Navier and the Englishman G. Stokes—who independently obtained the equations in the first half of the nineteenth century.

The Navier-Stokes equations can be obtained in conservation form as follows. Writing the left-hand side of Eq. (2.50a) in terms of the definition of the substantial derivative, we have

$$\rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = \rho \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla u \quad (2.51)$$

Also, expanding the following derivative,

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} = \rho \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}$$

and rearranging, we have

$$\rho \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} - u \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \quad (2.52)$$

Recalling the vector identity for the divergence of the product of a scalar times a vector, we have

$$\nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V}) = u \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) + (\rho \mathbf{V}) \cdot \nabla u$$

or

$$\rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla u = \nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V}) - u \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) \quad (2.53)$$

Substitute Eqs. (2.52) and (2.53) into (2.51).

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{Du}{Dt} &= \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} - u \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} - u \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) + \nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V}) \\ &= \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} - u \left[ \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) \right] + \nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V}) \end{aligned} \quad (2.54)$$

The term in brackets in Eq. (2.54) is simply the left-hand side of the continuity equation as Eq. (2.25); hence the term in brackets is zero. Thus Eq. (2.54) reduces to

$$\rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V}) \quad (2.55)$$

Substitute Eq. (2.55) into (2.50a).

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xx}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} + \rho f_x$$

(2.56a)

Similarly, Eqs. (2.50b) and (2.50c) can be expressed as

$$\frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho v \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xy}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yy}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zy}}{\partial z} + \rho f_y$$

(2.56b)

and

$$\frac{\partial(\rho w)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho w \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yz}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zz}}{\partial z} + \rho f_z$$

(2.56c)

Equations (2.56a) to (2.56c) are the Navier-Stokes equations in *conservation form*.

In the late seventeenth century, Isaac Newton stated that shear stress in a fluid is proportional to the time rate of strain, i.e., velocity gradients. Such fluids are called *newtonian* fluids. (Fluids in which  $\tau$  is *not* proportional to the velocity gradients are *nonnewtonian* fluids; blood flow is one example.) In virtually all practical aerodynamic problems, the fluid can be assumed to be newtonian. For such fluids, Stokes in 1845 obtained

$$\tau_{xx} = \lambda(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) + 2\mu \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \quad (2.57a)$$

$$\tau_{yy} = \lambda(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) + 2\mu \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \quad (2.57b)$$

$$\tau_{zz} = \lambda(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}) + 2\mu \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \quad (2.57c)$$

$$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{yx} = \mu \left[ \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right] \quad (2.57d)$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \tau_{zx} = \mu \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) \quad (2.57e)$$

$$\tau_{yz} = \tau_{zy} = \mu \left( \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} \right) \quad (2.57f)$$

where  $\mu$  is the molecular viscosity coefficient and  $\lambda$  is the second viscosity coefficient. Stokes made the hypothesis that

$$\lambda = -\frac{2}{3}\mu$$

which is frequently used but which has still not been definitely confirmed to the present day.

Substituting Eqs. (2.57) into (2.56), we obtain the complete Navier-Stokes equations in conservation form;

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho u^2)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho uv)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(\rho uw)}{\partial z} &= -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \\ &+ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \lambda \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} + 2\mu \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left[ \mu \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right) \right] \\ &+ \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left[ \mu \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) \right] + \rho f_x \end{aligned} \quad (2.58a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho uv)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho v^2)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(\rho vw)}{\partial z} &= -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} \\ &+ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ \mu \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right) \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \lambda \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} + 2\mu \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \right) \\ &+ \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left[ \mu \left( \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} \right) \right] + \rho f_y \end{aligned} \quad (2.58b)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(\rho w)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho uw)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho vw)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(\rho w^2)}{\partial z} &= -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} \\ &+ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ \mu \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left[ \mu \left( \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} \right) \right] \\ &+ \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( \lambda \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} + 2\mu \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right) + \rho f_z \end{aligned} \quad (2.58c)$$

## 2.7 THE ENERGY EQUATION

In the present section, we apply the third physical principle as itemized at the beginning of Sec. 2.1, namely,

*Physical principle:* Energy is conserved.

In keeping with our derivation of the Navier-Stokes equations (i.e., the momentum equation) in Sec. 2.6, we will use again the flow model of an infinitesimally small

fluid element moving with the flow (as shown at the right of Fig. 2.2b). The physical principle stated above is nothing more than the first law of thermodynamics. When applied to the flow model of a fluid element moving with the flow, the first law states that

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Rate of change} \\ \text{of energy inside} \\ \text{fluid element} \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} \text{Net flux of} \\ \text{heat into} \\ \text{element} \end{array} + \begin{array}{l} \text{Rate of work done on} \\ \text{body and surface forces} \end{array}$$

or

$$A = B + C \quad (2.59)$$

where  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  denote the respective terms above.

Let us first evaluate  $C$ ; that is, let us obtain an expression for the rate of work done on the moving fluid element due to body and surface forces. It can be shown that the rate of doing work by a force exerted on a moving body is equal to the product of the force and the component of velocity in the direction of the force (see Refs. 1 and 8 for such a derivation). Hence the rate of work done by the body force acting on the fluid element moving at a velocity  $\mathbf{V}$  is

$$\rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V} (dx dy dz)$$

With regard to the surface forces (pressure plus shear and normal stresses), consider just the forces in the  $x$  direction, shown in Fig. 2.8. The rate of work done on the moving fluid element by the pressure and shear forces in the  $x$  direction shown in Fig. 2.8 is simply the  $x$  component of velocity,  $u$ , multiplied by the forces; e.g., on face  $abcd$  the rate of work done by  $\tau_{yx} dx dz$  is  $ut_{yx} dx dz$ , with similar expressions for the other faces. To emphasize these energy considerations, the moving fluid element is redrawn in Fig. 2.10, where the rate of work done on each face by surface forces in the  $x$  direction is shown explicitly. To obtain the *net* rate of work done on the fluid element by the surface forces, note that forces in the positive  $x$  direction do positive work and that forces in the negative  $x$  direction do negative work. Hence, comparing the pressure forces on face  $adhe$  and  $bchg$  in Fig. 2.10, the net rate of work done by pressure in the  $x$  direction is

$$\left[ up - \left( up + \frac{\partial(up)}{\partial x} dx \right) \right] dy dz = - \frac{\partial(up)}{\partial x} dx dy dz$$

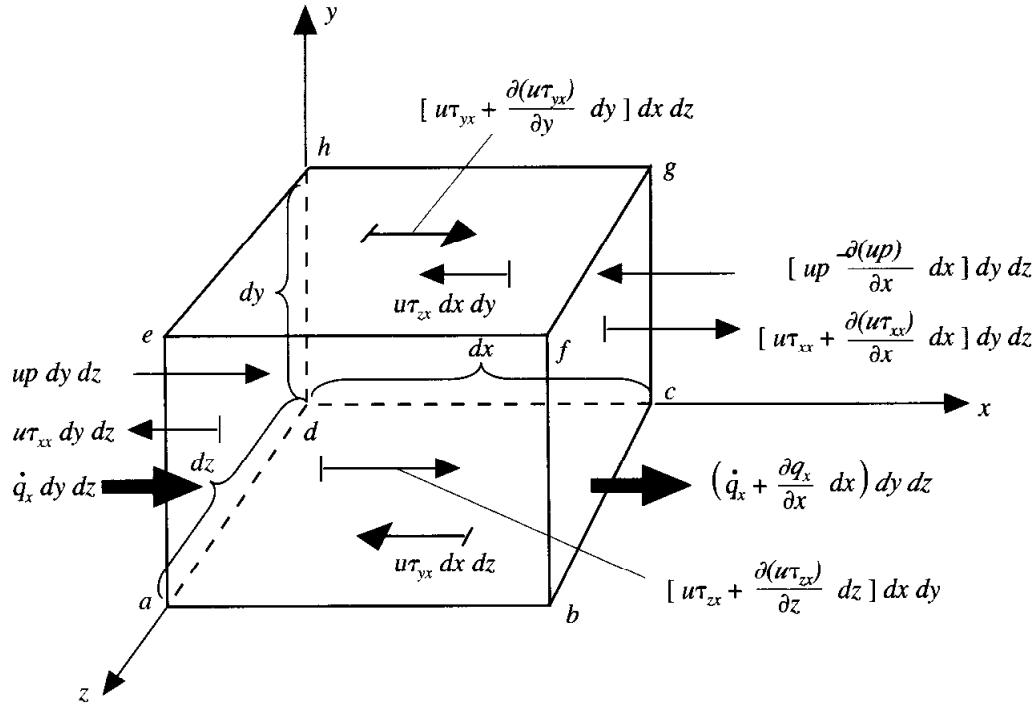
Similarly, the net rate of work done by the shear stresses in the  $x$  direction on faces  $abcd$  and  $efgh$  is

$$\left[ \left( ut_{yx} + \frac{\partial(ut_{yx})}{\partial y} dy \right) - ut_{yx} \right] dx dz = \frac{\partial(ut_{yx})}{\partial y} dx dy dz$$

Considering all the surface forces shown in Fig. 2.10, the net rate of work on the moving fluid element due to these forces is simply

$$\left[ - \frac{\partial(up)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(ut_{xx})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(ut_{yx})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(ut_{zx})}{\partial z} \right] dx dy dz$$

The above expression considers only surface forces in the  $x$  direction. When the surface forces in the  $y$  and  $z$  directions are also included, similar expressions are

**FIG. 2.10**

Energy fluxes associated with an infinitesimally small, moving fluid element. For simplicity, only the fluxes in the  $x$  direction are shown. Model used for the derivation of the energy equation.

obtained. In total, the net rate of work done on the moving fluid element is the sum of the surface force contributions in the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  directions, as well as the body force contribution. This is denoted by  $C$  in Eq. (2.59) and is given by

$$C = - \left[ \left( \frac{\partial(up)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(vp)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(wp)}{\partial z} \right) + \frac{\partial(u\tau_{xx})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(u\tau_{yx})}{\partial y} \right. \\ \left. + \frac{\partial(u\tau_{zx})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial(v\tau_{xy})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(v\tau_{yy})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(u\tau_{zy})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial(w\tau_{xz})}{\partial x} \right. \\ \left. + \frac{\partial(w\tau_{yz})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(w\tau_{zz})}{\partial z} \right] dx dy dz + \rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V} dx dy dz \quad (2.60)$$

Note in Eq. (2.60) that the first three terms on the right-hand side are simply  $\nabla \cdot (p\mathbf{V})$ .

Let us turn our attention to  $B$  in Eq. (2.59), i.e., the net flux of heat into the element. This heat flux is due to (1) volumetric heating such as absorption or emission of radiation and (2) heat transfer across the surface due to temperature gradients, i.e., thermal conduction. Define  $\dot{q}$  as the rate of volumetric heat addition per unit mass. Noting that the mass of the moving fluid element in Fig. 2.10 is  $\rho dx dy dz$ , we obtain

$$\text{Volumetric heating of element} = \rho \dot{q} dx dy dz \quad (2.61)$$

In Fig. 2.10, the heat transferred by thermal conduction into the moving fluid element across face  $adhe$  is  $\dot{q}_x dy dz$ , where  $\dot{q}_x$  is the heat transferred in the  $x$  direction per unit time per unit area by thermal conduction. (The heat transfer in a

given direction, when expressed in dimensions of energy per unit time per unit area perpendicular to the direction, is called the *heat flux* in that direction. Here,  $\dot{q}_x$  is the heat flux in the  $x$  direction.) The heat transferred out of the element across face  $bcdg$  is  $[\dot{q}_x + (\partial \dot{q}_x / \partial x) dx] dy dz$ . Thus, the net heat transferred in the  $x$  direction into the fluid element by thermal conduction is

$$\left[ \dot{q}_x - \left( \dot{q}_x + \frac{\partial \dot{q}_x}{\partial x} dx \right) \right] dy dz = - \frac{\partial \dot{q}_x}{\partial x} dx dy dz$$

Taking into account heat transfer in the  $y$  and  $z$  directions across the other faces in Fig. 2.10, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Heating of} \\ \text{fluid element by} \\ \text{thermal conduction} \end{aligned} = - \left( \frac{\partial \dot{q}_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \dot{q}_y}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \dot{q}_z}{\partial z} \right) dx dy dz \quad (2.62)$$

The term  $B$  in Eq. (2.59) is the sum of Eqs. (2.61) and (2.62).

$$B = \left[ \rho \dot{q} - \left( \frac{\partial \dot{q}_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \dot{q}_y}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \dot{q}_z}{\partial z} \right) \right] dx dy dz \quad (2.63)$$

The heat flux due to thermal conduction, from Fourier's law of heat conduction, is proportional to the local temperature gradient:

$$\dot{q}_x = -k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \quad \dot{q}_y = -k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \quad \dot{q}_z = -k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z}$$

where  $k$  is the thermal conductivity. Hence, Eq. (2.63) can be written

$$B = \left[ \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \right] dx dy dz \quad (2.64)$$

Finally, the term  $A$  in Eq. (2.59) denotes the time rate of change of energy of the fluid element. Pause for a moment and ask yourself the question: the time rate of change of *what* energy? In classical thermodynamics, we generally deal with a system that is stationary; in this case, the energy that appears in the first law of thermodynamics is the *internal* energy. Let us examine more closely the source of this internal energy. If the system is a gas, the atoms and molecules are moving within the system, translating in a purely random fashion. That is, each atom or molecule has translational kinetic energy, and this energy is associated with the purely random motion of the particle. In addition, as they translate through space, molecules (not atoms) can also rotate and vibrate, adding rotational and vibrational energy to the molecule. Finally, the motion of electrons around the nuclei of the atoms or molecules adds electronic energy to the particle. The total energy of a given molecule is the sum of its translational, rotational, vibrational, and electronic energies; the total energy of each atom is the sum of its translational and electronic energy (see Ref. 2 for an extensive discussion of molecular and atomic energies). The *internal energy* of the gas system is simply the energy of each molecule or atom, summed over all the molecules and atoms in the system. This is the physical significance of the internal energy that appears in the first law of thermodynamics.

Now, return to Eq. (2.59) and examine the term labeled  $A$ . We are now considering a gaseous medium that is *in motion*; i.e., the energy term labeled  $A$  concerns the energy of a *moving* fluid element. Hence, the fluid element has two contributions to its energy:

1. The internal energy due to random molecular motion,  $e$  (per unit mass). This is the energy we have described above.
2. The kinetic energy due to translational motion of the fluid element. The kinetic energy per unit mass is simply  $V^2/2$ .

Hence, the moving fluid element has both *internal* and *kinetic* energy; the *sum* of these two is the “total” energy. In Eq. (2.59), the energy in the term  $A$  is the total energy, i.e., the *sum* of the internal and kinetic energies. The total energy is  $e + V^2/2$ . Since we are following a moving fluid element, the time rate of change of total energy per unit mass is given by the substantial derivative. Since the mass of the fluid element is  $\rho dx dy dz$ , we have

$$A = \rho \frac{D}{Dt} \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) dx dy dz \quad (2.65)$$

The final form of the energy equation is obtained by substituting Eqs. (2.60), (2.64), and (2.65) into (2.59), obtaining

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{D}{Dt} \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) &= \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \\ &- \frac{\partial (up)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial (vp)}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial (wp)}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{xx})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{yx})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{zx})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (v\tau_{xy})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial (v\tau_{yy})}{\partial y} \\ &+ \frac{\partial (v\tau_{zy})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{xz})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{yz})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{zz})}{\partial z} + \rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V} \end{aligned}$$

(2.66)

This is the *nonconservation* form of the energy equation; also note that it is in terms of the *total* energy  $e + V^2/2$ . Once again, the nonconservation form results from the application of the fundamental physical principle to a *moving* fluid element.

The left-hand side of Eq. (2.66) involves the substantial derivative of the total energy,  $D(e + V^2/2)/Dt$ . This is just one of the many different forms of the energy equation; it is the form that comes directly from the principle of conservation of energy applied to a moving fluid element. This equation can be readily modified in two respects, as follows:

1. The left-hand side can be expressed in terms of the internal energy  $e$  alone, or the static enthalpy  $h$  alone, or the total enthalpy  $h_0 = h + V^2/2$  alone. In each case,

the right-hand side of the pertinent equation also changes. [For example, in the next paragraph we will examine the necessary manipulations to change Eq. (2.66) into one involving  $De/Dt$ .]

2. For each of the different forms of the energy equation mentioned above, there are both nonconservation as well as conservation forms. The manipulation to convert one form into the other is also discussed below.

Let us start with Eq. (2.66) and first cast it in the form dealing with  $e$  only. To accomplish this, multiply Eqs. (2.50a), (2.50b), and (2.50c) by  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$ , respectively.

$$\rho \frac{D(u^2/2)}{Dt} = -u \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + u \frac{\partial \tau_{xx}}{\partial x} + u \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + u \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} + \rho u f_x \quad (2.67)$$

$$\rho \frac{D(v^2/2)}{Dt} = -v \frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + v \frac{\partial \tau_{xy}}{\partial x} + v \frac{\partial \tau_{yy}}{\partial y} + v \frac{\partial \tau_{zy}}{\partial z} + \rho v f_y \quad (2.68)$$

$$\rho \frac{D(w^2/2)}{Dt} = -w \frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + w \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} + w \frac{\partial \tau_{yz}}{\partial y} + w \frac{\partial \tau_{zz}}{\partial z} + \rho w f_z \quad (2.69)$$

Adding Eqs. (2.67) to (2.69), and noting that  $u^2 + v^2 + w^2 = V^2$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{DV^2}{Dt} = & -u \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} - v \frac{\partial p}{\partial y} - w \frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + u \left( \frac{\partial \tau_{xx}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} \right) \\ & + v \left( \frac{\partial \tau_{xy}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yy}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zy}}{\partial z} \right) + w \left( \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yz}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zz}}{\partial z} \right) \\ & + \rho(u f_x + v f_y + w f_z) \end{aligned} \quad (2.70)$$

Subtracting Eq. (2.70) from (2.66), and noting that  $\rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V} = \rho(u f_x + v f_y + w f_z)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{De}{Dt} = & \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \\ & - p \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right) + \tau_{xx} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \tau_{yx} \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \tau_{zx} \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} \\ & + \tau_{xy} \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \tau_{yy} \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \tau_{zy} \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} + \tau_{xz} \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \\ & + \tau_{yz} \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + \tau_{zz} \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \end{aligned} \quad (2.71)$$

Equation (2.71) is a form of the energy equation where the substantial derivative on the left-hand side is strictly in terms of the internal energy only. The kinetic energy and the body force terms have dropped out; indeed, it is important to emphasize that

the energy equation when written in terms of  $e$  alone does not explicitly contain the body force. Also note that in comparison with Eq. (2.66), where the shear stresses and normal stresses multiplied by velocities appear *inside* the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  derivatives, in Eq. (2.71) the viscous stresses appear by themselves, multiplied by velocity gradients. Finally, we note that Eq. (2.71) is in *nonconservation* form; the manipulations which resulted in the derivation of Eq. (2.71) from Eq. (2.66) do not change that situation. By similar approaches, the energy equation can be couched also in terms of  $h$  and  $h + V^2/2$ ; the derivations are left to you (for your leisure time).

Let us take Eq. (2.71) a few steps further. Recall from Eqs. (2.57d) to (2.57f) that  $\tau_{xy} = \tau_{yx}$ ,  $\tau_{xz} = \tau_{zx}$ , and  $\tau_{yz} = \tau_{zy}$ . [This symmetry between the shear stresses is necessary to keep the angular velocity of a fluid element from going to infinity as the volume of the element shrinks to a point—it is associated with the moments exerted on the fluid element. See Schlichting (Ref. 20) for the details.] Hence, some of the terms in Eq. (2.71) can be factored, yielding

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{De}{Dt} = & \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \\ & - p \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right) + \tau_{xx} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \tau_{yy} \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \tau_{zz} \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \\ & + \tau_{yx} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right) + \tau_{zx} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) + \tau_{zy} \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (2.72)$$

Appealing again to Eqs. (2.57a) to (2.57f) in order to express the viscous stresses in terms of velocity gradients, Eq. (2.72) can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{De}{Dt} = & \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \\ & - p \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right) + \lambda \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right)^2 \\ & + \mu \left[ 2 \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \right)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right)^2 \right. \\ & \quad \left. + \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} \right)^2 \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.73)$$

Equation (2.73) is a form of the energy equation completely in terms of the flow-field variables. A similar substitution of Eqs. (2.57a) to (2.57f) can be made into Eq. (2.66); the resulting form of the energy equation in terms of the flow-field variables is lengthy, and to save time and space it will not be given here.

We emphasize again that only the internal energy appears in the left-hand side of Eq. (2.73). Our derivation leading to Eq. (2.73) is an example of how the left side

of the energy equation can be couched in terms of different energy forms—for example, in terms of total energy in Eq. (2.66) and in terms of internal energy in Eq. (2.73). As stated earlier, other forms in terms of static enthalpy  $h$  and total enthalpy  $h + V^2/2$  can be obtained by similar manipulations. (For example, see Ref. 2 for these other forms.) This is one of the aspects of the energy equation mentioned earlier, namely, that the left-hand side can be expressed in terms of different energy forms; for each of these different forms, there is also a different form of the right-hand side of the energy equation. Now, let us address another aspect of the energy equation—an aspect common to the continuity and momentum equations as well—namely, that the energy equation can be expressed in conservation form. The forms of the energy equation given by Eqs. (2.66), (2.71), and (2.73) are expressed in terms of a substantial derivative on the left-hand side; hence these are nonconservation forms. They stem directly from our model of a *moving* fluid element. However, with some manipulation, all these equations can be expressed in conservation form. Let us examine this for the case of Eq. (2.73). Consider the left-hand side of Eq. (2.73). From the definition of the substantial derivative,

$$\rho \frac{De}{Dt} = \rho \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} + \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla e \quad (2.74)$$

However,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(\rho e)}{\partial t} &= \rho \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} + e \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \\ \text{or} \quad \rho \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} &= \frac{\partial(\rho e)}{\partial t} - e \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \end{aligned} \quad (2.75)$$

From the vector identity concerning the divergence of the product of a scalar times a vector,

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla \cdot (\rho e \mathbf{V}) &= e \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) + \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla e \\ \text{or} \quad \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot \nabla e &= \nabla \cdot (\rho e \mathbf{V}) - e \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) \end{aligned} \quad (2.76)$$

Substitute Eqs. (2.75) and (2.76) into (2.74):

$$\rho \frac{De}{Dt} = \frac{\partial(\rho e)}{\partial t} - e \left[ \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) \right] + \nabla \cdot (\rho e \mathbf{V}) \quad (2.77)$$

The term in brackets in Eq. (2.77) is zero, from the continuity equation, Eq. (2.33). Thus, Eq. (2.77) becomes

$$\rho \frac{De}{Dt} = \frac{\partial(\rho e)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho e \mathbf{V}) \quad (2.78)$$

Substituting Eq. (2.78) into Eq. (2.73), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial(\rho e)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho e \mathbf{V}) &= \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \\
&\quad - p \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right) + \lambda \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right)^2 \\
&\quad + \mu \left[ 2 \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \right)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right)^2 \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} \right)^2 \right]
\end{aligned} \tag{2.79}$$

Equation (2.79) is the *conservation* form of the energy equation, written in terms of the internal energy.

Repeating the steps from Eq. (2.74) to Eq. (2.78), except operating on the *total* energy  $e + V^2/2$  instead of just the internal energy  $e$ , we obtain

$$\rho \frac{D(e + V^2/2)}{Dt} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \right] + \nabla \cdot \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \mathbf{V} \right] \tag{2.80}$$

Substituting Eq. (2.80) into the left-hand side of Eq. (2.66), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \right] + \nabla \cdot \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \mathbf{V} \right] &= \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) \\
&\quad + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) - \frac{\partial(up)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial(vp)}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial(wp)}{\partial z} \\
&\quad + \frac{\partial(u\tau_{xx})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(u\tau_{yx})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(u\tau_{zx})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial(v\tau_{xy})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(v\tau_{yy})}{\partial y} \\
&\quad + \frac{\partial(v\tau_{zy})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial(w\tau_{xz})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(w\tau_{yz})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(w\tau_{zz})}{\partial z} + \rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V}
\end{aligned} \tag{2.81}$$

Equation (2.81) is the *conservation* form of the energy equation, written in terms of total energy  $e + V^2/2$ .

Note that the manipulations required to change the nonconservation form to the conservation form change only the left-hand side of the equations; the right-hand sides remain the same. For example, compare Eqs. (2.73) and (2.79). Both are in terms of internal energy. Equation (2.73) is in nonconservation form, and Eq. (2.79) is in conservation form. The left-hand sides are different forms, but the right-hand sides are the same. The same comparison can also be made between Eqs. (2.66) and (2.81).

## 2.8 SUMMARY OF THE GOVERNING EQUATIONS FOR FLUID DYNAMICS: WITH COMMENTS

By this point in our discussions, you have seen a large number of equations, and they may seem to you to “all look alike.” Equations by themselves can be tiring, and this chapter would seem to be “wall-to-wall” equations. However, *all* of theoretical and computational fluid dynamics is based on these equations, and therefore it is absolutely *essential* that you are familiar with them and that you understand their physical significance. That is why we have spent so much time and effort in deriving the governing equations.

Considering this time and effort, it is important to now summarize the important forms of these equations and to sit back and digest them. First of all, now is a good time to reflect back to the chapter road map in Fig. 2.1. We have already traveled our way through about 80 percent of this map. Starting at the top of Fig. 2.1, we have taken the three fundamental principles on which all of fluid dynamics is based (boxes *A–C*) and applied these to various models of the flow (boxes *D–H*). We have seen how each model of the flow leads *directly* to a particular form of the governing equation (the routes from left to right at the bottom center of Fig. 2.1, from boxes *E–H* to box *I*). We have also seen how these particular forms can be reexpressed by suitable manipulation into other forms of the equations (as illustrated for the continuity equation in Fig. 2.6). All routes lead to box *I* at the right of Fig. 2.1, which represents the basic continuity, momentum, and energy equations in all their glorious forms. In our present discussion, this is where we are now. For emphasis and clarity, in this section, we summarize those equations represented by box *I*.

### 2.8.1 Equations for Viscous Flow (the Navier-Stokes Equations)

A viscous flow is one where the transport phenomena of friction, thermal conduction, and/or mass diffusion are included. These transport phenomena are dissipative—they always increase the entropy of the flow. The equations that have been derived and discussed up to this point in the present chapter apply to such a viscous flow, with the exception that mass diffusion is not included. Mass diffusion occurs when there are concentration gradients of different chemical species in the flow. An example is a nonhomogeneous mixture of nonreacting gases, such as the flow field associated with the injection of helium through a hole or slot into a primary stream of air. Another example is a chemically reacting gas, such as the dissociation of air that occurs in the high-temperature flow over hypersonic vehicles; in such flows, concentration gradients are induced by different rates of reaction and/or by the prominence of different types of reactions in different parts of the flow at different pressures and temperatures. Chemically reacting flows as well as nonhomogenous flows are discussed at length in Ref. 2. These types of flows are not treated in the present book, simply for clarity. Our purpose here is to discuss the basic aspects of CFD—we choose not to obscure the computational aspects by

carrying along the extra complications and physics associated with chemically reacting flows. For this reason, diffusion is not included in the equations in this book. See Ref. 2 for an in-depth discussion of chemically reacting flows and especially for a discussion of the physical and numerical effects of mass diffusion.

With the above restrictions in mind, the governing equations for an unsteady, three-dimensional, compressible, viscous flow are:

### Continuity equation

*Nonconservation form*

$$\frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = 0 \quad (2.29)$$

*Conservation form*

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) = 0 \quad (2.30)$$

### Momentum equations

*Nonconservation form*

$$x \text{ component : } \rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xx}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} + \rho f_x \quad (2.50a)$$

$$y \text{ component : } \rho \frac{Dv}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xy}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yy}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zy}}{\partial z} + \rho f_y \quad (2.50b)$$

$$z \text{ component : } \rho \frac{Dw}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yz}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zz}}{\partial z} + \rho f_z \quad (2.50c)$$

*Conservation form*

*x* component:

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xx}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yx}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zx}}{\partial z} + \rho f_x \quad (2.56a)$$

*y* component:

$$\frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho v \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xy}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yy}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zy}}{\partial z} + \rho f_y \quad (2.56b)$$

*z* component:

$$\frac{\partial(\rho w)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho w \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \tau_{xz}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \tau_{yz}}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \tau_{zz}}{\partial z} + \rho f_z \quad (2.56c)$$

## Energy equation

*Nonconservation form*

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{D}{Dt} \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) = & \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \\ & - \frac{\partial (up)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial (vp)}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial (wp)}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{xx})}{\partial x} \\ & + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{yx})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{zx})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (v\tau_{xy})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial (v\tau_{yy})}{\partial y} \\ & + \frac{\partial (v\tau_{zy})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{xz})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{yz})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{zz})}{\partial z} + \rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V} \quad (2.66) \end{aligned}$$

*Conservation form*

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \right] + \nabla \cdot \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \mathbf{V} \right] = & \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) \\ & + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) - \frac{\partial (up)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial (vp)}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial (wp)}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{xx})}{\partial x} \\ & + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{yx})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial (u\tau_{zx})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (v\tau_{xy})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial (v\tau_{yy})}{\partial y} \\ & + \frac{\partial (v\tau_{zy})}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{xz})}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{yz})}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial (w\tau_{zz})}{\partial z} + \rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V} \quad (2.81) \end{aligned}$$

### 2.8.2 Equations for Inviscid Flow (the Euler Equations)

Inviscid flow is, by definition, a flow where the dissipative, transport phenomena of viscosity, mass diffusion, and thermal conductivity are *neglected*. If we take the equations listed in Sec. 2.8.1 and simply drop all the terms involving friction and thermal conduction, we then have the equations for an inviscid flow. The resulting equations for an unsteady, three-dimensional, compressible inviscid flow are displayed below.

## Continuity equation

*Nonconservation form*

$$\frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = 0 \quad (2.82a)$$

*Conservation form*

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V}) = 0 \quad (2.82b)$$

## Momentum equations

*Nonconservation form*

$$x \text{ component : } \rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \rho f_x \quad (2.83a)$$

$$y \text{ component : } \rho \frac{Dv}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \rho f_y \quad (2.83b)$$

$$z \text{ component : } \rho \frac{Dw}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + \rho f_z \quad (2.83c)$$

*Conservation form*

$$x \text{ component : } \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \rho f_x \quad (2.84a)$$

$$y \text{ component : } \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho v \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \rho f_y \quad (2.84b)$$

$$z \text{ component : } \frac{\partial(\rho w)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho w \mathbf{V}) = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + \rho f_z \quad (2.84c)$$

## Energy equation

*Nonconservation form*

$$\rho \frac{D}{Dt} \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) = \rho \dot{q} - \frac{\partial(up)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial(vp)}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial(wp)}{\partial z} + \rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V} \quad (2.85)$$

*Conservation form*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \right] + \nabla \cdot \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \mathbf{V} \right] = \rho \dot{q} - \frac{\partial(up)}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial(vp)}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial(wp)}{\partial z} + \rho \mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{V} \quad (2.86)$$

### 2.8.3 Comments on the Governing Equations

Surveying all the equations summarized in Sec. 2.8.1 and 2.8.2, several comments and observations can be made, as follows:

1. They are a coupled system of nonlinear partial differential equations, and hence are very difficult to solve analytically. To date, there is no general closed-form solution to these equations. (This does not mean that no general solution exists—we just have not been able to find one.)
2. For the momentum and energy equations, the difference between the non-conservation and conservation forms of the equations is just the left-hand side.

The right-hand side of the equations in the two different forms is the same.

3. Note that the conservation forms of the equations contain terms on the left-hand side which include the divergence of some quantity, such as  $\nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{V})$  or  $\nabla \cdot (\rho u \mathbf{V})$ . For this reason, the conservation form of the governing equations is sometimes called the *divergence form*.
4. The normal and shear stress terms in these equations are functions of the velocity gradients, as given by Eqs. (2.57a–b).
5. Examine the equations in Sec. 2.8.1 and 2.8.2 closely. Count the number of unknown, dependent variables in each section. In both cases, we have five equations in terms of six unknown flow-field variables  $\rho$ ,  $p$ ,  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ ,  $e$ . In aerodynamics, it is generally reasonable to assume the gas is a perfect gas (which assumes that intermolecular forces are negligible—see Refs. 1, 8, and 21). For a perfect gas, the equation of state is

$$p = \rho RT$$

where  $R$  is the specific gas constant. This equation is sometimes labeled the *thermal equation of state*. This provides a sixth equation, but it also introduces a seventh unknown, namely, temperature  $T$ . A seventh equation to close the entire system must be a thermodynamic relation between state variables. For example,

$$e = e(T, p)$$

For a calorically perfect gas (constant specific heats), this relation would be

$$e = c_v T$$

where  $c_v$  is the specific heat at constant volume. This equation is sometimes labeled the *caloric equation of state*.

6. In Sec. 2.6, the momentum equations for a viscous flow were identified as the *Navier-Stokes equations*, which is historically accurate. However, in the modern CFD literature, this terminology has been expanded to include the *entire system* of flow equations for the solution of a viscous flow—continuity and energy as well as momentum. Therefore, when the CFD literature discusses a numerical solution to the “complete Navier-Stokes equations,” it usually is referring to a numerical solution of the *complete system of equations*, say, for example Eqs. (2.33), (2.56a) to (2.56c), and (2.81). In this sense, in the CFD literature, a “Navier-Stokes solution” simply means a solution of a *viscous flow* problem using the *full governing equations*. This is why the entire block of equations summarized in Sec. 2.8.1 is labeled as the Navier-Stokes equations. This author suspects that the CFD usage of this nomenclature will soon seep through all of fluid dynamics. For this reason, and because the subject of this book is CFD, we will follow this nomenclature. That is, when we refer to the Navier-Stokes equations, we will mean the whole system of equations, such as summarized in Sec. 2.8.1.
7. In a similar vein, the equations for inviscid flow in Sec. 2.8.2 are labeled as the *Euler equations*. Historically, Euler derived the continuity and momentum equations in 1753; he did not deal with the energy equation—indeed, he had

very little to work with because the science of thermodynamics is a nineteenth century product. Therefore, on a strictly historical basis, only the continuity and momentum equations can be labeled as the Euler equations. Indeed, in much of the fluid dynamics literature, just the momentum equations for an inviscid flow, e.g., Eqs. (2.83a) to (2.83c), are labeled as the Euler equations. However, in the modern CFD literature, solutions to the complete system of equations for an inviscid flow, e.g., the equations summarized in Sec. 2.8.2, are called *Euler solutions*, and the whole system of equations—continuity, momentum, and energy—are called the Euler equations. We will follow this nomenclature in the present book.

## 2.9 PHYSICAL BOUNDARY CONDITIONS

The equations given above govern the flow of a fluid. They are the same equations whether the flow is, for example, over a Boeing 747, through a subsonic wind tunnel, or past a windmill. However, the flow fields are quite *different* for these cases, although the governing equations are the *same*. Why? Where does the difference enter? The answer is through the *boundary conditions*, which are quite different for each of the above examples. The boundary conditions, and sometimes the initial conditions, dictate the particular solutions to be obtained from the governing equations. When the geometric shape of a Boeing 747 is treated, when certain physical boundary conditions are applied on that particular geometric surface, and when the appropriate boundary conditions associated with the free-stream far ahead of the airplane are invoked, then the resulting solution of the governing partial differential equations will yield the flow field over the Boeing 747. This is in contrast to the flow-field solutions that would be obtained for a windmill if the geometric shape and freestream conditions pertinent to the windmill were treated. Hence, once we have the governing flow equations as described in the previous sections, then the real *driver* for any particular solution is the *boundary conditions*. This has particular significance in CFD; any numerical solution of the governing flow equations must be made to see a strong and compelling numerical representation of the proper boundary conditions.

First, let us review the proper physical boundary conditions for a viscous flow. Here, the boundary condition on a surface assumes zero relative velocity between the surface and the gas immediately at the surface. This is called the *no-slip* condition. If the surface is stationary, with the flow moving past it, then

$$u = v = w = 0 \quad \text{at the surface (for a viscous flow)} \quad (2.87)$$

In addition, there is an analogous “no-slip” condition associated with the temperature at the surface. If the material temperature of the surface is denoted by  $T_w$  (the wall temperature), then the temperature of the fluid layer immediately in contact with the surface is also  $T_w$ . If in a given problem the wall temperature is known, then the proper boundary condition on the gas temperature  $T$  is

$$T = T_w \quad (\text{at the wall}) \quad (2.88)$$

On the other hand, if the wall temperature is not known, e.g., if it is changing as a function of time due to aerodynamic heat transfer to or from the surface, then the Fourier law of heat conduction provides the boundary condition at the surface. If we let  $\dot{q}_w$  denote the instantaneous heat flux to the wall, then from the Fourier law

$$\dot{q}_w = - \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial n} \right)_w \quad (\text{at the wall}) \quad (2.89)$$

where  $n$  denotes the direction normal to the wall. Here, the surface material is responding to the heat transfer to the wall,  $\dot{q}_w$ , hence changing  $T_w$ , which in turn affects  $\dot{q}_w$ . This general, unsteady heat transfer problem must be solved by treating the viscous flow and the thermal response of the wall material simultaneously. This type of boundary condition, as far as the flow is concerned, is a boundary condition on the temperature *gradient* at the wall, in contrast to the stipulating the wall temperature itself as the boundary condition. That is, from Eq. (2.89),

$$\left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial n} \right)_w = - \frac{\dot{q}_w}{k} \quad (\text{at the wall}) \quad (2.90)$$

Finally, when the wall temperature becomes such that there is *no heat transfer to the surface*, this wall temperature, by definition, is called the *adiabatic wall temperature*  $T_{aw}$ . The proper boundary condition for the adiabatic wall case comes from Eq. (2.90) with  $\dot{q}_w = 0$ , by definition. Hence, for an adiabatic wall, the boundary condition is

$$\left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial n} \right)_w = 0 \quad (\text{at the wall}) \quad (2.91)$$

Once again, we see that the wall boundary condition is the stipulation of the temperature *gradient* at the wall; the actual adiabatic wall temperature  $T_{aw}$  then falls out as part of the flow-field solution.

Of all the temperature boundary conditions stated above, that of a fixed wall temperature [Eq. (2.88)] is the easiest to apply, with that of an adiabatic wall [Eq. (2.91)] being the next easiest. These two different cases represent two extreme ends of the general problem, which is that associated with the boundary condition given by Eq. (2.90). However, the general problem, which involves the coupled solution of the flow field with the thermal response of the surface material, is by far the most difficult to set up. For these reasons, the vast majority of viscous flow solutions assume either a constant wall temperature or an adiabatic wall. In summary, if Eq. (2.88) is used as the boundary condition, then the temperature gradient at the wall,  $(\partial T / \partial n)_w$ , and hence  $\dot{q}_w$  fall out as part of the solution. If Eq. (2.91) is used as the boundary condition, then  $T_{aw}$  falls out as part of the solution. If Eq. (2.90) is used as the boundary condition, along with a coupled solution with the thermal response of the material, then  $T_w$  and  $(\partial T / \partial n)_w$  fall out as part of the solution.

Finally, we note that the only physical boundary conditions along a wall for a continuum viscous flow are the no-slip conditions discussed above; these boundary conditions are associated with velocity and temperature at the wall. Other flow properties, such as pressure and density at the wall, fall out as part of the solution.

For an *inviscid flow*, there is no friction to promote its “sticking” to the surface. Hence, the flow velocity at the wall is a finite, nonzero value. Moreover, for a nonporous wall, there can be no mass flow into or out of the wall; this means that the flow velocity vector immediately adjacent to the wall must be *tangent* to the wall. If  $\mathbf{n}$  is a unit normal vector at a point on the surface, the wall boundary condition can be given as

$$\mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{n} = 0 \quad (\text{at the surface}) \quad (2.92)$$

Equation (2.92) is simply a statement that the component of velocity perpendicular to the wall is zero; i.e., the flow at the surface is tangent to the wall. This is the only surface boundary condition for an inviscid flow. The magnitude of the velocity, as well as values of the fluid temperature, pressure, and density at the wall, falls out as part of the solution.

Depending on the problem at hand, whether it be viscous or inviscid, there are various types of boundary conditions elsewhere in the flow, away from the surface boundary. For example, for flow through a duct of fixed shape, there are boundary conditions which pertain to the inflow and outflow boundaries, such as at the inlet and exit of the duct. If the problem involves an aerodynamic body immersed in a known freestream, then the boundary conditions applied at a distance infinitely far upstream, above, below, and downstream of the body are simply that of the given freestream conditions.

The boundary conditions discussed above are *physical boundary conditions* imposed by nature. In CFD we have an additional concern, namely, the *proper numerical implementation of these physical boundary conditions*. In the same sense as the real flow field is dictated by the physical boundary conditions, the computed flow field is driven by the numerical formulation designed to simulate these boundary conditions. The subject of proper and accurate boundary conditions in CFD is very important and is the subject of much current CFD research. We will return to this matter at appropriate stages in this book.

## 2.10 FORMS OF THE GOVERNING EQUATIONS PARTICULARLY SUITED FOR CFD: COMMENTS ON THE CONSERVATION FORM, SHOCK FITTING, AND SHOCK CAPTURING

In this section, we finally address the significance of the conservation versus the nonconservation forms of the governing flow equations vis-à-vis applications of CFD. In the historical development of these equations, there was no reason for a preference of one form over the other; indeed, theoretical fluid dynamics evolved quite well over the last few centuries without paying any attention to this matter. This is reflected in *all* the general fluid dynamics and aerodynamics textbooks up to the early 1980s, where this author defies you to find any mention of, or reference to, conservation versus nonconservation forms—the equations are there, but they are

simply not identified in these terms. The labeling of the governing equations as either conservation or nonconservation form grew out of modern CFD, as well as concern for when one form or the other should be used for a given CFD application. Let us address this matter from two perspectives.

The first perspective is simply that the conservation form of the governing equations provides a numerical and computer programming *convenience* in that the continuity, momentum, and energy equations in conservation form can all be expressed by the same generic equation. This can help to simplify and organize the logic in a given computer program. To prepare us for this generic form, note that all the previous equations in *conservation form* have a divergence term on the left-hand side. These terms involve the divergence of the *flux* of some physical quantity, such as

From Eq. (2.33) :	$\rho \mathbf{V}$	mass flux
From Eq. (2.56a) :	$\rho u \mathbf{V}$	flux of $x$ component of momentum
From Eq. (2.56b) :	$\rho v \mathbf{V}$	flux of $y$ component of momentum
From Eq. (2.56c) :	$\rho w \mathbf{V}$	flux of $z$ component of momentum
From Eq. (2.79) :	$\rho e \mathbf{V}$	flux of internal energy
From Eq. (2.81) :	$\rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \mathbf{V}$	flux of total energy

Recall that the conservation form of the equations was obtained *directly* from a control volume which was *fixed in space* rather than moving with the fluid. When the volume is fixed in space, we are concerned with the *flux* of mass, momentum, and energy into and out of the volume. In this case, the *fluxes* themselves become important dependent variables in the equations, rather than just the primitive variables such as  $p$ ,  $\rho$ ,  $\mathbf{V}$ .

Let us pursue this idea further. Examine the *conservation* form of *all* the governing equations—continuity, momentum, and energy. This is perhaps most conveniently done by returning to Secs. 2.8.1 and 2.8.2, where the governing equations for viscous and inviscid flows, respectively, are compactly summarized. Looking at the conservation forms, we note that they all have the same generic form, given by

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial H}{\partial z} = J} \quad (2.93)$$

Equation (2.93) can represent the *entire system* of governing equations in conservation form if  $U$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $H$ , and  $J$  are interpreted as column vectors, given by

$$U = \begin{Bmatrix} \rho \\ \rho u \\ \rho v \\ \rho w \\ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.94)$$

$$F = \begin{Bmatrix} \rho u \\ \rho u^2 + p - \tau_{xx} \\ \rho vu - \tau_{xy} \\ \rho wu - \tau_{xz} \\ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) u + pu - k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} - u\tau_{xx} - v\tau_{xy} - w\tau_{xz} \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.95)$$

$$G = \begin{Bmatrix} \rho v \\ \rho uv - \tau_{yx} \\ \rho v^2 + p - \tau_{yy} \\ \rho wv - \tau_{yz} \\ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) w + pv - k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} - u\tau_{yx} - v\tau_{yy} - w\tau_{yz} \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.96)$$

$$H = \begin{Bmatrix} \rho w \\ \rho uw - \tau_{zx} \\ \rho vw - \tau_{zy} \\ \rho w^2 + p - \tau_{zz} \\ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) w + pw - k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} - u\tau_{zx} - v\tau_{zy} - w\tau_{zz} \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.97)$$

$$J = \begin{Bmatrix} 0 \\ \rho f_x \\ \rho f_y \\ \rho f_z \\ \rho(u f_x + v f_y + w f_z) + \rho \dot{q} \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.98)$$

In Eq. (2.93), the column vectors  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$  are called the *flux terms* (or *flux vectors*), and  $J$  represents a *source term* (which is zero if body forces and volumetric heating are negligible.) The column vector  $U$  is called the *solution vector*, for reasons to be stated shortly. To help yourself get used to this generic equation written in terms of column vectors, note that the first elements of the  $U$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $H$ , and  $J$  vectors, when added together via Eq. (2.93), reproduce the continuity equation. The second elements of the  $U$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $H$ , and  $J$  vectors, when added together via Eq. (2.93), reproduce the  $x$ -momentum equation, and so forth. Indeed, Eq. (2.93) is

simply one large column vector equation which represents the whole system of governing equations.

Let us explore the ramifications of Eq. (2.93) further. It is written with a time derivative  $\partial U / \partial t$ ; hence it applies to an *unsteady flow*. In a given problem, the actual transients in an unsteady flow may be of primary interest. In other problems, a steady-state solution may be desired but wherein the best manner to solve for this steady state is to solve the unsteady equations and let the steady state be approached asymptotically at large times. (This approach is sometimes called the *time-dependent* solution of steady flows; the solution of the supersonic blunt body problem as discussed at the end of Sec. 1.5 is one such example.) We will be exploring such matters in depth in Part III of this book dealing with applications of CFD; we mention them here only in passing. For either an inherent transient solution, or a time-dependent solution leading to a steady state, the solution of Eq. (2.93) takes the form of a *time-marching* solution, i.e., where the dependent flow-field variables are solved progressively in steps of time. For such a time-marching solution, we isolate  $\partial U / \partial t$  by rearranging Eq. (2.93) as

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = J - \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial H}{\partial z} \quad (2.99)$$

In Eq. (2.99),  $U$  is called the solution vector because the elements in  $U$  ( $\rho$ ,  $\rho u$ ,  $\rho v$ , etc.) are the dependent variables which are usually obtained numerically in steps of time; the spatial derivatives on the right side of Eq. (2.99) are considered in some fashion as known, say from the previous time step. Please note that, in this formalism, it is the elements of  $U$  which are obtained computationally; i.e., numbers are directly obtained for the density  $\rho$  and the *products*  $\rho u$ ,  $\rho v$ ,  $\rho w$ , and  $\rho(e + V^2/2)$ . These are called the *flux variables*. This is in contrast to  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ , and  $e$  by themselves, which are examples of *primitive variables*. Hence, in a computational solution of an unsteady flow problem using Eq. (2.99), the dependent variables are the elements of the  $U$  vector as displayed in Eq. (2.94), that is,  $\rho$ ,  $\rho u$ ,  $\rho v$ ,  $\rho w$ , and  $\rho(e + V^2/2)$ . Of course, once numbers are known for these dependent variables (which includes  $\rho$  by itself), obtaining the primitive variables is simple:

$$\rho = \rho \quad (2.100)$$

$$u = \frac{\rho u}{\rho} \quad (2.101)$$

$$v = \frac{\rho v}{\rho} \quad (2.102)$$

$$w = \frac{\rho w}{\rho} \quad (2.103)$$

$$e = \frac{\rho(e + V^2/2)}{\rho} - \frac{u^2 + v^2 + w^2}{2} \quad (2.104)$$

For example, the first element of the  $U$  vector is  $\rho$  itself; a number for  $\rho$  is obtained

by solving Eq. (2.99). The second element of  $U$  is  $\rho u$ ; a number for the *product*  $\rho u$  is obtained by solving Eq. (2.99). In turn, a number for the primitive variable  $u$  is easily obtained from Eq. (2.101) by taking the number obtained for  $\rho u$  and dividing it by the number obtained for  $\rho$ . The same approach can be used to obtain the primitive variables  $v$ ,  $w$ , and  $e$  from the numbers for the flux variables, as shown by Eqs. (2.102) to (2.104).

For an *inviscid* flow, Eqs. (2.93) and (2.99) remain the same, except that the elements of the column vectors are simplified. Examining the conservation form of the inviscid equations summarized in Sec. 2.8.2, we find that

$$U = \begin{Bmatrix} \rho \\ \rho u \\ \rho v \\ \rho w \\ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.105)$$

$$F = \begin{Bmatrix} \rho u \\ \rho u^2 + p \\ \rho uv \\ \rho uw \\ \rho u \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) + pu \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.106)$$

$$G = \begin{Bmatrix} \rho v \\ \rho uv \\ \rho v^2 + p \\ \rho wv \\ \rho v \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) + pv \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.107)$$

$$H = \begin{Bmatrix} \rho w \\ \rho uw \\ \rho vw \\ \rho w^2 + p \\ \rho w \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) + pw \end{Bmatrix} \quad (2.108)$$

$$J = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 0 \\ \rho f_x \\ \rho f_y \\ \rho f_z \\ \rho(u f_x + v f_y + w f_z) + \rho \dot{q} \end{array} \right\} \quad (2.109)$$

For the numerical solution of an unsteady inviscid flow, once again the solution vector is  $U$ , and the dependent variables for which numbers are directly obtained are  $\rho$ ,  $\rho u$ ,  $\rho v$ ,  $\rho w$ , and  $\rho(e + V^2/2)$ .

In CFD, marching solutions are not limited to marching just in time. Under certain circumstances, steady-state flows can also be solved by marching in a given spatial direction. The circumstances that allow the use of a spatially marching solution depend on the mathematical properties of the governing equation, and will be developed in later chapters, beginning with Chap. 3. For our purposes at present, simply imagine that we are dealing with a steady flow, for which  $\partial U / \partial t = 0$  in Eq. (2.93). If a marching solution in the  $x$  direction is allowed, then Eq. (2.93) is rearranged as

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} = J - \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial H}{\partial z} \quad (2.110)$$

Here,  $F$  becomes the “solution” vector; we can imagine that the terms on the right side of Eq. (2.110) are known, say by evaluation at the previous step, i.e., at the previous upstream  $x$  location. This leaves the elements of the  $F$  vector at the next step, i.e., at the next downstream  $x$  location, as the unknowns. For simplicity, let us assume that we are dealing with an inviscid flow. In such a case, the dependent variables are the elements of  $F$  as displayed in Eq. (2.106), namely,  $\rho u$ ,  $\rho u^2 + p$ ,  $\rho u v$ ,  $\rho u w$ , and  $\rho u(e + V^2/2) + pu$ . The numerical solution of Eq. (2.110) yields numbers for these dependent variables, called the flux variables. From these dependent variables, it is possible to obtain the primitive variables, although the algebra is more complex than in our previously discussed case for unsteady flow. To see this more clearly, let us denote the flux variables which appear as elements of  $F$  as displayed in Eq. (2.106) by

$$\rho u = c_1 \quad (2.111a)$$

$$\rho u^2 + p = c_2 \quad (2.111b)$$

$$\rho u v = c_3 \quad (2.111c)$$

$$\rho u w = c_4 \quad (2.111d)$$

$$\rho u \left( e + \frac{u^2 + v^2 + w^2}{2} \right) + pu = c_5 \quad (2.111e)$$

A numerical solution of Eq. (2.110) for an inviscid flow yields numbers for  $c_1$ ,  $c_2$ ,  $c_3$ ,  $c_4$ , and  $c_5$  at specific points throughout the flow. Consider just one of those points. The numerical solution yields numbers for the right-hand sides of Eqs. (2.111a) to (2.111e) at that point. In turn, Eqs. (2.111a) to (2.111e) can be solved

simultaneously for the primitive variables  $\rho$ ,  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ , and  $p$ , and  $e$  at that point. Note that we have six unknowns. To Eqs. (2.111a) to (2.111e) must be added a thermodynamic state relation; for a system in thermodynamic equilibrium, this relation can be of the generic form

$$e = e(p, \rho) \quad (2.112a)$$

Indeed, if we are dealing with a calorically perfect gas, i.e., a gas with constant specific heats (see, for example, Ref. 21), this state relation is  $e = c_v T$ , with  $c_v = R/(\gamma - 1)$ , where  $R$  is the specific gas constant. Also involving the perfect gas equation of state,  $p = \rho RT$ , we have

$$e = c_v T = \frac{RT}{\gamma - 1} = \frac{R}{\gamma - 1} \frac{p}{\rho R} \quad (2.112b)$$

or

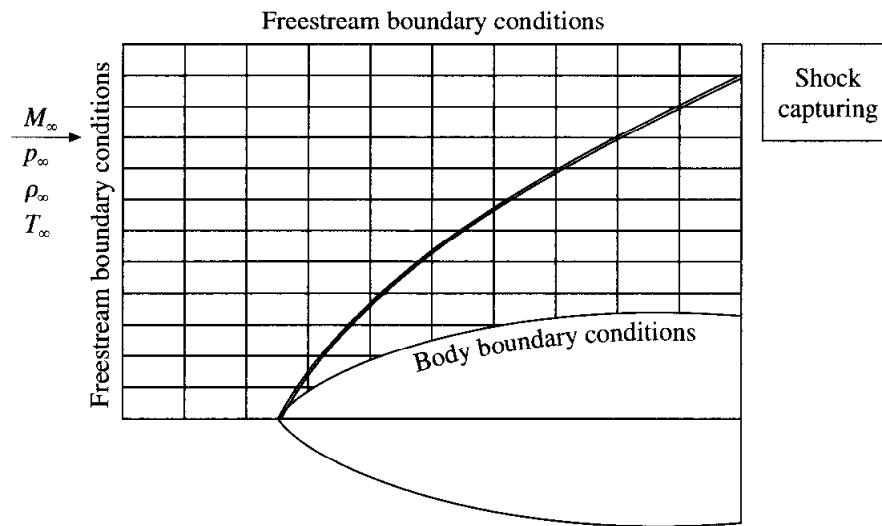
$$e = \frac{1}{\gamma - 1} \frac{p}{\rho}$$

Equations (2.111a) to (2.111e) and Eq. (2.112b) constitute all six equations from which the six unknown primitive variables can be obtained. The algebra necessary to solve these six equations for explicit relations for  $\rho$ ,  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ ,  $p$ , and  $e$  individually in terms of the known  $c_1$ ,  $c_2$ ,  $c_3$ ,  $c_4$ , and  $c_5$  is left to you as Prob. 2.1. Finally, we note that the algebra is even more complex when we consider a viscous flow, where the solution yields numbers for the elements of the  $F$  vector as displayed in Eq. (2.95). Here, we also have to contend with the viscous stresses, and the decoding for the primitive variables becomes yet more involved.

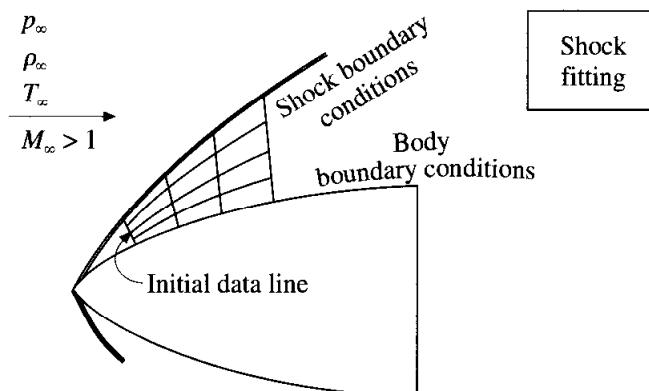
We have emphasized the distinction between nonconservation and conservation forms of the governing equations. Let us now expand the definition of the conservation form into two categories: *strong* and *weak*. Notice that the governing equations, when written in the form of Eq. (2.93), have no flow variables outside the single  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ , and  $t$  derivatives. Indeed, the terms in Eq. (2.93) have everything buried inside these derivatives. The flow equations in the form of Eq. (2.93) are said to be in *strong* conservation form. In contrast, examine the form of Eqs. (2.56a) to (2.56c) and (2.81). These equations have a number of  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  derivatives explicitly appearing on the right-hand side. These are the *weak* conservation form of the equations.

At the beginning of this section, we stated that the matter of conservation versus nonconservation forms of the governing equations within the framework of CFD would be discussed from two perspectives. The ensuing material discussed the first perspective—that the conservation form provides a numerical and computer convenience due to the generic form of Eq. (2.93). Now, let us consider the second perspective—one that is much more compelling than the first. Also, this second perspective is intertwined with two distinct and different philosophical approaches for the calculation of flows with shock waves, namely, the shock-fitting approach and the shock-capturing approach. Let us first define these different approaches to handling shock waves. In flow fields involving shock waves, there are sharp, discontinuous changes in the primitive flow-field variables  $p$ ,  $\rho$ ,  $u$ ,  $T$ , etc., across the

shocks. Many computations of flows with shocks are designed to have the shock waves appear naturally within the computational space as a direct result of the overall flow-field solution, i.e., as a direct result of the general algorithm, without any special treatment to take care of the shocks themselves. Such approaches are called *shock-capturing methods*. This is in contrast to the alternate approach, where shock waves are *explicitly* introduced into the flow-field solution, the exact Rankine-Hugoniot relations for changes across a shock are used to relate the flow immediately ahead of and behind the shock, and the governing flow equations are used to calculate the remainder of the flow field between the shock and some other boundary, such as the surface of an aerodynamic body. This approach is called the *shock-fitting method*. These two different approaches are illustrated in Figs. 2.11 and 2.12. In Fig. 2.11, the computational domain for calculating the supersonic flow over the body extends both upstream and downstream of the nose. The shock wave is allowed to form within the computational domain as a consequence of the general flow-field algorithm, without any special shock relations being introduced. In this manner, the shock wave is “captured” within the domain by means of the computational solution of the governing partial differential equations. Therefore,



**FIG. 2.11**  
Grid for the shock-capturing approach.

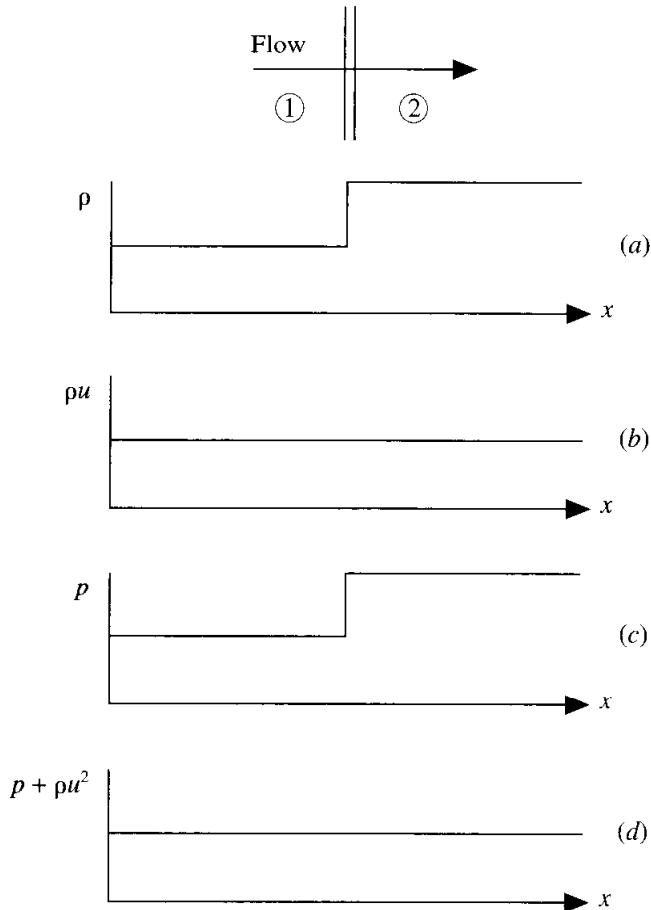


**FIG. 2.12**  
Grid for the shock-fitting approach.

Fig. 2.11 is an example of the *shock-capturing method*. In contrast, Fig. 2.12 illustrates the same flow problem, except that now the computational domain is the flow between the shock and the body. The shock wave is introduced directly into the solution as an explicit discontinuity, and the standard oblique shock relations (the Rankine-Hugoniot relations, see Ref. 21) are used to fit the freestream supersonic flow ahead of the shock to the flow computed by the partial differential equations downstream of the shock. Therefore, Fig. 2.12 is an example of the *shock-fitting method*. There are advantages and disadvantages of both methods. For example, the shock-capturing method is ideal for complex flow problems involving shock waves for which we do not know either the location or number of shocks. Here, the shocks simply form within the computational domain as nature would have it. Moreover, this takes place without requiring any special treatment of the shock within the algorithm and hence simplifies the computer programming. However, a disadvantage of this approach is that the shocks are generally smeared over a finite number of grid points in the computational mesh, and hence the numerically obtained shock thickness bears no relation whatsoever to the actual physical shock thickness, and the *precise* location of the shock discontinuity is uncertain within a few mesh sizes. In contrast, the advantage of the shock-fitting method is that the shock is always treated as a discontinuity, and its location is well-defined numerically. However, for a given problem you have to know in advance approximately where to put the shock waves, and how many there are. For complex flows, this can be a distinct disadvantage. Therefore, there are pros and cons associated with both shock-capturing and shock-fitting methods, and both have been employed extensively in CFD. In fact, a combination of these two methods is possible, wherein a shock-capturing approach during the course of the solution is used to predict the formation and approximate location of shocks, and then these shocks are fit with explicit discontinuities midway through the solution. Another combination is to fit shocks explicitly in those parts of a flow field where you know in advance they occur and to employ a shock-capturing method for the remainder of the flow field in order to generate shocks that you cannot predict in advance.

Again, what does all of this discussion have to do with the conservation form of the governing equations as given by Eq. (2.93)? Simply this, For the *shock-capturing* method, experience has shown that the *conservation form* of the governing equations should be used. When the conservation form is used, the computed flow-field results are generally smooth and stable. However, when the nonconservation form is used for a shock-capturing solution, the computed flow-field results usually exhibit unsatisfactory spatial oscillations (wiggles) upstream and downstream of the shock wave, the shocks may appear in the wrong location, and the solution may even become unstable. In contrast, for the shock-fitting method, satisfactory results are usually obtained for either form of the equations, conservation or nonconservation.

Why is the use of the conservation form of the equations so important for the shock-capturing method? The answer can be seen by considering the flow across a normal shock wave, as illustrated in Fig. 2.13. Consider the density distribution across the shock, as sketched in Fig. 2.13a. Clearly, there is a discontinuous increase in  $\rho$  across the shock. If the nonconservation form of the governing equations were



**FIG. 2.13**  
Variation of flow properties through a normal shock wave.

used to calculate this flow, where the primary dependent variables are the primitive variables such as  $\rho$  and  $p$ , then the equations would see a large discontinuity in the dependent variable  $\rho$ . This in turn would compound the numerical errors associated with the calculation of  $\rho$ . On the other hand, recall the continuity equation for a normal shock wave (see Ref. 8 and 21):

$$\rho_1 u_1 = \rho_2 u_2 \quad (2.113)$$

From Eq. (2.113), the *mass flux*  $\rho u$  is *constant* across the shock wave, as illustrated in Fig. 2.13b. The conservation form of the governing equations uses the product  $\rho u$  as a dependent variable, and hence the conservation form of the equations see *no* discontinuity in this dependent variable in the normal direction across the shock wave. In turn, the numerical accuracy and stability of the solution should be greatly enhanced. To reinforce this discussion, consider the momentum equation across a normal shock wave (Refs. 8 and 21):

$$p_1 + \rho_1 u_1^2 = p_2 + \rho_2 u_2^2 \quad (2.114)$$

As shown in Fig. 2.13c, the pressure itself is discontinuous across the shock; however, from Eq. (2.114) the flux variable  $p + \rho u^2$  is constant across the shock. This is illustrated in Fig. 2.13d. Examining the inviscid flow equations in the conservation form given by Eq. (2.93) with the flux vectors displayed as Eqs.

(2.105) to (2.109), we clearly see from the  $F$  vector in Eq. (2.106) that the quantity  $p + \rho u^2$  is one of the dependent variables. Therefore, the conservation form of the equations would see no discontinuity in this dependent variable in a normal direction across the shock. Although this example of the flow across a normal shock wave is somewhat simplistic, it serves to explain why the use of the conservation form of the governing equations is so important for calculations using the shock-capturing method. Because the conservation form uses flux variables as the dependent variables and because the changes in these flux variables are either zero or small across a shock wave, the numerical quality of a shock-capturing method will be enhanced by the use of the conservation form in contrast to the nonconservation form, which uses the primitive variables as dependent variables.

In summary, the previous discussion is one of the primary reasons why CFD makes a distinction between the two forms of the governing equations, conservation and nonconservation. And this is why we have gone to great lengths in this chapter to derive these different forms, to explain what basic physical models lead to the different forms, and why we should be aware of the differences between the two forms. Again, we emphasize that the distinction CFD places between conservation and nonconservation forms of the equation is an outgrowth of the realities of *numerical* solutions—it is germane to CFD only. In the world of purely theoretical fluid dynamics, we could not care less.

Finally, recall the discussion in Sec. 2.5.6 regarding a fundamental difference between the integral form and the differential form of the equations. The integral form does not require mathematical continuity, whereas the differential form assumes mathematical continuity. This situation imposes extreme conditions on a solution with shock waves when the differential equations are used, no matter what form they take. In contrast, a formulation that deals directly with the integral form, such as the finite-volume method, is fundamentally more appropriate for such flows. For reasons such as these, the integral form of the governing equations can be considered as *more fundamental* than the differential form.

## 2.11 SUMMARY

This is a book on CFD; however, to this stage in our discussion we have yet to address any computational techniques. The reason is straightforward; before we can develop any computational solutions to any problem, we have to have the correct governing equations, with an in-depth physical understanding of what these equations mean. Such has been the purpose of this chapter. At this stage, it is well to return to the road map given in Fig. 2.1. Study this road map carefully, fixing in your mind the various aspects of our discussions that pertain to each box in Fig. 2.1. Focus especially on the governing equations in boxes *I* and *J*, which are summarized in Sec. 2.8 and 2.10, respectively. These equations are the “bread and butter” of CFD—learn them well.

Part I of this book has to do with the basic thoughts and equations which are the foundation of CFD (indeed, the foundation of all theoretical fluid dynamics). We are not quite finished with these basic thoughts. The partial differential equations for continuity, momentum, and energy in a fluid flow (like any system of partial differential equations) have certain mathematical behavior. This behavior may be different from one case to another, depending, for example, on the local Mach number of the flow—the same equations may have totally different mathematical behavior depending on whether the flow is locally subsonic or supersonic. (The supersonic blunt body problem described in Sec. 1.5 was, for a long time, the victim of this totally different mathematical behavior in locally subsonic and supersonic regions.) The behavior may be different depending on whether we are dealing with the Euler equations (for an inviscid flow) or the Navier-Stokes equations (for a fully viscous flow). The behavior may also be different depending on whether the flow is unsteady or steady. Of course, as you may suspect, any differences in mathematical behavior of these equations reflect different physical behavior as well. What does all this mean? The answer is contained in the next chapter—simply read on.

## PROBLEMS

- 2.1.** In conjunction with the spatially marching solutions of Eq. (2.110) for an inviscid flow, the elements of the solution vector  $F$  are given in Eqs. (2.111a) to (2.111e) as  $\rho u = c_1$ ,  $\rho u^2 + p = c_2$ ,  $\rho uv = c_3$ ,  $\rho uw = c_4$ , and  $\rho u[e + (u^2 + v^2 + w^2)/2] + pu = c_5$ . Derive expressions for the primitive variables  $\rho$ ,  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ , and  $p$  in terms of  $c_1$ ,  $c_2$ ,  $c_3$ ,  $c_4$ , and  $c_5$ . Assume a calorifically perfect gas (with constant  $\gamma$ ).

Answer:

$$\rho = \frac{-B \pm \sqrt{B^2 - 4AC}}{2A}$$

where

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{c_3^2}{c_1} + \frac{c_4^2}{c_1} \right) - c_5$$

$$B = \frac{\gamma c_1 c_2}{\gamma - 1}$$

$$C = -\frac{(\gamma + 1)c_1^3}{2(\gamma - 1)}$$

$$u = \frac{c_1}{\rho}$$

$$v = \frac{c_3}{c_1}$$

$$w = \frac{c_4}{c_1}$$

$$p = c_2 - \rho u^2$$

- 2.2.** Derive the momentum and energy equations for a viscous flow in integral form. Show that all three conservation equations—continuity momentum, and energy—can be put in a single generic integral form.

---

# CHAPTER

# 3

---

## MATHEMATICAL BEHAVIOR OF PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS: THE IMPACT ON CFD

*No knowledge can be certain, if it is not based upon mathematics or upon some other knowledge which is itself based upon the mathematical sciences.*

Leonardo da Vinci (1425–1519)

*Mathematics is the queen of the sciences.*

Carl Friedrich Gauss, 1856

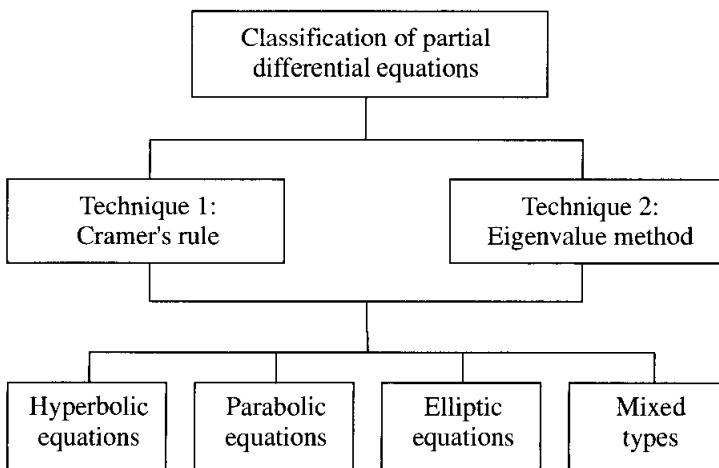
### 3.1 INTRODUCTION

A “rose is a rose is a rose . . .” as Gertrude Stein wrote. In turn, a partial differential equation is a partial differential equation is a partial differential equation—or is it? In this chapter, we will emphasize the answer—not really. We will find that, beyond just finding a solution to a given partial differential equation, we must be aware that such solutions have mathematical behavior which can be quite different from one circumstance to another. The same governing flow equations, when solved in one region of a flow field, can exhibit completely different solutions in another region, even though the equations themselves remain identically the same equations. It is just their *mathematical* behavior that is different. This mysterious aspect of differential equations was alluded to strongly in Sec. 2.11. The purpose of the present chapter is to remove (we hope) some of the mystery.

The governing equations of fluid dynamics derived in Chap. 2 are either integral forms [such as Eq. (2.19) obtained directly from a finite control volume] or partial differential equations [such as Eq. (2.25) obtained directly from an infinitesimal fluid element]. Before taking up a study of numerical methods for the solution of these equations, it is useful to examine some mathematical properties of partial differential equations themselves. Any valid numerical solution of the equations should exhibit the property of obeying the general mathematical properties of the governing equations.

Examine the governing partial differential equations of fluid dynamics as derived in Chap. 2. Note that in all cases the *highest-order* derivatives occur *linearly*; i.e., there are no products or exponentials of the highest-order derivatives—they appear by themselves, multiplied by coefficients which are functions of the dependent variables themselves. Such a system of equations is called a *quasi-linear system*. For example, for inviscid flows, examining the equations in Sec. 2.8.2 we find that the highest-order derivatives are first-order, and all of them appear linearly. For viscous flows, examining the equations in Sec. 2.8.1 we find the highest-order derivatives are second-order, and they always occur linearly. For this reason, in the next section, let us examine some mathematical properties of a system of quasi-linear partial differential equations. In the process, we will establish a classification of three types of partial differential equations—all three of which are encountered in fluid dynamics.

Finally, the road map for this chapter is given in Fig. 3.1. Here, we map out a fairly straightforward course. We will discuss two separate techniques for determining the classification of partial differential equations: the method using Cramer's rule, described in Sec. 3.2, and the eigenvalue method described in Sec. 3.3. Both these methods lead to the same results. We will see that many partial differential equations can be classified as either hyperbolic, parabolic, or elliptic; these definitions as well as many other details will be given in Sec. 3.2. Other equations are of a “mixed” type. We will then contrast the mathematical behavior of solutions of these different classes of equations, giving examples from actual fluid dynamic flows.



**FIG. 3.1**  
Road map for Chap. 3.

### 3.2 CLASSIFICATION OF QUASI-LINEAR PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

For simplicity, let us consider a fairly simple system of quasi-linear equations. They will *not* be the flow equations, but they are similar in some respects. Therefore, this section serves as a simplified example.

Consider the system of quasi-linear equations given below.

$$a_1 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + b_1 \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + c_1 \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + d_1 \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} = f_1 \quad (3.1a)$$

$$a_2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + b_2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + c_2 \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + d_2 \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} = f_2 \quad (3.1b)$$

where  $u$  and  $v$  are the dependent variables, functions of  $x$  and  $y$ , and the coefficients  $a_1, a_2, b_1, b_2, c_1, c_2, d_1, d_2, f_1$ , and  $f_2$  can be functions of  $x, y, u$ , and  $v$ . Furthermore,  $u$  and  $v$  are *continuous* functions of  $x$  and  $y$ ; we can imagine that  $u$  and  $v$  represent a continuous velocity field throughout the  $xy$  space. At any given point in the  $xy$  space, there is a unique value of  $u$  and a unique value of  $v$ ; moreover, the derivatives of  $u$  and  $v$ ,  $\partial u / \partial x, \partial u / \partial y, \partial v / \partial x, \partial v / \partial y$ , are finite values at this given point. We could imagine going into this flow field if it were set up in the laboratory and measuring both the velocities and their derivatives at any given point.

However, we are now going to make a strange statement. Consider any point in the  $xy$  plane, such as point  $P$  in Fig. 3.2. Let us seek the lines (or directions) through this point (if any exist) along with the *derivatives* of  $u$  and  $v$  are *indeterminant* and across which may be discontinuous. This sounds almost contradictory to our earlier statement in the previous paragraph, but it is not. If you are confused, just hang on for the next few paragraphs. These special lines that we are seeking are called *characteristic lines*. To find such lines, we recall that  $u$  and  $v$  are continuous functions of  $x$  and  $y$  and write their total differentials as

$$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} dy \quad (3.2a)$$

$$dv = \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} dy \quad (3.2b)$$

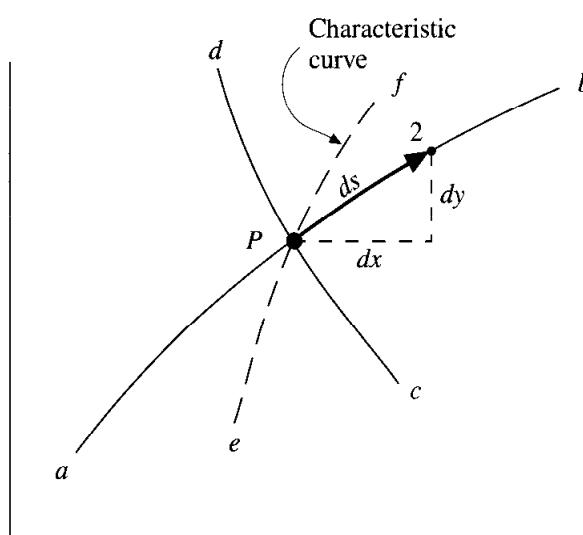


FIG. 3.2

Illustration of a characteristic curve.

Equations (3.1a) and (3.1b) and (3.2a) and (3.2b) constitute a system of four linear equations with four unknowns ( $\partial u/\partial x$ ,  $\partial u/\partial y$ ,  $\partial v/\partial x$ , and  $\partial v/\partial y$ ). These equations can be written in matrix form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & d_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & d_2 \\ dx & dy & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & dx & dy \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \partial u/\partial x \\ \partial u/\partial y \\ \partial v/\partial x \\ \partial v/\partial y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} f_1 \\ f_2 \\ du \\ dv \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.3)$$

Let  $[A]$  denote the coefficient matrix.

$$[A] \equiv \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & d_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & d_2 \\ dx & dy & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & dx & dy \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.4)$$

Let us solve Eq. (3.3) for the unknown  $\partial u/\partial x$ , using Cramer's rule. To do this, we define the matrix  $[B]$  as the matrix  $[A]$  with its first column replaced by the column vector on the right-hand side of Eq. (3.3), i.e.,

$$[B] = \begin{bmatrix} f_1 & b_1 & c_1 & d_1 \\ f_2 & b_2 & c_2 & d_2 \\ du & dy & 0 & 0 \\ dv & 0 & dx & dy \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.5)$$

Denoting the determinants of  $[A]$  and  $[B]$  by  $|A|$  and  $|B|$ , respectively, Cramer's rule gives the solution for  $\partial u/\partial x$  as

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{|B|}{|A|} \quad (3.6)$$

To obtain an actual number for  $\partial u/\partial x$  from Eq. (3.6), we have to establish values of  $du$ ,  $dv$ ,  $dx$ , and  $dy$  that appear in the matrices  $[A]$  and  $[B]$ . But what does this mean? What are  $dx$ ,  $dy$ ,  $du$ , and  $dv$ ? To answer this question, examine Fig. 3.2. Imagine a curve  $ab$  drawn through point  $P$  in an *arbitrary* direction. Let us move an infinitesimally small distance away from point  $P$ , following the curve  $ab$ , say to point 2. This small distance is denoted by  $ds$  in Fig. 3.2 and is the distance between points  $P$  and 2. The change in  $x$  associated with moving from point  $P$  to point 2 is  $dx = x_2 - x_p$ , and the associated change in  $y$  is  $dy = y_2 - y_p$ . These are the values of  $dx$  and  $dy$  that appear in matrices  $[A]$  and  $[B]$  as displayed in Eqs. (3.4) and (3.5). In addition, the values of  $u$  and  $v$  at point 2 are different than at point  $P$ ; they have changed by the amounts  $du = u_2 - u_p$  and  $dv = v_2 - v_p$ . These are the values of  $du$  and  $dv$  that appear in matrix  $[B]$  as displayed in Eq. (3.5). Inserting these numbers for  $dx$ ,  $dy$ ,  $du$ , and  $dv$  in Eqs. (3.4) and (3.5), we will obtain a solution for  $\partial u/\partial x$  from Eq. (3.6) in the limiting case as  $dx$  and  $dy$  go to zero. Now, draw *another* arbitrary curve through  $P$  in Fig. 3.2, say curve  $cd$ . We could go through the same scenario, i.e., move an infinitesimally small distance  $ds$  away from point  $P$  along curve  $cd$ , and obtain the corresponding values of  $dx$ ,  $dy$ ,  $du$ , and  $dv$ . These values will, of course, be different than those used earlier because we are moving in

a different direction away from point  $P$ , namely, this time along curve  $cd$  rather than curve  $ab$ . However, when these different values for  $dx$ ,  $dy$ ,  $du$ , and  $dv$  are inserted into Eqs. (3.4) and (3.5), in the limiting case as  $dx$  and  $dy$  go to zero, the *same* value for  $\partial u/\partial x$  is obtained from Eq. (3.6) as obtained earlier. Indeed, this has to be the case, since the value of  $\partial u/\partial x$  at point  $P$  is a fixed value, a *point value* if you wish, that has nothing inherently to do with “directions through point  $P$ .” We have only used the idea of “directions through point  $P$ ” to allow us to obtain a solution for  $\partial u/\partial x$  from Cramer’s rule using Eq. (3.6). The “direction” chosen is purely arbitrary, such as curves  $ab$  and  $cd$  in Fig. 3.2.

However, there is one major *exception* to this formalism. What happens if we choose to move in a direction away from point  $P$  such that  $|A|$  in Eq. (3.6) is zero? In Fig. 3.2, let  $ef$  be such a direction. Then in Eq. (3.6) the denominator is zero, and the calculation of  $\partial u/\partial x$  using this particular direction  $ef$  through point  $P$  is not possible. At best, we have to say that  $\partial u/\partial x$  is *indeterminant* when we choose this direction. By definition, curve  $ef$  is called a *characteristic curve* (or a *characteristic line*) through point  $P$ . In this sense, we have now explained the statement made earlier that might have seemed strange. Namely, if we consider any point  $P$  in the  $xy$  plane, let us seek the lines or directions through this point (if any exist) along which the derivatives of  $u$  and  $v$  are *indeterminant* and across which may even be discontinuous. We now know that if we pick just the right direction through point  $P$  such that  $dx$  and  $dy$  are just the right values to make  $|A| = 0$  in Eq. (3.6), then we have found the lines we were seeking—we have found the characteristic lines. In this case, such characteristic lines indeed do exist, and we can find them by setting

$$|A| = 0 \quad (3.7)$$

Note that the characteristic lines are independent of whether we are solving Eq. (3.3) for  $\partial u/\partial x$ , or  $\partial u/\partial y$ , or  $\partial v/\partial x$ , or  $\partial v/\partial y$ ; in all four cases,  $|A|$  is the same denominator for Cramer’s rule, and Eq. (3.7) defines the same characteristic lines.

When the characteristic lines do exist for a given system of equations, note that they are identifiable curves in the  $xy$  plane, such as curve  $ef$  sketched in Fig. 3.2. Therefore, we should be able to calculate the equations of these curves, and especially the slopes of the curves at point  $P$ . This calculation is readily made from Eq. (3.7). Recalling the elements of  $|A|$  from Eq. (3.4), we have

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & d_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & d_2 \\ dx & dy & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & dx & dy \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

Expanding the determinant, we have

$$(a_1c_2 - a_2c_1)(dy)^2 - (a_1d_2 - a_2d_1 + b_1c_2 - b_2c_1)dx\,dy + (b_1d_2 - b_2d_1)(dx)^2 = 0 \quad (3.8)$$

Divide Eq. (3.8) by  $(dx)^2$ .

$$(a_1c_2 - a_2c_1) \left( \frac{dy}{dx} \right)^2 - (a_1d_2 - a_2d_1 + b_1c_2 - b_2c_1) \frac{dy}{dx} + (b_1d_2 - b_2d_1) = 0 \quad (3.9)$$

Equation (3.9) is a quadratic equation in  $dy/dx$ . For any point in the  $xy$  plane, the solution of Eq. (3.9) will give the slopes of the lines along which the derivatives of  $u$  and  $v$  are indeterminant. Why? Because Eq. (3.9) was obtained by setting  $|A| = 0$ , which from the matrix Eq. (3.3) ensures that the solutions for the derivatives  $\partial u / \partial x$ ,  $\partial u / \partial y$ ,  $\partial v / \partial x$ , and  $\partial v / \partial y$ , are, at best, indeterminant. As stated earlier, these lines in the  $xy$  space along which the derivatives of  $u$  and  $v$  are indeterminant are called the *characteristic lines* for the system of equations given by Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b).

In Eq. (3.9), let

$$\begin{aligned} a &= (a_1c_2 - a_2c_1) \\ b &= -(a_1d_2 - a_2d_1 + b_1c_2 - b_2c_1) \\ c &= (b_1d_2 - b_2d_1) \end{aligned}$$

Then Eq. (3.9) can be written as

$$a \left( \frac{dy}{dx} \right)^2 + b \frac{dy}{dx} + c = 0 \quad (3.10)$$

Equation (3.10) can, in principle, be integrated to give  $y = y(x)$ , which is the equation of a characteristic curve in the  $xy$  plane. However, for our purposes, we are interested in only the *slopes* of the characteristics through point  $P$  in Fig. 3.2. Hence, from the quadratic formula:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \quad (3.11)$$

Equation (3.11) gives the direction of the characteristic lines through a given point in the  $xy$  plane, such as point  $P$  in Fig. 3.2. These lines have a different nature, depending on the value of the discriminant in Eq. (3.11). Denote the discriminant by  $D$ .

$$D = b^2 - 4ac \quad (3.12)$$

The mathematical classification of the system of equations given by Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b) is determined by the value of  $D$ . Specifically:

*If  $D > 0$*  Two real and distinct characteristics exist through each point in the  $xy$  plane. The system of equations given by Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b) is called *hyperbolic*.

*If  $D = 0$*  Here the system of Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b) is called *parabolic*.

*If  $D < 0$*  The characteristic lines are imaginary. The system of Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b) is called *elliptic*.

The classification of quasi-linear partial differential equations as either *elliptic*, *parabolic*, or *hyperbolic* is common in the analysis of such equations.

It is this classification which has been the major focus of this section. These three classes of equations have totally different behavior, as will be discussed shortly. The origin of the words “elliptic,” “parabolic,” or “hyperbolic” used to label these equations is simply a direct analogy with the case for conic sections. The general equation for a conic section from analytic geometry is

$$ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f = 0$$

where, if

- |                 |                          |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| $b^2 - 4ac > 0$ | the conic is a hyperbola |
| $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ | the conic is a parabola  |
| $b^2 - 4ac < 0$ | the conic is an ellipse  |

We could end this section here, as far as our purposes in this book are concerned. However, the temptation to extend the thoughts in this section one more step is too overwhelming, since it pertains to one of the classic methods in the solution of compressible flow problems—the method of characteristics. Return to Eq. (3.6). Note that, if only  $|A|$  were zero, then  $\partial u/\partial x$  would be infinite. However, the definition of a characteristic line states that  $\partial u/\partial x$  be indeterminant along the characteristic, not infinite. Thus, for  $\partial u/\partial x$  to be indeterminant,  $|B|$  in Eq. (3.6) must also be zero. Then,  $\partial u/\partial x$  is of the form

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{|B|}{|A|} = 0 \quad (3.13)$$

namely, an indeterminant form which can have a finite value. Hence, from Eq. (3.5)

$$|B| = \begin{vmatrix} f_1 & b_1 & c_1 & d_1 \\ f_2 & b_2 & c_2 & d_2 \\ du & dy & 0 & 0 \\ dv & 0 & dx & dy \end{vmatrix} = 0 \quad (3.14)$$

Expansion of the determinant in Eq. (3.14) yields an *ordinary differential equation* in terms of  $du$  and  $dv$ , where  $dx$  and  $dy$  are restricted to hold along a characteristic line (see Prob. 3.1). [Since  $|B| = 0$  is a direct consequence of  $|A| = 0$  from Eq. (3.13), then whatever relation is derived from setting  $|B| = 0$  must be restricted to hold along a characteristic line.] The equation for the dependent variables  $u$  and  $v$  which comes from Eq. (3.14) is called the *compatibility equation*. It is an equation involving the unknown dependent variables which holds *only* along the characteristic line; the advantage of this compatibility equation is that it is in one less dimension than the original partial differential equations. Since the model equations treated in this section [Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b)] are partial differential equations in two dimensions, then the compatibility equation is in one dimension—hence it is an ordinary differential equation—and the “one dimension” is along the characteristic direction. Since ordinary differential equations are in general simpler to solve than partial differential equations, then the compatibility equations provide some advantage. This leads to a solution technique for the original system of equations

[Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b)] wherein the characteristic lines are constructed in the  $xy$  space, and the simpler compatibility equations are solved along these characteristics. This technique is called the *method of characteristics*. In general, the successful implementation of the method of characteristics requires at least two characteristic directions through any point in the  $xy$  plane, with different compatibility equations applicable to each different characteristic line; i.e., the method of characteristics is useful for the solution of hyperbolic partial differential equations only. This method is highly developed for the solution of inviscid supersonic flows, for which the system of governing flow equations is hyperbolic. The practical implementation of the method of characteristics requires the use of a high-speed digital computer and therefore may legitimately be considered a part of CFD. However, the method of characteristics is a well-known classical technique for the solution of inviscid supersonic flows, and therefore we will not consider it in any detail in this book. For more information, see Ref. 21.

### 3.3 A GENERAL METHOD OF DETERMINING THE CLASSIFICATION OF PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS: THE EIGENVALUE METHOD

In Sec. 3.2 we developed a method based on Cramer's rule for analyzing a system of quasi-linear equations in order to determine the classification of those equations. However, there is a more general and slightly more sophisticated method for assessing the classification of quasi-linear partial differential equations based on the *eigenvalues* of the system. This approach is developed in the present section. In the process, we will be using some basic matrix notation and manipulation, which is assumed to be familiar to most junior or senior engineering and science students. For a basic review of matrix algebra, see, for example, Ref. 22.

The eigenvalue method is based on a display of the system of partial differential equations written in column vector form. For example, let us assume that  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  in Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b) are zero for simplicity, such that the equations become

$$a_1 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + b_1 \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + c_1 \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + d_1 \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (3.15a)$$

$$a_2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + b_2 \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + c_2 \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + d_2 \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (3.15b)$$

Defining  $W$  as the column vector

$$W = \begin{Bmatrix} u \\ v \end{Bmatrix}$$

the system of equations given by Eqs. (3.15a) and (3.15b) can be written as

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & c_2 \end{bmatrix} \frac{\partial W}{\partial x} + \begin{bmatrix} b_1 & d_1 \\ b_2 & d_2 \end{bmatrix} \frac{\partial W}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (3.16)$$

or

$$[K] \frac{\partial W}{\partial x} + [M] \frac{\partial W}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (3.17)$$

where  $[K]$  and  $[M]$  are the appropriate  $2 \times 2$  matrices in Eq. (3.16). Multiplying Eq. (3.17) by the inverse of  $[K]$ , we have

$$\frac{\partial W}{\partial x} + [K]^{-1}[M] \frac{\partial W}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (3.18)$$

or

$$\frac{\partial W}{\partial x} + [N] \frac{\partial W}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (3.19)$$

where by definition  $[N] = [K]^{-1}[M]$ . With the system of equations written in the form of Eq. (3.19), the eigenvalues of  $[N]$  determine the classification of the system. If the eigenvalues are all real, the equations are hyperbolic. If the eigenvalues are all complex, the equations are elliptic. This statement is made without proof; see Ref. 23 for more details.

**Example 3.1.** We will illustrate this procedure using an actual system of equations from fluid dynamics. Consider the irrotational, two-dimensional, inviscid, steady flow of a compressible gas. If the flow field is only slightly perturbed from its freestream conditions, such as the flow over a thin body at small angles of attack, and if the freestream Mach number is either subsonic or supersonic (but *not* transonic or hypersonic), the governing continuity, momentum, and energy equations can be reduced to the system

$$(1 - M_\infty^2) \frac{\partial u'}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v'}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (3.20)$$

$$\frac{\partial u'}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial v'}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (3.21)$$

where  $u'$  and  $v'$  are small perturbation velocities, measured relative to the freestream velocity. For example

$$\begin{aligned} u &= V_\infty = +u' \\ v &= v' \end{aligned}$$

Also in Eq. (3.20),  $M_\infty$  is the freestream Mach number; it can be subsonic or supersonic. Equation (3.21) is a statement that the flow is irrotational. For the derivation of Eqs. (3.20) and (3.21), and a major discussion of the physical aspects of these equations, see chap. 9 of Ref. 21 or chap. 11 of Ref. 8. However, for our purposes here, we simply use these equations as an example of a system of quasi-linear equations. Indeed, Eqs. (3.20) and (3.21) are precisely linear equations; these equations have been the foundation of numerous linearized aerodynamic analyses in the past.

*Question:* How do we classify Eqs. (3.20) and (3.21)? First, let us utilize the method developed in Sec. 3.2. Comparing Eqs. (3.20) and (3.21) with the standard form given by Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b), we have [in terms of the nomenclature of Eqs. (3.1a) and (3.1b)]

$$\begin{array}{ll} a_1 = 1 - M_\infty^2 & a_2 = 0 \\ b_1 = 0 & b_2 = 1 \\ c_1 = 0 & c_2 = -1 \\ d_1 = 1 & d_2 = 0 \end{array}$$

Restating these values in terms of  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  as given in Eq. (3.10), we have

$$\begin{aligned} a &= -(1 - M_\infty^2) \\ b &= 0 \\ c &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, Eq. (3.11) yields

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\pm \sqrt{-4(1 - M_\infty^2)}}{-2(1 - M_\infty^2)} = \frac{\pm \sqrt{4(M_\infty^2 - 1)}}{2(M_\infty^2 - 1)} = \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{M_\infty^2 - 1}} \quad (3.22)$$

Examining Eq. (3.22) for the case of supersonic flow,  $M_\infty > 1$ , we see that there are two real characteristic directions through each point, one with slope  $= (M_\infty^2 - 1)^{-1/2}$  and the other with slope  $= -(M_\infty^2 - 1)^{-1/2}$ . Hence, for  $M_\infty > 1$ , the system of equations given by Eqs. (3.20) and (3.21) is *hyperbolic*. On the other hand, if  $M_\infty < 1$ , then the characteristics are imaginary, and the equations are *elliptic*.

Now, let us employ the eigenvalue method. Written in the form of Eq. (3.16), Eqs. (3.20) and (3.21) are

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 - M_\infty^2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \frac{\partial W}{\partial x} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \frac{\partial W}{\partial y} = 0$$

$$\text{or } [K] \frac{\partial W}{\partial x} + [M] \frac{\partial W}{\partial y} = 0$$

where

$$W = \begin{Bmatrix} u' \\ v' \end{Bmatrix}$$

To find  $[K]^{-1}$ , we first replace the elements of  $[K]$  with their cofactors, yielding

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 - M_\infty^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

The transpose of the above is also

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 - M_\infty^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

The determinant of  $[K]$  is  $-(1 - M_\infty^2)$ . Hence,

$$[K]^{-1} = -\frac{1}{1 - M_\infty^2} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 - M_\infty^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{or } [K]^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{1 - M_\infty^2} & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

In turn,

$$[N] = [K]^{-1}[M] = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{1-M_\infty^2} & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{1-M_\infty^2} \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This is the matrix  $[N]$  in the form given by Eq. (3.19). Hence, we wish to examine the eigenvalues of  $[N]$ , denoted by  $\lambda$ . These are found by setting

$$|[N] - \lambda[I]| = 0 \quad (3.23)$$

where  $[I]$  is the identity matrix. Hence

$$\begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & \frac{1}{1-M_\infty^2} \\ -1 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

Expanding the determinant, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda^2 + \frac{1}{1-M_\infty^2} &= 0 \\ \text{or} \quad \lambda &= \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{M_\infty^2 - 1}} \end{aligned} \quad (3.24)$$

Equation (3.24) yields precisely the same result as obtained in Eq. (3.22). Indeed, the eigenvalues of  $[N]$  are precisely the slopes of the characteristic lines. Moreover, from our rule stated above, if  $M_\infty > 1$ , then from Eq. (3.24) the eigenvalues are all real, and the system of equations given by Eqs. (3.20) and (3.21) is *hyperbolic*. If  $M_\infty < 1$ , then from Eq. (3.24) the eigenvalues are all imaginary, and the system of equations is *elliptic*. This illustrates how the eigenvalue method can be used to classify partial differential equations.

As a final note in this section, things are not always so clear-cut. For some systems of equations, the eigenvalues may be a mix of both real and complex values. In this case the system is neither hyperbolic nor elliptic. The mathematical behavior of such equations then exhibits a mixed hyperbolic-elliptic nature. Consequently, please keep in mind that systems of partial differential equations cannot always be conveniently placed in just one of the classifications of hyperbolic, parabolic, or elliptic; sometimes the equations have mixed behavior, as mentioned above.

### 3.4 GENERAL BEHAVIOR OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS: IMPACT ON PHYSICAL AND COMPUTATIONAL FLUID DYNAMICS

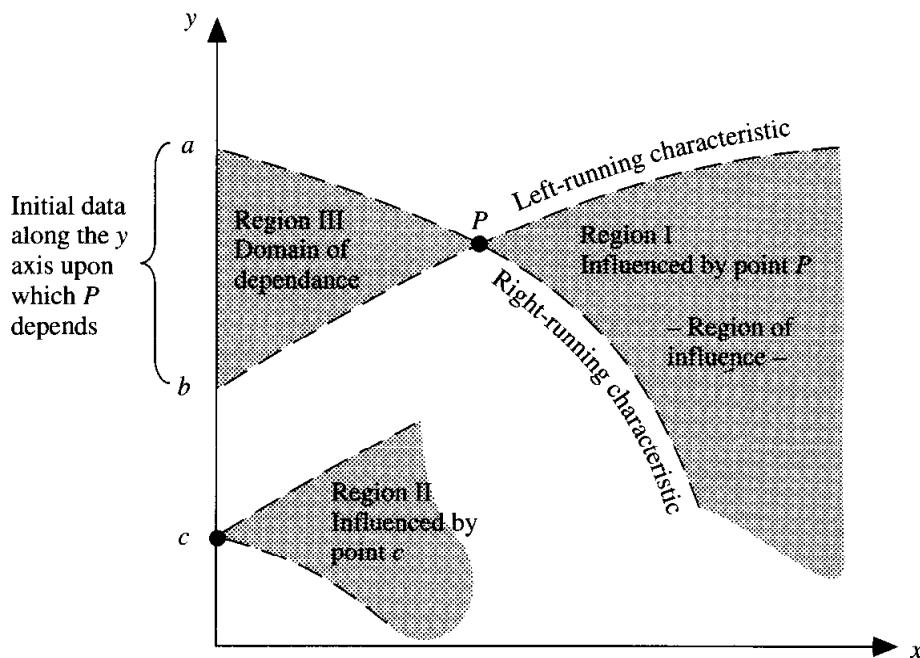
In the previous sections, we discussed the *classification* of partial differential equations, leading to the *definition* of hyperbolic, parabolic, and elliptic equations. Why do we care about making such a distinction? What difference does it make in terms of the analysis of a fluid dynamic problem whether the governing equations

are hyperbolic, parabolic, elliptic, or of some mixed nature? The answers to these questions are the subject of the present section. The answers rest on the fact that each type of equation has a different *mathematical behavior*, and this reflects different *physical behavior* of the flow fields as well. In turn, this implies that different computational methods should be used for solving equations associated with the different classifications. This is a basic fact of life in CFD, and it is the reason why we are discussing such matters before we address any particular numerical techniques.

The mathematical behavior of partial differential equations is a lengthy subject whose details can be found in many advanced mathematics textbooks, such as Refs. 19 and 24. In the present section, we will simply discuss, without proof, some of the essential features of the behavior of hyperbolic, parabolic, and elliptic partial differential equations and will relate this behavior to the physics of the flow and to its impact on CFD.

### 3.4.1 Hyperbolic Equations

To begin with, let us consider a hyperbolic equation in two independent variables  $x$  and  $y$ . The  $xy$  plane is sketched in Fig. 3.3. Consider a given point  $P$  in this plane. Since we are dealing with a hyperbolic equation, there are two real characteristic curves through point  $P$ ; these are labeled as left- and right-running characteristics, respectively. (The nomenclature “left- and right-running” stems from the following idea. Imagine that you place Fig. 3.3 on the floor and that you stand on point  $P$ , facing in the general  $x$  direction. You have to turn your head to the left to see one characteristic curve running out in front of you—this is the left-running characteristic. Similarly, you have to turn your head to the right to see the other



**FIG. 3.3**

Domain and boundaries for the solution of hyperbolic equations. Two-dimensional steady flow.

characteristic running out in front of you—this is the right-running characteristic.) A significance of these characteristics is that information at point  $P$  influences only the region between the two characteristics. For example, if in Fig. 3.3 we jabbed point  $P$  with a pin, i.e., if we set up a small disturbance at point  $P$ , then this disturbance is felt at every point within region I in Fig. 3.3, *but only in that region*. In this sense, region I is defined as the *region of influence* of point  $P$ . Now imagine the two characteristics through  $P$  extended backward to the  $y$  axis. That portion of the  $y$  axis which is intercepted by the two characteristics is labeled  $ab$ . This has a corollary effect on boundary conditions for hyperbolic equations. For example, assume that boundary conditions are specified on the  $y$  axis ( $x = 0$ ). That is, the dependent variables  $u$  and  $v$  are known along the  $y$  axis. Then the solution can be obtained by “marching forward” in the distance  $x$ , starting from the given boundary. However, the solution for  $u$  and  $v$  at point  $P$  will depend *only* on that part of the boundary between  $a$  and  $b$ , as shown in Fig. 3.3. Information at point  $c$ , which is outside the interval  $ab$ , is propagated along characteristics through  $c$  and influences only region II in Figure 3.3. Point  $P$  is outside region II, and hence does not feel the information from point  $c$ . Point  $P$  depends on only that part of the boundary which is intercepted by and included between the two retreating characteristic lines through point  $P$ , that is, interval  $ab$ . For this reason, the region to the left of point  $P$ , region III in Fig. 3.3, is called the *domain of dependence* of point  $P$ ; that is, properties at  $P$  depend only on what is happening in region III.

In terms of CFD, the computation of flow fields that are governed by hyperbolic equations is set up as “marching” solutions. The algorithm is designed to start with the given initial conditions, say the  $y$  axis in Fig. 3.3, and sequentially calculate the flow field, step by step, marching in the  $x$  direction.

In fluid dynamics, the following types of flows are governed by hyperbolic partial differential equations and hence exhibit the behavior described above.

**STEADY INVISCID SUPERSONIC FLOW.** If the flow is two-dimensional, the behavior is like that already discussed in Fig. 3.3. Imagine a supersonic flow over a two-dimensional circular-arc airfoil as sketched in Fig. 3.4; the airfoil can be at an angle of attack  $\alpha$ , but  $\alpha$  must not be so large as to cause the leading-edge shock wave to become detached, or else there will be pockets of locally subsonic flow. (In a steady flow field, any pockets of subsonic flow will be governed by elliptic equations, and the downstream marching procedure originally established for the solution of the hyperbolic equations will be mathematically ill-posed—the computer program usually “blows-up” under such conditions.) To be more specific, reflect again on the Euler equations given in Sec. 2.8.2, i.e., Eqs. (2.82) to (2.86). When written for a steady flow in either conservation or nonconservation form, these equations are hyperbolic when the local Mach number is supersonic (see Example 3.1). [A case in point is Eq. (3.20), which is derived from the Euler equations for the special case of irrotational flow with small perturbations. We proved in Sec. 3.3 that this equation is hyperbolic when  $M_\infty > 1$ . A more general analysis of the eigenvalues associated with the general Euler equations for a steady flow demonstrates that this system of equations is hyperbolic at every point where the *local* Mach number  $> 1$ .] Hence, in Figs. 3.4, where the flow is assumed to be

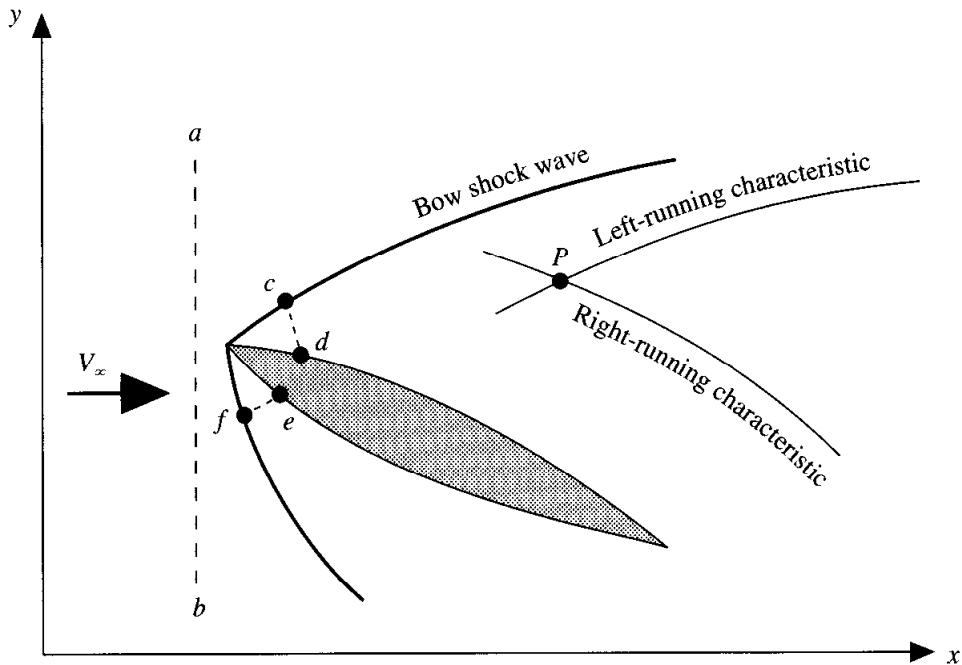
**FIG. 3.4**

Illustration of initial data lines for the method of characteristics.

locally supersonic everywhere, the entire flow field is governed by hyperbolic equations. The general flow direction is in the  $x$  direction. Therefore, the flow field can be computed starting with given initial data at some location in the flow and then solving the governing equations numerically, marching step by step, in the general  $x$  direction downstream of the initial data. The location of the initial data line is influenced somewhat by whether shock capturing or shock fitting is being used in the calculation. (Recall the discussion of shock capturing and shock fitting in Sec. 2.10.) If shock capturing is being used, line  $ab$  upstream of the body can be used as the initial data line, where the initial data are simply freestream conditions along  $ab$ . If shock fitting is being used, lines  $cd$  and  $ef$  just downstream of the nose, and reaching across the flow field from the body surface to the shock surface, can be used as the initial data lines. In this case, the initial data usually specified along  $cd$  or  $ef$  are that associated with a classical solution of the oblique shock flow over a wedge, with a wedge angle equal to the body angle at the nose relative to the freestream direction. See Ref. 21 for such classical wedge solutions. The results of these classical solutions yield a set of constant properties along  $cd$  and another different set of constant properties along  $ef$ . In turn, the remainder of the flow field in Fig. 3.4 is calculated by marching downstream from these initial data lines. These matters will be made clearer when we discuss actual applications in Part III of this book.

To extend the above discussion to *three-dimensional*, steady, supersonic, inviscid flows, consider the picture shown in Fig. 3.5. In this three-dimensional  $xyz$  space, the characteristics are *surfaces*, as sketched in Fig. 3.5. Consider point  $P$  at a given  $(xyz)$  location. Information at  $P$  influences the shaded volume contained within the advancing characteristic surface. In addition, if the  $yz$  plane is an initial data surface, then only that portion of the initial data shown as the crosshatched area

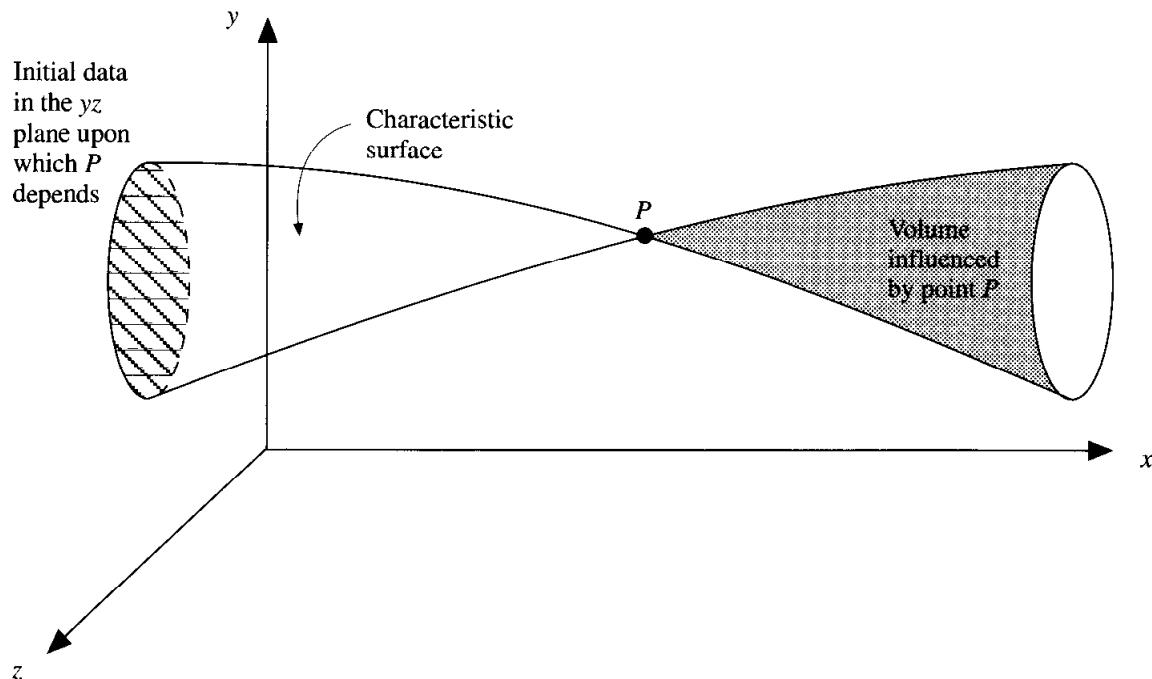
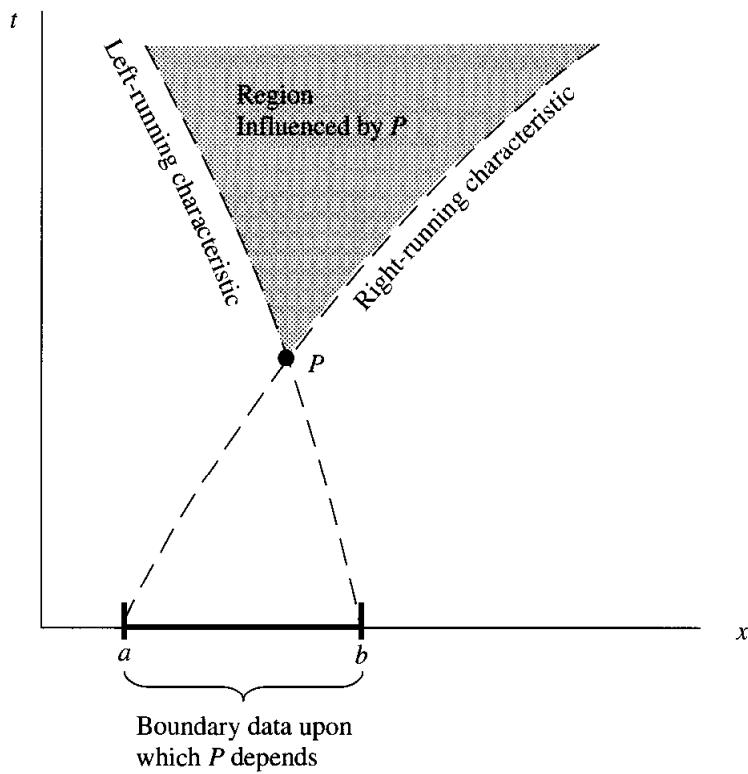


FIG. 3.5

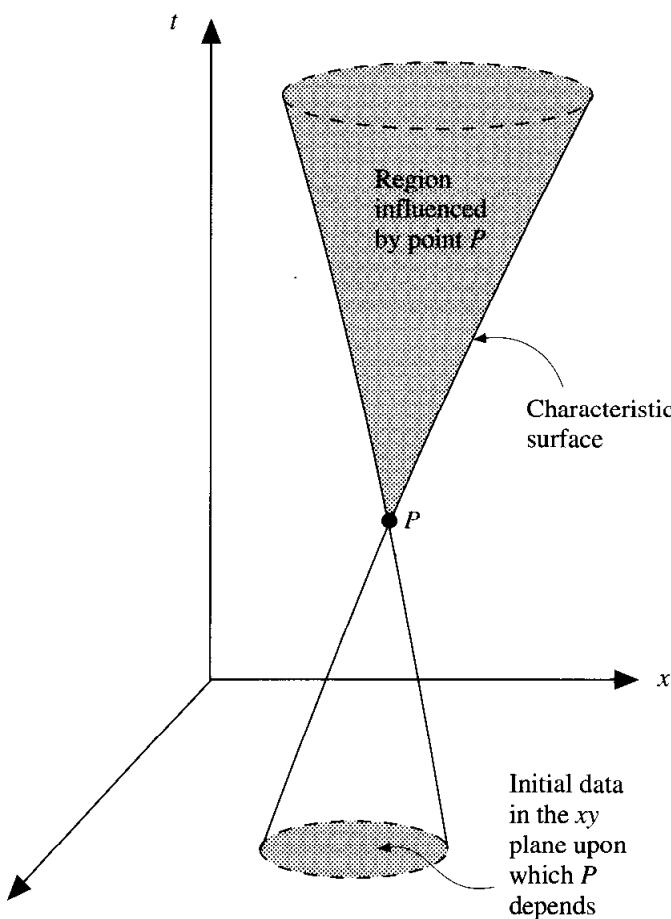
Domain and boundaries for the solution of hyperbolic equations. Three-dimensional steady flow.

in the  $xy$  plane, intercepted by the retreating characteristic surface, has any affect on  $P$ . In Fig. 3.5, the dependent variables are solved by starting with data given in the  $yz$  plane and “marching” in the  $x$  direction. For an inviscid supersonic flow problem, the general flow direction would also be in the  $x$  direction.

**UNSTEADY, INVISCID FLOW.** Examine again the Euler equations summarized in Sec. 2.8.2. If the time derivatives in these equations are finite, as would be the case of an *unsteady* flow, then the governing equations are hyperbolic, no matter whether the flow is locally subsonic or supersonic. More precisely, we say that such flows are hyperbolic *with respect to time*. (The classification of the unsteady Euler equations as hyperbolic with respect to time is derived in Sec. 11.2.1.) This implies that in such unsteady flows, no matter whether we have one, two, or three spatial dimensions, the marching direction is always the *time* direction. Let us examine this more closely. For one-dimensional unsteady flow, consider point  $P$  in the  $xt$  plane shown in Fig. 3.6. Once again, the region influenced by  $P$  is the shaded area between the two advancing characteristics through  $P$ . The  $x$  axis ( $t = 0$ ) is the initial data line. The interval  $ab$  is the only portion of the initial data along the  $x$  axis upon which the solution at  $P$  depends. Extending these thoughts for two-dimensional unsteady flow, consider point  $P$  in the  $xyt$  space as shown in Fig. 3.7. The region influenced by  $P$  and the portion of the boundary in the  $xy$  plane upon which the solution at  $P$  depends are shown in this figure. Starting with known initial data in the  $xy$  plane, the solution “marches” forward in time. Indeed, the extension to three-dimensional unsteady flow is made in the same fashion, although we cannot easily draw a sketch of this case since we are dealing with four independent variables. In this case, the full three-dimensional Euler equations summarized in Sec. 2.8.2 are utilized, and the solution is still marched forward in time.



**FIG. 3.6**  
Domain and boundaries for the solution of hyperbolic equations. One-dimensional unsteady flow.

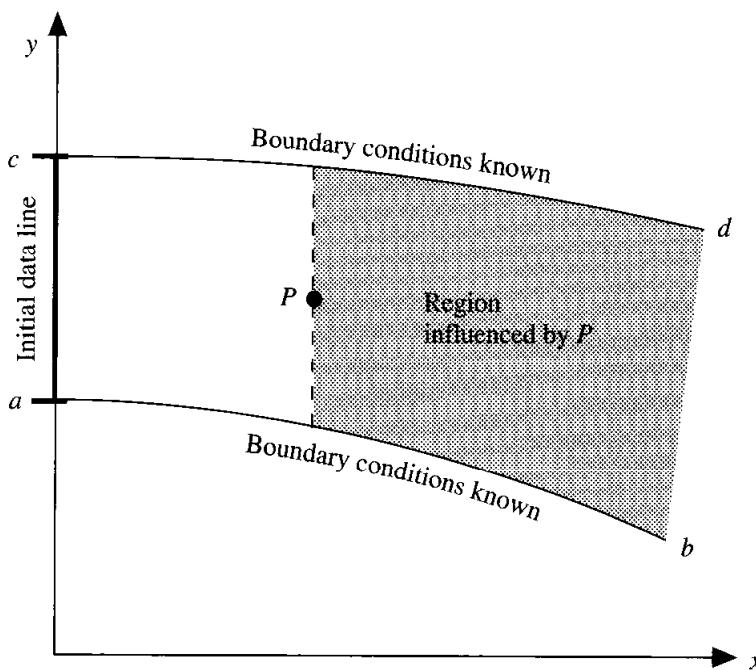


**FIG. 3.7**  
Domain and boundaries for the solution of hyperbolic equations. Two-dimensional unsteady flow.

When do we encounter unsteady, inviscid flow? The classic case of one-dimensional wave motion in a duct is one example; here, we are truly interested in the transient variations (see, for example, chap. 7 of Ref. 21). The two-dimensional unsteady flow over a flapping or plunging airfoil is another example. However, by far the most common use of unsteady time-marching solutions in CFD is to ultimately obtain a steady flow result in the limit of large times, as long as the boundary conditions are time-invariant. Here, the time marching is simply a means to the end—the end being a steady-state flow field. At first glance, this would seem inefficient. Why calculate a steady flow by going to the trouble of introducing time as another independent variable? The answer is that sometimes this is the only way to have a well-posed problem and hence the only way to obtain the steady-state solution computationally. The solution of the supersonic blunt body problem described in Sec. 1.5 is one such case. We will see many other examples of this approach in Part III.

### 3.4.2 Parabolic Equations

Let us consider a parabolic equation in two independent variables  $x$  and  $y$ . The  $xy$  plane is sketched in Fig. 3.8. Consider a given point  $P$  in this plane. Since we are dealing with a parabolic equation, there is only one characteristic direction through point  $P$ . Furthermore, in Fig. 3.8, assume that initial conditions are given along the line  $ac$  and that boundary conditions are known along curves  $ab$  and  $cd$ . The characteristic direction is given by a vertical line through  $P$ . Then, information at  $P$  influences the entire region on one side of the vertical characteristic and contained within the two boundaries; i.e., if we jab  $P$  with a needle, the effect of this jab is felt throughout the shaded region shown in Fig. 3.8. Parabolic equations, like hyperbolic



**FIG. 3.8**

Domain and boundaries for the solution of parabolic equations in two dimensions.

equations as discussed in Sec. 3.4.1, lend themselves to marching solutions. Starting with the initial data line  $ac$ , the solution between the boundaries  $cd$  and  $ab$  is obtained by marching in the general  $x$  direction. The extension to the case of three dimensions is straightforward, as sketched in Fig. 3.9. Here, the parabolic equation has three independent variables,  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ . Consider point  $P$  located in this space. Assume that the initial conditions are given over the area  $abcd$  in the  $yz$  plane. Furthermore, assume boundary conditions given along the four surfaces  $abgh$ ,  $cdef$ ,  $ahed$ , and  $bgfc$ , which extend in the general  $x$  direction away from the perimeter of the initial data surface. Then, information at  $P$  influences the entire three-dimensional region to the right of  $P$ , contained within the boundary surfaces. This region is crosshatched in Fig. 3.9. Starting with the initial data plane  $abcd$ , the solution is marched in the general  $x$  direction. Again, please make special note that parabolic equations lend themselves to marching-type solutions, analogous to that of hyperbolic equations.

What types of fluid dynamic flow fields are governed by parabolic equations? Before answering this question, recall that the whole analysis is based upon the governing equations derived in Chap. 2—the most general form of which are the Navier-Stokes equations. Throughout the evolution of classical fluid dynamic theory, various simplified (and usually approximate) forms of the Navier-Stokes equations have been used, depending on the particular flow field to be analyzed. Although the Navier-Stokes equations themselves exhibit a mixed mathematical behavior, many of the approximate forms derived from the Navier-Stokes equations are parabolic equations. Therefore, when we ask what types of fluid dynamic flow fields are governed by parabolic equations, we are really asking what types of approximate flow-field *models* are governed by parabolic equations. (Indeed, we

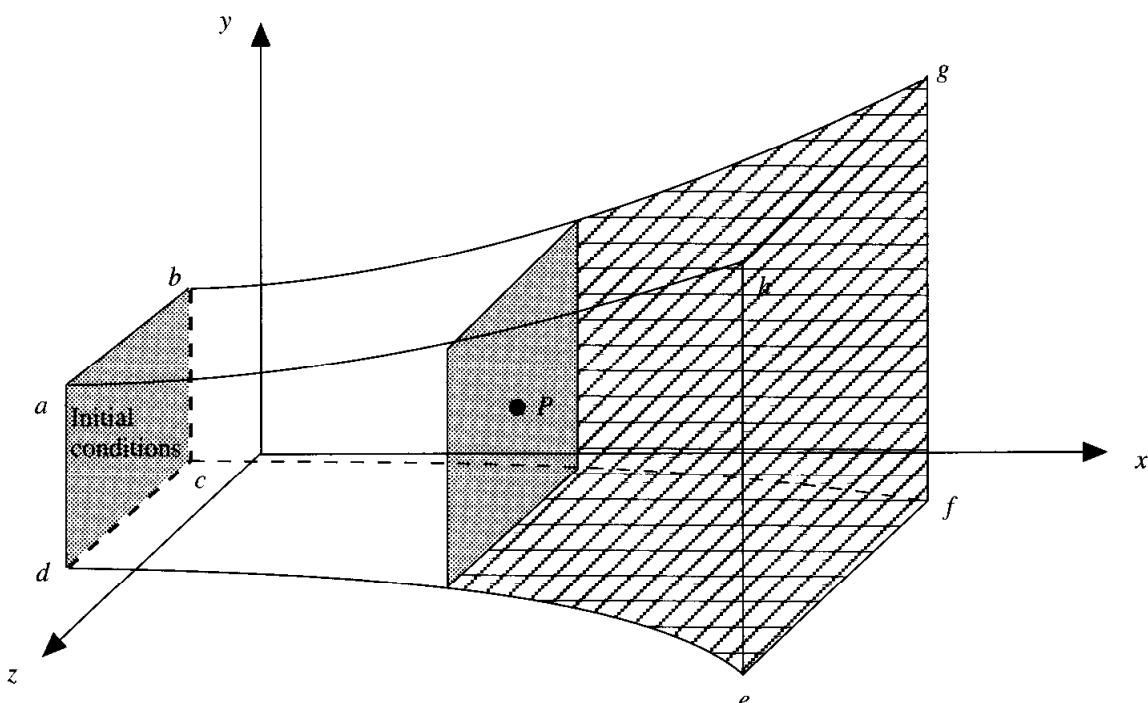
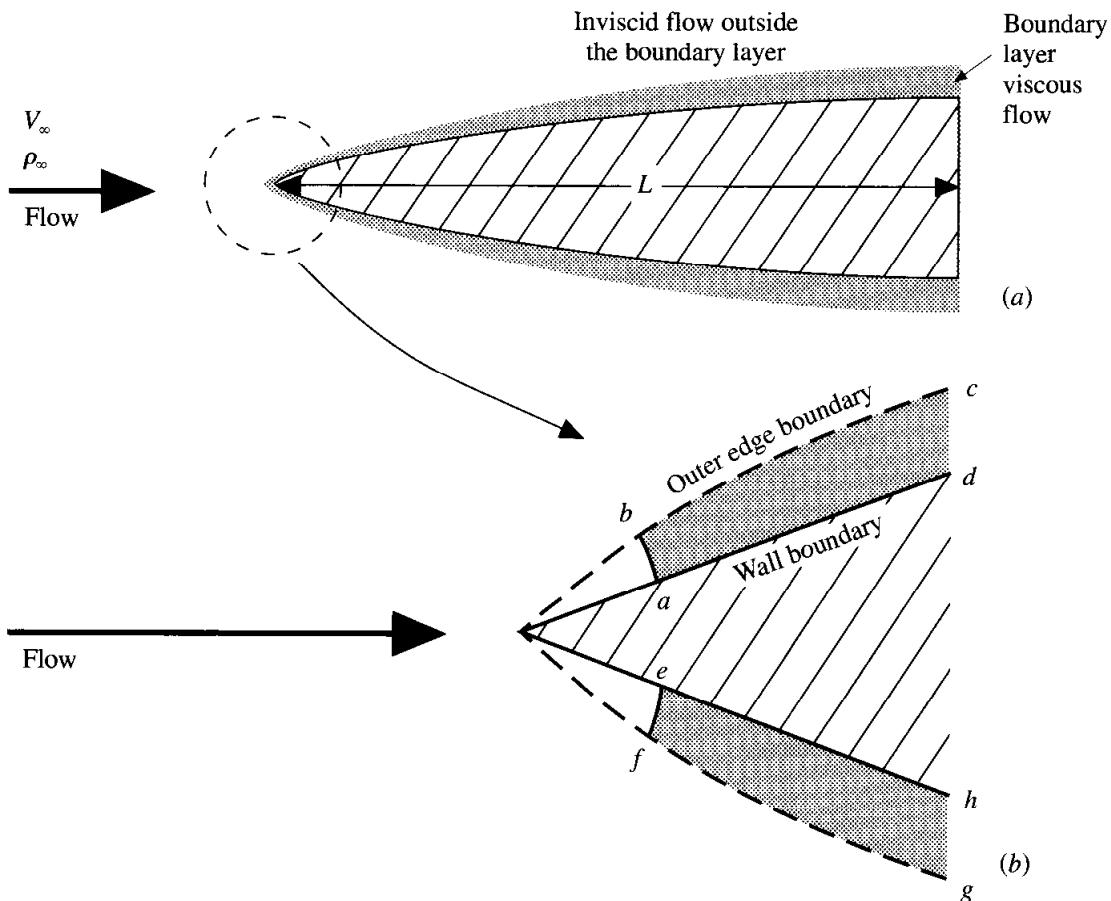


FIG. 3.9

Domain and boundaries for the solution of parabolic equations in three dimensions.

were implicitly following a similar philosophy in Sec. 3.4.1 dealing with hyperbolic equations, because the examples given in the two subsections all pertained to the Euler equations, which are a simplified version of the Navier-Stokes equations when applied to an inviscid flow.) If we delve into the various approximate forms of the Navier-Stokes equations, then the following types of flow-field *models* are governed by parabolic equations.

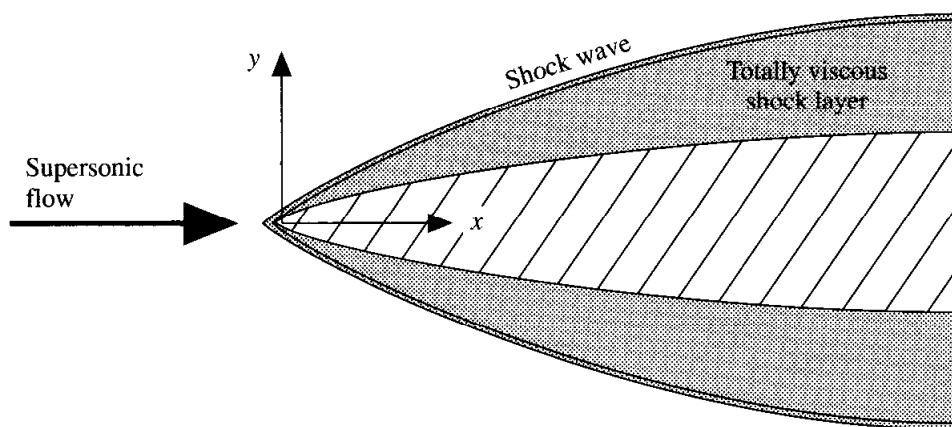
**STEADY BOUNDARY-LAYER FLOWS.** The concept of dividing a general flow field into two regions, (1) a thin layer adjacent to any solid surface wherein all the viscous effects are contained and (2) an inviscid flow outside this thin viscous layer, was one of the most profound developments in fluid dynamics. It was presented by Ludwig Prandtl at the Third Congress of Mathematicians at Heidelberg, Germany, in 1904. The thin viscous layer adjacent to a surface is called a *boundary layer*. It is assumed that you have been introduced to the idea of boundary layers; if not, you are referred to the introductory discussion in chap. 17 of Ref. 8. A schematic of the boundary layer on a generic aerodynamic body is given in Fig. 3.10. Under the combined assumptions that his boundary layer is *thin* and that the Reynolds number,  $Re$ , based on body length  $L$  is large ( $Re = \rho_\infty V_\infty L / \mu_\infty$ ), the Navier-Stokes equations reduce to an approximate set of equations called the *boundary-layer equations*. Suffice it to say here that the boundary-layer equations are *parabolic*



**FIG. 3.10**  
Schematic of a boundary-layer flow.

*equations.* These equations describe in an approximate (but usually sufficiently accurate) fashion the flow in the thin shaded region sketched along the surface of the body in Fig. 3.10a. Here, all the viscous effects are assumed to be contained within the thin boundary layer, and the rest of the flow outside the boundary layer is inviscid. Since the boundary-layer equations are parabolic, they can be solved by a marching technique; starting from initial data at the nose of the body, the boundary-layer equations are solved by marching downstream in the  $s$  direction, where  $s$  is the distance along the surface of the body measured from the nose, as shown in Fig. 3.10a. A detail of the nose region is shown in Fig. 3.10b. Here, initial conditions are given along lines  $ab$  and  $ef$  across the boundary layer. These initial conditions are obtained from an independent, specialized solution of the boundary-layer equations, such as a self-similar solution for a flat wedge surface (if the body in Fig. 3.10 is two-dimensional) or for a sharp cone (if the body is axisymmetric). Then, starting from these initial conditions, the boundary-layer equations are solved by marching downstream from lines  $ab$  and  $ef$ . Curves  $ad$  and  $eh$  represent one boundary, namely, that along the surface at which the no-slip boundary conditions described in Sec. 2.9 are applied. Curves  $bc$  and  $fg$  represent the other boundary, namely, the outer edge of the boundary layer at which the (usually) known inviscid flow conditions are applied. It is a tenet of first-order boundary-layer theory that the inviscid flow conditions along  $bc$  and  $fg$  are the same as those obtained along the body surface in a purely inviscid solution of the flow. In summary, examining Fig. 3.10, because the boundary-layer equations are parabolic, they are solved by marching downstream in the  $s$  direction from an initial data line, while at the same time satisfying the wall and outer-edge boundary conditions at each  $s$  location.

**"PARABOLIZED" VISCOUS FLOWS.** What happens when the boundary layer is not thin, indeed, when the entire flow field of interest is fully viscous? An example is shown in Fig. 3.11, where a supersonic flow over a pointed-nose body is shown. If the Reynolds number is low enough, the viscous effects will reach well into the flow field far away from the surface. Indeed, the flow field between the shock wave and



**FIG. 3.11**

Schematic of a totally viscous shock layer.

the body surface might be totally viscous. For this case, a boundary-layer solution is inappropriate; the boundary-layer equations are not valid for this flow. On the other hand, if the flow field does not exhibit any regions of localized, reversed, separated flow in the streamwise direction, still another simplified version of the Navier-Stokes equations may suffice. For example, if all the viscous terms in Eqs. (2.58a) to (2.58c) and Eq. (2.81) that involve derivatives in the streamwise direction [such terms as  $(\partial/\partial x)(\lambda \nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} + 2\mu \partial u/\partial x)$ ,  $(\partial/\partial y)(\mu \partial v/\partial x)$ , and  $(\partial/\partial x)(k \partial T/\partial x)$ ] are assumed to be small and can be neglected, and if the flow is assumed to be steady, then the resulting equations are called the *parabolized Navier-Stokes* (PNS) *equations*. This is because the resulting simplified version of the Navier-Stokes equations exhibit parabolic mathematical behavior. The PNS equations are derived in Ref. 13 and are displayed and discussed in Ref. 2, to cite just two of many sources. The advantages of the PNS equations are (1) they are simpler, i.e., contain less terms, than the full Navier-Stokes equations and (2) they can be solved by means of a downstream marching procedure. On the other hand, because the viscous terms involving derivatives in the flow direction have been neglected, and these derivatives represent the physical mechanism by which information is fed *upstream* due to viscous action in the flow, then the PNS equations are not appropriate for the calculation of viscous flows that involve regions of flow separation in the streamwise direction. This is a severe limitation for some applications. In spite of this drawback, the downstream marching aspect of the PNS equations is such a compelling advantage that this methodology is in widespread use. The type of well-behaved, fully viscous flow sketched in Fig. 3.11 is perfect for a PNS solution, and the accuracy of such solutions is usually quite acceptable.

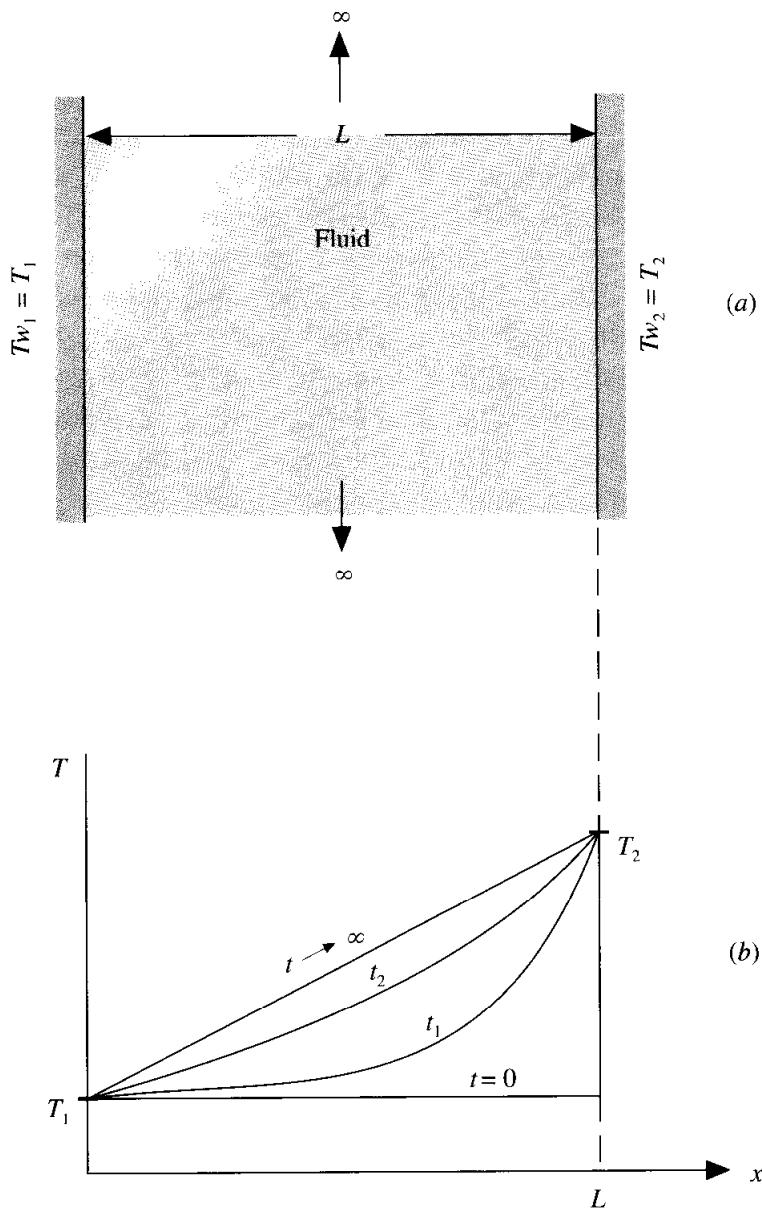
**UNSTEADY THERMAL CONDUCTION.** Consider a stationary fluid (liquid or gas) wherein heat is transferred by thermal conduction. Moreover, assume that the temperature gradients in the fluid are changing as a function of time; this can be imagined as due to a time-varying wall temperature, for example. Although this example is not a flow per se, the governing conduction heat transfer equation is easily obtained from Eq. (2.73) applied to the case where  $\mathbf{V} = 0$ . In this case, Eq. (2.73) becomes

$$\rho \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = \rho \dot{q} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \quad (3.25)$$

Furthermore, if there is no volumetric heat addition ( $\dot{q} = 0$ ), and assuming the state relation  $e = c_v T$ , Eq. (3.25) becomes

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{\rho c_v} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( k \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) \right] \quad (3.26)$$

Equation (3.26) is the governing equation for the timewise and spatial variation of  $T$  throughout the fluid; it is *parabolic* with respect to time, which allows a time-



**FIG. 3.12**  
Typical transient temperature distributions in a constant property fluid (constant  $\rho$ ,  $c_v$ , and  $k$ ), starting from an impulsive increase in  $T_{w_2}$  from  $T_1$  to  $T_2$  at time zero.

marching solution to the heat conduction problem. If we further assume that  $k$  is constant, then Eq. (3.26) is written as

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \alpha \nabla^2 T \quad (3.27)$$

where  $\alpha = \text{thermal diffusivity} = k/\rho c_v$ . On a physical basis,  $\alpha$  is an index of a fluid element's ability to conduct energy due to the thermal conduction compared to its ability to retain this energy, i.e., its capacity to absorb heat. Equation (3.27) is the well-known *heat conduction equation*; again, it is a parabolic equation.

A typical solution of the heat conduction equation is sketched qualitatively in Fig. 3.12. Here we have a thermally conducting, semi-infinite fluid contained between two parallel walls separated by a distance  $L$ . We assume that the fluid is initially at constant temperature throughout, at a value  $T = T_1$ , and in equilibrium with both walls where initially  $T_{w_1} = T_{w_2} = T_1$ . Now assume that at time  $t = 0$  the temperature at the right-hand wall is impulsively increased to  $T_{w_2} = T_2$ , while that of

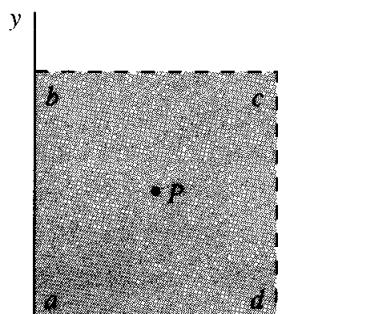
the left-hand wall is held fixed at  $T_{w_1} = T_1$ . There will be an unsteady change in the fluid temperature as a result of this impulsive increase in wall temperature; the transient temperature distributions are governed by Eq. (3.27) written in one spatial dimension, i.e.,

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \alpha \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} \quad (3.28)$$

Several instantaneous distributions of  $T$  versus  $x$  are sketched in Fig. 3.12, starting with the constant initial temperature at  $t = 0$ , and then progressing through increasing time,  $t_2 > t_1 > 0$ , with the final steady-state distributions given by the linear variation at infinite time.

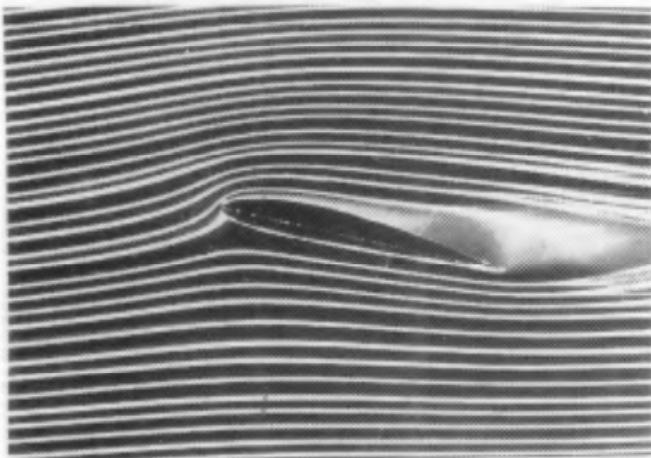
### 3.4.3 Elliptic Equations

Let us consider an elliptic equation in two independent variables  $x$  and  $y$ . The  $xy$  plane is sketched in Fig. 3.13. Recall from Sec. 3.2 that the characteristic curves for an elliptic equation are imaginary—for the most part, the methodology associated with the method of characteristics is therefore useless for the solution of elliptic equations. For elliptic equations, there are no limited regions of influence or domains of dependence; rather, information is propagated everywhere in all directions. For example, consider point  $P$  in the  $xy$  plane sketched in Fig. 3.13. Assume that the domain of the problem is defined as the rectangle  $abcd$  shown in Fig. 3.13 and that  $P$  is located somewhere inside this closed domain. This is already in contrast to the rather open domains considered in Figs. 3.3 and 3.8 for hyperbolic and parabolic equations, respectively. Now assume that we jab point  $P$  in Fig. 3.13 with a needle; i.e., we introduce a disturbance at point  $P$ . The major mathematical characteristic of elliptic equations is that this disturbance is felt *everywhere* throughout the domain. Furthermore, because point  $P$  influences all points in the domain, then in turn the solution at point  $P$  is influenced by the *entire* closed boundary  $abcd$ . Therefore, the solution at point  $P$  must be carried out *simultaneously* with the solution at all other points in the domain. This is in stark contrast to the “marching” solutions germane to parabolic and hyperbolic equations. For this reason, problems involving elliptic equations are frequently called *jury* problems, because the solution within the domain depends on the *total* boundary



**FIG. 3.13**

Domain and boundaries for the solution of elliptic equations in two dimensions.

**FIG. 3.14**

Smoke-flow photograph of the low-speed, subsonic flow over an airfoil. (*Courtesy of Hikaru Ito, Meiji University, Japan.*)

domain, boundary conditions must be applied over the entire boundary  $abcd$ . These boundary conditions can take the following forms:

1. A specification of the *dependent variables*  $u$  and  $v$  along the boundary. This type of boundary condition is called the *Dirichlet* condition.
2. A specification of *derivatives* of the dependent variables, such as  $\partial u / \partial x$ , along the boundary. This type of boundary condition is called the *Neumann* condition.
3. A mix of both Dirichlet and Newmann conditions.

What types of flow are governed by elliptic equations? We will consider two such flows, as follows.

**STEADY, SUBSONIC, INVISCID FLOW.** The key, operable word here is “subsonic.” In a subsonic flow, disturbances (which travel at the speed of sound, or faster) can physically work their way upstream for as far as they want—theoretically, a finite disturbance in an inviscid subsonic flow (no dissipation due to friction, thermal combustion, or mass diffusion) will propagate to infinity in all directions. For example, many of you are familiar with the streamline patterns for subsonic flows over airfoils, such as shown in the photograph in Fig. 3.14. Notice how the streamlines in front of the airfoil are deflected upward and those behind the airfoil are deflected downward. The disturbances introduced by the presence of the airfoil in the subsonic flow are felt throughout the entire flow field, including far upstream. Figure 3.14 is a physical picture consistent with the mathematical behavior of elliptic equations. Inviscid flow is governed by the Euler equations [Eqs. (2.82)–(2.86)] in turn, the methods of Sec. 3.2 and 3.3 show that the *steady* Euler equations are elliptic when the local Mach number is less than unity (see Example 3.1). Hence, the presence of an airfoil in a subsonic, inviscid flow should be felt everywhere throughout the flow, and Fig. 3.14 is an example of such behavior.

**INCOMPRESSIBLE INVISCID FLOW.** In reality, an incompressible flow is a limiting case of a subsonic flow wherein the Mach number goes to zero. (The Mach number is defined as  $M = V/a$ , where  $a$  is the speed of sound. In a theoretically precise incompressible flow, the compressibility is zero, and hence the speed of sound is infinite. If  $a$  is infinitely large, then  $M = 0$ , even though  $V$  is finite.)

Therefore, it is no surprise that an incompressible inviscid flow is governed by elliptic equations; indeed, such flows are the “queen” of elliptic behavior. All the behavior of steady, subsonic, inviscid flows described above carries over to the case of incompressible inviscid flow, and with a *stronger* effect at that.

### 3.4.4 Some Comments: The Supersonic Blunt Body Problem Revisited

One of the most important problems in modern high-speed aerodynamics is the solution of the inviscid flow over a supersonic or hypersonic blunt body. Some background on this problem was provided in Sec. 1.5, where the difficulty associated with obtaining a solution for the mixed subsonic-supersonic steady flow was underscored. It would be very pertinent to reread the last half of Sec. 1.5 before progressing further. Also, turn back to Fig. 1.30. There, along with the related text, you will find a discussion of the mixed nature of the supersonic blunt body flow field, where the locally subsonic flow is identified as an elliptic region and the locally supersonic flow is identified as a hyperbolic region. The problem in solving this steady, inviscid flow field is due entirely to the extreme difficulty in obtaining a solution technique that is valid in both regions. Now, with our vantage point after our discussions of the mathematical behavior of partial differential equations in the present chapter, we can fully understand and appreciate the source of this difficulty. Because of the totally different mathematical behavior of elliptic and hyperbolic equations, the sudden change in nature of the Euler equations across the sonic line virtually precludes any practical steady flow solution of the blunt body problem involving a uniform treatment of both the subsonic and supersonic regions. However, in Sec. 1.5, a breakthrough in this problem was mentioned, which took place in the middle 1960s. We are now in a position to understand the nature of this breakthrough. Recall from Fig. 3.7 that *unsteady* inviscid flow is governed by hyperbolic equations no matter whether the flow is locally subsonic or supersonic. This provides the following opportunity. Starting with rather arbitrary initial conditions for the flow field in the  $xy$  plane in Fig. 1.30, solve the *unsteady*, two-dimensional inviscid flow equations, marching forward in time as sketched in Fig. 3.7. At large times, the solution approaches a steady state, where the time derivatives of the flow variables approach zero. This steady state is the desired result, and what you have when you approach this steady state is a solution for the *entire* flow field *including* both the subsonic and supersonic regions. Moreover, this solution is obtained with the same uniform method throughout the entire flow. The above discussion gives the elementary philosophy of the *time-dependent technique* for the solution of flow problems. Its practical numerical implementation by Moretti and Abbott in 1966 (see Ref. 12) constituted the major scientific breakthrough for the solution of the supersonic blunt body problem as discussed in Sec. 1.5. At first glance, the use of an additional independent variable, namely, time, may seem like extra baggage, but nothing could be further from the truth. Without introducing time as an independent variable, the problem cannot be solved. By introducing time as an independent variable, the governing Euler equations become hyperbolic with respect to time, thus allowing a straightforward marching solution in time, with the proper steady flow results appearing in the limit of large times. For the blunt

body problem, this steady state obtained at large times is the desired result—the time-marching procedure is simply a means to that end. *Here is a classic example of the importance of understanding the mathematical behavior of various types of partial differential equations.* In the blunt body problem, an intelligent application of this understanding finally resulted in a practical solution, whereas none existed before.

The time-marching approach described here, where the final steady state at large times is the primary goal, is widely used in modern CFD for a whole host of different applications—it is in no way unique to the blunt body problem. For example, the mathematical behavior of the full Navier-Stokes equations for unsteady flow is not easily placed in a single category. Rather, the Navier-Stokes equations have both parabolic and elliptic behavior. The parabolic behavior is through the time derivatives of velocity and internal energy, much in the same manner as the heat conduction equation, Eq. (3.27), is parabolic via the time derivative of  $T$ . The partially elliptic behavior stems from the viscous terms, which provide a mechanism for feeding information upstream in the flow. However, in spite of the mixed nature of the Navier-Stokes equations, a time-marching solution is well-posed; most of the existing numerical solutions to the full, compressible Navier-Stokes equations use the time-marching methodology.

### 3.5 WELL-POSED PROBLEMS

We end this chapter with a definition—but a definition that we are in a position to appreciate. In the solution of partial differential equations, it is sometimes easy to attempt a solution using incorrect or insufficient boundary and initial conditions. Whether the solution is being attempted analytically or numerically, such an “ill-posed” problem will usually lead to spurious results at best and no solution at worst. The supersonic blunt body problem discussed above is a classic example. When considering the mixed subsonic-supersonic flow from a *steady flow* point of view, any attempt to obtain a uniformly valid solution procedure for both regions was ill-posed.

Therefore, we define a well-posed problem as follows: If the solution to a partial differential equation exists and is unique, and if the solution depends continuously upon the initial and boundary conditions, then the problem is *well-posed*. In CFD, it is important that you establish that your problem is well-posed before you attempt to carry out a numerical solution. When the blunt body problem was set up using the unsteady Euler equations, and a time-marching procedure was employed to go to the steady state at large times starting with essentially arbitrary assumed initial conditions at time  $t = 0$ , the problem suddenly became well-posed.

### 3.6 SUMMARY

Examine again the road map sketched in Fig. 3.1, and think about the rather straightforward course we mapped in order to discuss the mathematical behavior of various types of partial differential equations. There are two standard methods for determining the mathematical behavior of a given equation: the Cramer’s rule

approach and the eigenvalue method, described in Sec. 3.2 and 3.3, respectively. Many equations can be distinctly classified as either hyperbolic, parabolic, or elliptic. Others, such as the unsteady Navier-Stokes equations, have mixed behavior. The major mathematical behavior of hyperbolic and parabolic equations is that they lend themselves quite well to marching solutions, beginning from a known initial data plane or line. In contrast, elliptic equations do not. For elliptic equations, the flow variables at a given point must be solved simultaneously with the flow variables at all other points. Of course, the different mathematical behavior of elliptic compared to parabolic and hyperbolic equations is a direct reflection of the different *physical* behavior of the flows described by these equations.

Finally, we note that the present chapter brings us to an end of Part I of this book. We have examined and derived some of the basic thoughts and equations essential to an understanding and application of CFD. We are now ready to move on to an emphasis on the numerical aspects of CFD—the subject of Part II.

## PROBLEMS

- 3.1. By expanding the determinant in Eq. (3.14), obtain the compatibility equation which holds along the characteristic lines.
- 3.2. The discussion in Unsteady Thermal Conduction (a subsection of Sec. 3.4.2) stated, without proof, that the heat conduction equation given by Eqs. (3.26) or (3.27) are parabolic equations. For simplicity, consider the one-dimensional heat conduction equation

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \alpha \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2}$$

Prove that this equation is a parabolic equation.

- 3.3. Consider Laplace's equation, given by

$$\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

Show that this is an elliptic equation.

- 3.4. Show that the second-order wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

is a hyperbolic equation.

- 3.5. Show that the first-order wave equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + c \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0$$

is a hyperbolic equation.

---

## PART II

---

### BASICS OF THE NUMERICS

In Part I we discussed the philosophy of CFD, derived and examined carefully the governing equations of motion for fluid dynamics, and contrasted the mathematical behavior of various types of partial differential equations. Such background is essential to CFD, even though we have not as yet mentioned the first thing about numerical techniques. However, now is the time! In Part II, we emphasize the basic aspects of the *numerics* of CFD. Here we will present some of the basic aspects of discretization, i.e., how to replace the partial derivatives (or integrals) in the governing equations of motion with discrete *numbers*. Discretization of the partial differential equations is called *finite differences*, and discretization of the integral form of the equations is called *finite volumes*. Furthermore, many applications of numerical solutions involve sophisticated coordinate systems and grid networks laid out in these systems. Sometimes, the use of such coordinate systems requires that the governing equations be suitably transformed into these systems. Thus, another aspect to be discussed—one that is due entirely to the need for dealing with sometimes fancy coordinate systems in CFD—is that dealing with

*transformations* and *grid generation*. All the above matters come under the general heading of the basic numerics of CFD—the subject of Part II.

---

# CHAPTER

# 4

---

## BASIC ASPECTS OF DISCRETIZATION

*Numerical precision is the very soul of science.*

Sir D'Arcy Wentworth Thompson, Scottish biologist  
and natural scientist, 1917

### 4.1 INTRODUCTION

The word “discretization” requires some explanation. Obviously, it comes from “discrete,” defined in *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language* as “constituting a separate thing; individual; distinct; consisting of unconnected distinct parts.” However, the word “discretization” cannot be found in the same dictionary; it cannot be found in *Webster’s New World Dictionary* either. The fact that it does not appear in two of the most popular dictionaries of today implies, at the very least, that it is a rather new and esoteric word. Indeed, it seems to be unique to the literature of numerical analysis, first being introduced in the German literature in 1955 by W. R. Wasow, carried on by Ames in 1965 in his classic book on partial differential equations (Ref. 24), and recently embraced by the CFD community as found in Refs. 13, 14, and 16. In essence, discretization is the process by which a closed-form mathematical expression, such as a function or a differential or integral equation involving functions, all of which are viewed as having an infinite continuum of values throughout some domain, is approximated by analogous (but different) expressions which prescribe values at only a finite number of discrete points or volumes in the domain. This may sound a bit mysterious, so let us elaborate for the sake of clarity. Also, we will single out partial differential equations for purposes of discussion. Therefore, the remainder of this introductory section dwells on the meaning of “discretization.”

Analytical solutions of partial differential equations involve closed-form expressions which give the variation of the dependent variables *continuously* throughout the domain. In contrast, numerical solutions can give answers at only *discrete points* in the domain, called *grid points*. For example, consider Fig. 4.1, which shows a section of a discrete grid in the  $xy$  plane. For convenience, let us assume that the spacing of the grid points in the  $x$  direction is uniform and given by  $\Delta x$  and that the spacing of the points in the  $y$  direction is also uniform and given by  $\Delta y$ , as shown in Fig. 4.1. In general,  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta y$  are different. Indeed, it is not absolutely necessary that  $\Delta x$  or  $\Delta y$  be uniform; we could deal with totally unequal spacing in both directions, where  $\Delta x$  is a different value between each successive pairs of grid points, and similarly for  $\Delta y$ . However, the majority of CFD applications involve numerical solutions on a grid which contains uniform spacing in each direction, because this greatly simplifies the programming of the solution, saves storage space, and usually results in greater accuracy. This uniform spacing does not have to occur in the physical  $xy$  space; as is frequently done in CFD, the numerical calculations are carried out in a transformed computational space which has uniform spacing in the transformed independent variables but which corresponds to nonuniform spacing in the physical plane. These matters will be discussed in detail in Chap. 5. In any event, in this chapter we will assume uniform spacing in each coordinate direction but not necessarily equal spacing for both directions; i.e., we will assume  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta y$  to be constants, but  $\Delta x$  does not have to equal  $\Delta y$ . (We should note that recent research in CFD has focused on *unstructured* grids, where the grid points are placed in the flow field in a very irregular fashion; this is in contrast to a *structured* grid which reflects some type of consistent geometrical regularity. Figure 4.1 is an example of a structured grid. Some aspects of unstructured grids will be discussed in Chap. 5.)

Returning to Fig. 4.1, the grid points are identified by an index  $i$  which runs in the  $x$  direction and an index  $j$  which runs in the  $y$  direction. Hence, if  $(i, j)$  is the index for point  $P$  in Fig. 4.1, then the point immediately to the right of  $P$  is labeled as  $(i + 1, j)$ , the point immediately to the left is  $(i - 1, j)$ , the point directly above is  $(i, j + 1)$ , and the point directly below is  $(i, j - 1)$ .

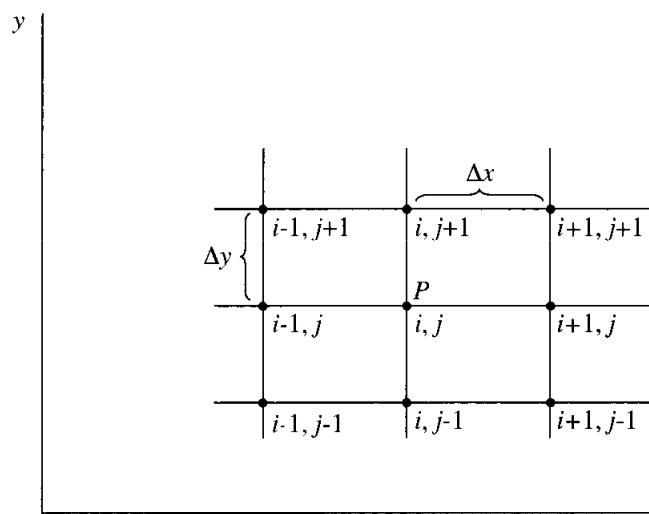
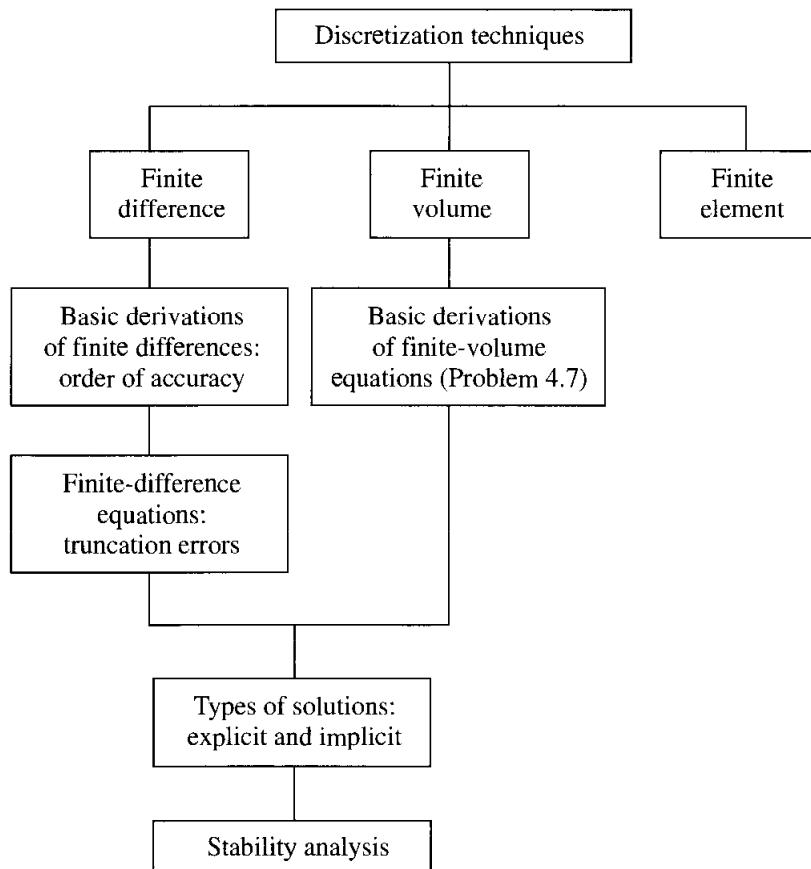


FIG. 4.1

Discrete grid points.

We are now in a position to elaborate on the word “discretization.” Imagine that we have a two-dimensional flow field which is governed by the Navier-Stokes equations, or as the case may be, the Euler equations, as derived in Chap. 2. These are partial differential equations. An analytical solution of these equations would provide, in principle, closed-form expressions for  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $p$ ,  $\rho$ , etc., as functions of  $x$  and  $y$ , which could be used to give values of the flow-field variables at *any* point we wish to choose in the flow, i.e., at any of the infinite number of  $(x, y)$  points in the domain. On the other hand, if the partial derivatives in the governing equations are replaced by approximate algebraic difference quotients (to be derived in the next section), where the algebraic difference quotients are expressed strictly in terms of the flow-field variables at two or more of the discrete grid points shown in Fig. 4.1, then the partial differential equations are totally replaced by a system of *algebraic* equations which can be solved for the values of the flow-field variables at the discrete grid points *only*. In this sense, the original partial differential equations have been discretized. Moreover, this method of discretization is called the *method of finite differences*. Finite-difference solutions are widely employed in CFD, and hence much of this chapter will be devoted to matters concerning finite differences.

So this is what discretization means. All methods in CFD utilize some form of discretization. The purpose of this chapter is to derive and discuss the more common forms of discretization in use today for finite-difference applications. This constitutes one of the three main headings in Fig. 4.2, which is the road map for this



**FIG. 4.2**  
Road map for Chap. 4.

chapter. The second and third main headings are labeled finite volume and finite element, respectively. Both finite-volume and finite-element methods have been in widespread use in computational mechanics for years. However, we will not discuss finite-volume or finite-element methods in this book, mainly because of length constraints. The essential aspects of finite volume discretization are dealt with via Problem 4.7 at the end of this chapter. It is important to note that CFD can be approached using any of the three main types of discretization: finite difference, finite volume, or finite element, as displayed in Fig. 4.2.

Examining the road map in Fig. 4.2 further, the purpose of the present chapter is to construct the basic discretization formulas for finite differences, while at the same time addressing the order of accuracy of these formulas. The road map in Fig. 4.2 gives us our marching orders—let's go to it!

## 4.2 INTRODUCTION TO FINITE DIFFERENCES

Here, we are interested in replacing a partial derivative with a suitable algebraic difference quotient, i.e., a *finite difference*. Most common finite-difference representations of derivatives are based on Taylor's series expansions. For example, referring to Fig. 4.1, if  $u_{i,j}$  denotes the  $x$  component of velocity at point  $(i, j)$ , then the velocity  $u_{i+1,j}$  at point  $(i + 1, j)$  can be expressed in terms of a Taylor series expanded about point  $(i, j)$  as follows:

$$u_{i+1,j} = u_{i,j} + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} \Delta x + \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2} + \left(\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{6} + \dots \quad (4.1)$$

Equation (4.1) is mathematically an exact expression for  $u_{i+1,j}$  if (1) the number of terms is infinite and the series converges and/or (2)  $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$ .

**Example 4.1.** Since some readers may not be totally comfortable with the concept of a Taylor series, we will review some aspects in this example.

First, consider a continuous function of  $x$ , namely,  $f(x)$ , with all derivatives defined at  $x$ . Then, the value of  $f$  at a location  $x + \Delta x$  can be estimated from a Taylor series expanded about point  $x$ , that is,

$$f(x + \Delta x) = f(x) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \Delta x + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2} + \dots \frac{\partial^n f}{\partial x^n} \frac{(\Delta x)^n}{n!} + \dots \quad (E.1)$$

[Note in Eq. (E.1) that we continue to use the partial derivative nomenclature to be consistent with Eq. (4.1), although for a function of one variable, the derivatives in Eq. (E.1) are really ordinary derivatives.] The significance of Eq. (E.1) is diagrammed in Fig. E4.1. Assume that we know the value of  $f$  at  $x$  (point 1 in Fig. E4.1); we want to calculate the value of  $f$  at  $x + \Delta x$  (point 2 in Fig. E4.1) using Eq. (E.1). Examining the right-hand side of Eq. (E.1), we see that the first term,  $f(x)$ , is not a good guess for  $f(x + \Delta x)$ , unless, of course, the function  $f(x)$  is a horizontal line between points 1 and 2. An improved guess is made by approximately accounting for the slope of the curve at point 1, which is the role of the second term,  $\partial f / \partial x \Delta x$ , in Eq. (E.1). To obtain an even better estimate of  $f$  at  $x + \Delta x$ , the third term,  $\partial^2 f / \partial x^2 (\Delta x)^2 / 2$ , is added, which approximately accounts for the curvature between points 1 and 2. In general, to obtain

$$f(x + \Delta x) = f(x) + \underbrace{\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \Delta x}_{\text{First guess (not very good)}} + \underbrace{\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2}}_{\text{Add to capture slope}} + \dots$$

+ Add to account for curvature

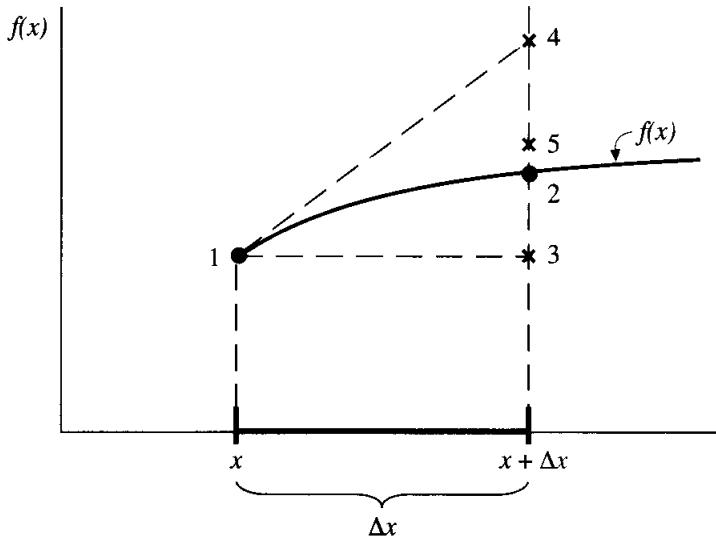


FIG. E4.1

Illustration of behavior of the first three terms in a Taylor series (for Example 4.1).

more accuracy, additional higher-order terms must be included. Indeed, Eq. (E.1) becomes an *exact* representation of  $f(x + \Delta x)$  only when an infinite number of terms is carried on the right-hand side. To examine some numbers, let

$$f(x) = \sin 2\pi x$$

At  $x = 0.2$  :  $f(x) = 0.9511$  (E.2)

This *exact* value of  $f(0.2)$  corresponds to point 1 in Fig. E4.1. Now, let  $\Delta x = 0.02$ . We wish to evaluate  $f(x + \Delta x) = f(0.22)$ . From Eq. (E.2), we have the *exact* value:

$$\text{At } x = 0.22 : \quad f(x) = 0.9823$$

This corresponds to point 2 in Fig. E4.1. Now, let us *estimate*  $f(0.22)$  using Eq. (E.1). Using just the first term on the right-hand side of Eq. (E.1), we have

$$f(0.22) \approx f(0.2) = 0.9511$$

This corresponds to point 3 in Fig. E4.1. The percentage error in this estimate is  $[(0.9823 - 0.9511)/0.9823] \times 100 = 3.176$  percent. Using two terms in Eq. (E.1),

$$\begin{aligned} f(x + \Delta x) &\approx f(x) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \Delta x \\ f(0.22) &\approx f(0.2) + 2\pi \cos [2\pi(0.2)](0.02) \\ &\approx 0.9511 + 0.388 = 0.9899 \end{aligned}$$

This corresponds to point 4 in Fig. E4.1. The percentage error in this estimate is  $[0.9899 - 0.9823]/0.9823 \times 100 = 0.775$  percent. This is much closer than the previous estimate. Finally, to obtain yet an even better estimate, let us use three terms in Eq. (E.1).

$$\begin{aligned}
f(x + \Delta x) &\approx f(x) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \Delta x + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2} \\
f(0.22) &\approx f(0.2) + 2\pi \cos [2\pi(0.2)](0.02) - 4\pi^2 \sin [2\pi(0.2)] \frac{(0.02)^2}{2} \\
&\approx 0.9511 + 0.0388 - 0.0075 \\
&\approx 0.9824
\end{aligned}$$

This corresponds to point 5 in Fig. E4.1. The percentage error in this estimate is  $[(0.9824 - 0.9823)/0.9823] \times 100 = 0.01$  percent. *This is a very close estimate of  $f(0.22)$  using just three terms in the Taylor series given by Eq. (E.1).*

Let us now return to Eq. (4.1) and pursue our discussion of finite-difference representations of derivatives. Solving Eq. (4.1) for  $(\partial u / \partial x)_{i,j}$ , we obtain

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)_{i,j} = \underbrace{\frac{u_{i+1,j} - u_{i,j}}{\Delta x}}_{\text{Finite-difference representation}} - \underbrace{\left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right)_{i,j} \frac{\Delta x}{2} - \left( \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{6} + \dots}_{\text{Truncation error}} \quad (4.2)$$

In Eq. (4.2), the actual partial derivative evaluated at point  $(i, j)$  is given on the left side. The first term on the right side, namely,  $(u_{i+1,j} - u_{i,j})/\Delta x$ , is a finite-difference representation of the partial derivative. The remaining terms on the right side constitute the *truncation error*. That is, if we wish to *approximate* the partial derivative with the above algebraic finite-difference quotient,

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)_{i,j} \approx \frac{u_{i+1,j} - u_{i,j}}{\Delta x} \quad (4.3)$$

then the truncation error in Eq. (4.2) tells us what is being neglected in this approximation. In Eq. (4.2), the lowest-order term in the truncation error involves  $\Delta x$  to the first power; hence, the finite-difference expression in Eq. (4.3) is called *first-order-accurate*. We can more formally write Eq. (4.2) as

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j} - u_{i,j}}{\Delta x} + O(\Delta x) \quad (4.4)$$

In Eq. (4.4), the symbol  $O(\Delta x)$  is a formal mathematical notation which represents “terms of order  $\Delta x$ .” Equation (4.4) is a more precise notation than Eq. (4.3), which involves the “approximately equal” notation; in Eq. (4.4) the order of magnitude of the truncation error is shown explicitly by the notation. Also referring to Fig. 4.1, note that the finite-difference expression in Eq. (4.4) uses information to the *right* of grid point  $(i, j)$ ; that is, it uses  $u_{i+1,j}$  as well as  $u_{i,j}$ . No information to the left of  $(i, j)$  is used. As a result, the finite difference in Eq. (4.4) is called a *forward difference*. For this reason, we now identify the first-order-accurate difference representation for the derivative  $(\partial u / \partial x)_{i,j}$  expressed by Eq. (4.4) as a *first-order forward difference*, repeated below.

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j} - u_{i,j}}{\Delta x} + O(\Delta x) \quad (4.4)$$

Let us now write a Taylor series expansion for  $u_{i-1,j}$ , expanded about  $u_{i,j}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} u_{i-1,j} &= u_{i,j} + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} (-\Delta x) + \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(-\Delta x)^2}{2} \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(-\Delta x)^3}{6} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} u_{i-1,j} &= u_{i,j} - \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} \Delta x + \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2} \\ &\quad - \left(\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{6} + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (4.5)$$

Solving for  $(\partial u / \partial x)_{i,j}$ , we obtain

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i,j} - u_{i-1,j}}{\Delta x} + O(\Delta x) \quad (4.6)$$

The information used in forming the finite-difference quotient in Eq. (4.6) comes from the *left* of grid point  $(i, j)$ ; that is, it uses  $u_{i-1,j}$  as well as  $u_{i,j}$ . No information to the right of  $(i, j)$  is used. As a result, the finite difference in Eq. (4.6) is called a *rearward* (or *backward*) difference. Moreover, the lowest-order term in the truncation error involves  $\Delta x$  to the first power. As a result, the finite difference in Eq. (4.6) is called a *first-order rearward difference*.

In most applications in CFD, first-order accuracy is not sufficient. To construct a finite-difference quotient of second-order accuracy, simply subtract Eq. (4.5) from Eq. (4.1):

$$u_{i+1,j} - u_{i-1,j} = 2\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} \Delta x + 2\left(\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{6} + \dots \quad (4.7)$$

Equation (4.7) can be written as

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j} - u_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta x} + O(\Delta x)^2 \quad (4.8)$$

The information used in forming the finite-difference quotient in Eq. (4.8) comes from *both* sides of the grid point located at  $(i, j)$ ; that is, it uses  $u_{i+1,j}$  as well as  $u_{i-1,j}$ . Grid point  $(i, j)$  falls between the two adjacent grid points. Moreover, in the

truncation error in Eq. (4.7), the lowest-order terms involves  $(\Delta x)^2$ , which is second-order accuracy. Hence, the finite-difference quotient in Eq. (4.8) is called a *second-order central difference*.

Difference expressions for the  $y$  derivatives are obtained in exactly the same fashion. (See Prob. 4.1 and 4.2.) The results are directly analogous to the previous equations for the  $x$  derivatives. They are:

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{i,j} = \begin{cases} \frac{u_{i,j+1} - u_{i,j}}{\Delta y} + O(\Delta y) & \text{Forward difference} \\ \frac{u_{i,j} - u_{i,j-1}}{\Delta y} + O(\Delta y) & \text{Rearward difference} \\ \frac{u_{i,j+1} - u_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta y} + O(\Delta y)^2 & \text{Central difference} \end{cases} \quad (4.9)$$

Equations (4.4), (4.6), and (4.8) to (4.11) are examples of finite-difference quotients for *first* partial derivatives. Is this all that we need for CFD? Let us return to Chap. 2 for a moment and take a look at the governing equations of motion. If we are dealing with inviscid flows only, the governing equations are the Euler equations, summarized in Sec. 2.8.2 and expressed by Eqs. (2.82) to (2.86). Note that the highest-order derivatives which appear in the Euler equations are first partial derivatives. Hence, finite differences for the first derivatives, such as those expressed by Eqs. (4.4), (4.6), and (4.8), are all that we need for the numerical solution of inviscid flows. On the other hand, if we are dealing with viscous flows, the governing equations are the Navier-Stokes equations, summarized in Sec. 2.8.1 and expressed by Eqs. (2.29), (2.50), (2.56), and (2.66). Note that the highest-order derivatives which appear in the Navier-Stokes equations are *second* partial derivatives, as reflected in the viscous terms such as  $\partial \tau_{xy}/\partial x = \partial/\partial x [\mu(\partial v/\partial x + \partial u/\partial y)]$  which appears in Eq. (2.50b), and  $\partial/\partial x (k \partial T/\partial x)$  which appears in Eq. (2.66). When expanded, these terms involve such second partial derivatives as  $\partial^2 u/\partial x \partial y$  and  $\partial^2 T/\partial x^2$ , just for example. Consequently, there is a need for discretizing second-order derivatives for CFD. We can obtain such finite-difference expressions by continuing with a Taylor series analysis, as follows.

Summing the Taylor series expansions given by Eqs. (4.1) and (4.5), we have

$$u_{i+1,j} + u_{i-1,j} = 2u_{i,j} + \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right)_{i,j} (\Delta x)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^4} \right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^4}{12} + \dots$$

Solving for  $(\partial^2 u/\partial x)_{i,j}$ ,

$$\left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j} - 2u_{i,j} + u_{i-1,j}}{(\Delta x)^2} + O(\Delta x)^2 \quad (4.12)$$

In Eq. (4.12), the first term on the right-hand side is a central finite difference for the second derivative with respect to  $x$  evaluated at grid point  $(i, j)$ ; from the remaining order-of-magnitude term, we see that this central difference is of second-order

accuracy. An analogous expression can easily be obtained for the second derivative with respect to  $y$ , with the result that

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i,j+1} - 2u_{i,j} + u_{i,j-1}}{(\Delta y)^2} + O(\Delta y)^2 \quad (4.13)$$

Equations (4.12) and (4.13) are examples of *second-order central second differences*.

For the case of mixed derivatives, such as  $\partial^2 u / \partial x \partial y$ , appropriate finite-difference quotients can be found as follows. Differentiating Eq. (4.1) with respect to  $y$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{i+1,j} &= \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{i,j} + \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \Delta x + \left(\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2} + \left(\frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^3 \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{6} + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (4.14)$$

Differentiating Eq. (4.5) with respect to  $y$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{i-1,j} &= \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{i,j} - \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \Delta x + \left(\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2} \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^3 \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{6} + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (4.15)$$

Subtracting Eq. (4.15) from Eq. (4.14) yields

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{i+1,j} - \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{i-1,j} = 2 \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \Delta x + \left(\frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^3 \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{6} + \dots$$

Solving for  $(\partial^2 u / \partial x \partial y)_{i,j}$ , which is the mixed derivative for which we are seeking a finite-difference expression, the above equation yields

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{(\partial u / \partial y)_{i+1,j} - (\partial u / \partial y)_{i-1,j}}{2 \Delta x} - \left(\frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^3 \partial y}\right)_{i,j} \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{12} + \dots \quad (4.16)$$

In Eq. (4.16), the first term on the right-hand-side involves  $\partial u / \partial y$ , first evaluated at grid point  $(i + 1, j)$  and then at grid point  $(i - 1, j)$ . Returning to the grid sketched in Fig. 4.1, we can see that  $\partial u / \partial y$  at each of these two grid points can be replaced with a second-order central difference patterned after that given by Eq. (4.11) but using appropriate grid points first centered on  $(i + 1, j)$  and then on  $(i - 1, j)$ . To be more specific, in Eq. (4.16) first replace  $(\partial u / \partial y)_{i+1,j}$  with

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{i+1,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j+1} - u_{i+1,j-1}}{2 \Delta y} + O(\Delta y)^2$$

and then replace  $(\partial u / \partial y)_{i-1,j}$  with the analogous difference,

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{i-1,j} = \frac{u_{i-1,j+1} - u_{i-1,j-1}}{2\Delta y} + O(\Delta y)^2$$

In this fashion, Eq. (4.16) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} \right)_{i,j} &= \frac{u_{i+1,j+1} - u_{i+1,j-1} - u_{i-1,j+1} + u_{i-1,j-1}}{4\Delta x \Delta y} \\ &\quad + O[(\Delta x)^2, (\Delta y)^2] \end{aligned} \quad (4.17)$$

The truncation error in Eq. (4.17) comes from Eq. (4.16), where the lowest-order neglected term is of  $O(\Delta x)^2$ , and from the fact that the central difference in Eq. (4.11) is of  $O(\Delta y)^2$ . Hence, the truncation error in Eq. (4.17) must be  $O[(\Delta x)^2, (\Delta y)^2]$ . Equation (4.17) gives a *second-order central difference for the mixed derivative*,  $(\partial^2 u / \partial x \partial y)_{i,j}$ .

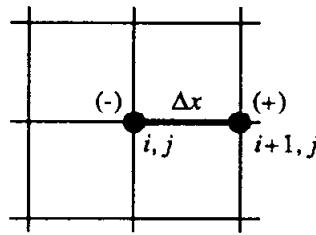
It is important to note that when the governing flow equations are used in the form of Eq. (2.93), only first derivatives are needed, even for viscous flows. The dependent variables being differentiated are  $U, F, G$ , and  $H$  in Eq. (2.93), and only as first derivatives. Hence, these derivatives can be replaced with the appropriate finite-difference expressions for first derivatives, such as Eqs. (4.4), (4.6), and (4.8) to (4.11). In turn, some elements of  $F, G$ , and  $H$  involve viscous stresses, such as  $\tau_{xx}$ ,  $\tau_{xy}$ , and thermal conduction terms. These terms depend on velocity or temperature gradients, which are also first derivatives. Hence, the finite-difference forms for first derivatives can also be used for the viscous terms *inside*  $F, G$ , and  $H$ . In this fashion, the need to use a finite-difference expression for second derivatives, such as Eqs. (4.12), (4.13), and (4.17), is circumvented.

To this stage, we have derived a number of different forms of finite-difference expressions for various partial derivatives. To help reinforce these finite differences in your mind, the graphical concept of *finite-difference modules* is useful. All the above difference expressions can be nicely displayed in the context of the finite-difference modules shown in Fig. 4.3. This figure is a concise review of the finite-difference forms we have discussed, as well as illustrating on a grid the specific grid points that participate in the formation of each finite difference. These participating grid points are shown by large filled circles connected by bold lines; such a schematic is called a finite-difference module. The plus and minus signs adjacent to the participating grid points remind us of whether the information at each of these points is added or subtracted to form the appropriate finite differences; similarly, a  $(-2)$  beside a grid point connotes that twice the variable at that grid point is subtracted in the formation of the finite-difference quotient. Compare the  $(+)$ ,  $(-)$ , and  $(-2)$  in the finite-difference modules with the corresponding formula for the finite difference which appears to the left of each module in Fig. 4.3.

The finite-difference expressions derived in this section and displayed in Fig. 4.3 represent just the “tip of the iceberg.” Many other difference approximations can be obtained for the same derivatives we treated above. In particular, more

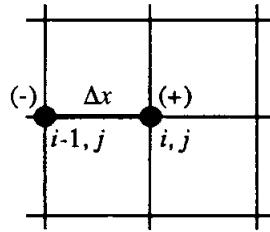
First-order forward difference with respect to  $x$

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j} - u_{i,j}}{\Delta x}$$



First-order rearward difference with respect to  $x$

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i,j} - u_{i-1,j}}{\Delta x}$$



Second-order central difference with respect to  $x$

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j} - u_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta x}$$

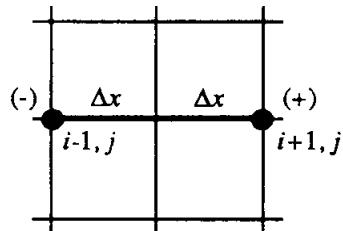


FIG. 4.3

Finite-difference expressions with their appropriate finite-difference modules.

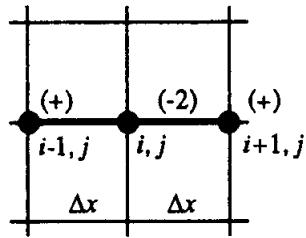
accurate finite-difference quotients can be derived, exhibiting third-order accuracy, fourth-order accuracy, and more. Such higher-order-accurate difference quotients generally involve information at more grid points than those we have derived. For example, a fourth-order-accurate central finite-difference for  $\partial^2 u / \partial x^2$  is

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\right)_{i,j} = \frac{-u_{i+2,j} + 16u_{i+1,j} - 30u_{i,j} + 16u_{i-1,j} - u_{i-2,j}}{12(\Delta x)^2} + O(\Delta x)^4 \quad (4.18)$$

Note that information at five grid points is required to form this fourth-order finite difference; compare this with Eq. (4.12), where  $(\partial^2 u / \partial x^2)_{i,j}$  is represented in terms of information at only three grid points, albeit with only second-order accuracy. Equation (4.18) can be derived by repeated application of Taylor's series expanded about grid points  $(i + 1, j)$ ,  $(i, j)$ , and  $(i - 1, j)$ ; the details are considered in Prob. 4.5. We are simply emphasizing that an almost unlimited number of finite-difference expressions can be derived with ever-increasing accuracy. In the past, second-order accuracy has been considered sufficient for most CFD applications, so the types of difference quotients we have derived in this section have been, by far, the most

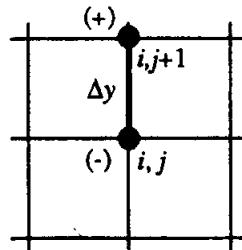
Second-order central second difference with respect to  $x$

$$\left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j} - 2u_{i,j} + u_{i-1,j}}{(\Delta x)^2}$$



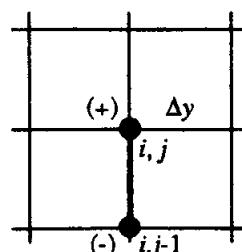
First-order forward difference with respect to  $y$

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i,j+1} - u_{i,j}}{\Delta y}$$



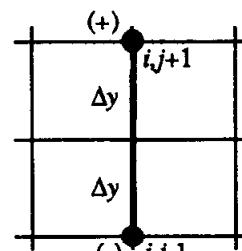
First-order rearward difference with respect to  $y$

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i,j} - u_{i,j-1}}{\Delta y}$$



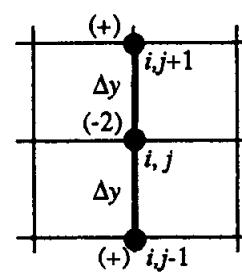
Second-order central difference with respect to  $y$

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i,j+1} - u_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta y}$$



Second-order central second difference with respect to  $y$

$$\left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i,j+1} - 2u_{i,j} + u_{i,j-1}}{(\Delta y)^2}$$



Second-order central mixed difference with respect to  $x$  and  $y$

$$\left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{u_{i+1,j+1} + u_{i-1,j-1} - u_{i-1,j+1} - u_{i+1,j-1}}{4\Delta x \Delta y}$$

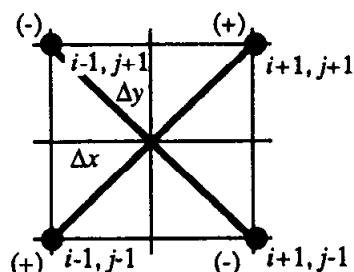


FIG. 4.3 (continued)

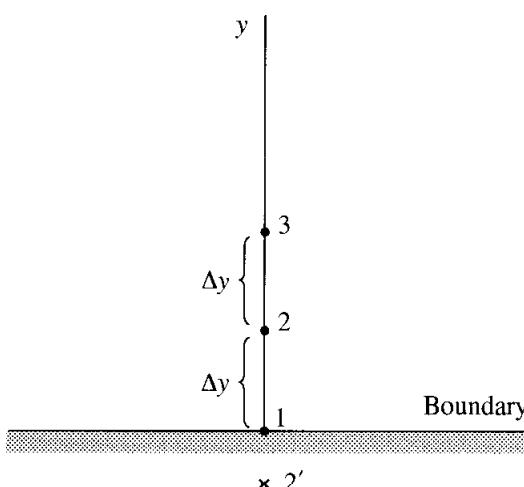
commonly used forms. The pros and cons of higher-order accuracy are as follows:

1. Higher-order-accurate difference quotients, such as displayed in Eq. (4.18), by requiring more grid points, result in more computer time required for each time wise or spatial step—a con.
2. On the other hand, a higher-order difference scheme may require a smaller number of total grid points in a flow solution to obtain comparable overall accuracy—a pro.
3. Higher-order difference schemes may result in a “higher- quality” solution, such as captured shock waves that are sharper and more distinct—also a pro. In fact, this aspect is a matter of current research in CFD.

For these reasons, the matter of what degree of accuracy is desirable for various CFD solutions is not clear-cut. Because second-order accuracy has been previously accepted in the vast majority of CFD applications, and because the purpose of this book is to present a basic introduction to the elements of CFD without undue complication, we will consider that second-order accuracy will be sufficient for our purposes in this and subsequent chapters. For a detailed tabulation of many forms of difference quotients, see pp. 44 and 45 of Ref. 13.

We have one more item of business before finishing this section on finite-difference quotients. We pose the following question: What happens at a boundary? What type of differencing is possible when we have only one direction to go, namely, the direction away from the boundary? For example, consider Fig. 4.4, which illustrates a portion of a boundary to a flow field, with the  $y$  axis perpendicular to the boundary. Let grid point 1 be on the boundary, with points 2 and 3 a distance  $\Delta y$  and  $2\Delta y$  above the boundary, respectively. We wish to construct a finite-difference approximation for  $\partial u / \partial y$  at the boundary. It is easy to construct a forward difference as

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_1 = \frac{u_2 - u_1}{\Delta y} + O(\Delta y) \quad (4.19)$$



**FIG. 4.4**  
Grid points at a boundary

which is of first-order accuracy. However, how do we obtain a result which is of second-order accuracy? Our central difference in Eq. (4.11) fails us because it requires another point beneath the boundary, such as illustrated as point 2' in Fig. 4.4. Point 2' is outside the domain of computation, and we generally have no information about  $u$  at this point. In the early days of CFD, many solutions attempted to sidestep this problem by assuming that  $u_{2'} = u_2$ . This is called the *reflection boundary condition*. In most cases it does not make physical sense and is just as inaccurate, if not more so, than the forward difference given by Eq. (4.19).

So we ask the question again, how do we find a second-order-accurate finite-difference at the boundary? The answer is straightforward, as we will describe here. Moreover, we will seize this occasion to illustrate an alternative approach to the construction of finite-difference quotients—alternative to the Taylor's series analyses presented earlier. We will use a *polynomial approach*, as follows. Assume at the boundary shown in Fig. 4.4 that  $u$  can be expressed by the polynomial

$$u = a + by + cy^2 \quad (4.20)$$

Applied successively to the grid points in Fig. 4.4, Eq. (4.20) yields at grid point 1 where  $y = 0$ ,

$$u_1 = a \quad (4.21)$$

and at grid point 2 where  $y = \Delta y$ ,

$$u_2 = a + b \Delta y + c(\Delta y)^2 \quad (4.22)$$

and at grid point 3 where  $y = 2\Delta y$ ,

$$u_3 = a + b(2\Delta y) + c(2\Delta y)^2 \quad (4.23)$$

Solving Eqs. (4.21) to (4.23) for  $b$ , we obtain

$$b = \frac{-3u_1 + 4u_2 - u_3}{2\Delta y} \quad (4.24)$$

Returning to Eq. (4.20), and differentiating with respect to  $y$ ,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = b + 2cy \quad (4.25)$$

Equation (4.25), evaluated at the boundary where  $y = 0$ , yields

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_1 = b \quad (4.26)$$

Combining Eqs. (4.24) and (4.26), we obtain

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_1 = \frac{-3u_1 + 4u_2 - u_3}{2\Delta y} \quad (4.27)$$

Equation (4.27) is a one-sided finite-difference expression for the derivative at the boundary—called *one-sided* because it uses information only on one side of the grid point at the boundary, namely, information only *above* grid point 1 in Fig. 4.4. Also, Eq. (4.27) was derived using a polynomial expression, namely, Eq. (4.20), rather than a Taylor series representation. This illustrates an alternative approach to the formulation of finite-difference quotients; indeed, all our previous results as summarized in Fig. 4.3 could have been obtained using this polynomial approach. It remains to show the order of accuracy of Eq. (4.27). Here, we have to appeal to a Taylor series again. Consider a Taylor series expansion about the point 1.

$$u(y) = u_1 + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_1 y + \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\right)_1 \frac{y^2}{2} + \left(\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial y^3}\right)_1 \frac{y^3}{6} + \dots \quad (4.28)$$

Compare Eqs. (4.28) and (4.20). Our assumed polynomial expression in Eq. (4.20) is the same as using the first three terms in the Taylor series. Hence, Eq. (4.20) is of  $O(\Delta y)^3$ . Now examine the numerator of Eq. (4.27); here  $u_1$ ,  $u_2$ , and  $u_3$  can all be expressed in terms of the polynomial given by Eq. (4.20). Since Eq. (4.20) is of  $O(\Delta y)^3$ , then the numerator of Eq. (4.27) is also of  $O(\Delta y)^3$ . However, in forming the derivative in Eq. (4.27), we divided by  $\Delta y$ , which then makes Eq. (4.27) of  $O(\Delta y)^2$ . Thus, we can write from Eq. (4.27)

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_1 = \frac{-3u_1 + 4u_2 - u_3}{2\Delta y} + O(\Delta y)^2 \quad (4.29)$$

This is our desired second-order-accurate difference quotient at the boundary.

Both Eqs. (4.19) and (4.29) are called *one-sided differences*, because they express a derivative at a point in terms of dependent variables on *only one side* of that point. Moreover, these equations are general; i.e., they are not in any way limited to application just at a boundary; they can be applied at internal grid points as well. It just so happens that we have taken advantage of our discussion of finite-difference quotients at a boundary to derive such one-sided differences. Of course, as we have seen here, one-sided differences are essentially mandatory for a representation of a derivative at a boundary, but such one-sided differences simply offer another option when applied *internally* within the domain of the overall calculations. Furthermore, Eq. (4.29) displays a one-sided finite difference of second-order accuracy; many other one-sided difference formulas for a derivative at a point can be derived with higher orders of accuracy using additional grid points to one side of that point. In some CFD applications, it is not unusual to see four- and five-point one-sided differences applied at a boundary. This is especially true for viscous flow calculations. In such calculations, the shear stress and heat transfer at the wall, due to a flow over that wall, are of particular importance. The shear stress at the wall is given by (see, for example, chap. 12 of Ref. 8)

$$\tau_w = \mu \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_w \quad (4.30)$$

and the heat transfer at the wall is given by

$$q_w = k \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right)_w \quad (4.31)$$

In finite-difference solutions of a viscous flow (solutions of the Navier-Stokes equations, parabolized Navier-Stokes equations, the boundary-layer equations, etc.), the flow-field values of  $u$  and  $T$  are calculated at all the grid points, internal as well as boundary points. Then, after these flow-field values are obtained (by whatever algorithm is chosen, such as one of the appropriate techniques discussed in Part III of this book), the shear stress and heat transfer are calculated after the fact from Eqs. (4.30) and (4.31). Clearly, the more accurate the one-sided finite difference used to represent  $(\partial u / \partial y)_w$  and  $(\partial T / \partial y)_w$  in Eqs. (4.30) and (4.31), respectively, the more accurate will be the calculated results for  $\tau_w$  and  $q_w$ .

**Example 4.2.** Consider the viscous flow of air over a flat plate. At a given station in the flow direction, the variation of the flow velocity,  $u$ , in the direction perpendicular to the plate (the  $y$  direction) is given by the expression

$$u = 1582(1 - e^{-y/L}) \quad (E.3)$$

where  $L$  = characteristic length = 1 in. The units of  $u$  are feet per second. The viscosity coefficient  $\mu = 3.7373 \times 10^{-7}$  slug/(ft · s). We use Eq. (E.3) to provide the values of  $u$  at discrete grid points equally spaced in the  $y$  direction, with  $\Delta y = 0.1$  in. Specifically, we obtain from Eq. (E.3):

$y$ , in	$u$ , ft/s
0	0
0.10	150.54
0.20	286.77
0.30	410.03

Imagine that the values of  $u$  listed above are discrete values at the discrete grid points located at  $y = 0, 0.1, 0.2$ , and  $0.3$ , in the same nature as would be obtained from a numerical finite-difference solution of the flow field. Indeed, assume that these discrete values of  $u$  are all that we know; we have used Eq. (E.3) just to specify these discrete values of  $u$ . Using these discrete values, calculate the shear stress at the wall  $\tau_w$  three different ways, namely:

- (a) Using a first-order one-sided difference
- (b) Using the second-order one-sided difference given by Eq. (4.29)
- (c) Using the third-order one-sided difference derived in Prob. 4.6.

Finally, compare these calculated finite-difference results with the *exact* value of  $\tau_w$  as specified from Eq. (E.3).

**Solution**

(a) First-order difference:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{j=1} &= \frac{u_{j=2} - u_{j=1}}{\Delta y} \\ &= \frac{150.54 - 0}{0.1} = 1505.4 \text{ ft/(s · in)}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_w &= \mu \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{j=1} = (3.7373 \times 10^{-7})(1505.4)(12) \\ &= \boxed{6.7514 \times 10^{-3} \text{ lb/ft}^2}\end{aligned}$$

(Note that the factor 12 has been used above to convert the velocity gradient to units of  $\text{ft}/(\text{s} \cdot \text{ft})$ , rather than per inch; in the calculation of  $\tau_w$ , we must use consistent units, in this case the English engineering system of units.)

(b) Second-order difference (from Eq. 4.29):

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{j=1} &= \frac{-3u_{j=1} + 4u_{j=2} - u_{j=3}}{2\Delta y} \\ &= \frac{-3(0) + 4(150.54) - 286.77}{2(0.1)} \\ &= 1577.0 \text{ ft/(s · in)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_w &= \mu \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{j=1} = (3.7373 \times 10^{-7})(1577.0)(12) \\ &= \boxed{7.072 \times 10^{-3} \text{ lb/ft}^2}\end{aligned}$$

(c) Third-order difference (from Prob. 4.6):

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)_{j=1} &= \frac{-11u_{j=1} + 18u_{j=2} - 9u_{j=3} + 2u_{j=4}}{6\Delta y} \\ &= \frac{-11(0) + 18(150.54) - 9(286.77) + 2(410.03)}{6(0.1)} \\ &= 1581.4 \text{ ft/(s · in)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_w &= \mu \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{j=1} = (3.7373 \times 10^{-7})(1581.4)(12) \\ &= \boxed{7.092 \times 10^{-3} \text{ lb/ft}^2}\end{aligned}$$

(d) Exact value [from Eq. (E.3)]:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = \frac{1582}{L} e^{-y/L} \quad (\text{E.4})$$

Recalling that  $L = 1$  in, then at the wall ( $y = 0$ ), Eq. (E.4) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{y=0} &= 1582 \text{ ft/(s · in)} \\ \tau_w &= \mu \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{y=0} = (3.7373 \times 10^{-7})(1582)(12) \\ &= 7.095 \times 10^{-3} \text{ lb/ft}^2 \end{aligned}$$

*Important:* Surveying the above results, we see that the use of progressively higher-order-accurate difference expressions gives progressively more accurate values of  $\tau_w$ . Specifically, compared to the exact value of  $7.095 \times 10^{-3}$  lb/ft<sup>2</sup>, we have:

Order of accuracy	$\tau_w$ lb/ft <sup>2</sup>	% error
First order (part a)	$6.7514 \times 10^{-3}$	4.8
Second order (part b)	$7.072 \times 10^{-3}$	0.3
Third order (part c)	$7.092 \times 10^{-3}$	0.04
Exact [Eq. (E.4)]	$7.095 \times 10^{-3}$	0

Note from the above tabulation that the use of a second-order-accurate difference formula gives a much better result for  $\tau_w$  than a simple first-order difference and that the use of a third-order difference formula further improves the accuracy, but it is less dramatic. Here is an indication that, for most finite-difference solutions, at least second-order accuracy is needed, and it turns out to be sufficient.

### 4.3 DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS

In Sec. 4.2, we discussed the representation of a partial derivative by means of an algebraic finite-difference quotient. Most partial differential *equations* involve a number of partial derivative terms. When all the partial derivatives in a given partial differential equation are replaced by finite-difference quotients, the resulting *algebraic* equation is called a *difference equation*, which is an algebraic representation of the partial differential equation. The essence of finite-difference solutions in CFD is to use the difference quotients derived in Sec. 4.2 (or others that are similar) to replace the partial derivatives in the governing flow equations, resulting in a system of algebraic difference equations for the dependent variables at each grid point. In the present section, we examine some of the basic aspects of a difference equation.

For simplicity, we choose to examine a partial differential equation which is less elaborate than the governing flow equations. For example, let us consider Eq. (3.28), which is the unsteady, one-dimensional heat conduction equation with constant thermal diffusivity, repeated below.

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \alpha \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} \quad (3.28)$$

We choose this simple equation for convenience; at this stage in our discussions there is no advantage to be obtained by dealing with the much more complex flow equations. The basic aspects of finite-difference equations to be examined in this section can just as well be developed using Eq. (3.28). As stated in the Unsteady Thermal Conduction subsection of Sec. 3.4.2, this is a parabolic partial differential equation. (See Prob. 3.2.) As such, it lends itself to a marching solution with respect to time  $t$  as discussed in Chap. 3.

Let us replace the partial derivatives in Eq. (3.28) with finite-difference quotients. Equation (3.28) has two independent variables,  $x$  and  $t$ . We consider the grid sketched in Fig. 4.5. Here,  $i$  is the running index in the  $x$  direction and  $n$  is the running index in the  $t$  direction. When one of the independent variables in a partial differential equation is a *marching* variable, such as  $t$  in Eq. (3.28), it is conventional in CFD to denote the running index for this marching variable by  $n$  and to display this index as a *superscript* in the finite-difference quotient. For example, let us replace the time derivative in Eq. (3.28) with a forward difference patterned after Eq. (4.4), i.e.,

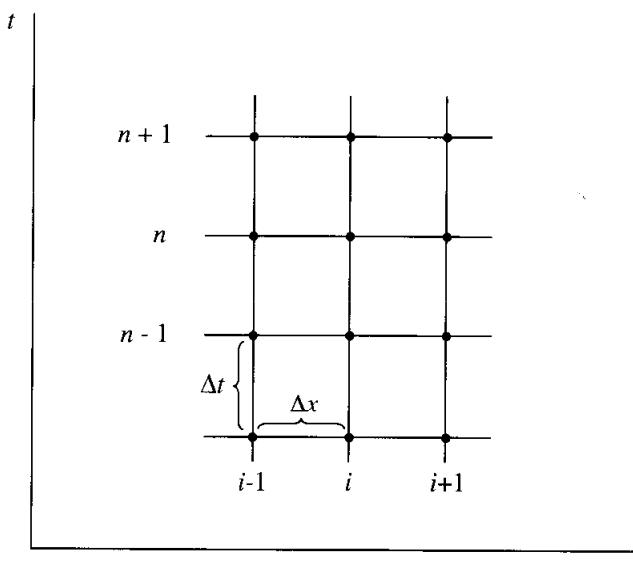
$$\left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial t}\right)_i^n = \frac{T_i^{n+1} - T_i^n}{\Delta t} - \left(\frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial t^2}\right)_i^n \frac{\Delta t}{2} + \dots \quad (4.32)$$

where the truncation error is the same as that displayed in Eq. (4.2). Also, let us replace the  $x$  derivative in Eq. (3.28) with a central difference patterned after Eq. (4.12), i.e.,

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2}\right)_i^n = \frac{T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} - \left(\frac{\partial^4 T}{\partial x^4}\right)_i^n \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{12} + \dots \quad (4.33)$$

where the truncation error is the same as that displayed immediately above Eq. (4.12). Let us write Eq. (3.28) as

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} - \alpha \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} = 0 \quad (4.34)$$



**FIG. 4.5**  
Grid for the differencing of Eq. (3.28).

Inserting Eqs. (4.32) and (4.33) into (4.34), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{Partial differential} \\
 & \text{equation} \\
 \boxed{\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} - \alpha \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} = 0} &= \frac{T_i^{n+1} - T_i^n}{\Delta t} - \frac{\alpha(T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n)}{(\Delta x)^2} \\
 & \quad \boxed{\text{Difference equation}} \\
 & \quad + \left[ -\left( \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial t^2} \right)_i \frac{\Delta t}{2} + \alpha \left( \frac{\partial^4 T}{\partial x^4} \right)_i \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{12} + \dots \right] \\
 & \quad \boxed{\text{Truncation error}}
 \end{aligned} \tag{4.35}$$

Examining Eq. (4.35), the left-hand side is the original partial differential equation, the first two terms on the right-hand side are the finite-difference representation of this equation, and the terms in the vertical brackets give the truncation error for the difference equation. Writing just the difference equation from Eq. (4.35), we have

$$\frac{T_i^{n+1} - T_i^n}{\Delta t} = \frac{\alpha(T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n)}{(\Delta x)^2} \tag{4.36}$$

Equation (4.36) is a *difference equation* which represents the original partial differential equation expressed in Eq. (3.28). However, Eq. (4.36) is just an *approximation* for Eq. (3.28); since each of the finite-difference quotients used in Eq. (4.36) has a truncation error, then the final form of the difference equation has its own truncation error synthesized from the errors of each of the finite differences. The truncation error for the difference equation given by Eq. (4.36) is displayed in Eq. (4.35). Note that the truncation error for the difference equation is  $O[\Delta t, (\Delta x)^2]$ .

*Important:* The difference equation is not the same as the original partial differential equation—it is a different thing altogether. The difference equation is an *algebraic* equation, which when written at all the grid points in the domain sketched in Fig. 4.5 yields a simultaneous system of algebraic equations. In turn, by some fashion these algebraic equations are solved numerically for the dependent variable at all grid points, i.e., solved for  $T_i^n, T_{i+1}^n, T_i^{n+1}, T_{i+1}^{n+1}, T_i^{n+2}$ , etc. In principle, we can only hope that the numerical results give values for  $T$  which represent those that would be obtained from a closed-form analytical solution of the original partial differential equation, at least within the truncation error. Some confidence in this regard can be obtained if we can answer “yes” to the following question: Does the difference equation reduce to the original differential equation as the number of grid points goes to infinity, i.e., as  $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$  and  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ ? Examining Eq. (4.35), we note that the truncation error approaches zero, and hence the difference equation does indeed approach the original differential equation. When this is the case, the finite-difference representation of the partial differential equation is said to be *consistent*.

If the difference equation is consistent, if the numerical algorithm used to solve the difference equation is stable, and if the boundary conditions are handled in a proper numerical fashion, then the numerical solution of the difference equation should be an appropriate representation of the analytical solution of the partial differential equation, at least to within the truncation error. However, there are several big “ifs” in the above statement. These “ifs,” along with the undesirable propagation of truncation errors throughout the domain, make any successful CFD solution somewhat of a challenge and sometimes as much of an “art” as it is a “science.”

The purpose of this section has been to introduce the idea of difference equations. The general concept of a finite-difference solution is to represent the governing partial differential equations by means of difference equations, and to solve these difference equations for numerical values of the dependent variables at each of the discrete grid points which cover the physical domain of interest. We have not yet discussed any precise algorithms that might be used for such numerical solutions; appropriate techniques (algorithms) for solving CFD problems by the finite-difference approach will evolve as we work through Part II of this book and as we deal with specific applications in Part III.

At this stage, it is worthwhile to return to the road map in Fig. 4.2. We have discussed the material represented by the first three boxes in the left column of Fig. 4.2—we have covered the basic elements of finite differences and their use to construct difference equations. There are several other important considerations to be discussed, such as explicit versus implicit solutions, stability analyses, and numerical dissipation.

#### 4.4 EXPLICIT AND IMPLICIT APPROACHES: DEFINITIONS AND CONTRASTS

To this point in the present chapter, we have discussed some basic elements of the finite-difference method. We have done nothing more than just create some numerical tools for future use; we have not yet described how these tools can be put to use for the solutions of CFD problems. The way that these tools are put together and used for a given solution can be called a CFD *technique*, and we have not yet discussed any specific techniques. Aspects of several difference techniques commonly used in CFD will be discussed in Chap. 6. However, once you choose a specific technique to solve your given problem, you will find that the technique falls into one or the other of two different general approaches, an *explicit* approach or an *implicit* approach. It is appropriate to introduce and define these two general approaches now; they represent a fundamental distinction between various numerical techniques, a distinction for which we need to have some appreciation at this stage of our discussion.

For simplicity, let us return to the one-dimensional heat conduction equation given by Eq. (3.28), repeated below.

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \alpha \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} \quad (3.28)$$

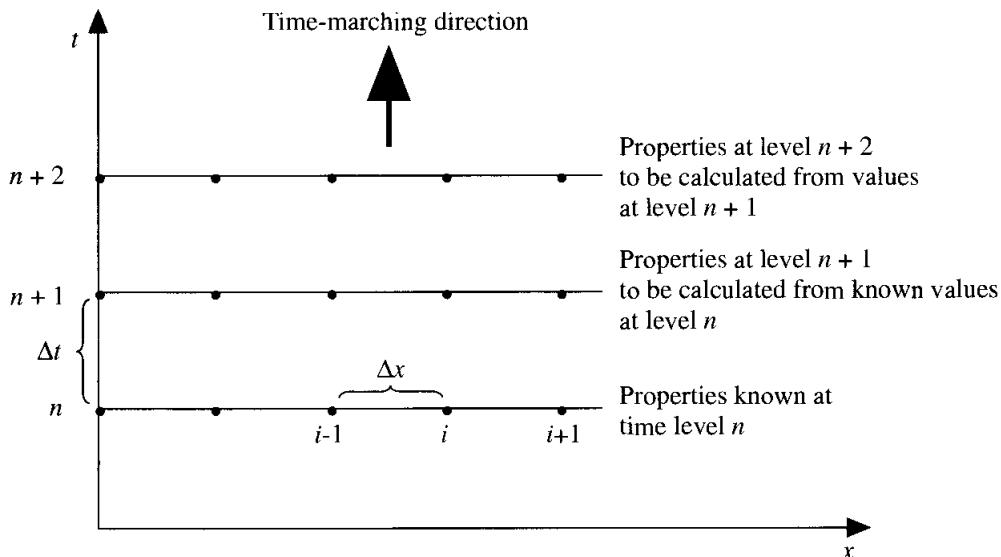
We will treat Eq. (3.28) as a “model equation” for our discussion in this section; all the necessary points concerning explicit and implicit approaches can be made using this model equation without going to the extra complexity of the governing flow equations. In Sec. 4.3, we used Eq. (3.28) to illustrate what was meant by a difference equation. In particular, in that section we chose to represent  $\partial T / \partial t$  with a forward difference and  $\partial^2 T / \partial x^2$  with a central second difference, leading to the particular form of the difference equation given by Eq. (4.36), repeated below:

$$\frac{T_i^{n+1} - T_i^n}{\Delta t} = \frac{\alpha(T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n)}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad (4.36)$$

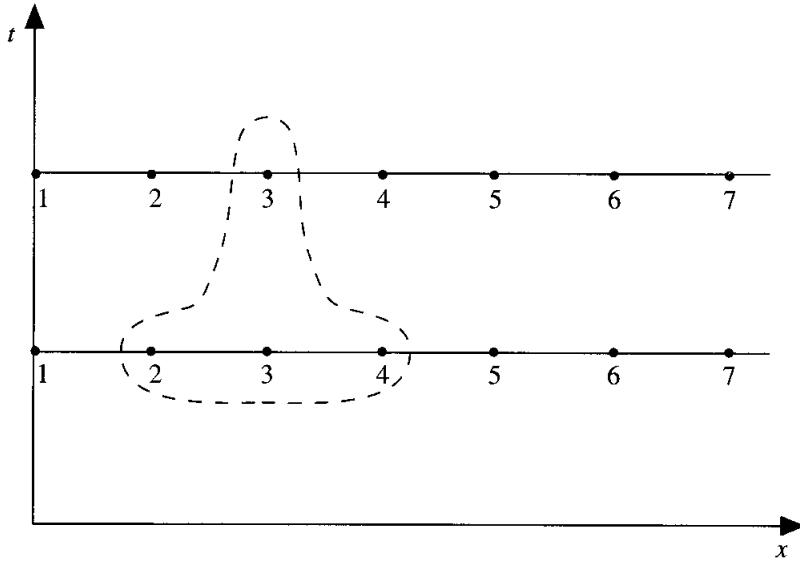
With some rearrangement, this equation can be written as

$$T_i^{n+1} = T_i^n + \alpha \frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} (T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n) \quad (4.37)$$

Let us examine the implications of Eq. (3.28) and its difference equation counterpart given by Eq. (4.37). Recall from our previous discussion in Sec. 4.3 that Eq. (3.28) is a parabolic partial differential equation. Being parabolic, this equation lends itself to a *marching solution*, as described in Sec. 3.4.2. The marching variable here is time  $t$ . To be more specific, consider the finite-difference grid sketched in Fig. 4.6. Assume that  $T$  is known at all grid points at time level  $n$ . Time marching means that  $T$  at all grid points at time level  $n + 1$  are calculated from the known values at time level  $n$ . When this calculation is finished, we have known values at time level  $n + 1$ . Then the same procedure is used to calculate  $T$  at all grid points at time level  $n + 2$ , using the known values at level  $n + 1$ . In this fashion, the solution is progressively obtained by marching in steps of time. Casting our attention to Eq. (4.37), we see a straightforward mechanism to accomplish this time marching. Notice that Eq. (4.37) is written with properties at time level  $n$  on the right-hand side



**FIG. 4.6**  
Illustration of time marching.



**FIG. 4.7**  
An explicit finite-difference module.

and properties at time level  $n + 1$  on the left-hand side. Recall that, within the time-marching philosophy, all properties at level  $n$  are known and those at level  $n + 1$  are to be calculated. Of particular significance is that only *one unknown* appears in Eq. (4.37), namely,  $T_i^{n+1}$ . Hence, Eq. (4.37) allows for the immediate solution of  $T_i^{n+1}$  from the known properties at time level  $n$ . We have a single equation with a single unknown—nothing could be simpler. For example, consider the grid shown in Fig. 4.7, where we choose to distribute seven grid points along the  $x$  axis. Centering on grid point 2, Eq. (4.37) is written as

$$T_2^{n+1} = T_2^n + \alpha \frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} (T_3^n - 2T_2^n + T_1^n) \quad (4.38)$$

This allows the direct calculation of  $T_2^{n+1}$  since the quantities on the right-hand side of Eq. (4.38) are all known numbers. Then, centering on grid point 3, Eq. (4.37) is written as

$$T_3^{n+1} = T_3^n + \alpha \frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} (T_4^n - 2T_3^n + T_2^n) \quad (4.39)$$

This allows the direct calculation of  $T_3^{n+1}$  from the known numbers on the right-hand side of Eq. (4.39). In the same vein, by sequential application of Eq. (4.37) to grid points 4, 5, and 6, we obtain sequentially  $T_4^{n+1}$ ,  $T_5^{n+1}$ , and  $T_6^{n+1}$ .

What we have just presented in the above paragraph is an example of an *explicit* approach. By definition, in an explicit approach each difference equation contains only one unknown and therefore can be solved *explicitly* for this unknown in a straightforward manner. Nothing could be simpler. This explicit approach is further illustrated by the finite-difference module contained within the dashed balloon in Fig. 4.7. Here, the module contains only one unknown at time level  $n + 1$ .

In regard to grid points 1 and 7 in Fig. 4.7, the marching solution of a parabolic partial differential equation presupposes the stipulation of boundary conditions. In regard to Fig. 4.7, this means that  $T_1$  and  $T_7$ , which represent  $T$  at the left and right boundaries, respectively, are known numbers at each time level, known from the stipulated boundary conditions.

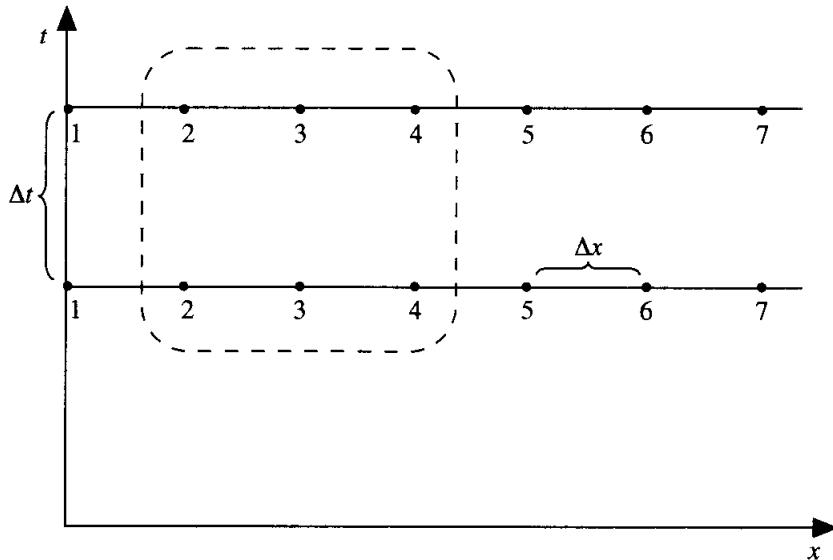
Equation (4.36) is not the only difference equation that can represent Eq. (3.28); in fact, it is only one of many different representations of the original partial differential equation. As a counterexample to the above discussion concerning the explicit approach, let us be somewhat daring and return to Eq. (3.28), this time writing the spatial difference on the right-hand side in terms of *average* properties between time levels  $n$  and  $n + 1$ . That is, we will represent Eq. (3.28) by

$$\frac{T_i^{n+1} - T_i^n}{\Delta t} = \alpha \frac{\frac{1}{2}(T_{i+1}^{n+1} + T_{i+1}^n) + \frac{1}{2}(-2T_i^{n+1} - 2T_i^n) + \frac{1}{2}(T_{i-1}^{n+1} + T_{i-1}^n)}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad (4.40)$$

The special type of differencing employed in Eq. (4.40) is called the *Crank-Nicolson form*. (Crank-Nicolson differencing is commonly used to solve problems governed by parabolic equations. In CFD, the Crank-Nicolson form, or modified versions of it, is used frequently for finite-difference solutions of the boundary-layer equations.) Examine Eq. (4.40) closely. The unknown  $T_i^{n+1}$  is not only expressed in terms of the known quantities at time level  $n$ , namely,  $T_{i+1}^n$ ,  $T_i^n$ , and  $T_{i-1}^n$ , but also in terms of other unknown quantities at time level  $n + 1$ , namely,  $T_{i+1}^{n+1}$  and  $T_{i-1}^{n+1}$ . In other words, Eq. (4.40) represents one equation with *three* unknowns, namely,  $T_{i+1}^{n+1}$ ,  $T_i^{n+1}$ , and  $T_{i-1}^{n+1}$ . Hence, Eq. (4.40) applied at a given grid point  $i$  does not stand alone; it cannot by itself result in a solution for  $T_i^{n+1}$ . Rather Eq. (4.40) must be written at all interior grid points, resulting in a *system* of algebraic equations from which the unknowns  $T_i^{n+1}$  for all  $i$  can be solved *simultaneously*. This is an example of an *implicit* approach. By definition, an implicit approach is one where the unknowns must be obtained by means of a *simultaneous solution* of the difference equations applied at *all* the grid points arrayed at a given time level. Because of this need to solve large systems of simultaneous algebraic equations, implicit methods are usually involved with the manipulations of large matrices. By now, it is easy to get the feeling that the implicit approach involves a more complex set of calculations than the explicit approach discussed earlier. In contrast to the simple explicit finite-difference module shown in Fig. 4.7, the implicit module for Eq. (4.40) is sketched in Fig. 4.8, clearly delineating the three unknowns at level  $n + 1$ .

Let us be more specific, using the seven-point spatial grid shown in Fig. 4.8 as an example. Equation (4.40) can be rearranged to display the unknowns on the left-hand side and the known numbers on the right-hand side. The result is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta x)^2} T_{i-1}^{n+1} - \left[ 1 + \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} \right] T_i^{n+1} + \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta x)^2} T_{i+1}^{n+1} \\ = -T_i^n - \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta t)^2} (T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n) \quad (4.41) \end{aligned}$$



**FIG. 4.8**  
An implicit finite-difference module.

Simplifying the nomenclature by denoting the following quantities by  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $K_i$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta x)^2} \\ B &= 1 + \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} \\ K_i &= -T_i^n - \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta x)^2} (T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n) \end{aligned}$$

we can write Eq. (4.41) in the form

$$AT_{i-1}^{n+1} - BT_i^{n+1} + AT_{i+1}^{n+1} = K_i \quad (4.42)$$

Note that  $K_i$  in Eq. (4.42) consists of properties at time level  $n$ , which are known. Hence,  $K_i$  is a known number in Eq. (4.42). Returning to Fig. 4.8, we now apply Eq. (4.42) sequentially to grid points 2 through 6.

$$\text{At grid point 2 :} \quad AT_1 - BT_2 + AT_3 = K_2 \quad (4.43)$$

Here, we have dropped the superscript for convenience; it is easy to remember that  $T_1$ ,  $T_2$ , and  $T_3$  represent three values at time level  $n + 1$ , and  $K_2$  is a known number as stated before. Moreover, because of the stipulated boundary conditions at grid points 1 and 7,  $T_1$  in Eq. (4.43) is a known number. Hence, in Eq. (4.43) the term involving the known  $T_1$  can be transferred to the right-hand side, resulting in

$$-BT_2 + AT_3 = K_2 - AT_1 \quad (4.44)$$

Denoting  $K_2 - AT_1$  by  $K'_2$ , where  $K'_2$  is a known number, Eq. (4.44) is written as

$$-BT_2 + AT_3 = K'_2 \quad (4.45)$$

$$\text{At grid point 3 :} \quad AT_2 - BT_3 + AT_4 = K_3 \quad (4.46)$$

$$\text{At grid point 4 :} \quad AT_3 - BT_4 + AT_5 = K_4 \quad (4.47)$$

$$\text{At grid point 5 :} \quad AT_4 - BT_5 + AT_6 = K_5 \quad (4.48)$$

$$\text{At grid point 6 :} \quad AT_5 - BT_6 + AT_7 = K_6 \quad (4.49)$$

In Eq. (4.49), since grid point 7 is on a boundary,  $T_7$  is known from the stipulated boundary condition. Hence, Eq. (4.49) can be rearranged as

$$AT_5 - BT_6 = K_6 - AT_7 = K'_6 \quad (4.50)$$

where  $K'_6$  is a known number.

Equations (4.45) to (4.48) and (4.50) are five equations for the five unknowns  $T_2$ ,  $T_3$ ,  $T_4$ ,  $T_5$ , and  $T_6$ . This system of equations can be written in matrix form as follows.

$$\begin{bmatrix} -B & A & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ A & -B & A & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & A & -B & A & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & A & -B & A \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & A & -B \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} T_2 \\ T_3 \\ T_4 \\ T_5 \\ T_6 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} K'_2 \\ K_3 \\ K_4 \\ K_5 \\ K'_6 \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.51)$$

The coefficient matrix is a *tridiagonal matrix*, defined as having nonzero elements only along the three diagonals which are marked with the three dashed lines in Eq. (4.51). The solution of the system of equations denoted by Eq. (4.51) involves the manipulation of the tridiagonal arrangement; such solutions are usually obtained using Thomas' algorithm, which has become almost standard for the treatment of tridiagonal systems of equations. A description of this algorithm is given in App. A of this book; it will be handy when we discuss the applications in Part III.

Clearly, on the basis of the above example, an implicit approach is more involved than an explicit approach. Also, this is not the whole story. The model equation we have chosen in this section, namely, Eq. (3.28), is a linear partial differential equation, and it leads to a linear difference equation, such as the forms given by Eqs. (4.37) and (4.40). On the other hand, what happens when the governing partial differential equation is nonlinear? For example, let us assume that the thermal diffusivity  $\alpha$  in Eq. (3.28) is a function of temperature, i.e., we write from Eq. (3.28)

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \alpha(T) \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} \quad (4.52)$$

Equation (4.52) is now a *nonlinear* partial differential equation. This has virtually no effect on the explicit approach, where a difference equation can be written for Eq. (4.52), analogous to Eq. (4.37), as

$$T_i^{n+1} = T_i^n + \alpha(T_i^n) \frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} (T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n) \quad (4.53)$$

Equation (4.53) is still linear in the single unknown  $T_i^{n+1}$ , because  $\alpha$  is evaluated at time level  $n$ ; that is,  $\alpha = \alpha(T_i^n)$ , where  $T_i^n$  is a known number. On the other hand, if the Crank–Nicolson method is used for Eq. (4.52), the right-hand-side is evaluated as an average between time levels  $n$  and  $n + 1$ , resulting in  $\alpha(T)$  being represented by  $\frac{1}{2}[\alpha(T_i^{n+1}) + \alpha(T_i^n)]$ . The resulting difference equation is given by Eq. (4.41), with the exception that now  $\alpha$  is replaced everywhere in that equation by  $\frac{1}{2}[\alpha(T_i^{n+1}) + \alpha(T_i^n)]$ . Clearly, the new difference equation involves products of the dependent variables, such as  $[\alpha(T_i^{n+1})]T_i^{n+1}$ ,  $[\alpha(T_i^{n+1})]T_{i+1}^{n+1}$ , and  $[\alpha(T_i^{n+1})]T_{i-1}^{n+1}$ . In other words, the resulting difference equation is a *nonlinear* algebraic equation. An implicit solution would therefore demand a simultaneous solution of a large system of nonlinear equations—an exceptionally difficult task. This is a tremendous disadvantage of an implicit approach. To circumvent this problem, the difference equations are usually “linearized” in an approximate fashion. For example, if in Eq. (4.52)  $\alpha$  is simply evaluated at time level  $n$  rather than an average between levels  $n$  and  $n + 1$ , then no nonlinear algebraic terms will appear in the difference equation; the resulting difference equation will be identical to Eq. (4.31), with  $\alpha$  evaluated as  $\alpha(T_i^n)$ . Other linearization ploys for implicit methods appropriate to the governing flow equations are discussed in Chap. 6.

With the complexity of the implicit approach relative to the explicit approach in mind, the immediate question is: Why deal with the implicit approach at all? Why not always use an explicit approach? Unfortunately, life is not that simple. We have yet to mention the most important difference between the explicit and implicit approaches. Note that the increments  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta t$  appear in all the above difference equations. For the explicit approach, once  $\Delta x$  is chosen, then  $\Delta t$  is *not* an independent, arbitrary choice; rather,  $\Delta t$  is restricted to be equal to or less than a certain value prescribed by a *stability criterion*. If  $\Delta t$  is taken larger than the limit imposed by the stability criterion, the time-marching procedure will quickly go unstable, and your computer program will quickly shut down due to such things as numbers going to infinity or taking the square root of a negative number. In many cases,  $\Delta t$  must be very small to maintain stability; this can result in long computer running times to make calculations over a given interval of time. On the other hand, there are no such stability restrictions on an implicit approach. For most implicit methods, stability can be maintained over much larger values of  $\Delta t$  than for a corresponding explicit method; indeed, some implicit methods are *unconditionally stable*, meaning that any value of  $\Delta t$ , no manner how large, will yield a stable solution. Hence, for an implicit method, considerably fewer time steps are required to cover a given interval in time compared to an explicit method. Therefore, for some applications, even though the implicit approach requires more computations per time step due to its relative complexity, the fact that considerably fewer time steps are required to cover a given interval of time actually can result in a shorter run time on the computer compared to an explicit approach.

There is a downside to the large values of  $\Delta t$  allowable for implicit methods. To see this, we must recall that time marching in the context of CFD is used to accomplish one or the other of the following purposes:

1. To obtain a steady-state solution by means of assuming some arbitrary initial conditions for a flow field, and then calculating the flow in steps of time, going out to a sufficiently large number of time steps until a final steady-state flow is approached at large values of time. In this situation, the final steady state is the desired result, and the time marching is simply a means to that end. The solution to the supersonic blunt body problem is a case in point, as discussed in Sec. 3.4.4.
2. To obtain an accurate timewise solution of an inherently unsteady flow, such as the time-varying flow field over a pitching airfoil or the naturally unsteady flow pattern that results for many separated flows. A case in point is the unsteady laminar separated flow over the airfoil shown in Fig. 1.3a, as discussed in Sec. 1.2. (Go back for a moment and review the short discussion in Sec. 1.2 associated with Fig. 1.3a—it will help you to form a better impression of our current discussion.)

In regard to item 1 above, the time-marching procedure does not have to be timewise-accurate; it only has to, by some means, ultimately approach the *correct* steady-state flow field. On the other hand, for item 2 above, timewise accuracy of the time-marching method is absolutely necessary—it is the time variation of the flow field that we want to solve. Here is where the downside of an implicit approach using a large value of  $\Delta t$  enters our considerations. Clearly, as  $\Delta t$  increases, so does the truncation error associated with the difference expression for the time derivative. In turn, an implicit method using large values of  $\Delta t$  may not accurately define the timewise variation of the flow field. In this situation, the advantage of an implicit approach may be totally negated.

So what does all this mean? It simply says that there are cases where the use of an explicit method makes the most sense and others where an implicit method is clearly the best choice. To help clarify this situation, the relative major advantages and disadvantages of these two approaches are summarized as follows.

### Explicit approach

Advantage	Relatively simple to set up and program.
Disadvantage	In terms of our above example, for a given $\Delta x$ , $\Delta t$ must be less than some limit imposed by stability constraints. In some cases, $\Delta t$ must be very small to maintain stability; this can result in long computer running times to make calculations over a given interval of $t$ .

### Implicit approach

Advantage	Stability can be maintained over much larger values of $\Delta t$ , hence using considerable fewer time steps to make calculations over a given interval of $t$ . This results in less computer time.
Disadvantage	More complicated to set up and program.

Disadvantage	Since massive matrix manipulations are usually required at each time step, the computer time per time step is much larger than in the explicit approach.
Disadvantage	Since large $\Delta t$ can be taken, the truncation error is large, and the use of implicit methods to follow the exact transients (time variations of the independent variable) may not be as accurate as an explicit approach. However, for a time-dependent solution in which the steady state is the desired result, this relative timewise inaccuracy is not important.

During the period 1969 to about 1979, the vast majority of practical CFD solutions involving *marching* solutions (such as in the above example) employed explicit methods. Today, they are still the most straightforward methods for flow-field solutions. However, many of the more sophisticated CFD applications—those requiring very closely spaced grid points in some regions of the flow—would demand inordinately large computer running times due to the small marching step required. The calculation of high Reynolds number viscous flows, where extreme changes in the flow field occur close to a surface and therefore require many closely spaced points adjacent to the surface, is a case in point. This has made the advantage listed above for implicit methods very attractive, namely, the ability to use large marching steps even for a very fine grid. For this reason, implicit methods became the major focus of CFD applications in the 1980s. However, today there is an enhancement in computer architecture that may shift the emphasis back to explicit solutions, namely, the development of massively parallel processor computers such as the connection machine. (Recall the discussion on different types of modern computers in Sec. 1.5.) For such massively parallel processors, explicit calculations can be made at thousands of grid points in the flow all at the same instant on the computer. Indeed, such computers are tailor-made for explicit methods. Again, in retrospect, the choice between the explicit or the implicit approach for the solution of a given problem is not always clear; when faced with such a choice, you will have to use your best judgment. Our purpose in the present section has simply been to define the general nature of the two approaches and to contrast some of the advantages and disadvantages of both.

Finally, we note that the discussion in this section, although couched in terms of the finite-difference method, is certainly not limited to that method. Finite-volume methods also fall under the same classification; there are explicit finite-volume techniques, and there are implicit finite-volume techniques. The distinctions, advantages, and disadvantages are exactly the same as discussed throughout this section.

## 4.5 ERRORS AND AN ANALYSIS OF STABILITY

Some ramifications of the stability behavior of numerical solutions were raised in Sec. 4.4 in conjunction with explicit methods. There, we stated that such methods

would be numerically unstable if the increment in the marching direction ( $\Delta t$  in our previous discussion) exceeded some prescribed value. The prescription for this maximum allowable value comes, in principle, from a formal stability analysis of the governing equations in finite-difference form. An exact stability analysis of the difference representation of the nonlinear Euler or Navier-Stokes equations does not exist. However, there are simplified approaches applied to simpler model equations which can provide some reasonable guidance. In this author's opinion, rigorous stability analyses of numerical methods is the purview of applied mathematics; it is certainly outside the scope of the present book. However, it is important for workers in CFD to have some appreciation of the nature of stability analyses and the results obtained therein. This can be achieved by discussing a simple, approximate analysis for a linear "model" equation. Such is the purpose of the present section.

*Note:* The stability analyses described in the following discussions are applied to specific difference equations, and hence the results pertain directly to those specific equations. In this sense, you might consider the remainder of Sec. 4.5 as a sequence of a few, rather extended, worked examples. However, these examples reflect an approach which is more general than might appear at first. Therefore, we will direct your attention to the forest as well as the trees.

For our model equation, we continue to choose the one-dimensional heat conduction equation, namely, Eq. (3.28) repeated below:

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \alpha \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} \quad (3.28)$$

and for the difference representation of this equation we again choose the explicit form given by Eq. (4.36), also repeated below:

$$\frac{T_i^{n+1} - T_i^n}{\Delta t} = \frac{\alpha(T_{i+1}^n - 2T_i^n + T_{i-1}^n)}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad (4.36)$$

What is this matter of stability all about? What is it that makes a given calculation go unstable? By the time you reach the end of this section, it is hoped that you will have a better idea about the answers to these questions. The answers are, for the most part, dependent upon the concept of numerical errors that are generated throughout the course of a given calculation and, more to the point, the way that these errors are *propagated* from one marching step to the next. Simply stated, if a given numerical error is *amplified* in going from one step to the next, then the calculation will become unstable; if the error does not grow, and especially if it *decreases* from one step to another, then the calculation usually has a stable behavior. Therefore, a consideration of stability must first be prefaced by a discussion on numerical errors—what they are and what they are like. Let us proceed with such a discussion.

Consider a partial differential equation, such as, for example, Eq. (3.28), given above. The numerical solution of this equation is influenced by two sources of error:

*Discretization error*, the difference between the exact analytical solution of the partial differential equation [for example, Eq. (3.28)] and the exact (round-off-free)

solution of the corresponding difference equation [for example, Eq. (4.36)]. From our discussion in Sec. 4.3, the discretization error is simply the truncation error for the difference equation plus any errors introduced by the numerical treatment of the boundary conditions.

*Round-off error*, the numerical error introduced after a repetitive number of calculations in which the computer is constantly rounding the numbers to some significant figure.

If we let

$A$  = analytical solution of partial differential equation

$D$  = exact solution of difference equation

$N$  = numerical solution from a real computer with finite accuracy

then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Discretization error} &= A - D \\ \text{Round-off error} &= \epsilon = N - D \end{aligned} \quad (4.54)$$

From Eq. (4.54), we can write

$$N = D + \epsilon \quad (4.55)$$

where, again,  $\epsilon$  is the round-off error, which for the remainder of our discussion in this section we will simply call *error* for brevity. The numerical solution  $N$  must satisfy the difference equation. This is because the computer is programmed to solve the difference equation; in our example, the computer is programmed to solve Eq. (4.36), albeit the answer comes out with a round-off error cranked in. Hence from Eq. (4.36),

$$\frac{D_i^{n+1} + \epsilon_i^{n+1} - D_i^n - \epsilon_i^n}{\alpha \Delta t} = \frac{D_{i+1}^n + \epsilon_{i+1}^n - 2D_i^n - 2\epsilon_i^n + D_{i-1}^n + \epsilon_{i-1}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad (4.56)$$

By definition,  $D$  is the *exact* solution of the difference equation; hence it exactly satisfies the difference equation. Thus, we can write

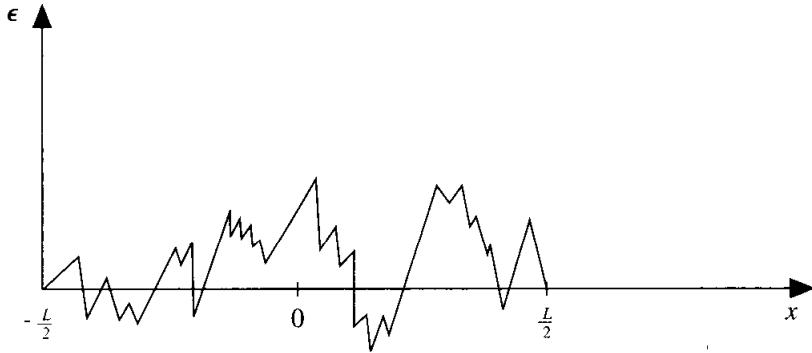
$$\frac{D_i^{n+1} - D_i^n}{\alpha \Delta t} = \frac{D_{i+1}^n - 2D_i^n + D_{i-1}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad (4.57)$$

Subtracting Eq. (4.57) from (4.56), we have

$$\frac{\epsilon_i^{n+1} - \epsilon_i^n}{\alpha \Delta t} = \frac{\epsilon_{i+1}^n - 2\epsilon_i^n + \epsilon_{i-1}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad (4.58)$$

From Eq. (4.58), we see that the error  $\epsilon$  also satisfies the difference equation.

We now consider aspects of the *stability* of the difference equation, Eq. (4.36). If errors  $\epsilon_i$  are already present at some stage of the solution of this equation (as they always are in any real computer solution), then the solution will be *stable* if the  $\epsilon_i$ 's shrink, or at best stay the same, as the solution progresses from step  $n$  to  $n + 1$ ; on the other hand, if the  $\epsilon_i$ 's grow larger during the progression of the solution from

**FIG. 4.9**

Schematic of the variation of round-off error as a function of  $x$ .

steps  $n$  to  $n + 1$ , then the solution is *unstable*. That is, for a solution to be *stable*,

$$\left| \frac{\epsilon_i^{n+1}}{\epsilon_i^n} \right| \leq 1 \quad (4.59)$$

For Eq. (4.36), let us examine under what conditions Eq. (4.59) holds.

First of all, we need to examine how the round-off error looks. For the unsteady, one-dimensional problem exemplified by Eq. (3.28), the round-off error can be plotted versus  $x$  at any given time step. For example, one such representation is sketched in Fig. 4.9. Here, we assume that the length of the domain on which the equation is being solved is denoted by  $L$ . For convenience later on we place the origin at the midpoint of the domain; hence the left boundary is located at  $-L/2$  and the right boundary is at  $+L/2$ . The distribution of  $\epsilon$  along the  $x$  axis is represented by the rather random variation sketched in Fig. 4.9. Note that  $\epsilon = 0$  at  $x = -L/2$  and  $L/2$ , because there are specified boundary values at both ends of the domain, and hence no error is introduced—the boundary values are always fed in as exact, known numbers. At any given time, the random variation of  $\epsilon$  with  $x$  in Fig. 4.9 can be expressed analytically by a Fourier series as follows:

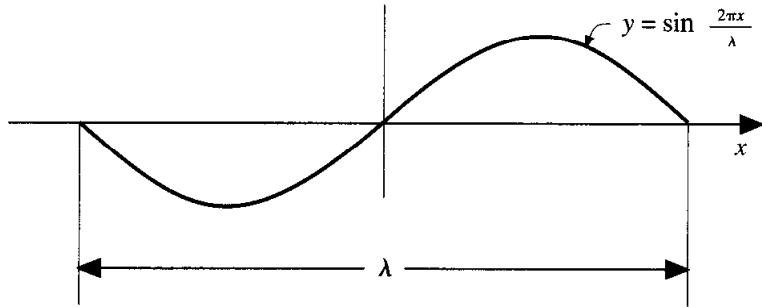
$$\epsilon(x) = \sum_m A_m e^{ik_m x} \quad (4.60)$$

Equation (4.60) represents both a sine and a cosine series, since  $e^{ik_m x} = \cos k_m x + i \sin k_m x$ . Here,  $k_m$  is called the *wave number*. The real part of Eq. (4.60) represents the error. Before proceeding further, let us examine the meaning of the wave number. For simplicity, consider just the sine function plotted as a function of  $x$  as shown in Fig. 4.10. By definition, the wavelength  $\lambda$  is the interval over  $x$  encompassing one complete wavelength, as sketched in Fig. 4.10. Therefore, a form of this sine function which may seem more familiar to you is

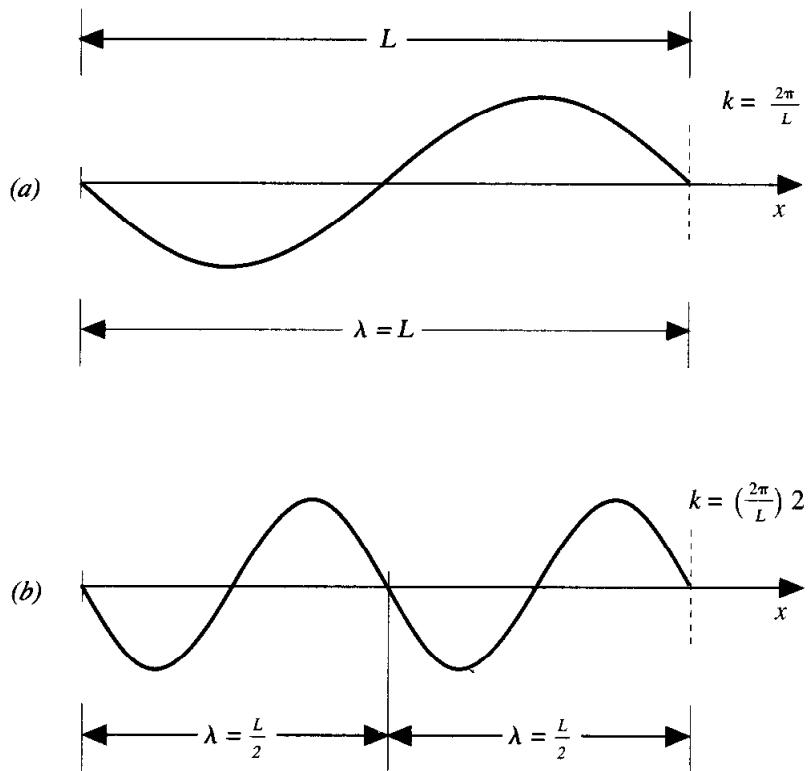
$$y = \sin \frac{2\pi x}{\lambda} \quad (4.61)$$

In the wave number notation, this would be written as

$$y = \sin k_m x \quad (4.62)$$



**FIG. 4.10**  
Sine function.



**FIG. 4.11**  
Sine functions. (a) Wavelength is  $L$ . (b) Wavelength is  $L/2$ .

Comparing Eqs. (4.61) and (4.62), clearly the wave number is given by

$$k_m = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \quad (4.63)$$

In Eq. (4.60), the wave number  $k_m$  is written with a subscript  $m$ . It remains to explain the meaning of  $m$ . This is related to the number of waves that are fitted inside a given interval. Consider an interval along the  $x$  axis of length  $L$ , as sketched in Fig. 4.11. If one sine wave is completely fitted within this interval, its wavelength is  $\lambda = L$ , as shown in Fig. 4.11a. This sine wave is expressed by Eq. (4.62), where  $k_m$  is defined by Eq. (4.63). For this case, since  $\lambda = L$ , then  $k_m$  is given by  $k_m = 2\pi/L$ .

Now examine the case of two sine waves fitted within the interval  $L$ , as sketched in Fig. 4.11b. The wavelength of the new sine waves in Fig. 4.11b is  $\lambda = L/2$ . The equation of these waves is given by

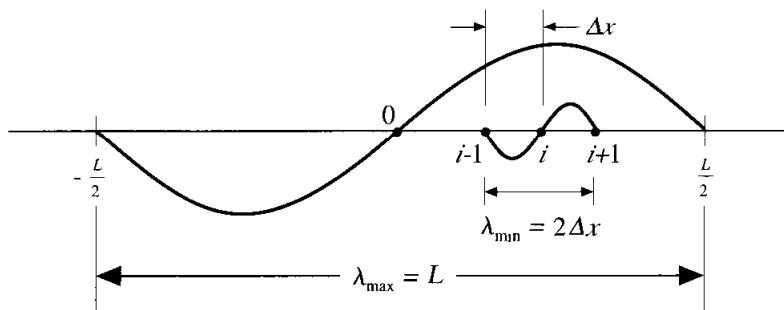
$$y = \sin k_m x$$

where now  $k_m = 2\pi/(L/2) = (2\pi/L)2$ . Extrapolating this thinking, if three waves were fitted within the interval  $L$ , then  $k_m = (2\pi/L)3$ , and so forth. Therefore, we can write the wave number for these various sine waves of different wavelengths as

$$k_m = \left(\frac{2\pi}{L}\right)m \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (4.64)$$

This illustrates the meaning of the subscript  $m$  on the wave number; it is simply equal to the number of waves fitted into the given interval  $L$ . Clearly, from Eq. (4.64), the wave number itself is proportional to the number of waves in a given interval; the higher the wave number for a given  $L$ , the more waves we have fitted inside the interval.

We are now in a better position to understand the significance of Eq. (4.60), where the summation over  $m$  denotes the sequential addition of sine and cosine functions with sequentially increasing wave numbers. That is, Eq. (4.60) is a sum of terms, each representing a higher harmonic. When taken out for an infinite number of terms, Eq. (4.60) can represent a continuous variation of  $\epsilon$  as a function of  $x$ , as sketched in Fig. 4.9. However, in regard to a practical numerical solution which involves only a finite number of grid points, there is a constraint imposed on the number of terms in Eq. (4.60). To see this more clearly, consider Fig. 4.12, which shows the interval  $L$  over which the numerical calculations are being made. The largest allowable wavelength is  $\lambda_{\max} = L$ ; this is the wavelength for the first term in Eq. (4.60) and corresponds to  $m = 1$ . In turn, the smallest possible wavelength is that having all three zeros of the sine (or cosine) function going through three adjacent grid points, as shown in Fig. 4.12. Hence, the smallest allowable wavelength is  $\lambda_{\min} = 2\Delta x$ . If there are  $N + 1$  grid points distributed over the interval  $L$ , then there are  $N$  intervals between these grid points, and hence  $\Delta x = L/N$ .



**FIG. 4.12**

Illustration of maximum and minimum wavelengths for the Fourier components of the round-off error.

Thus,  $\lambda_{\min} = 2L/N$ . From Eq. (4.63),

$$k_m = \frac{2\pi}{2L/N} = \frac{2\pi N}{L} \frac{1}{2} \quad (4.65)$$

Comparing Eqs. (4.64) and (4.65), we see that  $m$  in Eq. (4.65) is equal to  $N/2$ . This is the highest-order harmonic allowable in Eq. (4.60). Hence, from Eq. (4.60), we have, for a grid with  $N + 1$  grid points,

$$\epsilon(x) = \sum_{m=1}^{N/2} A_m e^{ik_m x} \quad (4.66)$$

We are not finished with the representation of the round-off error. Equation (4.66) gives the *spatial* variation at a given time level  $n$ . From Eq. (4.59), for an assessment of numerical stability, we are interested in the variation of  $\epsilon$  with *time*. Therefore, we extend Eq. (4.66) by assuming the amplitude  $A_m$  is a function of time.

$$\epsilon(x, t) = \sum_{m=1}^{N/2} A_m(t) e^{ik_m x} \quad (4.67)$$

Moreover, it is reasonable to assume an exponential variation with time; errors tend to grow or diminish exponentially with time. Therefore, we write

$$\epsilon(x, t) = \sum_{m=1}^{N/2} e^{at} e^{ik_m x} \quad (4.68)$$

where  $a$  is a constant (which may take on different values for different  $m$ 's). Equation (4.68) represents a final, reasonable form for the variation of round-off error in both space and time.

After all this work to construct  $\epsilon$  in terms of a truncated Fourier series with amplitudes exponentially varying with time, we now make the following observation. Since the original difference equation, Eq. (4.36), is linear and since the round-off error satisfies the same difference equation as proven by Eq. (4.58), then when Eq. (4.68) is substituted into Eq. (4.58), the behavior of each term of the series is the same as the series itself. Hence, let us deal with just one term of the series and write

$$\epsilon_m(x, t) = e^{at} e^{ik_m x} \quad (4.69)$$

The stability characteristics can be studied using just this form for  $\epsilon$  with no loss in generality. The value of our discussion leading to the more general form for  $\epsilon$  given by Eq. (4.68) is to tell us what we are really dealing with in terms of the round-off error and to allow us to make the observation embodied in Eq. (4.69). Let us now proceed to find out how  $\epsilon$  varies in steps of time and therefore to find out what conditions on  $\Delta t$  are necessary such that Eq. (4.59) is satisfied.

To begin with, substitute Eq. (4.69) into Eq. (4.58).

$$\frac{e^{a(t+\Delta t)} e^{ik_m x} - e^{at} e^{ik_m x}}{\alpha \Delta t} = \frac{e^{at} e^{ik_m(x+\Delta x)} - 2e^{at} e^{ik_m x} + e^{at} e^{ik_m(x-\Delta x)}}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad (4.70)$$

Divide Eq. (4.70) by  $e^{at}e^{ik_m x}$ .

$$\frac{e^{a\Delta t} - 1}{\alpha \Delta t} = \frac{e^{ik_m \Delta x} - 2 + e^{-ik_m \Delta x}}{(\Delta x)^2}$$

or 
$$e^{a\Delta t} = 1 + \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} (e^{ik_m \Delta x} + e^{-ik_m \Delta x} - 2) \quad (4.71)$$

Recalling the identity

$$\cos(k_m \Delta x) = \frac{e^{ik_m \Delta x} + e^{-ik_m \Delta x}}{2}$$

Eq. (4.71) can be written as

$$e^{a\Delta t} = 1 + \frac{2\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} [\cos(k_m \Delta x) - 1] \quad (4.72)$$

Recalling another trigonometric identity

$$\sin^2 \frac{k_m \Delta x}{2} = \frac{1 - \cos(k_m \Delta x)}{2}$$

Eq. (4.72) becomes finally

$$e^{a\Delta t} = 1 - \frac{4\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} \sin^2 \frac{k_m \Delta x}{2} \quad (4.73)$$

From Eq. (4.73),

$$\frac{\epsilon_i^{n+1}}{\epsilon_i^n} = \frac{e^{a(t+\Delta t)} e^{ik_m x}}{e^{at} e^{ik_m x}} = e^{a\Delta t} \quad (4.74)$$

Combining Eqs. (4.59), (4.73), and (4.74), we have

$$\left| \frac{\epsilon_i^{n+1}}{\epsilon_i^n} \right| = |e^{a\Delta t}| = \left| 1 - \frac{4\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} \sin^2 \frac{k_m \Delta x}{2} \right| \leq 1 \quad (4.75)$$

Equation (4.75) *must* be satisfied to have a *stable* solution, as dictated by Eq. (4.59). In Eq. (4.75) the factor

$$\left| 1 - \frac{4\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} \sin^2 \frac{k_m \Delta x}{2} \right| \equiv G$$

is called the *amplification* factor and is denoted by  $G$ . Evaluating the inequality in Eq. (4.75), namely,  $G \leq 1$ , we have two possible situations which must hold simultaneously:

1. 
$$1 - \frac{4\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} \sin^2 \frac{k_m \Delta x}{2} \leq 1$$

Thus

$$\frac{4\alpha \Delta t}{\Delta x} \sin^2 \frac{k_m \Delta x}{2} \geq 0 \quad (4.76)$$

Since  $4\alpha \Delta t/(\Delta x)^2$  is always positive, the condition expressed in Eq. (4.76) always holds.

2.  $1 - \frac{4\alpha \Delta t}{\Delta x} \sin^2 \frac{k_m \Delta x}{2} \geq -1$

Thus

$$\frac{4\alpha \Delta t}{\Delta x} \sin^2 \frac{k_m \Delta x}{2} - 1 \leq 1$$

For the above condition to hold,

$$\frac{\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} \leq \frac{1}{2} \quad (4.77)$$

Equation (4.77) gives the *stability requirement* for the solution of the difference equation, Eq. (4.36), to be *stable*. Clearly, for a given  $\Delta x$ , the allowed value of  $\Delta t$  must be small enough to satisfy Eq. (4.77). Here is a stunning example of the limitation placed on the marching variable by stability considerations for explicit finite-difference models. As long as  $\alpha \Delta t/(\Delta x)^2 \leq \frac{1}{2}$ , the error will *not* grow for subsequent marching steps in  $t$ , and the numerical solution will proceed in a stable manner. On the other hand, if  $\alpha \Delta t/(\Delta x)^2 > \frac{1}{2}$ , then the error will progressively become larger and will eventually cause the numerical marching solution to “blow up” on the computer.

The above analysis is an example of a general method called the *von Neumann stability method*, which is used frequently to study the stability properties of linear difference equations.

The exact form of the stability criterion depends on the form of the difference equation. For example, let us briefly examine the stability characteristics of another simple equation, this time a hyperbolic equation. Consider the first-order wave equation (see Prob. 3.5):

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + c \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (4.78)$$

Let us replace the spatial derivative with a central difference.

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{u_{i+1}^n - u_{i-1}^n}{2 \Delta x} \quad (4.79)$$

If we replace the time derivative with a simple forward difference, then the resulting difference equation representing Eq. (4.78) would be

$$\frac{u_i^{n+1} - u_i^n}{\Delta t} = -c \frac{u_{i+1}^n - u_{i-1}^n}{2 \Delta x} \quad (4.80)$$

This is about as simple a difference equation as can be obtained from Eq. (4.78); it is sometimes called the *Euler explicit form*. However, the application of the von Neumann stability analysis to Eq. (4.80) shows that Eq. (4.80) leads to an unstable solution no matter what the value of  $\Delta t$  is—Eq. (4.80) is therefore called *unconditionally unstable*. Instead, let us replace the time derivative with a first-order difference, where  $u(t)$  is represented by an average value between grid points  $i + 1$  and  $i - 1$ , i.e.,

$$u(t) = \frac{1}{2}(u_{i+1}^n + u_{i-1}^n)$$

Then

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{u_i^{n+1} - \frac{1}{2}(u_{i+1}^n + u_{i-1}^n)}{\Delta t} \quad (4.81)$$

Substituting Eqs. (4.79) and (4.81) into (4.78), we have

$$u_i^{n+1} = \frac{u_{i+1}^n + u_{i-1}^n}{2} - c \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} \frac{u_{i+1}^n - u_{i-1}^n}{2} \quad (4.82)$$

The differencing used in the above equation, where Eq. (4.81) is used to represent the time derivative, is called the *Lax method*, after the mathematician Peter Lax who first proposed it. If we now assume an error of the form  $\epsilon_m(x, t) = e^{at}e^{ik_m t}$  as done previously and substitute this form in Eq. (4.82), the amplification factor becomes

$$e^{at} = \cos(k_m \Delta x) - iC \sin(k_m \Delta x) \quad (4.83)$$

where  $C = c \Delta t / \Delta x$ . The stability requirement is  $|e^{at}| \leq 1$ , which when applied to Eq. (4.83) yields

$$C = c \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} \leq 1 \quad (4.84)$$

In Eq. (4.84),  $C$  is called the *Courant number*. This equation says that  $\Delta t \leq \Delta x/c$  for the numerical solution of Eq. (4.82) to be stable. Moreover, Eq. (4.84) is called the *Courant-Friedrichs-Lowy condition*, generally written as the CFL condition. It is an important stability criterion for hyperbolic equations. The CFL condition dates back to 1928; the original work can be found in Ref. 25.

The CFL condition, i.e., the Courant number must be less than or at most equal to unity, is also the stability condition which holds for the second-order wave equation (see Prob. 3.4),

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad (4.85)$$

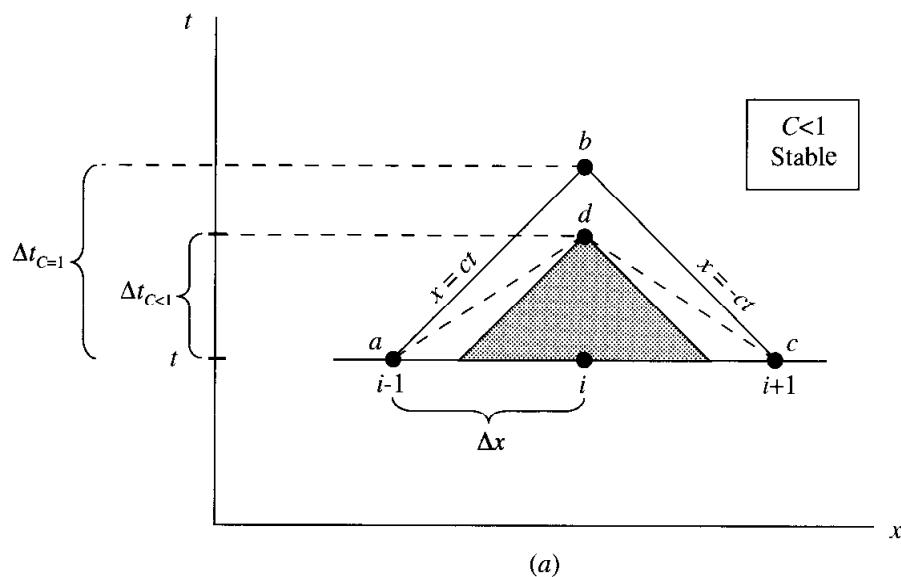
There is a connection between the characteristic lines associated with Eq. (4.85) and the CFL condition, a connection which helps to elucidate the physical significance of the CFL condition. Let us pursue this connection. These characteristic lines (see Sec. 3.2) for Eq. (4.85) are given by

$$x = \begin{cases} ct & \text{(right-running)} \\ -ct & \text{(left-running)} \end{cases} \quad (4.86a)$$

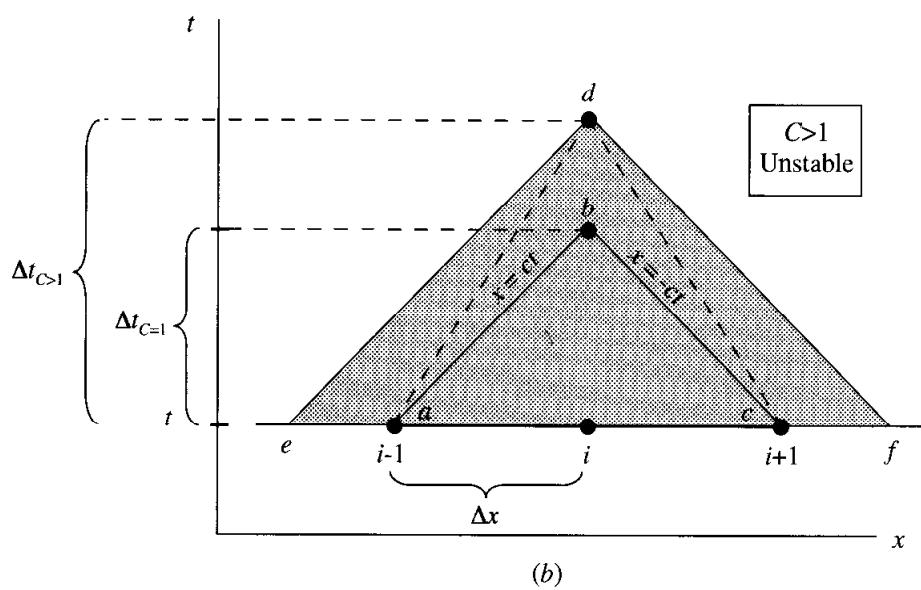
$$(4.86b)$$

and are sketched in Fig. 4.13a and b. In both parts of Fig. 4.13 let point  $b$  be the intersection of the right-running characteristic through grid point  $i - 1$  and the left-running characteristic through grid point  $i + 1$ . However, point  $b$ , determined by the intersection of characteristic lines through grid points  $i - 1$  and  $i + 1$ , also has a slightly different significance—one associated with the CFL stability condition, which states that, at most, the Courant number  $C = 1$ . To see this more clearly, let  $\Delta t_{C=1}$  denote the value of  $\Delta t$  given by Eq. (4.84) when  $C = 1$ . Then, from Eq. (4.84),

$$\Delta t_{C=1} = \frac{\Delta x}{c} \quad (4.87)$$



(a)



(b)

**FIG. 4.13**

(a) Illustration of a stable case. The numerical domain includes all the analytical domain. (b) Illustration of an unstable case. The numerical domain does *not* include all the analytical domain.

If in Fig. 4.13a and b we move a distance  $\Delta t_{C=1}$  directly above grid point  $i$ , we find ourselves directly on top of point  $b$ . This is because from the characteristic lines given by Eqs. (4.86a) and (4.86b)

$$\Delta t = \pm \frac{\Delta x}{c} \quad (4.88)$$

Obviously, the increment  $\Delta t$  in Eq. (4.87), having to do with the CFL condition, and the increment  $\Delta t$  in Eq. (4.88), having to do with the intersection of characteristic lines, are the same values, since the right-hand sides of Eqs. (4.87) and (4.88) are the same. Therefore,  $\Delta t_{C=1}$  is exactly the distance between point  $b$  and grid point  $i$  in Fig. 4.13a and b. Now assume that  $C < 1$ , which pertains to the sketch in Fig. 4.13a. Then from Eq. (4.84),  $\Delta t_{C<1} < \Delta t_{C=1}$ , as shown in Fig. 4.13a. Let point  $d$  correspond to the grid point directly above point  $i$  existing at time  $t + \Delta t_{C<1}$ . Since properties at point  $d$  are calculated numerically from the difference equation using information at grid points  $i - 1$  and  $i + 1$ , the *numerical domain* for point  $d$  is the triangle  $adc$  shown in Fig. 4.13a. The *analytical domain* for point  $d$  is the shaded triangle in Fig. 4.13a, defined by the characteristics through point  $d$ . These characteristics are parallel to those through point  $b$ . Note that in Fig. 4.13a, the numerical domain of point  $d$  *includes* the analytical domain. In contrast, consider the case shown in Fig. 4.13b. Here,  $C > 1$ . Then, from Eq. (4.84),  $\Delta t_{C>1} > \Delta t_{C=1}$ , as shown in Fig. 4.13b. Let point  $d$  in Fig. 4.13b correspond to the grid point directly above point  $i$  existing at time  $t + \Delta t_{C>1}$ . Since properties at point  $d$  are calculated numerically from the difference equation using information at grid points  $i - 1$  and  $i + 1$ , the *numerical domain* for point  $d$  is the triangle  $adc$  shown in Fig. 4.13b. The *analytical domain* for point  $d$  is the shaded triangle in Fig. 4.13b, defined by the characteristics through point  $d$ . Note that in Fig. 4.13b, the numerical domain does not include all the analytical domain. Moreover, Fig. 4.13b is for  $C > 1$ , which leads to unstable behavior. Therefore, we can give the following physical interpretation of the CFL condition:

For stability, the numerical domain must include all the analytical domain.

The above considerations dealt with *stability*. The question of *accuracy*, which is sometimes quite different, can also be examined from the point of view of Fig. 4.13. Consider a stable case, as shown in Fig. 4.13a. Note that the analytical domain of dependence for point  $d$  is the shaded triangle in Fig. 4.13a. From our discussion in Chap. 3, the properties at point  $d$  theoretically depend only on those points within the shaded triangle. However, note that the numerical grid points  $i - 1$  and  $i + 1$  are *outside* the domain of dependence for point  $d$  and hence *theoretically* should not influence the properties at point  $d$ . On the other hand, the *numerical* calculation of properties at point  $d$  takes information from grid points  $i - 1$  and  $i + 1$ . This situation is exacerbated when  $\Delta t_{C<1}$  is chosen to be very small,  $\Delta t_{C<1} \ll \Delta t_{C=1}$ . In this case, even though the calculations are stable, the results may be quite *inaccurate* due to the large mismatch between the domain of dependence of point  $d$  and the location of the actual numerical data used to calculate properties at  $d$ .

In light of the above discussion, we conclude that the Courant number must be equal to or less than unity for stability,  $C \leq 1$ , but at the same time it is desirable to have  $C$  as close to unity as possible for accuracy.

#### 4.5.1. Stability Analysis: A Broader Perspective

The preceding discussion focused on the behavior of *errors* as a means to analyze the stability characteristics of a given difference equation; in particular, the behavior of the round-off error  $\epsilon$ , as defined in Eq. (4.55), was studied. This might leave the incorrect impression that if we had a *perfect computer* with no round-off error, then there would be no instabilities. Such is not the case. The general concept of numerical stability is, in reality, based on the timewise behavior of the *solution* itself; it does not inherently depend on the behavior of the round-off error per se. For example, instead of considering Eq. (4.60), we could set up a more general von Neumann analysis where the *solution itself* is written as a Fourier series as follows:

$$U(x) = \sum_m V_m e^{ik_m x} \quad (4.89)$$

where  $V_m$  is the amplitude of the  $m$ th harmonic of the solution. In turn, the amplification factor is written as

$$G = \frac{V_m^{n+1}}{V_m^n} \quad (4.90)$$

For stability  $|G| \leq 1$ .

This, and other considerations of stability, are left for your future studies. Our purpose here has been simply to introduce you to the basic thought that stability considerations are important to CFD and to give you some idea, no matter how incomplete, how these considerations can be approached.

## 4.6 SUMMARY

“Discretization” has been the key word in the present chapter. We have seen how to discretize partial differential equations, including the governing flow equations. Such discretization is the foundation of finite-difference methods. In addition, via Problem 4.7, you will see how to discretize the governing flow equations in integral form. Such discretization is the foundation of finite-volume methods. Both finite-difference and finite-volume methods abound in CFD. However, keep in mind that the discretizations discussed in this chapter are simply *tools*; they do not by themselves constitute any specific *technique* for the solution of a given flow problem. A CFD *technique* is defined by what tools we choose for a solution, how and in what sequence we use these tools to pursue a solution, and how we handle the boundary conditions. Some techniques that have been popular in CFD are discussed in Chap. 6, and applications of these techniques to some classic fluid flow problems are illustrated in detail in Part III of this book. On the other hand, in the present chapter we *have* touched on a few important aspects of CFD techniques without

detailling the techniques themselves. For example, we have noted that any CFD technique falls within one or the other of two general categories, explicit approaches or implicit approaches. We have discussed to some extent just what we mean by explicit and implicit approaches. Furthermore, we have touched on the stability aspects of these approaches and have examined the von Neumann stability analysis which gives us some insight to the stability restrictions and stability criterion for explicit methods. So with this chapter we have taken a giant step in the world of CFD.

Before progressing further, return to Fig. 4.2, the road map for this chapter, and make certain that you feel comfortable with the material which constitutes each block in this road map. Note that we have emphasized the finite-difference method and have chosen not to address the finite-volume or finite-element methods. Finite-element methods are still not used to any great extent in CFD; finite-difference and finite-volume methods account for about 95 percent of all practical CFD solutions. In time, this situation may change. We note that the situation is reversed in structural mechanics, when the numerical method of choice is almost always the finite-element method. The road map in Fig. 4.2 also emphasizes that the matters of implicit versus explicit methods, as well as matters of stability, are common to both the finite-difference and finite-volume methods.

Finally, we note that we are not quite ready to go directly to a discussion of CFD techniques. There remains one item of unfinished business, namely, the aspects of grid generation and the necessary transformations which it entails. This is the subject of the next chapter.

### GUIDEPOST

We have reached the stage where you have enough information to actually set up a meaningful calculation for certain types of flows. This guidepost is intended for those of you who want to get on the fast track toward “getting your hands dirty” with an actual computer project. For those of you who want to add more depth to your background in CFD *before* tackling a computer project, simply continue to read on. We will delve into the matters of grid generation and transformation in the next chapter—very important material for the application discussed in Chap. 8. However, for those of you who are really tired of reading at this stage and want to work on a computer project, the following guidepost is suggested. This guidepost will take you through implicit and explicit solutions of a special incompressible viscous flow problem: Couette flow. To carry through this application, you need essentially no more information than you already have. Therefore,

Go to Secs. 9.1 to 9.3, Couette flow solution (implicit).	→ Then go to Prob. 9.1, explicit solution of Couette flow.
---	--

The flow of information associated with the above guidepost is diagrammed in Fig. 1.32a, which you should briefly reexamine at this time. Note that only a few essential aspects are being driven home with this excursion, essentially only those associated with implicit and explicit finite-difference philosophies.

There is yet another but more lengthy option that you can take from here. Another guidepost will take you through an explicit, time-marching solution of the Euler equations for a quasi-one-dimensional nozzle flow. This excursion is more demanding of your time, but again it gives you an opportunity to tackle a computer project with essentially the information you now have. Therefore,

Go to Sec. 6.3, MacCormack's technique.	→	Then go to Sec. 7.1 to 7.4, the computer solution of isentropic subsonic and supersonic nozzle flows.
---	---	---

The flow of information associated with the above guidepost is diagramed in Fig. 1.32b, which you should briefly reexamine at this time. Note that the essential aspects being driven home are those of time-marching finite-difference solutions, some of which involve the concept of artificial viscosity.

Should you choose to undertake either or both of these computer projects at this stage, make certain after you are finished to return to the point we are at now and continue with your general reading in CFD. We will move on to the subject of grid generation in Chap. 5 and then cover a number of different CFD techniques in Chap. 6.

## PROBLEMS

- 4.1. Using Taylor's series, derive first-order forward-difference and rearward-difference expressions for  $\partial u / \partial y$ .
- 4.2. Using Taylor's series, derive the second-order central difference for  $\partial u / \partial y$ .
- 4.3. Consider the function  $\phi(x, y) = e^x + e^y$ . Consider the point  $(x, y) = (1, 1)$ .
  - (a) Calculate the *exact* values of  $\partial \phi / \partial x$  and  $\partial \phi / \partial y$  at this point.
  - (b) Use first-order forward differences, with  $\Delta x = \Delta y = 0.1$ , to calculate approximate values of  $\partial \phi / \partial x$  and  $\partial \phi / \partial y$  at point  $(1, 1)$ . Calculate the percentage difference when compared with the exact values from part (a).
  - (c) Use first-order rearward differences, with  $\Delta x = \Delta y = 0.1$ , to calculate approximate values of  $\partial \phi / \partial x$  and  $\partial \phi / \partial y$  at point  $(1, 1)$ . Calculate the percentage difference when compared with the exact values from part (a).
  - (d) Use second-order central differences, with  $\Delta x = \Delta y = 0.1$ , to calculate approximate values for  $\partial \phi / \partial x$  and  $\partial \phi / \partial y$  at point  $(1, 1)$ . Calculate the percentage difference when compared with the exact value from part (a).
- 4.4. Repeat Prob. 4.3, but with  $\Delta x = \Delta y = 0.01$ . Compare the accuracy of the finite-difference results obtained here with those obtained in Prob. 4.3.
- 4.5. Derive Eq. (4.18).
- 4.6. Derive the following expression, which is a third-order-accurate one-sided difference.

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{1}{6\Delta y} (-11u_{i,j} + 18u_{i,j+1} - 9u_{i,j+2} + 2u_{i,j+3})$$

- 4.7. Derive a discretized form of the generic integral form of the continuity, momentum, and energy equations obtained in Prob. 2.2. This discretized form is the essence of the *finite volume approach*.

---

# CHAPTER

# 5

---

## GRIDS WITH APPROPRIATE TRANSFORMATIONS

*The area of numerical grid generation is relatively young in practice, although its roots in mathematics are old. This somewhat eclectic area involves the engineer's feel for physical behavior, the mathematician's understanding of functional behavior, and a lot of imagination, with perhaps a little help from Urania.*

Joe F. Thompson, Z. V. A. Warsi, and C. Wayne Mastin,  
from *Numerical Grid Generation*, North-Holland,  
New York, 1985

### 5.1 INTRODUCTION

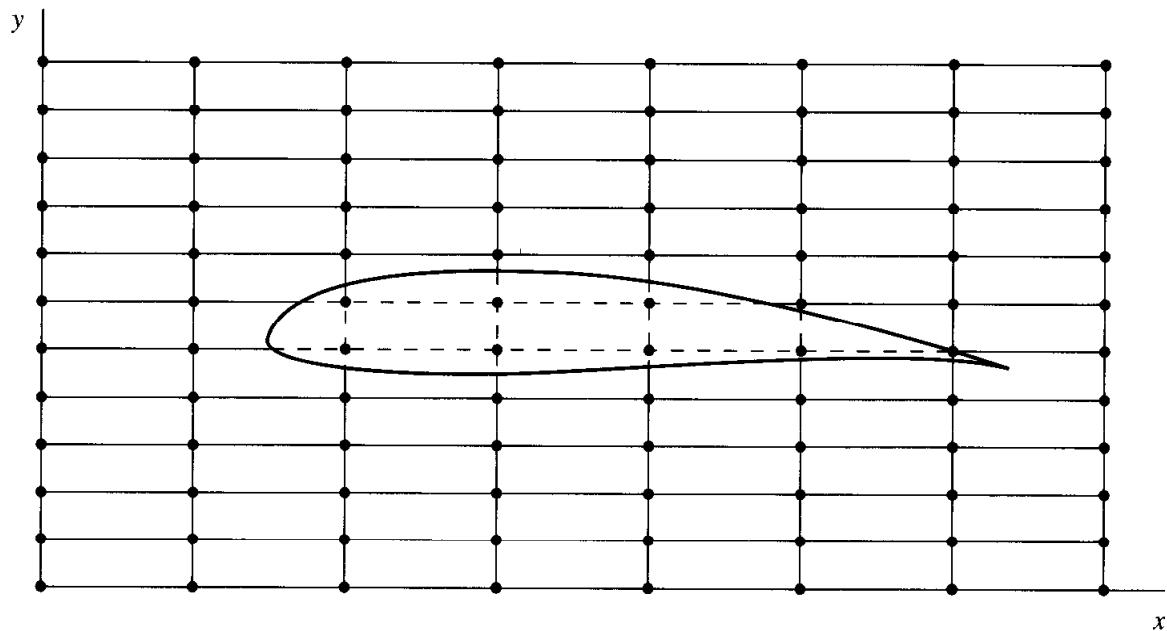
Think about the finite-difference approach discussed in Chap. 4; it requires that calculations be made over a collection of discrete grid points. The *arrangement* of these discrete points throughout the flow field is simply called a *grid*. The determination of a proper grid for the flow over or through a given geometric shape is a serious matter—one that is by no means trivial. The *way* that such a grid is determined is called *grid generation*. The matter of grid generation is a significant consideration in CFD; the type of grid you choose for a given problem can make or break the numerical solution. Because of this, grid generation has become an entity by itself in CFD; it is the subject of numerous special conferences, as well as several books (see Refs. 26 and 27).

The generation of an appropriate grid or mesh is one thing; the solution of the governing flow equations over such a grid is quite another thing. Assume that (for reasons to be discussed later) we construct a nonuniform grid in our flow field. We

have seen in Sec. 4.2 that the standard finite-difference approach requires a uniform grid. We do not have a direct way of numerically solving the governing flow equations over a nonuniform grid within the context of a finite-difference method. Instead, the nonuniform grid must (somehow) be *transformed* into a uniform, rectangular grid. Moreover, along with this transformation, the governing partial differential equations must be recast so as to apply in this transformed, rectangular grid. Since the need for such grid transformations is inherent in the finite-difference method, then much of what we have to say in this chapter concerning the transformation of the governing partial differential equations pertains just to that method. Let us proceed accordingly.

If all CFD applications dealt with physical problems where a uniform, rectangular grid could be used in the physical plane, there would be no reason to alter the governing partial differential equations derived in Chap. 2. We would simply apply these equations in rectangular  $(x, y, z, t)$  space, finite difference these equations according to the difference quotients derived in Sec. 4.2 and 4.3, and calculate away, using uniform values of  $\Delta x$ ,  $\Delta y$ ,  $\Delta z$ , and  $\Delta t$ . However, few real problems are ever so accommodating. For example, assume we wish to calculate the flow over an airfoil, as sketched in Fig. 5.1. In Fig. 5.1, we have placed the airfoil in a rectangular grid. Note the problems with this rectangular grid:

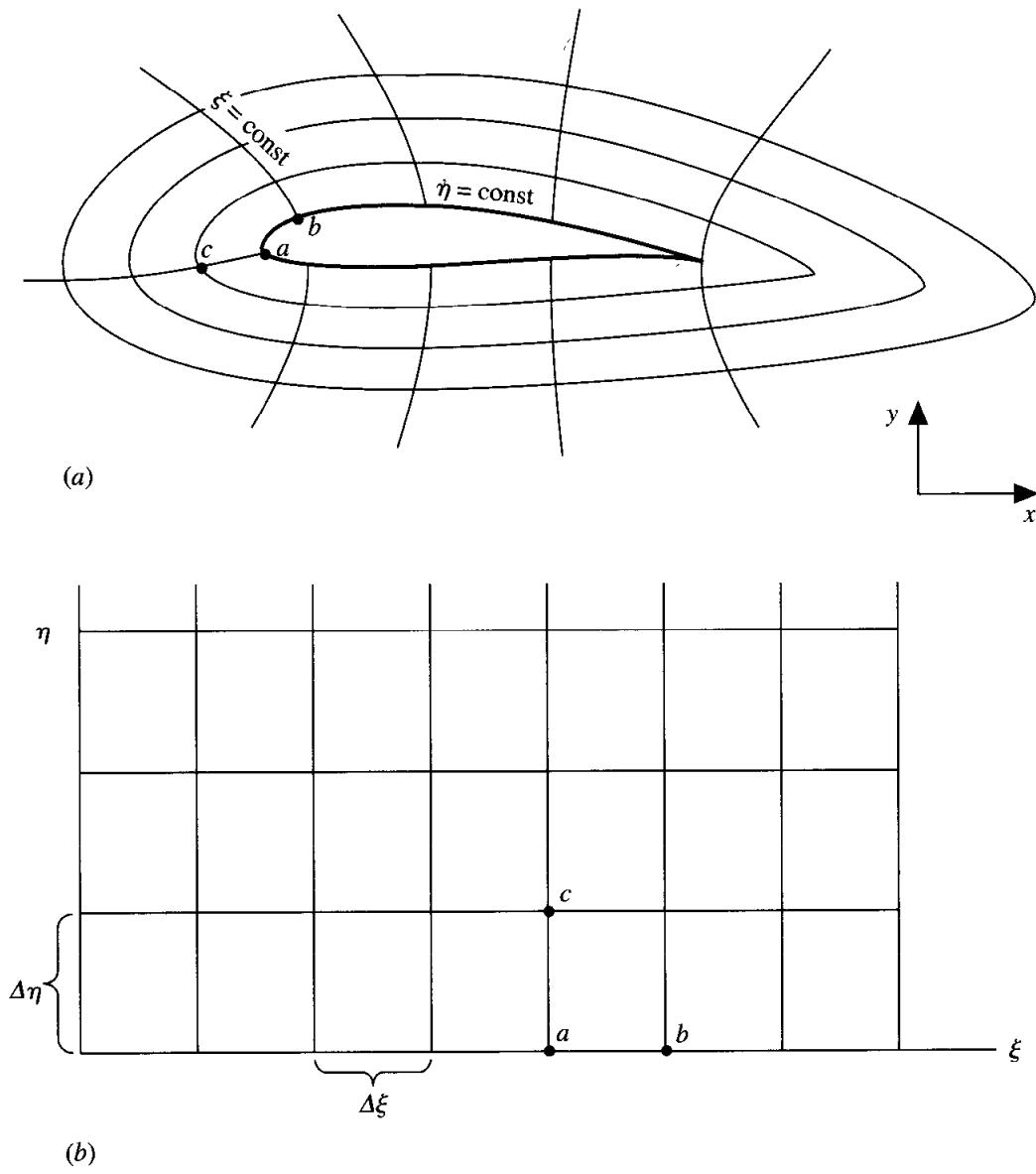
1. Some grid points fall inside the airfoil, where they are completely out of the flow. What values of the flow properties do we ascribe to these points?
2. There are few, if any, grid points that fall on the surface of the airfoil. This is not good, because the airfoil surface is a vital boundary condition for the determination of the flow, and hence the airfoil surface must be clearly and strongly seen by the numerical solution.



**FIG. 5.1**

An airfoil in a purely rectangular grid.

As a result, we can conclude that the rectangular grid in Fig. 5.1 is not appropriate for the solution of the flow field. In contrast, a grid that is appropriate is sketched in Fig. 5.2a. Here we see a *nonuniform, curvilinear* grid which is literally wrapped around the airfoil. New coordinate lines  $\xi$  and  $\eta$  are defined such that the airfoil surface becomes a coordinate line,  $\eta = \text{constant}$ . This is called a boundary-fitted coordinate system, and will be discussed in detail in Sec. 5.7. The important point is that grid points *naturally* fall on the airfoil surface, as shown in Fig. 5.2a. What is equally important is that, in the physical space shown in Fig. 5.2a, the grid is *not* rectangular and is not uniformly spaced. As a consequence, the conventional difference quotients are difficult to use. What must be done is to *transform* the curvilinear grid in physical space to a *rectangular grid* in terms of  $\xi$  and  $\eta$ . This is

**FIG. 5.2**

Schematic of a boundary-fitted coordinate system. (a) Physical plane; (b) computational plane.

shown in Fig. 5.2b, which illustrates a rectangular grid in terms of  $\xi$  and  $\eta$ . The rectangular grid shown in Fig. 5.2b is called the *computational plane*. The transformation must be defined such that there is a one-to-one correspondence between the rectangular grid in Fig. 5.2b and the curvilinear grid in Fig. 5.2a, called the *physical plane*. For example, points  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  in the physical plane (Fig. 5.2a) correspond to points  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  in the computational plane, which involves uniform  $\Delta\xi$  and uniform  $\Delta\eta$ . The governing partial differential equations are solved by a finite-difference method carried out in the computational space (Fig. 5.2b). Then the computed information is directly carried back to the physical plane via the one-to-one correspondence of grid points. Moreover, when the governing equations are solved in the computational space, they must be expressed in terms of the variables  $\xi$  and  $\eta$  rather than of  $x$  and  $y$ . *That is, the governing equations must be transformed from  $(x, y)$  to  $(\xi, \eta)$  as the new independent variables.*

The purpose of this chapter is to first describe the general transformation of the governing partial differential equations between the physical plane and the computational plane. Following this, various specific grids will be discussed. As stated earlier, this material is an example of a very active area of CFD research called *grid generation*. In this sense, we can only scratch the surface of activity in the present chapter; however, what is presented in this chapter is sufficient to give you the basic ideas and philosophy of grid generation and how it relates to the overall, larger picture of CFD in general.

The road map for this chapter is presented in Fig. 5.3. The general aspects of the transformation process are reflected in the left column of boxes, all of which then feed into the grid generation process reflected in the right column of boxes. We now proceed to examine what is meant by the derivative transformation in the next section; i.e., we proceed to the first box in the left-hand column.

## 5.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMATION OF THE EQUATIONS

For simplicity, we will consider a two-dimensional unsteady flow, with independent variables  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $t$ ; the results for a three-dimensional unsteady flow, with independent variables  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ , and  $t$ , are analogous and simply involve more terms.

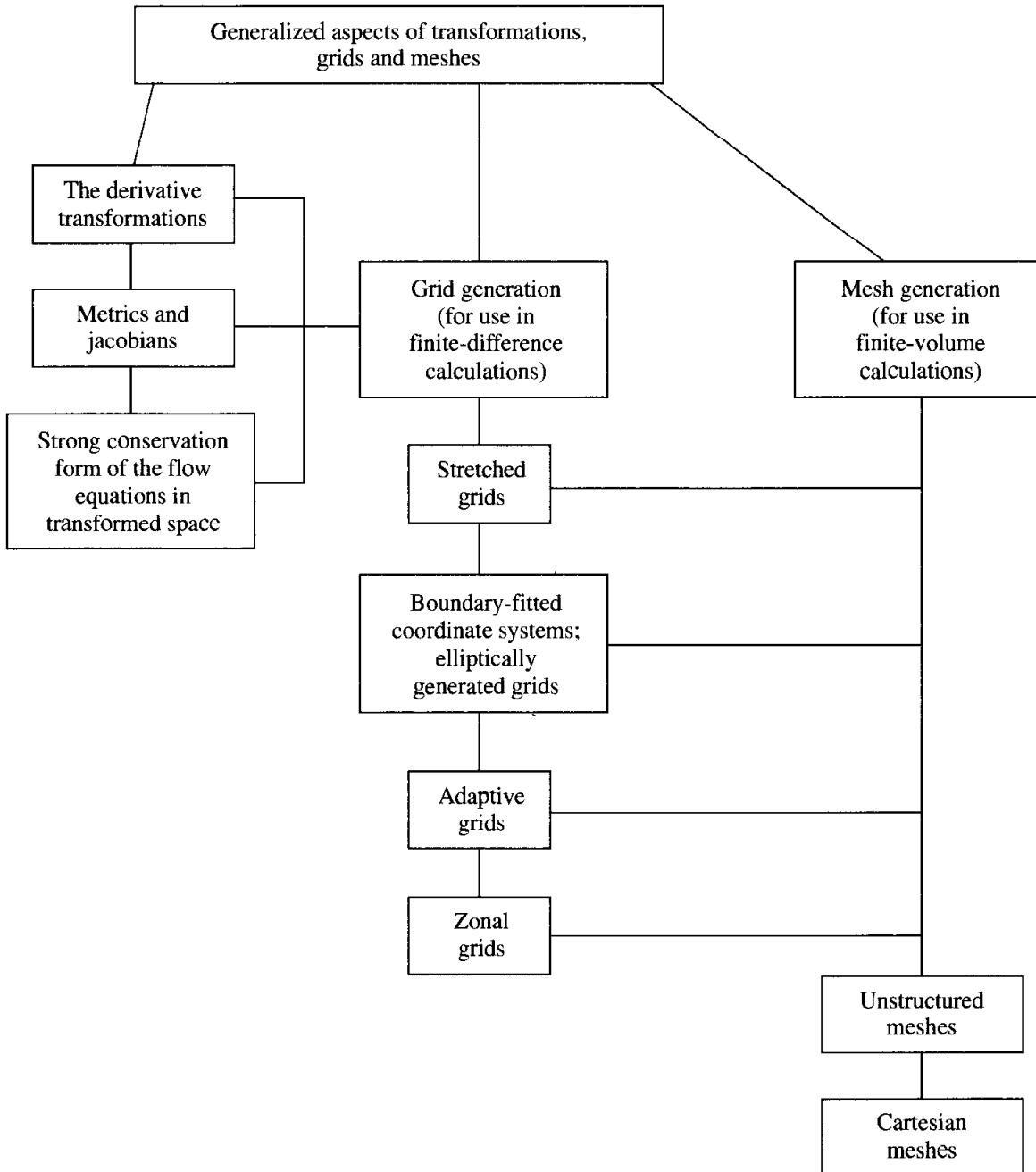
We will transform the independent variables in physical space  $(x, y, t)$  to a new set of independent variables in transformed space  $(\xi, \eta, \tau)$ , where

$$\xi = \xi(x, y, t) \quad (5.1a)$$

$$\eta = \eta(x, y, t) \quad (5.1b)$$

$$\tau = \tau(t) \quad (5.1c)$$

Equations (5.1a) to (5.1c) represent *the transformation*. For the time being, the transformation is written in generic form; for an actual application, the transformation represented by Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c) must be given as some type of *specific* analytical relation, or sometimes a specific numerical relation. In the above transformation,  $\tau$  is considered a function of  $t$  only and is frequently given by  $\tau = t$ . This seems rather trivial; however, Eq. (5.1c) must be carried through the



**FIG. 5.3**  
Road map for Chapter 5.

transformation in a formal manner or else certain necessary terms will not be generated.

Consider one or more partial differential equations written in terms of  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $t$  as the independent variables—say, for example, the continuity, momentum, and energy equations derived in Chap. 2. In these equations, the independent variables appear in the form of *derivatives*, such as  $\partial\rho/\partial x$ ,  $\partial u/\partial y$ ,  $\partial e/\partial t$ . Therefore, to transform these equations from  $(x, y, t)$  space to  $(\xi, \eta, \tau)$  space, we need a transformation for the *derivatives*; i.e., we need to replace the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $t$  derivatives in the original partial differential equations with corresponding derivatives with respect to  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\tau$ . In other words, we need to replace  $\partial u/\partial y$  with some

combination of  $\partial u / \partial \xi$ ,  $\partial u / \partial \eta$ , etc. This derivative transformation can be obtained from the original transformation given by Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c) as follows. From the chain rule of differential calculus, we have

$$\left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right)_{y,t} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right)_{\eta,\tau} \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right)_{y,t} + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right)_{\xi,\tau} \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right)_{y,t} + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} \right)_{\xi,\eta} \left( \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial x} \right)_{y,t}$$

The subscripts in the above expression are added to emphasize what variables are being held constant in the partial differentiation. In our subsequent expressions, subscripts will be dropped; however, it is always useful to keep them in your mind. Thus, we will write the above expression as

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right)} \quad (5.2)$$

Similarly,

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial}{\partial y} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right)} \quad (5.3)$$

Also,

$$\boxed{\left( \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right)_{x,y} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right)_{\eta,\tau} \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t} \right)_{x,y} + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right)_{\xi,\tau} \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} \right)_{x,y} + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} \right)_{\xi,\eta} \left( \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial t} \right)_{x,y}} \quad (5.4)$$

or

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial}{\partial t} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \tau}{\partial t} \right)} \quad (5.5)$$

Equations (5.2), (5.3), and (5.5) allow the *derivatives* with respect to  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $t$  to be transformed into derivatives with respect to  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\tau$ . For example, in the governing flow equations, such as Eqs. (2.29), (2.33), (2.50a) to (2.50c), (2.56a) to (2.56c), (2.66), and (2.81), wherever you see a derivative with respect to  $x$ , replace it with Eq. (5.2); wherever you see a derivative with respect to  $y$ , replace it with Eq. (5.3); and wherever you see a derivative with respect to  $t$ , replace it with Eq. (5.5). The *coefficients* of the derivatives with respect to  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\tau$  are called *metrics*; for example,  $\partial \xi / \partial x$ ,  $\partial \xi / \partial y$ ,  $\partial \eta / \partial x$ , and  $\partial \eta / \partial y$  are metric terms which can be obtained from the general transformation given by Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c). If Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c) are given as closed-form analytic expressions, then the metrics can also be obtained in closed form. However, the transformation given by Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c) is frequently a purely numerical relationship, in which case the metrics can be evaluated by finite-difference quotients, typically central differences.

Examining the equations which govern a *viscous* flow, as derived in Chap. 2, we see that they involve second derivatives which appear in the viscous

terms. Examples are Eqs. (2.58a) to (2.58c), which involve terms such as  $\partial/\partial x$  ( $\mu \partial v/\partial x$ ). Therefore, we need a transformation for these derivatives; they can be obtained as follows. From Eq. (5.2), let

$$A = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right)$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} &= \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \right] \\ &= \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial x^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial \xi} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial x^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial \eta} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (5.6)$$

*B*                                   *C*

The last step in Eq. (5.6) is obtained from the simple rule for differentiation of a product of two terms. The derivatives denoted by *B* and *C* in Eq. (5.6) are a “mixed bag”; they involve differentiation with respect to one variable in the  $(x, y, t)$  system and another variable in the  $(\xi, \eta, \tau)$  system. This is not desirable, because we want to express  $\partial^2/\partial x^2$  purely in terms of derivatives with respect to  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\tau$ . Therefore, we need to work further with the terms denoted by *B* and *C*. The mixed derivatives denoted by *B* and *C* can be reexpressed as follows.

$$B = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial \xi} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right)$$

Recalling the chain rule given by Eq. (5.2), we have

$$B = \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta \partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \quad (5.7)$$

Similarly,

$$C = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial \eta} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) = \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \quad (5.8)$$

Substituting *B* and *C* from Eqs. (5.7) and (5.8) into Eq. (5.6) and rearranging the sequence of terms, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} = & \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial x^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial x^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right)^2 \\ & + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta \partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (5.9)$$

Equation (5.9) gives the second partial derivative with respect to  $x$  in terms of first, second, and mixed derivatives with respect to  $\xi$  and  $\eta$ , multiplied by various metric terms. Let us now continue to obtain the second partial with respect to  $y$ . From Eq. (5.3), let

$$D \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial y} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right)$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} &= \frac{\partial D}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \right] \\ &= \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial y^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi \partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial y^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta \partial y} \right) \\ &\quad E \qquad \qquad \qquad F \end{aligned} \quad (5.10)$$

Using Eq. (5.3),

$$E = \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) = \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta \partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \quad (5.11)$$

$$\text{and} \quad F = \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) = \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta \partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \quad (5.12)$$

Substituting Eqs. (5.11) and (5.12) into Eq. (5.10), we have, after rearranging the sequence of terms,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} = & \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial y^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial y^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right)^2 \\ & + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta \partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (5.13)$$

Equation (5.13) gives the second partial derivative with respect to  $y$  in terms of first, second, and mixed derivatives with respect to  $\xi$  and  $\eta$ , multiplied by various metric terms. We now continue to obtain the second partial with respect to  $x$  and  $y$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right) = \frac{\partial D}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \right] \\
&= \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial x \partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi \partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial x \partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta \partial x} \right) \\
&\quad B \qquad \qquad \qquad C \\
&\quad (5.14)
\end{aligned}$$

Substituting Eqs. (5.7) and (5.8) for  $B$  and  $C$ , respectively, into Eq. (5.14) and rearranging the sequence of terms, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y} &= \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial x \partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial x \partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) \\
&\quad + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \eta^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} \right) \left[ \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \right]
\end{aligned}$$

(5.15)

Equation (5.15) gives the second partial derivative with respect to  $x$  and  $y$  in terms of first, second, and mixed derivatives with respect to  $\xi$  and  $\eta$ , multiplied by various metric terms.

Examine all the equations given in the boxes above. They represent all that is necessary to transform the governing flow equations obtained in Chap. 2 with  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $t$  as the independent variables to  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\tau$  as the *new* independent variables. Clearly, when this transformation is made, the governing equations in terms of  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\tau$  become rather lengthy. Let us consider a simple example, namely, that for inviscid, irrotational, steady, incompressible flow, for which Laplace's equation is the governing equation.

### Example 5.1

$$\text{Laplace's equation} \quad \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad (5.16)$$

Transforming Eq. (5.16) from  $(x, y)$  to  $(\xi, \eta)$ , where  $\xi = \xi(x, y)$  and  $\eta = \eta(x, y)$ , we have from Eqs. (5.9) and (5.13),

$$\begin{aligned}
&\left( \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \xi^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \eta^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial x^2} \right) \\
&+ \left( \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial x^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \xi^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \eta \partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \eta^2} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right)^2 \\
&+ \left( \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial y^2} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial y^2} \right) = 0
\end{aligned}$$

Factoring some of the terms in the above equation, we have finally

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \xi^2} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right)^2 \right] + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \eta^2} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right)^2 \right] \\ & + 2 \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) \right] \\ & + \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \xi} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial y^2} \right) + \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \eta} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial y^2} \right) = 0 \quad (5.17) \end{aligned}$$

Examine Eqs. (5.16) and (5.17); the former is Laplace's equation in the physical  $(x, y)$  space, and the latter is the transformed Laplace's equation in the computational  $(\xi, \eta)$  space. The transformed equation clearly contains many more terms. It is easy to mentally extrapolate what the governing continuity, momentum, and energy equations as derived in Chap. 2 would look like in the transformed space—lots and lots of terms.

*Note:* The need to apply the transformations for the second derivatives, namely, those given by Eqs. (5.9), (5.13), and (5.15), disappears when the governing flow equations are used in the strong conservation form expressed by Eq. (2.93). For a moment, return to Sec. 2.10 and examine Eq. (2.93), as well as the definitions of the column vectors given by Eqs. (2.94) to (2.98). Note that the viscous terms in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$ , expressed by Eqs. (2.95) to (2.97), appear directly in the form  $\tau_{xx}$ ,  $\tau_{xy}$ ,  $k \partial T / \partial x$ , etc. These terms involve only first derivatives of the velocity (such as  $\partial u / \partial x$ ,  $\partial u / \partial y$ ) or first derivatives of the temperature. For the general transformation of these terms *inside*  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$ , only the transformation of the first derivatives, such as given by Eqs. (5.2) and (5.3), is needed. In turn, the first derivatives which appear in Eq. (2.93) are also transformed via Eqs. (5.2), (5.3), and (5.5). Therefore, when the governing flow equations are used in the form of Eq. (2.93), the transformation is carried out via a dual application of the first derivatives, i.e., a dual application of Eqs. (5.2), (5.3), and (5.5). In contrast, the governing equations expressed in the form of Eqs. (2.58a) to (2.58c), for example, have the viscous terms appearing directly as second derivatives. For a transformation of the governing equations in this form, both the first-derivative transformation, Eqs. (5.2), (5.3), and (5.5), and the second-derivative transformation, Eqs. (5.9), (5.13), and (5.15), are needed.

Once again we emphasize that Eqs. (5.1) to (5.3), (5.5), (5.9), (5.13), and (5.15) are used to transform the governing flow equations from the physical plane [ $(x, y)$  space] to the computational plane [ $(\xi, \eta)$  space], and that the purpose of the transformation in most CFD applications is to transform a nonuniform grid in physical space (such as shown in Fig. 5.2a) to a *uniform* grid in the computational space (such as shown in Fig. 5.2b). The transformed governing partial differential equations are then finite-differenced in the computational plane, where there exists a uniform  $\Delta\xi$  and a uniform  $\Delta\eta$ , as shown in Fig. 5.2b. The flow-field variables are calculated at all grid points in the computational plane, such as points  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  in Fig. 5.2b. These are the same flow-field variables which exist in the physical plane at the corresponding points  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  in Fig. 5.2a. The transformation that accomplishes all this is given in general form by Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c). Of course, to

carry out a solution for a given problem, the transformation given generically by Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c) must be explicitly specified. Examples of some specific transformations will be given in subsequent sections.

### 5.3 METRICS AND JACOBIANS

In Eqs. (5.2) to (5.15), the terms involving the geometry of the grid, such as  $\partial\xi/\partial x$ ,  $\partial\xi/\partial y$ ,  $\partial\eta/\partial x$ ,  $\partial\eta/\partial y$ , are called *metrics*. If the transformation, Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c), is given analytically, then it is possible to obtain analytic values for the metric terms. However, in many CFD applications, the transformation, Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c), is given numerically, and hence the metric terms are calculated as finite differences.

Also, in many applications, the transformation may be more conveniently expressed as the *inverse* of Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c); that is, we may have available the *inverse transformation*

$$x = x(\xi, \eta, \tau) \quad (5.18a)$$

$$y = y(\xi, \eta, \tau) \quad (5.18b)$$

$$t = t(\tau) \quad (5.18c)$$

In Eqs. (5.18a) to (5.18c),  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\tau$  are the *independent* variables. However, in the derivative transformations given by Eqs. (5.2) to (5.15), the metric terms  $\partial\xi/\partial x$ ,  $\partial\eta/\partial y$ , etc., are partial derivatives in terms of  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $t$  as the independent variables. Therefore, in order to calculate the metric terms in these equations from the inverse transformation in Eqs. (5.18a) to (5.18c), we need to relate  $\partial\xi/\partial x$ ,  $\partial\eta/\partial y$ , etc., to the inverse forms  $\partial x/\partial\xi$ ,  $\partial y/\partial\eta$ , etc. These inverse forms of the metrics are the values which can be directly obtained from the inverse transformation, Eqs. (5.18a) to (5.18c). Let us proceed to find such relations.

Consider a dependent variable in the governing flow equations, such as the  $x$  component of velocity,  $u$ . Let  $u = u(x, y)$ , where from Eqs. (5.18a) and (5.18b),  $x = x(\xi, \eta)$  and  $y = y(\xi, \eta)$ . The total differential of  $u$  is given by

$$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} dy \quad (5.19)$$

It follows from Eq. (5.19) that

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \quad (5.20)$$

$$\text{and} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial \eta} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \quad (5.21)$$

Equations (5.20) and (5.21) can be viewed as two equations for the two unknowns  $\partial u/\partial x$  and  $\partial u/\partial y$ . Solving the system of Eqs. (5.20) and (5.21) for  $\partial u/\partial x$  using Cramer's rule, we have

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \\ \frac{\partial u}{\partial \eta} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \\ \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix}} \quad (5.22)$$

In Eq. (5.22), the denominator determinant is identified as the *jacobian determinant*, denoted by

$$J \equiv \frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(\xi, \eta)} \equiv \frac{\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \\ \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial \eta} \\ \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix}} \quad (5.22a)$$

Therefore, Eq. (5.22) can be written in the following form, where the numerator determinant is displayed in its expanded form

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{J} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \right) - \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \right) \right] \quad (5.23a)$$

Now let us return to Eqs. (5.20) and (5.21) and solve for  $\partial u / \partial y$ .

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \\ \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} & \frac{\partial u}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \\ \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix}}$$

or

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = \frac{1}{J} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \right) - \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \right) \right] \quad (5.23b)$$

Examine Eqs. (5.23a) and (5.23b). They express the derivatives of the flow-field variables in physical space in terms of the derivatives of the flow-field variables in computational space. Equations (5.23a) and (5.23b) accomplish the same derivative transformations as given by Eqs. (5.2) and (5.3). However, unlike Eqs. (5.2) and (5.3) where the metric terms are  $\partial \xi / \partial x$ ,  $\partial \eta / \partial y$ , etc., the new Eqs. (5.23a) and (5.23b) involve the inverse metrics  $\partial x / \partial \xi$ ,  $\partial y / \partial \eta$ , etc. Also notice that Eqs. (5.23a) and (5.23b) include the jacobian of the transformation. Therefore,

whenever you have the transformation given in the form of Eqs. (5.18a) to (5.18c), from which you can readily obtain the metrics in the form  $\partial x/\partial \xi$ ,  $\partial x/\partial \eta$ , etc., the transformed governing flow equations can be expressed in terms of these inverse metrics and the jacobian  $J$ . To make this discussion more generic, let us write Eqs. (5.23a) and (5.23b) in a slightly more general form.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{J} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \right) - \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \right) \right] \quad (5.24a)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y} = \frac{1}{J} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \right) - \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \right) \right] \quad (5.24b)$$

Since the dependent variable  $u$  was carried in Eqs. (5.23a) and (5.23b) just as an artifice to derive the inverse transformation, Eqs. (5.24a) and (5.24b) emphasize that the inverse derivative transformation can be applied to *any* dependent variable (not just  $u$ ). Finally, we note that the second-derivative transformation can also be expressed in terms of the inverse metrics; i.e., there is the analog to Eqs. (5.9), (5.13), and (5.15) which contains the inverse metrics and the jacobian. We will not take the space to derive these analogous expressions here.

It is worthwhile to state the obvious. When in the literature you see the governing flow equations in the transformed coordinates and you see the jacobian  $J$  appearing in the transformed equations, you usually know that you are dealing with the inverse transformation and the inverse metrics in these equations. When you do *not* see  $J$  in the transformed equations, you are usually dealing with the direct transformation and the direct metrics as originally defined in Sec. 5.2. The only exception to these statements is the material to be discussed in Sec. 5.4. Once again, you are reminded that when you are given the direct transformation as represented by Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c), then the direct metrics such as  $\partial \xi/\partial x$ ,  $\partial \eta/\partial y$  are most easily obtained from this form of the transformation, and the derivative transformation embodied in Eqs. (5.2), (5.3), and (5.5) is the most straightforward. On the other hand, when you are given the inverse transformation as represented by (5.18a) to (5.18c), then the inverse metrics such as  $\partial x/\partial \xi$ ,  $\partial y/\partial \eta$  are most easily obtained, and the derivative transformation embodied in Eqs. (5.24a) and (5.24b) is the most straightforward.

You are reminded that in this chapter we have been treating two spatial variables,  $x$  and  $y$ . A similar but more lengthy set of results can be obtained for a three-dimensional spatial transformation from  $(x, y, z)$  to  $(\xi, \eta, \zeta)$ . Consult Ref. 13 for more details. Our discussion above has been intentionally limited to two dimensions in order to demonstrate the basic principles without cluttering the consideration with details.

Equations (5.24a) and (5.24b) can be obtained in a slightly more formal manner. Let us examine this more formal approach, because it leads to a general method for dealing directly with the different metrics—a general method which is a fairly direct way of extending the above results to three spatial dimensions, should you need to do so. Again, in the following we will deal with two spatial dimensions for simplicity. Consider the direct transformation for two dimensions, given as

$$\xi = \xi(x, y) \quad (5.25a)$$

$$\eta = \eta(x, y) \quad (5.25b)$$

(Note: Comparing Eqs. (5.25a) to (5.25b) with (5.1a) to (5.1c), you will observe that we have dropped  $\tau = t$  from the present discussion. Since we are interested in only the spatial metrics in this discussion, the consideration of the transformation of time is not relevant.) From the expression for an exact differential, we have from Eqs. (5.25a) and (5.25b)

$$d\xi = \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} dy \quad (5.26a)$$

$$d\eta = \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} dy \quad (5.26b)$$

or, in matrix form,

$$\begin{bmatrix} d\xi \\ d\eta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} dx \\ dy \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.27)$$

Now consider the inverse transformation, given by

$$x = x(\xi, \eta) \quad (5.28a)$$

$$y = y(\xi, \eta) \quad (5.28b)$$

Taking the exact differentials, we have

$$dx = \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} d\xi + \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} d\eta \quad (5.29a)$$

$$dy = \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} d\xi + \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} d\eta \quad (5.29b)$$

or, in matrix form,

$$\begin{bmatrix} dx \\ dy \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} d\xi \\ d\eta \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.30)$$

Solving Eq. (5.30) for the right-hand column matrix, i.e., multiplying by the inverse of the  $2 \times 2$  coefficient matrix, we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} d\xi \\ d\eta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} dx \\ dy \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.31)$$

Comparing Eqs. (5.27) and (5.31), we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \quad (5.32)$$

Following the standard rules for creating the inverse of a matrix, Eq. (5.32) is written as

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} & -\frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \\ -\frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \end{bmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix}} \quad (5.33)$$

Consider the determinant in the denominator of Eq. (5.33). Since the value of a determinant is unchanged by transposing its terms, we have

$$\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \\ \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \end{vmatrix} \equiv J \quad (5.34)$$

Note that the right-hand determinant of Eq. (5.34) is precisely the jacobian  $J$  of the transformation, as can be seen from the definition of  $J$  given by Eq. (5.22a). Substituting Eq. (5.34) into (5.33), we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{J} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} & -\frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \\ -\frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.35)$$

Comparing like elements of the two matrices in Eq. (5.35), we obtain the relationships for the direct metrics in terms of the inverse metrics, namely,

$$\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{J} \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \quad (5.36a)$$

$$\frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} = -\frac{1}{J} \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \quad (5.36b)$$

$$\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} = -\frac{1}{J} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \quad (5.36c)$$

$$\frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} = \frac{1}{J} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \quad (5.36d)$$

Hence, the above formalism leads directly to the relationship between the direct and inverse metrics. That the above results are consistent with our previous analyses can be seen by substituting Eqs. (5.36a) to (5.36d) into Eqs. (5.2) and (5.3), obtaining

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} &= \frac{1}{J} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \right) - \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \right) \right] \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial y} &= \frac{1}{J} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \right) - \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \right) \right] \end{aligned}$$

The above two equations are identically Eqs. (5.24a) and (5.24b), which gives our derivative transformation expressed in terms of the inverse metrics. The extension of the above formalism to three spatial dimensions, leading to the three-dimensional counterpart of Eqs. (5.36a) to (5.36d), is straightforward.

## 5.4 FORM OF THE GOVERNING EQUATIONS PARTICULARLY SUITED FOR CFD REVISITED: THE TRANSFORMED VERSION

Return for a moment to Sec. 2.10, where we presented the *strong conservation form* of the governing flow equations, represented by Eq. (2.93). For the case of unsteady flow in two spatial dimensions, with no source terms, this equation reduces to

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (5.37)$$

(The treatment here of two spatial dimensions  $x$  and  $y$  rather than carrying all three dimensions  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  is just for simplicity; the extension of the following analysis to three dimensions is straightforward.)

*Question:* When Eq. (5.37) is written in the transformed  $(\xi, \eta)$  space, can it be recast in strong conservation form; i.e., can it be written in a transformed form such that

$$\frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial \xi} + \frac{\partial G_1}{\partial \eta} = 0 \quad (5.38)$$

where  $F_1$  and  $G_1$  are suitable combinations of the original  $F$  and  $G$  flux vectors? If so, we will be able to retain in our transformed space all those advantages of the strong conservation form that were ascribed to some CFD calculations discussed in Sec. 2.10. The answer to the above question is *yes*. Let us see how and why.

First, transform the spatial variables in Eq. (5.37) according to the derivative transformation given by Eqs. (5.2) and (5.3).

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial \xi} \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial F}{\partial \eta} \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial G}{\partial \xi} \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial G}{\partial \eta} \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) = 0 \quad (5.39)$$

Multiply Eq. (5.39) by the jacobian  $J$  defined by Eq. (5.22a):

$$J \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + J \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + J \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) + J \left( \frac{\partial G}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + J \left( \frac{\partial G}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) = 0 \quad (5.40)$$

Putting Eq. (5.40) on the shelf for a moment, consider the simple derivative expansion of the term  $JF(\partial \xi / \partial x)$ , that is,

$$\frac{\partial [JF(\partial \xi / \partial x)]}{\partial \xi} = J \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) \frac{\partial F}{\partial \xi} + F \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( J \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) \quad (5.41)$$

Rearranging Eq. (5.41), we have

$$J \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) = \frac{\partial [JF(\partial \xi / \partial x)]}{\partial \xi} - F \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( J \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) \quad (5.42)$$

Similarly, taking the  $\eta$  derivative of  $JF(\partial \eta / \partial x)$  and rearranging, we have

$$J \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) = \frac{\partial [JF(\partial \eta / \partial x)]}{\partial \eta} - F \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( J \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \quad (5.43)$$

In a similar way, the terms  $JG(\partial \xi / \partial y)$  and  $JG(\partial \eta / \partial y)$  can be expanded and rearranged as

$$J \left( \frac{\partial G}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) = \frac{\partial [JG(\partial \xi / \partial y)]}{\partial \xi} - G \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( J \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) \quad (5.44)$$

and  $J \left( \frac{\partial G}{\partial \eta} \right) \left( \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) = \frac{\partial [JG(\partial \eta / \partial y)]}{\partial \eta} - G \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( J \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \quad (5.45)$

Substituting Eqs. (5.42) to (5.45) into Eq. (5.40) and factoring, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
J \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( JF \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} + JG \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( JF \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} + JG \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \\
- F \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( J \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( J \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) \right] \\
- G \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( J \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( J \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) \right] = 0 \quad (5.46)
\end{aligned}$$

The last two terms in Eq. (5.46), which appear in brackets, are zero, as follows. Substituting Eqs. (5.36a) to (5.36d) into these terms, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( J \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( J \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} \right) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \right) \\
&= \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} - \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial \eta \partial \xi} \equiv 0
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( J \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( J \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \right) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( - \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \right) \\
&= - \frac{\partial^2 x}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} + \frac{\partial^2 x}{\partial \eta \partial \xi} \equiv 0
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, Eq. (5.46) can be written as

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial \xi} + \frac{\partial G_1}{\partial \eta} = 0} \quad (5.47)$$

where

$$U_1 = JU \quad (5.48a)$$

$$F_1 = JF \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} + JG \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} \quad (5.48b)$$

$$G_1 = JF \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} + JG \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} \quad (5.48c)$$

Equation (5.47) is the generic form of the governing flow equations written in strong conservation form in the transformed  $(\xi, \eta)$  space. Such a form was first obtained in 1974 by Viviand (Ref. 28) and Vinokur (Ref. 29).

Note in Eq. (5.47) that the newly defined flux vectors  $F_1$  and  $G_1$  are combinations of the physical flux vectors  $F$  and  $G$ , where the combinations involve the jacobian  $J$  and the *direct* metrics (not the inverse metrics, as defined in Sec. 5.3). Here is the exception to one of the statements made in Sec. 5.3; there it was stated that the appearance of the jacobian in the transformed equations signaled the use of the inverse metrics. This is not the case when the transformed equations are expressed in the strong conservation form given by Eq. (5.47). Indeed, if Eqs. (5.36a) and (5.36b) are substituted into the forms for  $F_1$  and  $G_1$ , given by Eqs.

(5.48b) and (5.48c), we have

$$F_1 = JF \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} + JG \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} = F \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} - G \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \quad (5.49a)$$

and

$$G_1 = JF \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} + JG \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} = -F \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} + G \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \quad (5.49b)$$

Note that when  $F_1$  and  $G_1$  are expressed in terms of the inverse metrics as in Eqs. (5.49a) and (5.49b), the jacobian does not appear. These are not statements of critical importance—they just come under the heading of “interesting observations.”

## 5.5 A COMMENT

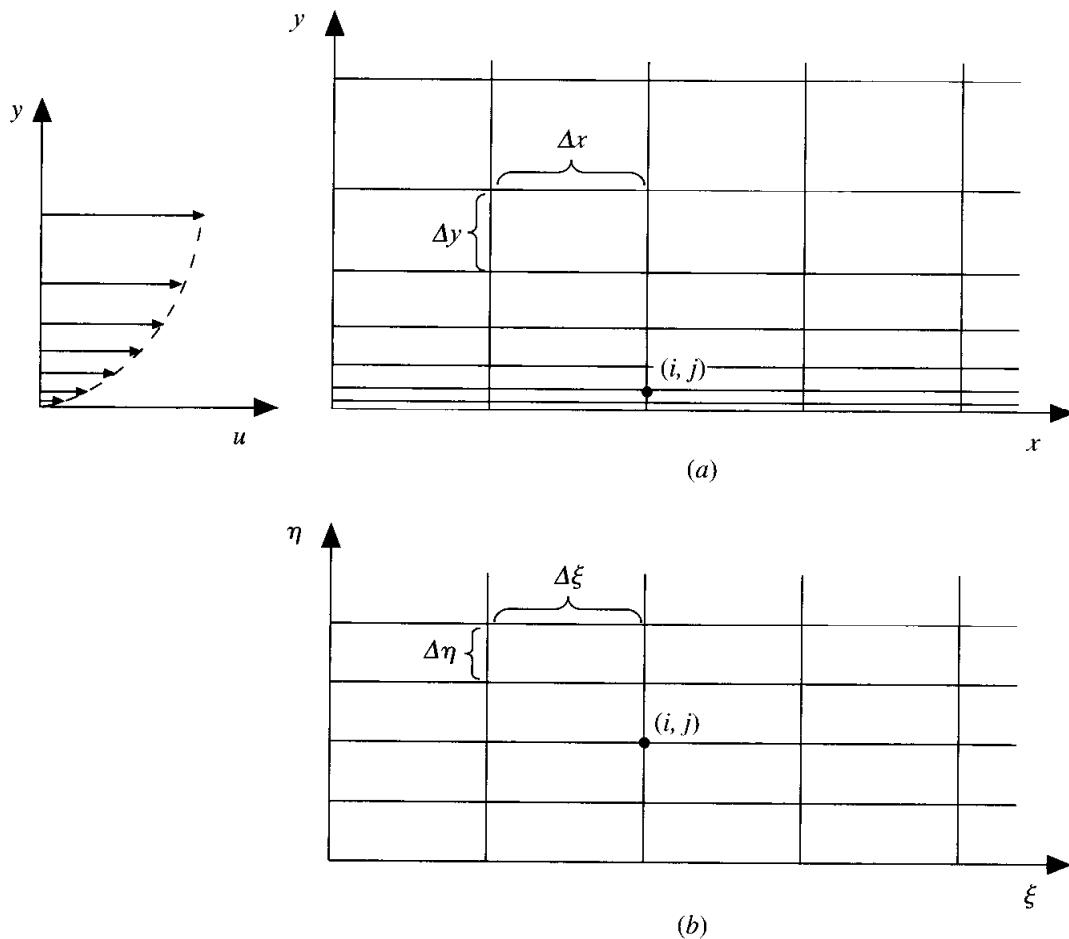
Return to our road map given in Fig. 5.3. Up to this point in the present chapter we have dealt with the *concept* of a transformation from the physical  $(x, y)$  space to the computational  $(\xi, \eta)$  space, as reflected in the left column in Fig. 5.3. However, we have yet to examine any actual example of such a transformation; this is the subject of the center column in Fig. 5.3. In the previous sections, we have developed the transformation expressions in very general and generic terms. Keep in mind that such a transformation is consistent with the demands of *finite-difference* methods, where the finite-difference expressions are evaluated on a uniform grid. If such a uniform grid is compatible with the boundary geometry and the flow problem in the physical plane, then a transformed grid is not necessary, and all that we have discussed so far in this chapter is superfluous. However, for realistic problems with realistic geometries, this is generally not the case; either the nature of the flow problem itself (such as the viscous flow over a surface where a larger number of grid points should be packed closer to the surface) and/or the shape of the boundary (such as a curved surface that should be fitted with a curvilinear, boundary-fitted coordinate system) will usually demand a transformation which carries a nonuniform grid in the physical plane to a uniform grid in the computational plane. Such a transformation is inherently not required for finite-volume methods, which can deal directly with a nonuniform mesh in the physical plane.

In the remainder of this chapter, we will examine some actual transformations, i.e., some specific formulations represented by the generic form given by Eqs. (5.1a) to (5.1c). In the process, we will be dealing with specific aspects of *grid generation*. We will now be running down the center column of Fig. 5.3.

## 5.6 STRETCHED (COMPRESSED) GRIDS

Of all the grid generation techniques to be discussed, the simplest is treated in this section. It consists of stretching the grid in one or more coordinate directions.

**Example 5.2.** Consider the physical and computational planes shown in Fig. 5.4. Assume that we are dealing with the viscous flow over a flat surface, where the velocity varies rapidly near the surface as shown in the velocity profile sketched at the

**FIG. 5.4**

Example of grid stretching. (a) Physical plane; (b) computational plane.

left of the physical plane. To calculate the details of this flow near the surface, a finely spaced grid in the  $y$  direction should be used, as sketched in the physical plane. However, far away from the surface, the grid can be coarser. Therefore, a proper grid should be one in which the horizontal coordinate lines become progressively more closely spaced in the vertical direction as the surface is approached. On the other hand, we wish to deal with a uniform grid in the computational plane, as also shown in Fig. 5.4. Examining Fig. 5.4, we see that the grid in the physical space is “stretched,” as if a uniform grid were drawn on a piece of rubber and then the upper portion of the rubber were stretched upward in the  $y$  direction. A simple analytical transformation which can accomplish this grid stretching is

$$\xi = x \quad (5.50a)$$

$$\eta = \ln(y + 1) \quad (5.50b)$$

The *inverse* transformation is

$$x = \xi \quad (5.51a)$$

$$y = e^\eta - 1 \quad (5.51b)$$

Examine these equations more closely with Fig. 5.4 in mind. In both the physical and computational planes, the vertical grid lines are uniformly spaced in the  $x$  direction; this is reflected in both Eqs. (5.50a) and (5.51a). In the physical plane,  $\Delta x$  is the same throughout. In the computational plane,  $\Delta\xi$  is the same throughout. Moreover,  $\Delta x = \Delta\xi$ . The grid is *not* stretched in the  $x$  direction. However, such is not the case for the horizontal grid lines. The horizontal lines are uniformly spaced in the *computational plane* by intent; we stipulate that  $\Delta\eta$  be the same everywhere in the computational plane. In turn, what happens to the corresponding values of  $\Delta y$  in the physical plane? The answer is easily seen by differentiating Eq. (5.51b) with respect to  $\eta$ .

$$\frac{dy}{d\eta} = e^\eta$$

or

$$dy = e^\eta d\eta$$

Replacing  $dy$  and  $d\eta$  with finite increments, we have approximately

$$\Delta y = e^\eta \Delta\eta \quad (5.52)$$

Note from Eq. (5.52) that as  $\eta$  becomes larger, i.e., as we move further *above* the plate in Fig. 5.4, the value of  $\Delta y$  becomes progressively larger for the same constant value of  $\Delta\eta$ . In other words, as we move in the vertical direction away from the plate, although we have a uniform grid in the computational plane, we encounter progressively larger values of  $\Delta y$ ; that is, the grid in the physical plane appears to be *stretched* in the vertical direction. This is what is meant by a stretched grid. Moreover, the direct transformation given by Eqs. (5.50a) and (5.50b), or the inverse transformation given by Eqs. (5.51a) and (5.51b), is the *mechanics* by which the stretched grid is generated. This is the simplest essence of what is meant by grid generation.

**Example 5.3.** Let us examine what happens to the governing flow equations in both the physical and the computational planes. For simplicity, we will assume steady flow, and we will illustrate by means of the continuity equation. Taking the continuity equation in the form of Eq. (2.25), specializing it to a steady flow, and writing it in cartesian coordinates, we have

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (5.53)$$

This is the continuity equation written in terms of the *physical plane*. This equation can be formally transformed to the computational plane using the generic derivative transformation given by Eqs. (5.2) and (5.3); the resulting form is

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial\xi} \left( \frac{\partial\xi}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial\eta} \left( \frac{\partial\eta}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial\xi} \left( \frac{\partial\xi}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial\eta} \left( \frac{\partial\eta}{\partial y} \right) = 0 \quad (5.54)$$

The metrics in Eq. (5.54) are obtained from the direct transformation given by Eqs. (5.50a) and (5.50b), namely,

$$\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial x} = 1 \quad \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial y} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} = \frac{1}{y+1} \quad (5.55)$$

Substituting the metrics from Eqs. (5.55) into (5.54), we obtain

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial \xi} + \frac{1}{y+1} \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial \eta} = 0 \quad (5.56)$$

However, from Eq. (5.50b),  $y + 1 = e^\eta$ . Therefore, Eq. (5.56) becomes

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial \xi} + \frac{1}{e^\eta} \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial \eta} = 0$$

$$\text{or } e^\eta \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial \xi} + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial \eta} = 0 \quad (5.57)$$

Equation (5.57) is the form of the continuity equation that holds in the computational plane. For the first time in this chapter, we have just witnessed an actual transformation of a governing flow equation from the physical plane to the computational plane; with this, it is hoped that some of the generic ideas presented in the earlier sections of this chapter are beginning to come more into focus.

**Example 5.4.** To illustrate further, let us repeat the above derivation but this time from the point of view of the *inverse* transformation defined by Eqs. (5.51a) and (5.51b). Returning to Eq. (5.53), and applying the generic inverse derivative transformation given by Eqs. (5.24a) and (5.24b),

$$\frac{1}{J} \left[ \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial \xi} \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \right) - \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial \eta} \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \right) \right] + \frac{1}{J} \left[ \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial \eta} \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \right) - \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial \xi} \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \right) \right] = 0 \quad (5.58)$$

The inverse metrics in Eq. (5.58) are obtained from the inverse transformation given by Eqs. (5.51a) and (5.51b) as follows.

$$\frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} = 1 \quad \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} = 0 \quad \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} = e^\eta \quad (5.59)$$

Substituting Eqs. (5.59) into (5.58), we have

$$e^\eta \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial \xi} + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial \eta} = 0 \quad (5.60)$$

This again is the transformed continuity equation. Indeed, Eq. (5.60) is identical to Eq. (5.57). All that we have done here is to demonstrate how the transformed equation can be obtained from either the direct transformation or the inverse transformation; the results are exactly the same.

Note in the above derivations that the continuity equation was first transformed by means of the derivative transformations; the results were Eq. (5.54) for the direct transformation and Eq. (5.58) for the inverse transformation. These are still generic transformations at this stage. The transformation only becomes specific when the specific metrics associated with the specific transformation are substituted into Eq. (5.54) or Eq. (5.58). We can now recognize the following important aspect of any transformation of the governing flow equations. *It is the metrics that carry all the specific information pertinent to a specific transformation.* Let us imagine the

following division of effort. Assume you are responsible for numerically calculating a given flow field over a given body. Assume that the responsibility for the generation of the grid around the body rests with another person (or group) down the hall. When you are ready to make your calculations, you go to your friendly grid generation person, who will give you the *metrics* for the transformation. That is all the information about the transformation which you need in order to numerically solve the flow problem in the computational plane. On the other hand, you will also need to know the one-to-one correspondence of the location of each grid point in both the computational and physical planes in order to carry your solution back to the physical plane. For example, consider again the stretched grid discussed above. Solve the continuity equation in the form of Eq. (5.57), as well as the appropriate transformed versions of the momentum and energy equations (not shown here for simplicity) for the dependent flow-field variables in the *computational plane*. Among lots of other data from the solution, you will have the value of density at grid point  $(i, j)$ ,  $\rho_{i,j}$ , where the point  $(i, j)$  is located in the computational plane, as shown at the bottom of Fig. 5.4. However, from the one-to-one correspondence of the location of the same grid point  $(i, j)$  in the *physical plane* shown at the top of Fig. 5.4, you also know the value of the density at the point in the physical plane; namely, it is the same value  $\rho_{i,j}$  obtained from the solution of the governing equations at grid point  $(i, j)$  in the computational plane.

**Example 5.5.** Let us consider a more elaborate version of grid stretching. The example is taken from Ref. 30 and 31, where the supersonic viscous flow over a blunt base is studied. Here, grid stretching is carried out in both the  $x$  and  $y$  directions. The physical and computational planes are illustrated in Fig. 5.5. The streamwise stretching in the  $x$  direction is accomplished through a transformation used by Holst (Ref. 32), given below:

$$x = \frac{\xi_0}{A} \{ \sinh[(\xi - x_0)\beta_x] + A \} \quad (5.61)$$

where

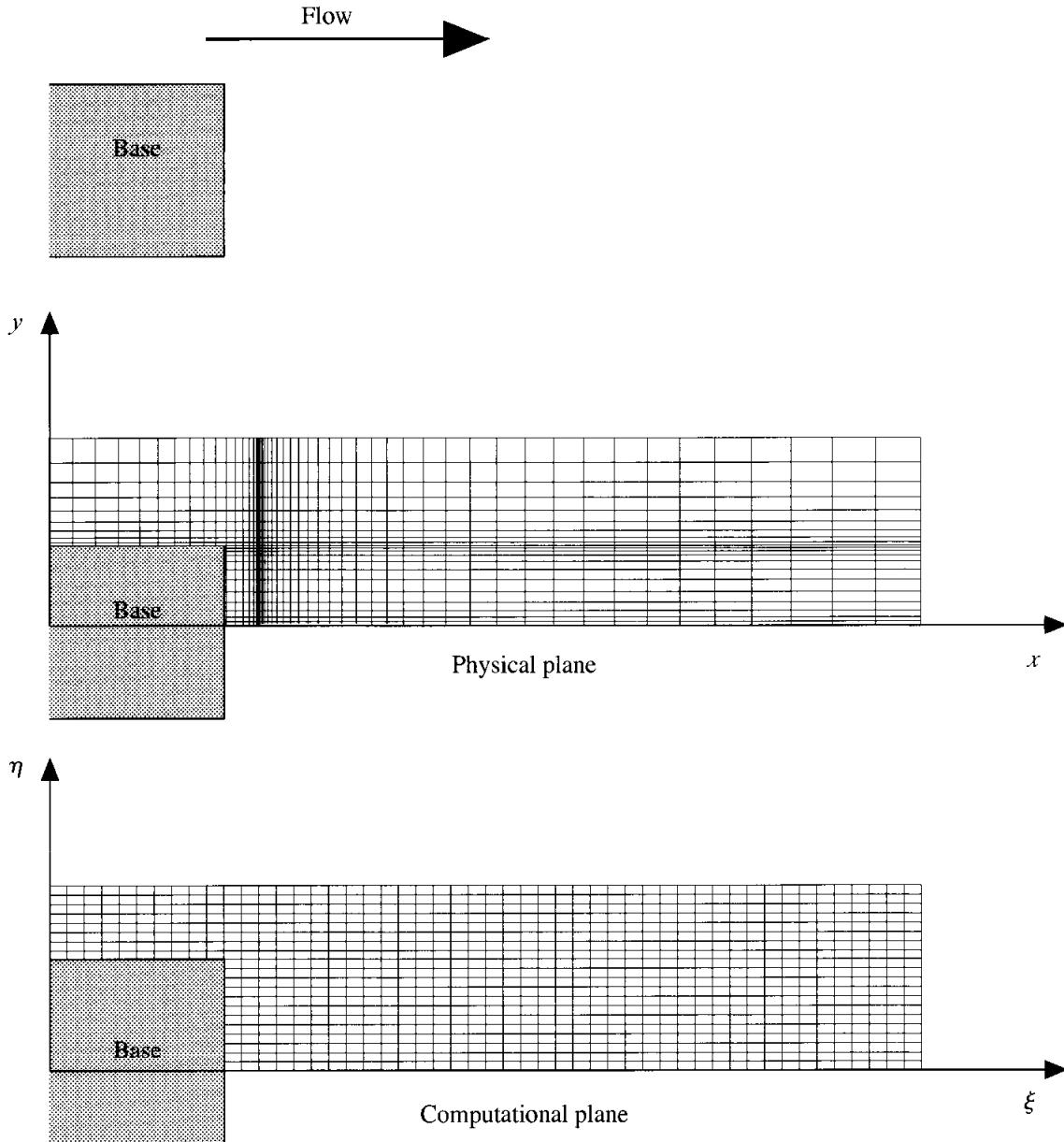
$$A = \sinh(\beta_x x_0) \quad (5.62)$$

and

$$x_0 = \frac{1}{2\beta_x} \ln \frac{1 + (e^{\beta_x} - 1)\xi_0}{1 + (e^{-\beta_x} - 1)\xi_0} \quad (5.63)$$

In Eq. (5.61),  $\xi_0$  is the location in the computational plane where the maximum clustering is to occur and  $\beta_x$  is a constant which controls the degree of clustering at  $\xi_0$ , with larger values of  $\beta_x$  providing a finer grid in the clustered region. The transverse stretching in the  $y$  direction is accomplished by dividing the physical plane into two sections: (1) the space directly behind the step and (2) the space above (both in front of and behind) the step. The transformation is based on that used by Roberts (Ref. 33) and is given by

$$y = \frac{(\beta_y + 1) - (\beta_y - 1)e^{-c(\eta - 1 - \alpha)/(1 - \alpha)}}{(2\alpha + 1)(1 + e^{-c(\eta - 1 - \alpha)/(1 - \alpha)})} \quad (5.64)$$



**FIG. 5.5**  
Comparison of uniform and compressed grids. (From Refs. 30 and 31.)

where

$$c = \log \frac{\beta_y + 1}{\beta_y - 1}$$

In Eq. (5.64),  $\beta_y$  and  $\alpha$  are appropriate constants and are different for the two sections identified above. The algebraic transformations given above result in the grid stretching shown in Fig. 5.5. Note in Fig. 5.5 that the blunt base itself has no active grid points inside it, for the obvious reason that no flow exists inside the solid base. The grid generation formulas given by Eqs. (5.61) to (5.64) are shown here strictly as an example of a more sophisticated stretched grid. This author is not necessarily recommending them above all others; the choice of a particular stretched grid is up to you as deemed most appropriate for your particular problem. Feel free to use whatever artistic license you feel comfortable with.

Referring to our chapter road map in Fig. 5.3, we have just finished the first item under grid generation, namely, stretched grids. We now move on to the next item, the all-important concept of boundary-fitted coordinate systems in general. In this context, it should be noted that the grids shown in Figs. 5.4 and 5.5 are effectively boundary-fitted coordinate systems in that the solid surfaces are coordinate lines in the grid. However, this is because the physical geometry of the flat plate (Fig. 5.4) and the blunt base (Fig. 5.5) conveniently fit into an already rectangular-configured grid. The next section treats the more general case of *curved* boundary surfaces, which obviously do not fit a rectangular grid in the physical plane.

## 5.7 BOUNDARY-FITTED COORDINATE SYSTEMS: ELLIPTIC GRID GENERATION

To introduce this section, let us examine a boundary-fitted coordinate system within the context of a straightforward problem. Consider the flow through the divergent duct shown in Fig. 5.6a. Curve *de* is the upper wall of the duct, and line *fg* is the centerline. For this flow, a simple rectangular grid in the physical plane is not appropriate, for the same reasons discussed in Sec. 5.1. Instead, we draw the curvilinear grid in Fig. 5.6a which allows both the upper boundary *de* and the centerline *fg* to be coordinate lines, exactly fitting these boundaries. In turn, the curvilinear grid in Fig. 5.6a must be transformed to a rectangular grid in the computational plane, Fig. 5.6b. This can be accomplished as follows. Let  $y_s = f(x)$  be the ordinate of the upper surface *de* in Fig. 5.6a. Then the following transformation will result in a rectangular grid in  $(\xi, \eta)$  space:

$$\xi = x \quad (5.65)$$

$$\eta = \frac{y}{y_s} \quad \text{where } y_s = f(x) \quad (5.66)$$

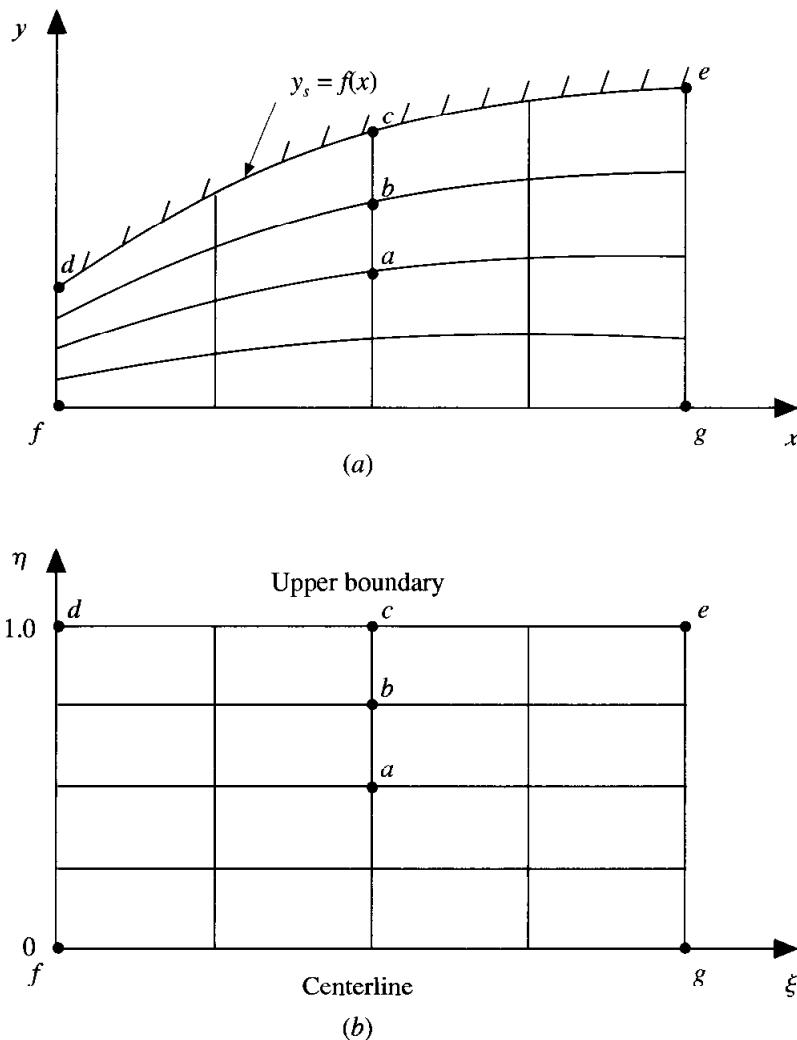
For example, consider point *d* in the physical plane, where  $y = y_d = y_s(x_d)$ . When this coordinate is substituted into Eq. (5.66), we have

$$\eta_d = \frac{y_d}{y_s} = \frac{y_s(x_d)}{y_s(x_d)} = 1$$

Hence, in the computational plane, point *d* is located along  $\eta = \eta_d = 1$ . Now move to point *c* in the physical plane, where  $y = y_c = y_s(x_c)$ . The ordinate of point *c* is obviously different from that at point *d*; that is,  $y_c > y_d$ . However, when  $y_c$  is substituted into Eq. (5.66), we have

$$\eta_c = \frac{y_c}{y_s} = \frac{y_s(x_c)}{y_s(x_c)} = 1$$

Hence, in the computational plane, point *c* is located along  $\eta = \eta_c = 1$ . This is the same  $\eta$  coordinate as point *d* in the computational plane. From the above discussion, it is clear that *all* the points along the curved upper boundary in the physical plane fall, via the transformation given by Eq. (5.66), along the horizontal line  $\eta = 1$  in

**FIG. 5.6**

A simple boundary-fitted coordinate system. (a) Physical plane; (b) computational plane.

the computational plane. This allows a uniform rectangular grid in the computational plane. Such is the essence of curvilinear boundary-fitted coordinate systems in the physical plane and their transformation to a uniform rectangular grid in the computational plane.

#### GUIDEPOST

The following discussion on elliptic grid generation, as well as the treatment of adaptive grids in Sec. 5.8, represents very important aspects of modern grid generation in CFD. This author strongly encourages you to study this material, at least from the point of view of understanding the basic ideas. However, because of the lack of sophistication, the applications in Part III will not deal with these ideas. Therefore, if you are looking for a shortcut at this

stage, the following guidepost is suggested.

Go directly to Sec. 5.9.

The above is a simple example of a boundary-fitted coordinate system. A more sophisticated example is shown in Fig. 5.7, which is an elaboration of the case illustrated in Fig. 5.2. Consider the airfoil shape given in Fig. 5.7a. A curvilinear system is wrapped around the airfoil, where one coordinate line  $\eta = \eta_1 = \text{constant}$  is on the airfoil surface. This is the inner boundary of the grid, designated by  $\Gamma_1$  in both the physical and computational planes in Fig. 5.7. The outer boundary of the grid is labeled  $\Gamma_2$  in Fig. 5.7 and is given by  $\eta = \eta_2 = \text{constant}$ . The shape and location of the inner boundary  $\Gamma_1$  is fixed by the airfoil shape on which it is placed. The shape and location of the outer boundary  $\Gamma_2$  is somewhat arbitrary—it is whatever you choose to draw. Examining this grid, we see that it clearly fits the boundary, and hence it is a *boundary-fitted coordinate system*. The lines which fan out from the inner boundary  $\Gamma_1$  and which intersect the outer boundary  $\Gamma_2$  are lines of constant  $\xi$ , such as line  $ef$  for which  $\xi = \xi_1 = \text{constant}$ . The value of the constant is also your choice. That is, for each of the  $\xi = \text{constant}$  curves, you designate a numerical value for  $\xi$ . For example, along curve  $ef$  you might designate  $\xi = 0.1$ . Along curve  $gh$  you might designate  $\xi = 0.2$ , and so forth. Also note that in Fig. 5.7a the lines of constant  $\eta$  totally enclose the airfoil, much like elongated circles; such a grid is called an *O-type grid* for airfoils. Another related curvilinear grid can have the  $\eta = \text{constant}$  lines trailing downstream to the right, *not* totally enclosing the airfoil (except on the inner boundary  $\Gamma_1$ ). Such a grid is called a *C-type grid*. We will see an example of a C-type grid shortly.

*Question:* What transformation will cast the curvilinear grid in Fig. 5.7a into a uniform grid in the computational plane as sketched in Fig. 5.7b? To answer this question, imagine that the curvilinear grid in the physical plane is drawn on top of a piece of graph paper ruled in cartesian  $(x, y)$  coordinates. Therefore, along the inner boundary  $\Gamma_1$ , the physical coordinates are known:

$$(x, y) \text{ known along } \Gamma_1$$

That is, for any given point on  $\Gamma_1$ , there is a set of two known numbers, namely, the  $x$  and  $y$  coordinates of that point. Similarly, the physical  $(x, y)$  coordinates of the outer boundary  $\Gamma_2$  are also known, because  $\Gamma_2$  is simply a rather arbitrarily drawn loop around the airfoil. Once this loop  $\Gamma_2$  is specified, then the physical  $(x, y)$  coordinates along it are known:

$$(x, y) \text{ known along } \Gamma_2$$

This hints of a boundary-value problem where the boundary conditions (namely, the values of  $x$  and  $y$ ) are known *everywhere* along the boundary. Recall from Sec. 3.4.3 that the solution of elliptic partial differential equations requires the specification of the boundary conditions *everywhere* along a boundary enclosing the domain. Therefore, let us consider the transformation in Fig. 5.7 to be defined by an *elliptic partial differential equation* [in contrast to the algebraic relations used in the case of the stretched grids, namely, Eqs. (5.51a) and (5.51b), and in the case of the simple

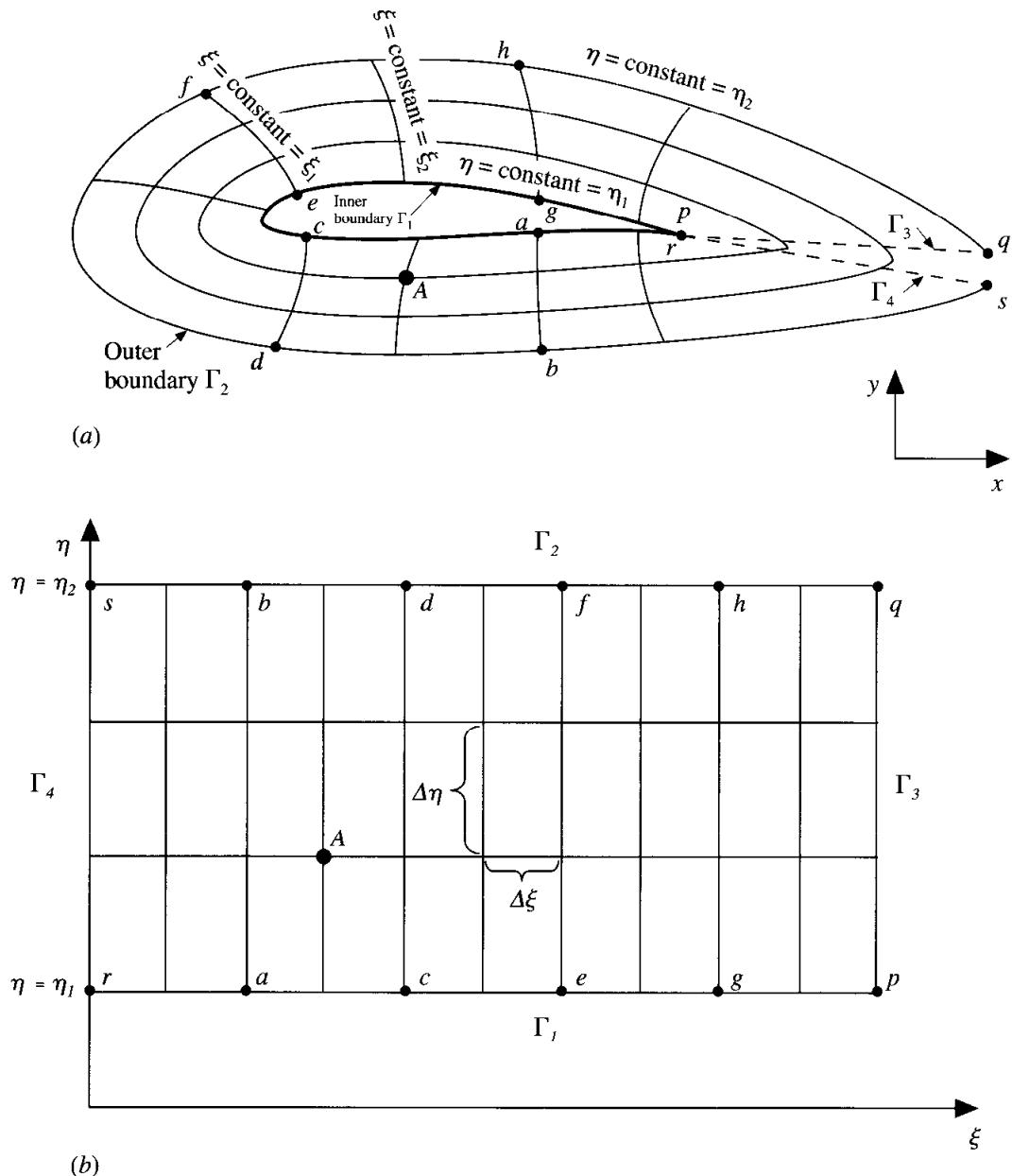


FIG. 5.7

Schematic of an elliptically generated, boundary-fitted grid. (a) Physical plane; (b) computational plane.

contoured duct in Fig. 5.6, namely, Eqs. (5.65) and (5.66)]. One of the simplest elliptic equations is Laplace's equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \xi}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad (5.67)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad (5.68)$$

In Eqs. (5.67) and (5.68),  $\xi$  and  $\eta$  are dependent variables and  $x$  and  $y$  are dependent variables. Let us switch these roles and write the inverse, where  $x$  and  $y$  become the dependent variables. The result is

$$\alpha \frac{\partial^2 x}{\partial \xi^2} - 2\beta \frac{\partial^2 x}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} + \gamma \frac{\partial^2 x}{\partial \eta^2} = 0 \quad (5.69)$$

and

$$\alpha \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial \xi^2} - 2\beta \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} + \gamma \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial \eta^2} = 0 \quad (5.70)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha &= \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \right)^2 \\ \beta &= \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} \right) + \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \right) \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} \right) \\ \gamma &= \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \right)^2\end{aligned}$$

Equations (5.69) and (5.70) are elliptic partial differential equations with  $x, y$  as dependent variables and  $\xi, \eta$  as independent variables. Return to Fig. 5.7; a solution of Eqs. (5.69) and (5.70) allows the calculation of the  $(x, y)$  coordinates of grid points in the physical plane as a function of the  $(\xi, \eta)$  location of the same grid points in the computational plane. However, for a properly posed problem dealing with elliptic equations, we need to specify boundary conditions along the *entire* boundary of the domain, as stated in Sec. 3.4.3. Consider as our domain the computational plane shown in Fig. 5.7b, bounded above and below by  $\Gamma_2$  and  $\Gamma_1$ , respectively, and on the side by  $\Gamma_3$  and  $\Gamma_4$ . To this point in our discussion, we have specified the values of  $x$  and  $y$  along the boundaries  $\Gamma_1$  and  $\Gamma_2$  only; we need also to have some boundary conditions given along  $\Gamma_3$  and  $\Gamma_4$  to have a properly posed problem. To accomplish this, return to the physical plane in Fig. 5.7a. Imagine that we go to the extreme right of the O grid shown there, take a razor blade, and make a “cut” to the trailing edge of the airfoil. This cut now introduces two additional boundaries, namely, the curves  $qp$  and  $sr$ , denoted by  $\Gamma_3$  and  $\Gamma_4$ , respectively. In Fig. 5.7a, the curves  $qp$  and  $sr$  are shown slightly separated; this is for clarity only. In reality,  $qp$  and  $sr$  are the *same* curve in the  $xy$  plane;  $qp$  simply denotes the upper surface of the cut and  $sr$  denotes the lower surface, but they lie on top of each other. In the physical plane, the points  $q$  and  $s$  lie on top of each other, and the points  $p$  and  $r$  also lie on top of each other; indeed, the entirety of  $\Gamma_3$  lies on top of  $\Gamma_4$ . However, this is not the case in the  $\xi\eta$  plane shown in Fig. 5.7b. Here,  $\Gamma_3$  and  $\Gamma_4$  are totally separated and form the right and left boundaries, respectively, of the domain in the computational space. It is almost as if the O grid in the physical plane, after the cut is made, is unwrapped, with  $\Gamma_4$  being swung below and out to the left. In the computational plane,  $q$  and  $s$  are separate grid points and  $r$  and  $p$  are separate grid points. Return for a moment to the physical plane. The cut has been made rather arbitrarily, but once we make it, then we know the  $(x, y)$  coordinates along the cut.

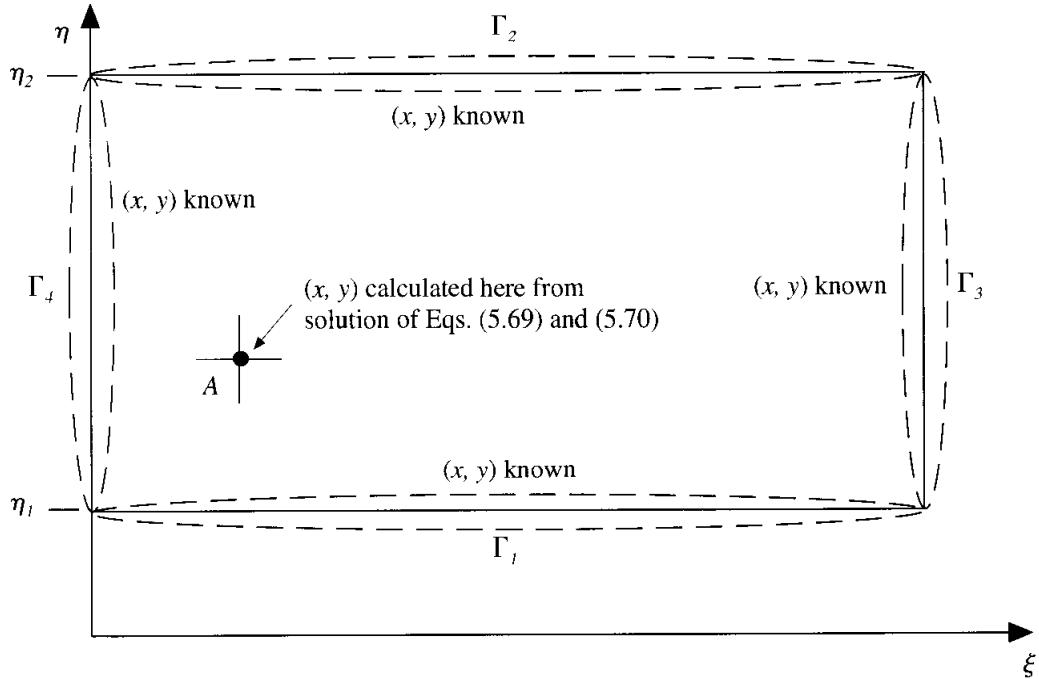
That means we now have values of  $x$  and  $y$  specified along  $\Gamma_3$  and  $\Gamma_4$  in Fig. 5.7b. Reviewing the relationship between the physical and computational planes, we can state the following. The airfoil surface in the physical plane, curve *pgecar*, becomes the lower straight line denoted by  $\Gamma_1$  in the computational plane. Similarly, the outer boundary in the physical plane, curve *qhfdb*s, becomes the upper straight line denoted by  $\Gamma_2$  in the computational plane. The left and right sides of the rectangle in the computational plane are formed from the cut in the physical plane; the left side is line *rs* denoted by  $\Gamma_4$  in Fig. 5.7b, and the right side is line *qp* denoted by  $\Gamma_3$  in Fig. 5.7b.

The computational plane is sketched again in Fig. 5.8, just to emphasize what is happening. Here we emphasize that values of  $(x, y)$  are now *known along all four boundaries*  $\Gamma_1$ ,  $\Gamma_2$ ,  $\Gamma_3$ , and  $\Gamma_4$ . This is the essence of a properly posed boundary-value problem for the solution of elliptic partial differential equations. In turn, Eqs. (5.69) and (5.70) are such elliptic equations. For each grid point *inside* the domain shown in Fig. 5.7b, these equations can be solved numerically, along with the specified boundary values of  $(x, y)$  along  $\Gamma_1$ ,  $\Gamma_2$ ,  $\Gamma_3$  and  $\Gamma_4$ , to give the corresponding  $(x, y)$  values of that same grid point in the physical plane. For example, consider the internal grid point labeled *A* in Fig. 5.8; this corresponds to the point labeled *A* in both the physical and computational planes in Fig. 5.7. At point *A* in the computational plane, Eqs. (5.69) and (5.70) are solved for its  $(x, y)$  coordinates. *This now locates point A in the physical plane.* In turn, for *all* the uniformly spaced grid points in the  $\xi\eta$  plane, the solution of Eqs. (5.69) and (5.70) now locates these same points in a nonuniform manner in the  $xy$  plane. That is, a given grid point  $(\xi_i, \eta_j)$  in the computational plane corresponds to the *calculated* grid point  $(x_i, y_j)$  in physical space. The solution of Eqs. (5.69) and (5.70) is carried out by an appropriate finite-difference solution for elliptic equations; for example, relaxation techniques are popular for such equations. Because this transformation is being carried out via the solution of a system of elliptic partial differential equations, it is called *elliptic grid generation*.

Note that the above transformation, using an elliptic partial differential equation to generate the grid, does *not* involve closed-form analytic expressions; rather, it produces a set of *numbers* which locate a grid point  $(x_i, y_j)$  in physical space which corresponds to a given grid point  $(\xi_i, \eta_j)$  in computational space. In turn, the metrics in the governing flow equations (which are solved in the computational plane), such as  $\partial\xi/\partial x$ ,  $\partial\eta/\partial y$ , are obtained from finite differences; central differences are frequently used for this purpose. For example, at any given grid point located at  $(i, j)$  in both the physical and computational planes, we can write for the metric at that point

$$\left( \frac{\partial\xi}{\partial x} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{\xi_{i+1,j} - \xi_{i-1,j}}{x_{i+1,j} - x_{i-1,j}}$$

and so forth. In turn, these values of the metrics are fed directly into the transformed governing flow equations that are being solved in the transformed plane, i.e., in the uniform grid in the  $\xi\eta$  plane, thus allowing the flow field around the airfoil to be obtained.

**FIG. 5.8**

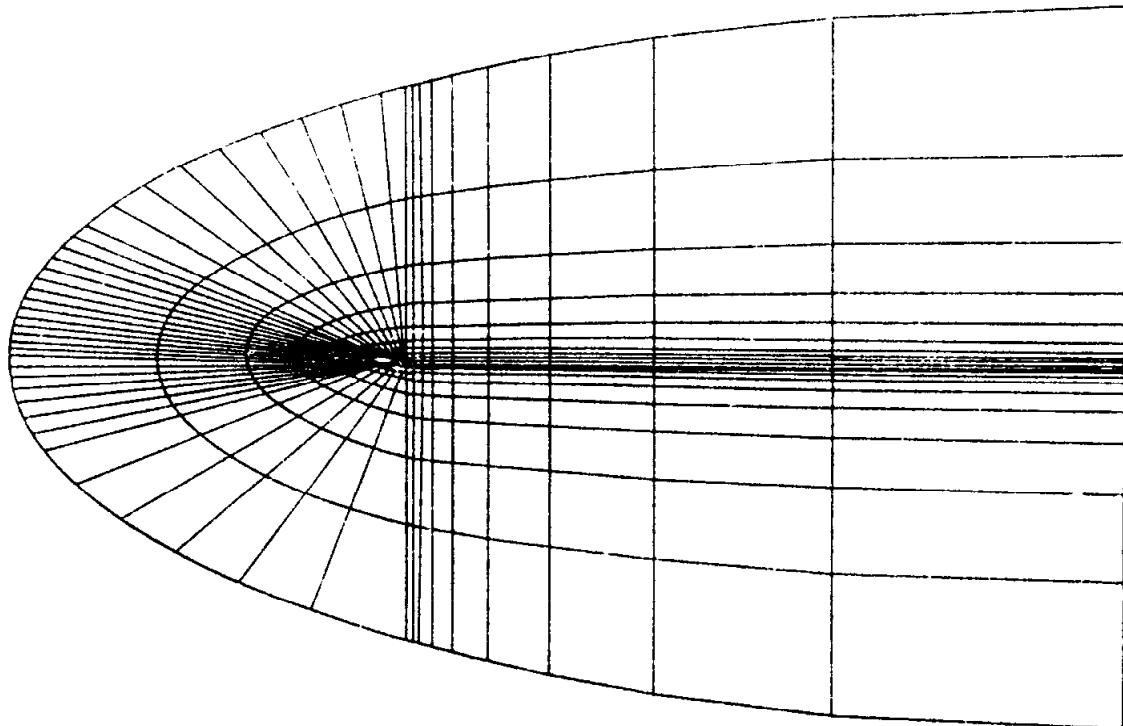
Computational plane, illustrating the boundary conditions and an internal point.

Once again, it is important to keep in mind what we are doing here. Equations (5.69) and (5.70) have *nothing* to do with the physics of the flow field. They are simply elliptic partial differential equations which we have chosen to relate  $\xi$  and  $\eta$  to  $x$  and  $y$  and hence constitute a *transformation* (a one-to-one correspondence of grid points) from the physical plane to the computational plane. Because this transformation is governed by elliptic equations, it is an example of a general class of grid generation called *elliptic grid generation*, as stated earlier. Such elliptic grid generation was first used on a practical basis by Joe Thompson at Mississippi State University, and is described in detail in the pioneering article given in Ref. 34. This reference gives a great deal more detail, as well as more generalization, than presented in the present section; it is highly recommended that you examine this and other references before embarking on any elliptic grid generation of your own. The purpose of the present section is to help you understand the basic ideas.

The curvilinear, boundary-fitted coordinate system shown in Fig. 5.7a is illustrated in a qualitative sense in that figure for purposes of instruction. An actual grid generated about an airfoil using the above elliptic grid generation approach is shown in Fig. 5.9, which is a computer graphic taken from Ref. 6. Using Thompson's grid generation scheme (Ref. 34), Kothari and the present author (Ref. 6) have generated a boundary-fitted coordinate system around a Miley airfoil. (The Miley airfoil is an airfoil specially designed for low Reynolds number applications by Stan Miley at Mississippi State University.) In Fig. 5.9, the white speck in the middle of the figure is the airfoil, and the grid spreads away from the

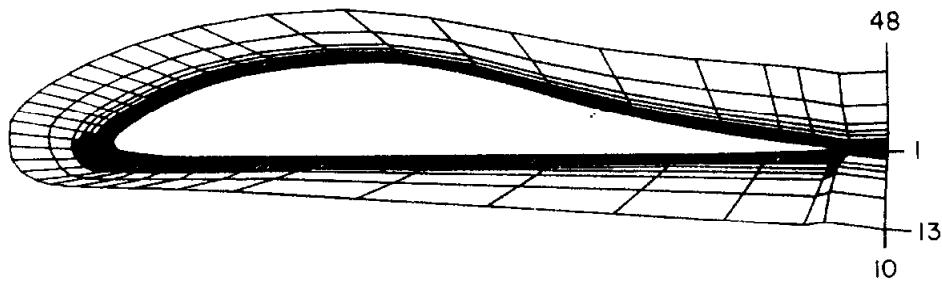
airfoil in all directions. In Ref. 6, low Reynolds number flows over airfoils were calculated by means of a time-marching finite-difference solution of the compressible Navier-Stokes equations. The free stream is subsonic; hence, the outer boundary must be placed far away from the airfoil because of the far-reaching propagation of disturbances in a subsonic flow. A detail of the grid in the near vicinity of the airfoil is shown in Fig. 5.10. Note from both Figs. 5.9 and 5.10 that the grid is a C-type grid in contrast to the O-type grid sketched in Fig. 5.7. The black areas in Figs. 5.9 and 5.10 are densely packed grid points that are not resolved by the computer graphics picture. The grid shown in Figs. 5.9 and 5.10 is precisely that used to obtain some of the low Reynolds number airfoil results discussed in Sec. 1.2, and in particular the results shown in Fig. 1.4. Also, Fig. 1.14 is an excellent example of a boundary-fitted grid wrapped outside *and* inside a gas turbine engine.

We end this section by emphasizing again that the elliptic grid generation, with its solution of elliptic partial differential equations to obtain the internal grid points, is *completely separate* from the finite-difference solution of the governing equations. The grid is generated first, before any solution of the governing equations is attempted. The use of Laplace's equation [Eqs. (5.67) and (5.68)] to obtain this



**FIG. 5.9**

Elliptically generated grid wrapped around a Miley airfoil, from the calculations by Kothari et al. The small, white speck at the focus of the grid is the airfoil. This reflects the necessity to place the far-field boundary a large distance from the body for a numerical solution of a subsonic flow.

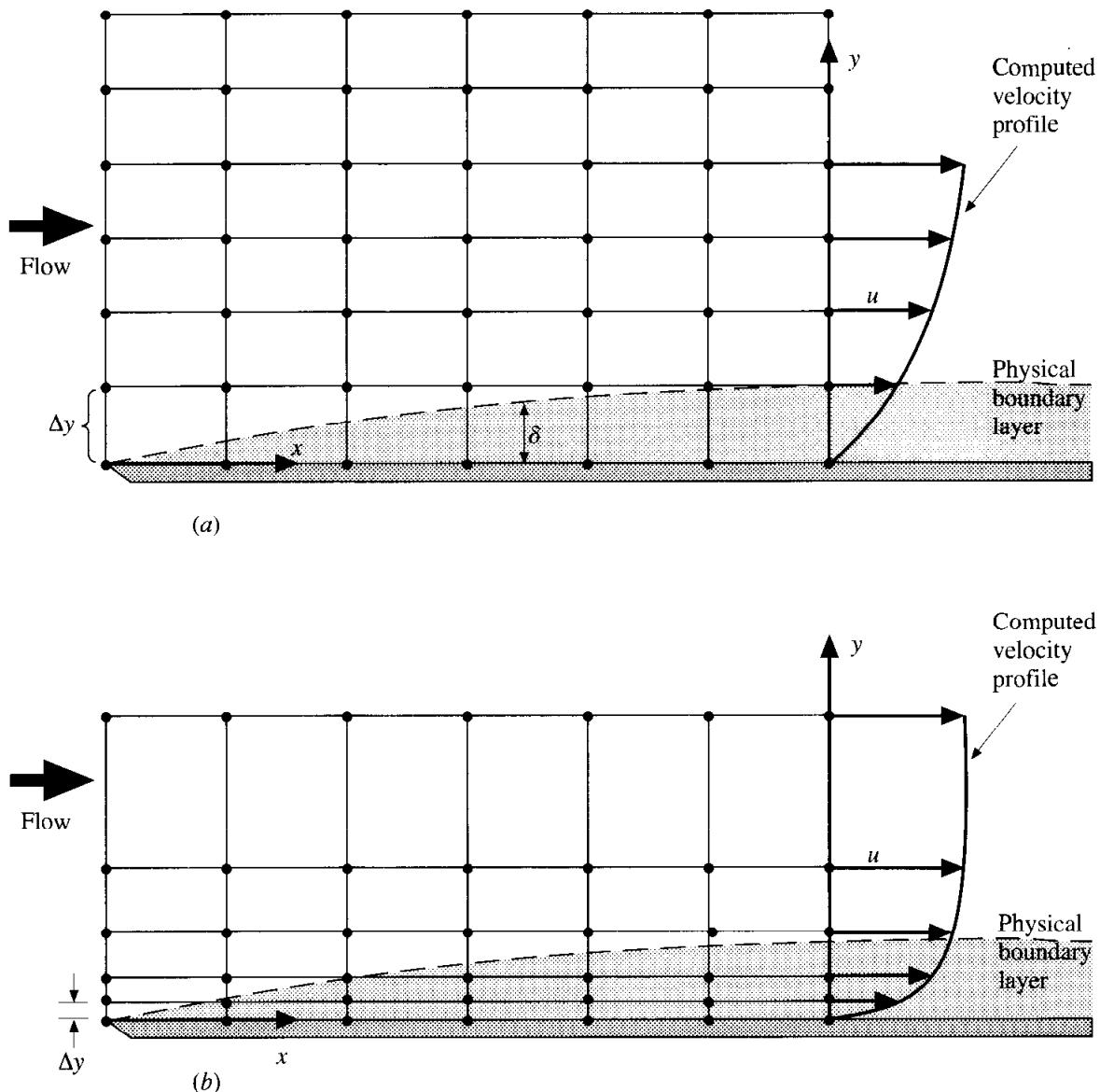
**FIG. 5.10**

A small, detailed section of the boundary-fitted grid of Fig. 5.9, in the near vicinity of the airfoil.

grid has nothing to do whatsoever with the physical aspects of the actual flow field. Here, Laplace's equation is simply used to generate the grid *only*.

## 5.8 ADAPTIVE GRIDS

The concept of a stretched grid as outlined in Sec. 5.6 is motivated by the desire to cluster a large number of closely spaced grid points in those regions of the flow where large gradients in the flow-field properties exist, hence improving the numerical accuracy of a given CFD calculation. This motivation is driven by more than just trying to minimize the truncation error with closely spaced points; it is also a matter of simply having enough grid points to properly capture the physics of the flow. A qualitative example of this is the viscous flow over a flat plate, sketched in Fig. 5.11. In the real physical flow, there will be a boundary layer that grows thicker with increasing downstream distance along the plate. Let  $x$  be the distance along the plate measured from the leading edge. The local thickness of the boundary layer is  $\delta$ , where  $\delta = \delta(x)$ . Consider the grid shown in Fig. 5.11a; here we see a coarse grid where not a single grid point is placed in the real boundary layer. That is,  $\Delta y > \delta$  for the first row of grid points above the plate. When a numerical calculation is made on this grid, and the no-slip condition of  $u = 0$  is applied at the wall, a velocity profile is obtained like that sketched at the right of Fig. 5.11a. Some type of profile will be obtained, with  $u$  increasing in the  $y$  direction; it will be a boundary-layer-like profile but indicating a thickness far in excess of the real boundary-layer thickness. In contrast, consider the grid shown in Fig. 5.11b; this is also a coarse grid, with an equal number of points in the  $y$  direction as used in Fig. 5.11a. However, in Fig. 5.11b the grid is compressed such that at least some points are in the real boundary layer. That is,  $\Delta y < \delta$  for the first row of grid points above the plate. When a numerical calculation is made on this grid, the resulting velocity profile shown at the right of Fig. 5.11b will be a more realistic representation of the real boundary layer. In essence, the coarse uniform grid shown in Fig. 5.11a misses the physical boundary layer altogether; the viscouslike velocity profile shown at the right is simply due to the application of the no-slip condition at the wall. In contrast,

**FIG. 5.11**

Two sketches demonstrating the need to concentrate a number of grid points in the boundary layer. (a) No grid points in the boundary layer; (b) at least some points in the boundary layer.

the coarse but compressed grid shown in Fig. 5.11b at least captures some of the features of the real boundary layer.

Obviously, the purpose of the compressed (or stretched) grid is to put grid points in the flow field where the action is and to remove grid points from those regions where there is little or no action. However, as discussed in Sec. 5.6, a stretched grid is an algebraically generated grid which is set up *before* the solution of the flow is calculated. Moreover, once it is set up, it is locked in place for the entire flow-field solution. However, how do you know in advance where the major action is going to occur in the flow without actually solving the problem first? You may set up a stretched grid in advance, but you may miss completely the region

where the real action is; i.e., you may not be so lucky as to set up your more closely spaced points so that they coincide with the regions of large gradients in the flow. Therein lies the motivation for an *adaptive grid*, which is the subject of this section.

An adaptive grid is a grid network that *automatically* clusters grid points in regions of high flow-field gradients; it uses the solution of the flow-field properties to locate the grid points in the physical plane. An adaptive grid can be visualized as one which evolves in steps of time in conjunction with a time-dependent solution of the governing flow-field equations, which computes the flow-field variables in steps of time. During the course of the solution, the grid points in the physical plane *move* in such a fashion to “adapt” to regions of large flow-field gradients as these gradients evolve with time. Hence, the actual grid points in the physical plane are constantly in motion during the solution of the flow field and become stationary only when the flow solution approaches a steady state. Therefore, unlike the stretched grid discussed in Sec. 5.6 and the elliptic grid generation discussed in Sec. 5.7, where the generation of the grid is completely separate from the flow-field solution, an adaptive grid is intimately linked to the flow-field solution and changes as the flow field changes. The hoped-for advantages of an adaptive grid are associated with the grid points being automatically clustered in regions where the “action” is occurring. These advantages are (1) increased accuracy for a fixed number of grid points or (2) for a given accuracy, fewer grid points are needed. Adaptive grids are still very new in CFD, and whether or not these advantages are always achieved is not well established.

An example of a simple adaptive grid is that used by Corda (Ref. 35) for the solution of viscous supersonic flow over a rearward-facing step. Here, the transformation is expressed in the form

$$\Delta x = \frac{B \Delta \xi}{1 + b(\partial g / \partial x)} \quad (5.71)$$

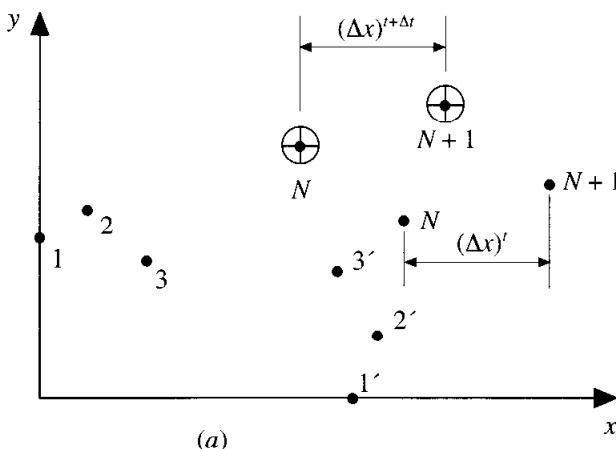
$$\text{and} \quad \Delta y = \frac{C \Delta \eta}{1 + c(\partial g / \partial y)} \quad (5.72)$$

where  $g$  is a primitive flow-field variable, such as  $p$ ,  $\rho$ , or  $T$ . If  $g = p$ , then Eqs. (5.71) and (5.72) cluster the grid points in regions of large pressure gradients; if  $g = T$ , the grid points cluster in regions of large temperature gradients; and so forth. In Eqs. (5.71) and (5.72),  $\Delta\xi$  and  $\Delta\eta$  are fixed, uniform grid spacings in the computational  $\xi\eta$  plane,  $b$  and  $c$  are constants chosen to increase or decrease the effect of the gradient in changing the grid spacing in the physical plane,  $B$  and  $C$  are scale factors, and  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta y$  are the new grid spacing in the physical plane. Because  $\partial g / \partial x$  and  $\partial g / \partial y$  are changing with time during a time-dependent solution of the flow field, then clearly  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta y$  change with time; i.e., the grid points move in the physical space. Clearly, in regions of the flow where  $\partial g / \partial x$  and  $\partial g / \partial y$  are large, Eqs. (5.71) and (5.72) yield small values of  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta y$  for a given  $\Delta\xi$  and  $\Delta\eta$ ; this is the mechanism which clusters the grid points. This process is illustrated in Fig. 5.12, where the physical plane is shown in part (a) and the computational plane in part

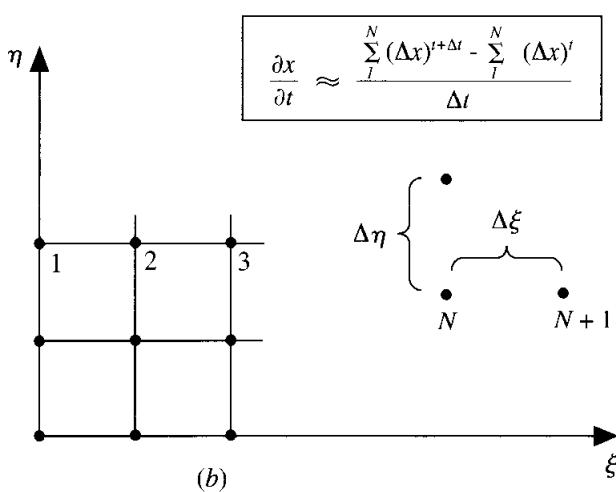
(b). Consider the specific grid point labeled  $N$  in Fig. 5.12b. This point is *fixed* in the  $\xi\eta$  space; it does not move with time. So is its adjacent grid point, labeled  $N + 1$ . As usual, the distance between grid point  $N$  and  $N + 1$  is  $\Delta\xi$ . Now examine the corresponding grid points in the physical plane, Fig. 5.12a. The location of points  $N$  and  $N + 1$  in the physical plane at time level  $t$  are denoted by the black dots. The distance between these two points in the  $x$  direction is  $(\Delta x)^t$ , where the superscript  $t$  denotes the time level  $t$ . The  $x$  location of point  $N$  at time level  $t$ , denoted by  $x_N^t$ , depends on the various values of  $\Delta x$  between points 1 and 2, points 2 and 3, etc. That is,

$$x_N^t = \sum_1^N (\Delta x)_i^t \quad (5.73)$$

Now consider the situation at the next time level,  $t + \Delta t$ . Because  $\partial g/\partial x$  will in general change from one time level to the next during the time-marching process,



(a)



(b)

**FIG. 5.12**

Schematic of the mechanics of an adaptive grid. (a) Physical plane; (b) computational plane.

then Eq. (5.71) yields a new value of  $\Delta x$ , denoted by  $(\Delta x)^{t+\Delta t}$  at time level  $t + \Delta t$ . Hence, the  $x$  location of point  $N$  shifts to a new value at time  $t + \Delta t$ , denoted by  $x_N^{t+\Delta t}$ . Of course, because of the simultaneous application of Eq. (5.72), the  $y$  location of point  $N$  shifts also. The new locations of points  $N$  and  $N + 1$  at time level  $t + \Delta t$  are shown by crossmarks in Fig. 5.12a; the new value of  $\Delta x$ , namely,  $(\Delta x)^{t+\Delta t}$ , is also shown. The new  $x$  location of point  $N$  at time level  $t + \Delta t$  is given by

$$x_N^{t+\Delta t} = \sum_1^N (\Delta x)_i^{t+\Delta t} \quad (5.74)$$

Equations analogous to (5.73) and (5.74) can be written for the  $y$  location.

You are reminded again that, in dealing with an adaptive grid, the computational plane consists of fixed points in the  $\xi\eta$  space; these points are fixed in time; i.e., they do *not* move in the computational space. Moreover,  $\Delta\xi$  is uniform and  $\Delta\eta$  is uniform. Hence, the computational plane is the same as we have discussed in previous sections. The governing flow equations are solved in the computational plane, where the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $t$  derivatives are transformed according to Eqs. (5.2), (5.3), and (5.5). In particular, examine the transformation given by Eq. (5.5) for the time derivative. In the case of stretched or boundary-fitted grids as discussed in Secs. 5.4 and 5.5, respectively, the metrics  $\partial\xi/\partial t$  and  $\partial\eta/\partial t$  were zero, and Eq. (5.5) yields  $\partial/\partial t = \partial/\partial\tau$ . However, for an adaptive grid,

$$\frac{\partial\xi}{\partial t} \equiv \left( \frac{\partial\xi}{\partial t} \right)_{x,y}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial\eta}{\partial t} \equiv \left( \frac{\partial\eta}{\partial t} \right)_{x,y}$$

are finite. Why? Because, although the grid points are fixed in the computational plane, the grid points in the physical plane are moving with time. The physical meaning of  $(\partial\xi/\partial t)_{x,y}$  is the time rate of change of  $\xi$  at a *fixed* ( $x, y$ ) location in the physical plane. Similarly, the physical meaning of  $(\partial\eta/\partial t)_{x,y}$  is the time rate of change of  $\eta$  at a *fixed* ( $x, y$ ) location in the physical plane. Imagine that you have your eyes locked to a fixed ( $x, y$ ) location in the physical plane. As a function of time, the values of  $\xi$  and  $\eta$  associated with this *fixed* ( $x, y$ ) location will change. This is why  $\partial\xi/\partial t$  and  $\partial\eta/\partial t$  are finite. In turn, when dealing with the transformed flow equations in the computational plane, all three terms on the right-hand side of Eq. (5.5) are finite and must be included in the transformed equations. In this fashion, the time metrics  $\partial\xi/\partial t$  and  $\partial\eta/\partial t$  automatically take into account the movement of the adaptive grid during the solution of the governing flow equations.

The values of the time metrics in the form shown in Eq. (5.5) are a bit cumbersome to evaluate; on the other hand, the related time metrics

$$\left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial t} \right)_{\xi,\eta} \quad \text{and} \quad \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial t} \right)_{\xi,\eta}$$

are much easier to evaluate numerically; they stem directly from the forms of the

adaptive grid transformation given by Eqs. (5.71) and (5.72). For example, return to Fig. 5.12. We can represent the time metric  $(\partial x/\partial t)_{\xi, \eta}$  by taking the relative change in the  $x$  locations of points  $N$  and  $N + 1$  and dividing by the time increment  $\Delta t$ . That is,

$$\left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial t}\right)_{\xi, \eta} = \frac{x_N^{t+\Delta t} - x_N^t}{\Delta t} \quad (5.75a)$$

where  $x_N^{t+\Delta t}$  and  $x_N^t$  are given by Eqs. (5.74) and (5.73), respectively. An analogous expression can be written for  $(\partial y/\partial t)_{\xi, \eta}$  as follows:

$$\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}\right)_{\xi, \eta} = \frac{y_M^{t+\Delta t} - y_M^t}{\Delta t} \quad (5.75b)$$

where  $y_M^{t+\Delta t}$  and  $y_M^t$  are given by expressions analogous to Eqs. (5.73) and (5.74), i.e.,

$$y_M^t = \sum_{1'}^M (\Delta y)_i^t$$

and

$$y_M^{t+\Delta t} = \sum_{1'}^M (\Delta y)_i^{t+\Delta t}$$

The meaning of  $M$  is as follows. Examine Fig. 5.12, where we have previously focused on the grid point labeled  $N$ ; here,  $N$  is simply the value of the  $x$  index, namely,  $i = N$ . For the same grid point,  $M$  denotes the value of the corresponding  $y$  index, namely,  $j = M$ . The above summations are taken in the  $y$  direction, summed over points  $1'$ ,  $2'$ ,  $3'$ , etc., as shown in Fig. 5.12a. Since the time metrics  $(\partial x/\partial t)_{\xi, \eta}$  and  $(\partial y/\partial t)_{\xi, \eta}$  are the ones most directly obtained from the transformation given by Eqs. (5.71) and (5.72) and since the derivative transformation given by Eq. (5.5) involves the time metrics  $(\partial \xi/\partial t)_{x, y}$  and  $(\partial \eta/\partial t)_{x, y}$ , we must find the relationship between these two sets of metrics. Let us proceed as follows.

Return to the general inverse transformation given by Eqs. (5.18a) to (5.18c). In particular, examine Eq. (5.18a), repeated below.

$$x = x(\xi, \eta, \tau) \quad (5.18a)$$

Forming the exact differential, we have

$$dx = \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi}\right)_{\eta, \tau} d\xi + \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi, \tau} d\eta + \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \tau}\right)_{\xi, \eta} d\tau \quad (5.76)$$

In Eq. (5.76), the change in  $x$ ,  $dx$ , is expressed in terms of changes in  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\tau$ , namely,  $d\xi$ ,  $d\eta$ , and  $d\tau$ , respectively. If these changes are taking place with respect to time, holding  $x$  and  $y$  constant, Eq. (5.76) can be written as

$$\cancel{\left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial t}\right)}^0_{x, y} = \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi}\right)_{\eta, \tau} \left(\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t}\right)_{x, y} + \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi, \tau} \left(\frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t}\right)_{x, y} + \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \tau}\right)_{\xi, \eta} \cancel{\left(\frac{\partial \tau}{\partial t}\right)}^1_{x, y} \quad (5.77)$$

In Eq. (5.77),  $(\partial x / \partial t)_{x,y}$  is identically zero, because  $x$  is being held constant in this partial derivative. We are also stipulating that the generic Eq. (5.18c), where  $t = t(\tau)$ , is given by  $t = \tau$ . This is why  $(\partial \tau / \partial t)_{x,y} = 1$  in Eq. (5.77). With these values, Eq. (5.77) becomes

$$-\left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \tau}\right)_{\xi,\eta} = \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi}\right)_{\eta,\tau} \left(\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t}\right)_{x,y} + \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi,\tau} \left(\frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t}\right)_{x,y} \quad (5.78)$$

Note that we continue to carry the subscripts on the partial derivatives to avoid any confusion over what variables are held constant. Now consider Eq. (5.18b), repeated below,

$$y = y(\xi, \eta, \tau) \quad (5.18b)$$

Hence

$$dy = \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi}\right)_{\eta,\tau} d\xi + \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi,\tau} d\eta + \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \tau}\right)_{\xi,\eta} d\tau \quad (5.79)$$

Thus, from this result we write

$$\cancel{\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}\right)}^0_{x,y} = \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi}\right)_{\eta,\tau} \left(\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t}\right)_{x,y} + \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi,\tau} \left(\frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t}\right)_{x,y} + \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \tau}\right)_{\xi,\eta} \cancel{\left(\frac{\partial \tau}{\partial t}\right)}^1_{x,y} \quad (5.80)$$

$$\text{or} \quad -\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \tau}\right)_{\xi,\eta} = \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi}\right)_{\eta,\tau} \left(\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t}\right)_{x,y} + \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi,\tau} \left(\frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t}\right)_{x,y} \quad (5.81)$$

Examine Eqs. (5.78) and (5.81); they have in common the metrics  $(\partial \xi / \partial t)_{x,y}$  and  $(\partial \eta / \partial t)_{x,y}$ . Using Cramer's rule, we solve Eqs. (5.78) and (5.81) first for  $(\partial \xi / \partial t)_{x,y}$ .

$$\left(\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t}\right)_{x,y} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} -\left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \tau}\right)_{\xi,\eta} & \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi,\tau} \\ -\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \tau}\right)_{\xi,\eta} & \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi,\tau} \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi}\right)_{\eta,\tau} & \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi,\tau} \\ \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi}\right)_{\eta,\tau} & \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta}\right)_{\xi,\tau} \end{vmatrix}} \quad (5.82)$$

Recognizing that  $\tau = t$ , and that the denominator is the jacobian  $J$ , Eq. (5.82) becomes (dropping subscripts)

$$\frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{J} \left[ -\left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial t}\right) \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta}\right) + \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}\right) \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta}\right) \right] \quad (5.83)$$

In a similar fashion, solving Eqs. (5.78) and (5.81) for  $(\partial\eta/\partial t)_{x,y}$ , we find that

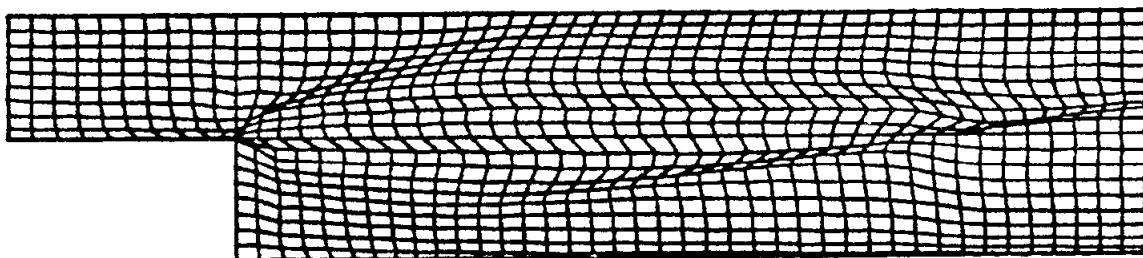
$$\frac{\partial\eta}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{J} \left[ -\left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial t} \right) \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} \right) - \left( \frac{\partial y}{\partial t} \right) \left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} \right) \right] \quad (5.84)$$

Let us recapitulate. For an adaptive grid which is designed to evolve during the course of a time-marching solution, the governing flow equations, when transformed for solution in the computational  $\xi\eta$  plane, must contain all the terms in the time transformation given by Eq. (5.5). We note that the time metrics in Eq. (5.5) are  $\partial\xi/\partial t$  and  $\partial\eta/\partial t$ . These time metrics can be evaluated from Eqs. (5.83) and (5.84), respectively. In turn, in Eqs. (5.83) and (5.84), the terms  $\partial x/\partial t$  and  $\partial y/\partial t$  are calculated via Eqs. (5.75a) and (5.75b), respectively. The spatial metrics  $\partial x/\partial\xi$ ,  $\partial x/\partial\eta$ ,  $\partial y/\partial\xi$ , and  $\partial y/\partial\eta$  which appear in Eqs. (5.83) and (5.84) as well as in the jacobian  $J$  can be replaced by central differences. For example,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial x}{\partial \xi} &= \frac{x_{i+1,j} - x_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta\xi} \\ \frac{\partial x}{\partial \eta} &= \frac{x_{i,j+1} - x_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta\eta} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial \xi} &= \frac{y_{i+1,j} - y_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta\xi} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial \eta} &= \frac{y_{i,j+1} - y_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta\eta}\end{aligned}$$

where, in the above equations,  $i = N$  and  $j = M$ .

An example of an adapted grid for the supersonic flow over a rearward-facing step is given in Fig. 5.13, taken from the work of Corda (Ref. 35). Flow is from left to right. The adapted grid shown in Fig. 5.13 is the final, steady-state grid obtained after the time-marching flow-field solution has reached its steady state at large time. Note that, as the steady state is approached, the time metrics  $\partial\xi/\partial t$ ,  $\partial\eta/\partial t$ ,  $\partial x/\partial t$ , and  $\partial y/\partial t$  all approach zero; i.e., the grid points in the physical  $xy$  plane cease to move. Note in Fig. 5.13 that the grid points cluster around the expansion wave emanating from the top corner of the step and around the reattachment shock wave downstream of the step. It is interesting to note that the adapted grid itself is a type of *flow-field visualization method* that helps to identify the location of waves, shear layers, and other gradients in the flow. Returning to the original adaptive grid transformation



**FIG. 5.13**

Adapted grid for the rearward-facing step problem from Corda.

given by Eqs. (5.71) and (5.72), if  $g = \rho$ , then the grid points in the physical plane cluster in regions of large density gradients—this is the computational analog to a schlieren photograph taken in the laboratory. Note that the grid in Fig. 5.13 takes on the trappings of a type of “CFD schlieren” picture.

As a final note in this section, there are many different approaches for the generation of adaptive grids. The above discussion is just one; it is based on the ideas presented by Dwyer et al. in Ref. 36. Adaptive grids are in a current state of rapid development in modern CFD; you are encouraged to consult the modern literature on this extensive subject before embarking on any serious adaptive grid efforts of your own. The adaptive grid technique described in the present section was chosen for its simplicity, because our interest here is to give you just a feeling for the general idea.

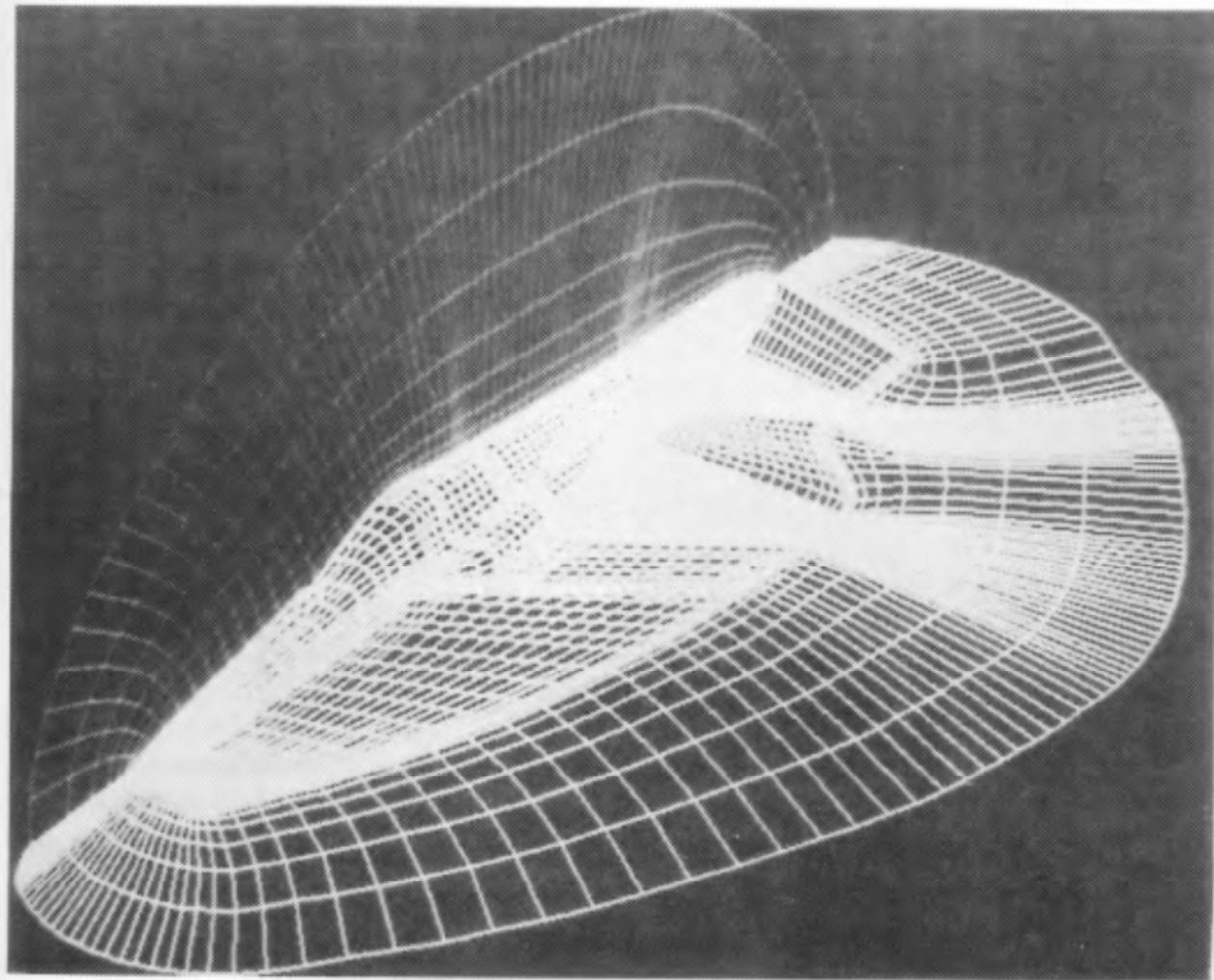
## 5.9 SOME MODERN DEVELOPMENTS IN GRID GENERATION

As stated in Sec. 5.1, grid generation is a very active research and development activity within the general discipline of CFD. In this chapter, we have only introduced some of the basic ideas. However, let us take a quick look at two examples which reflect modern applications of grid generation within the practical world of aerodynamics.

The first example is the grid used to calculate the flow-field results over the Northrop F-20 airplane as presented in Figs. 1.6 and 1.7. Return to Chap. 1 for a moment and examine these figures. They were obtained by means of a numerical solution to the three-dimensional Euler equations, as described in Ref. 9. It is always a major challenge to construct a three-dimensional grid around a complex configuration such as the F-20. For the cases shown in Figs. 1.6 and 1.7, a three-dimensional boundary-fitted coordinate system is chosen with an elliptic grid generation following the ideas presented in Sec. 5.7, combined with an adaptive grid scheme following the ideas presented in Sec. 5.8. Sections of the grid are shown in Fig. 5.14, taken from Ref. 9. Here we see the grid coordinate lines in the surface of the body, the centerline plane, and the plane of the wing.

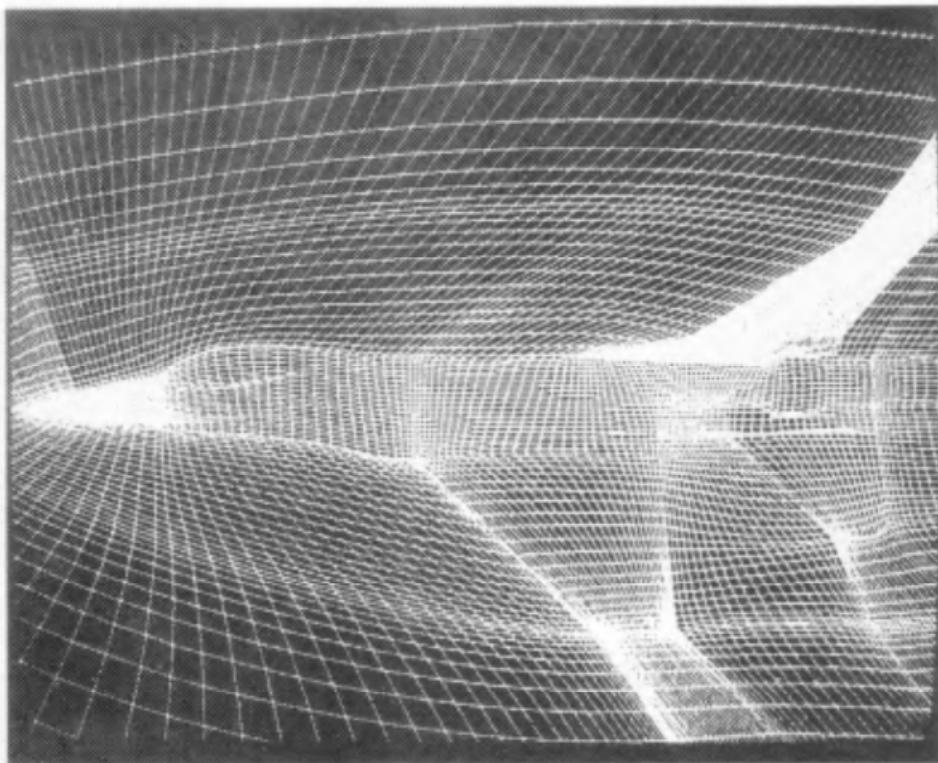
The fuselage is angled diagonally across the figure, with the nose at the lower left. The wing, tail, and rear portion of the fuselage appear solid white, due to the dense clustering of grid points in those regions where the grid has adapted to large flow-field gradients. Figure 5.14 represents a combination of grid generation ideas presented in this chapter, cast in the framework of a modern application of CFD. Figure 5.14 also sheds more light on how the results of Figs. 1.6 and 1.7 were obtained, thus helping to close the loop on some of the introductory discussion in Chap. 1.

A complete airplane is, in general, a complex geometric configuration, which sometimes requires grid generation even more elaborate than the single boundary-fitted grid discussed in Sec. 5.7 and as exemplified by Fig. 5.14. In many practical fluid dynamic applications, modern CFD solutions have employed a grid made up of two or more separate grids, with interfaces between each other. That is, the grid consists of two or more blocks, where each block is a separate grid different from

**FIG. 5.14**

An elliptically generated adaptive grid wrapped around an F-20 airplane configuration. The configuration surface, centerline plane, and wing plane are shown. (From Ref. 9.)

the others. These different blocks cover different zones of the flow field, and hence such grids are frequently called *zonal grids*. An example of a zonal grid is shown in Fig. 5.15, taken from Refs. 37 and 38. Here we see only part of a 20-block grid system for the computation of the flow over an F-16 fighter airplane. We see seven of the upper blocks in Fig. 5.15. The remaining blocks are used to help define the flow over the inlet, etc. One of the major problems encountered in the use of zonal block methods is the proper geometric interfacing across adjacent zones, a proper "connectivity" so that the accuracy of the CFD calculation is not compromised. Furthermore, each block can in principle be generated by a different scheme; i.e., one block might be an algebraic, stretched grid using cartesian coordinates (see Sec. 5.6); an adjacent block might be an algebraic grid using cylindrical coordinates; and yet another adjacent block might be an elliptically generated grid (see Sec. 5.7). This compounds the connectivity problems. A further discussion of these matters is beyond the scope of this book; for more details, see for example, Refs. 37 and 38.

**FIG. 5.15**

A zonal grid wrapped around an F-16 airplane. Surface grid is shown as part of a 20-block grid. (From Refs. 37 and 38. Copyright © 1990, AIAA. Reprinted with permission.)

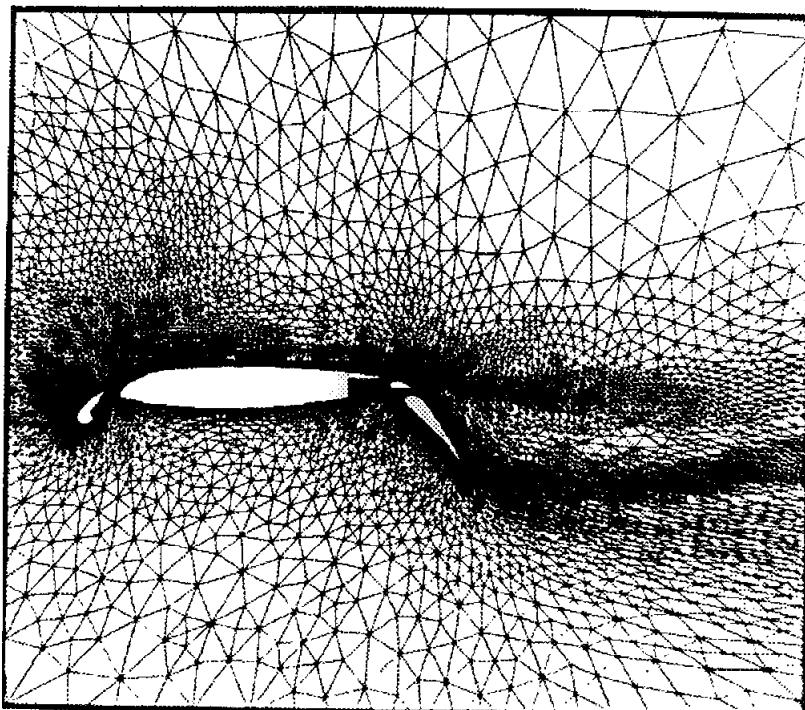
### 5.10 SOME MODERN DEVELOPMENTS IN FINITE-VOLUME MESH GENERATION: UNSTRUCTURED MESHES AND A RETURN TO CARTESIAN MESHES

To this point in Chap. 5, all the grids discussed and displayed have been couched in terms of finite-difference algorithm applications, with the understanding that whatever nonuniform grid exists in the physical space, there exists a transformation which will recast it as a uniform rectangular grid in the computational space. The finite-difference calculations are then made over this uniform grid in the computational space, after which the flow-field results are transferred directly back to the corresponding points in the physical space. Go back and look at some of the nonuniform grids in the physical space, such as Figs. 5.5, 5.9, 5.10, and 5.13 to 5.15. Although they are nonuniform, there is a certain “regularity” to them; the grid lines in physical space pertain to constant coordinate values  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\zeta$  in the transformed space. Moreover, a given family of coordinate lines do not intersect; i.e., lines of constant  $\xi$  do not cross, lines of constant  $\eta$  do not cross, etc. Hence, there is a certain “structure” to all these grids; such grids are called *structured grids*.

Here is another thought. The nonuniform grids you are looking at in physical space can also be visualized as a *mesh* of finite-volume cells. Since the finite-volume method does not demand a uniform, rectangular grid for computations (as

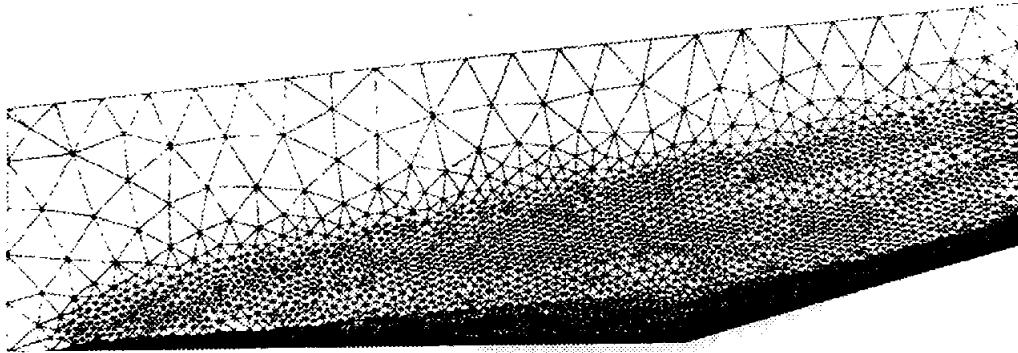
does the finite-difference method), then such finite-volume calculations can be made directly in the physical plane on a nonuniform mesh. No transformations are necessary. Therefore, in the context of a finite-volume method, mesh generation simply involves the construction of the mesh in physical space. (Recall that our treatment of the finite volume method is introduced in this book via Problems 2.2 and 4.7.) Thus, if we wish, we can view Fig. 5.9 (for example) as a picture of a finite-volume *mesh*, on which the finite-volume calculations can be made directly. Moreover, in the same vein as described in the previous paragraph, the mesh represented by Fig. 5.9 is a *structured mesh*.

Here is yet another thought. There is nothing about the finite-volume method that demands a structured mesh; it can be applied to mesh cells of any arbitrary shape. This has given rise to the use of *unstructured meshes*. Perhaps the best way to describe what is meant by an unstructured mesh is to look at some. An unstructured mesh around a multielement airfoil is shown in Fig. 5.16, taken from Ref. 39. Another unstructured mesh for the calculation of the flow over a compression corner is shown in Fig. 5.17, taken from Ref. 40. Clearly, there is no regularity to these meshes. There are no coordinate lines that correspond to a constant  $\xi$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\zeta$ . These grids are totally unstructured. This allows for maximum flexibility in matching mesh cells with the boundary surfaces and for putting cells where you want them. Constructing an unstructured mesh might be viewed in some sense as a work of art—you can shape the mesh cells as you like and put them wherever you want in the physical space. Of course, you have to develop the computer logic to automate the cell generator. Although unstructured meshes have been used for



**FIG. 5.16**

An unstructured mesh around a multielement airfoil. (From Ref. 39. Copyright © 1991, AIAA. Reprinted with permission.)

**FIG. 5.17**

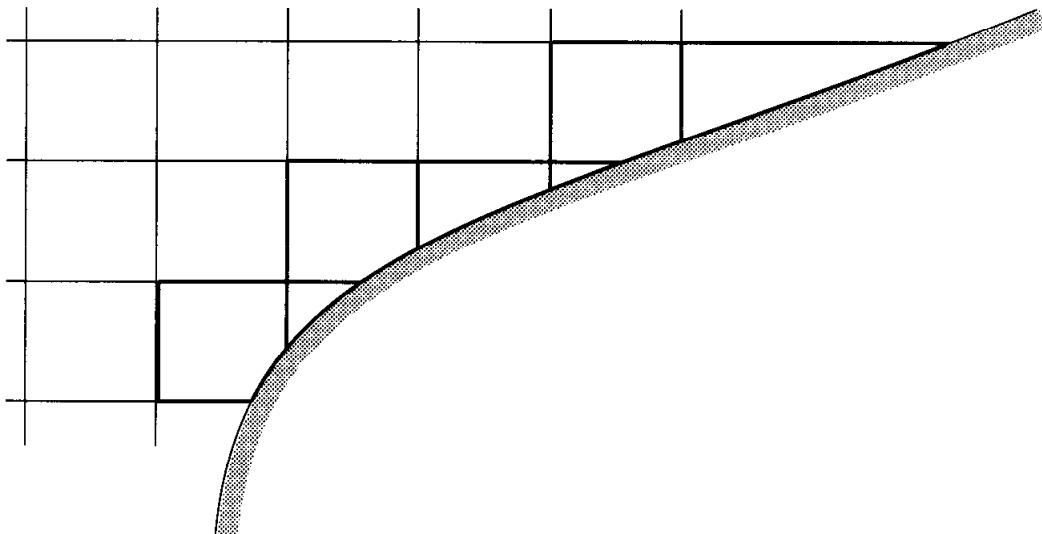
An unstructured mesh around a compression corner. (*From Ref. 40. Copyright © 1991, AIAA. Reprinted with permission.*)

finite-element calculations in structural mechanics for a number of years, they are relatively new to the field of CFD. Indeed, in the field of grid or mesh generation for CFD, unstructured meshes are, at the time of writing, receiving a great deal of attention.

It is somewhat ironic that, at the same time that unstructured meshes have become popular, current advances are also being made in the extreme opposite direction: the use of cartesian meshes with the maximum degree of structure. At the beginning of this chapter, we momentarily considered a cartesian grid, such as shown in Fig. 5.1, and then immediately rejected it for general use because of the difficulty posed by grid points appearing inside the body, as well as the lack of grid points on the boundary surface. However, if we view Fig. 5.1 as a finite-volume mesh, then it takes on a new dimension, so to speak. The mesh cells away from the body can be rectangular, and those cells adjacent to the body can be modified in shape such that one side of each cell is along the body surface. This is shown schematically in Fig. 5.18. A cartesian mesh for the calculation of the flow over an airfoil (including flap deflection) is shown in Fig. 5.19, taken from Ref. 41. The generation of this mesh also incorporates some adaptation following the philosophy discussed in Sec. 5.8. A cartesian mesh around a double ellipsoid (a body shape somewhat like the space shuttle) is shown in Fig. 5.20, also taken from Ref. 41. In this case, the cartesian mesh is for the calculation of supersonic flow over the body, and the mesh adaptive procedure clusters the rectangularlike cells around the bow and canopy shock waves, as clearly seen in Fig. 5.20. Reference 41 represents one of the most recent investigations of cartesian meshes at the time of writing; for more details, consult this reference.

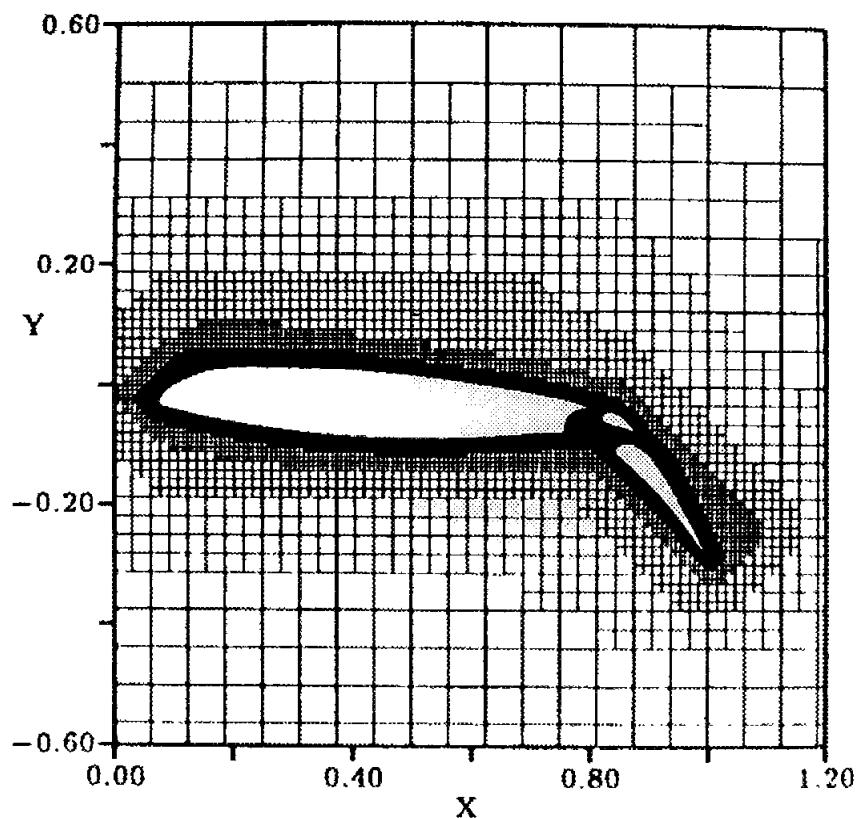
## 5.11 SUMMARY

This ends our general discussion of grid and mesh generation for the numerical computation of fluid-flow problems. Returning to the road map in Fig. 5.3, recall that our presentation has followed three general routes, as reflected by the three

**FIG. 5.18**

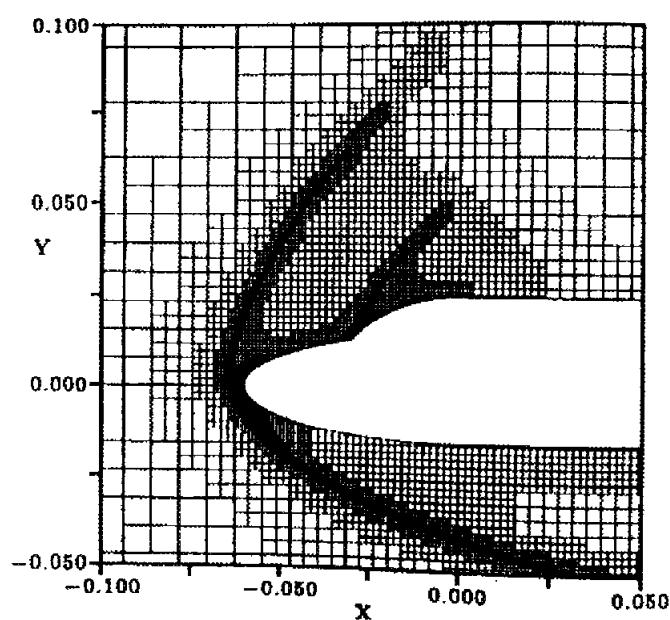
Section of a cartesian mesh near a surface. Those mesh cells adjacent to the surface are highlighted by bold lines; they are modified so that one side of the cell lies along the surface.

vertical columns. Knowing that finite-difference solutions usually require that the computations be made in a transformed plane—the computational plane—the first column dealt with the general aspects of derivative transformations, along with the related aspects of metrics and jacobians. As part of this discussion, we demonstrated that the governing flow equations can be cast in a strong conservation form in the transformed space, analogous to their strong conservation form in the physical space presented in Chap. 2. Moving to the second column in Fig. 5.3, we discussed in some detail the various aspects of grid generation for use in finite-difference solutions, with examples given for stretched grids, elliptically generated boundary-fitted grids, adaptive grids, and zonal grids. Moving to the third column in Fig. 5.3, pertaining to mesh generation for finite-volume calculations, we note that the previously mentioned grids in physical space can also be viewed as finite-volume meshes. This is represented by the connecting lines from the various grid boxes to the main vertical trunk line under mesh generation in Fig. 5.3. However, in addition under the third column, we have the very modern considerations of unstructured meshes and cartesian meshes. The material presented in this chapter, as reflected in Fig. 5.3, is an important element of CFD; if you are uncertain or confused about any aspects represented by the various boxes in Fig. 5.3, make certain to review the relevant sections in this chapter before progressing further.



**FIG. 5.19**

A cartesian mesh for the calculation of the subsonic flow over a multielement airfoil. (*From Ref. 41. Copyright © 1991, AIAA. Reprinted with permission.*)



**FIG. 5.20**

A cartesian mesh for the calculation of the hypersonic flow over a double ellipsoid, a configuration somewhat like the space shuttle. (*From Ref. 41. Copyright © 1991, AIAA. Reprinted with permission.*)

**PROBLEM**

- 5.1.** Consider a polar coordinate system drawn in the space about a circular cylinder. Discuss this system in relation to the general idea of a boundary-fitted coordinate system. Also, calculate the metrics for this system. *Note:* We will deal with such a coordinate system in Prob. 6.2, wherein the inviscid incompressible flow around a circular cylinder is calculated. The results obtained here are useful for Prob. 6.2.

---

# CHAPTER

# 6

---

## SOME SIMPLE CFD TECHNIQUES: A BEGINNING

*Technique—The systematic procedure by which a complex or scientific task is accomplished.*

The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, 1969

### 6.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter is the last stepping-stone of Part II of this book; Part III deals with applications of CFD to various flow problems. To deal with any such applications, it is necessary to first understand the basic form and nature of the governing equations of fluid dynamics; this was the purpose of Part I. Second, it is necessary to understand the basics of various numerical discretizations that can be applied to these equations; this is the purpose of Part II. With the present chapter, we fulfill this purpose. Here we will take the basic numerical discretization approaches discussed earlier and mold them into various *techniques* that will allow the numerical solution of flow problems. It is in this chapter that we polish off the tools necessary for the various applications to be discussed in Part III.

Modern CFD is awash with different techniques—some old, some new, some quite simple and straightforward, and some very sophisticated and elaborate. They all have their strengths and weaknesses. In this light, let us set forth the philosophy of this chapter, and indeed the philosophy for the remainder of this book. This book is *not* intended to be an exposition of the latest state of the art in CFD. The state of the art can be found in the vast journal and technical report literature. This book is also *not* intended to be a source book for all the existing CFD techniques. (There are

several advanced-level textbooks in CFD that provide a wide survey of many techniques, such as Refs. 13–18.) Rather, the purpose of this book is to provide the reader with a simple, uncluttered introduction to CFD and to establish a base from which the reader can move on to more advanced texts and courses in the field. Its role is somewhat analogous to a first undergraduate course in fluid dynamics, namely, to provide the student with some basic ideas, as well as the interest and motivation to go further with more advanced courses and state-of-the-art studies. Therefore, the CFD techniques discussed in this chapter are chosen for their simplicity as well as their usefulness. Our purpose here is to develop some CFD tools that are not overly sophisticated—tools that can be appreciated and understood at the introductory level adopted for this book but which are utilitarian enough to allow the solution of a variety of flows discussed in Part III. More sophisticated, state-of-the-art CFD techniques are discussed in Chap. 11, near the end of the book.

Finally, we note that any one particular CFD technique will not be appropriate for all problems; the diverse mathematical nature of different partial differential equations (such as described in Chap. 3) will ensure that some algorithms will work best for hyperbolic equations, others will work best for elliptic equations, etc. We will make this type of distinction as we progress.

Let us now begin to construct some techniques suitable for applications in CFD. We will do this in a generic way, leaving specific applications to specific problems for Part III. For simplicity, we will consider only two-dimensional flows; the extra work brought on by including a third dimension is not important for our purposes here. Wherever necessary, we will assume a calorically perfect gas (one with constant specific heats).

Finally, the road map for this chapter can be found in Fig. 6.35; note that it itemizes the techniques to be discussed here, along with the general nature of their applicability. Remember to consult this road map as you progress to each new section.

## 6.2 THE LAX-WENDROFF TECHNIQUE

The Lax-Wendroff technique is an explicit, finite-difference method particularly suited to marching solutions. The idea of numerical solutions obtained by marching in steps of time or space was discussed in Chap. 3; such marching solutions are associated with the solution of hyperbolic and parabolic partial differential equations. A good example of a flow-field problem governed by hyperbolic equations is the time-marching solution of an inviscid flow using the unsteady Euler equations. The behavior of such a time-marching solution is discussed in the Unsteady, Inviscid Flow Subsection of Sec. 3.4.1 and is sketched in Fig. 3.7. (It is recommended that you review this subsection before progressing further.)

For purposes of illustration, let us consider an unsteady, two-dimensional inviscid flow. The governing Euler equations are derived in Chap. 2 and itemized in Sec. 2.8.2. They are rearranged below in nonconservation form, obtained from Eqs. (2.82), (2.83a), (2.83b), and (2.85).

*Continuity :*  $\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} = - \left( \rho \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + u \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} + \rho \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + v \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial y} \right) \quad (6.1)$

*x momentum :*  $\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = - \left( u \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + v \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \right) \quad (6.2)$

*y momentum :*  $\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = - \left( u \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + v \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial p}{\partial y} \right) \quad (6.3)$

*Energy :*  $\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = - \left( u \frac{\partial e}{\partial x} + v \frac{\partial e}{\partial y} + \frac{p}{\rho} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{p}{\rho} \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \right) \quad (6.4)$

In the above equations, we have assumed no body forces and no volumetric heat addition; that is,  $\mathbf{f} = 0$  and  $\dot{q} = 0$ . Equation (6.4) is obtained from Eq. (2.85) by multiplying the momentum equation by velocity and then subtracting the result from Eq. (2.85)—the same type of derivation that generated Eq. (2.73) from Eq. (2.66). Equations (6.1) to (6.4) are hyperbolic with respect to time.

We now proceed to set up a numerical solution of Eqs. (6.1) to (6.4) using a time-marching approach; note that these equations are already arranged in a convenient form, with the time derivatives isolated on the left-hand side and the spatial derivatives on the right-hand side. The Lax-Wendroff method is predicated on a Taylor series expansion in time, as follows. Choose any dependent flow variable; for purposes of illustration, let us choose density  $\rho$ . Consider the two-dimensional grid shown in Fig. 6.1. Let  $\rho_{i,j}^t$  denote the density at grid point  $(i, j)$  at time  $t$ . Then the density at the same grid point  $(i, j)$  at time  $t + \Delta t$ , denoted by  $\rho_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$ , is given by the Taylor series

$$\rho_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = \rho_{i,j}^t + \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \rho}{\partial t^2} \right)_{i,j}^t \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{2} + \dots \quad (6.5)$$

When employing Eq. (6.5), we assume that the flow field at time  $t$  is known, and Eq. (6.5) gives the new flow field at time  $t + \Delta t$ . In Eq. (6.5),  $\rho_{i,j}^t$  is known from the

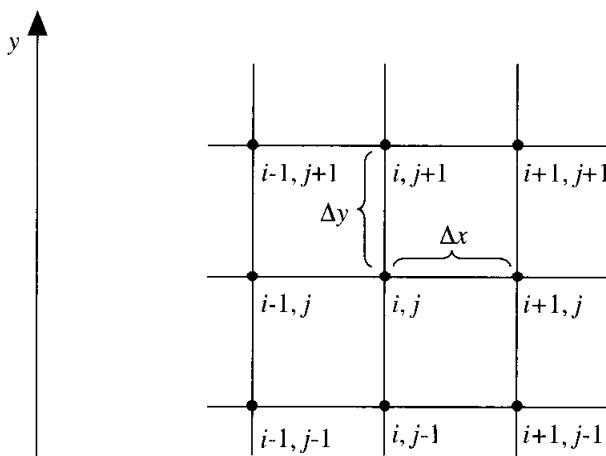


FIG. 6.1  
Rectangular grid segment.

existing flow field at time  $t$ . If we can find numbers for  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)_{i,j}^t$  and  $(\partial^2\rho/\partial t^2)_{i,j}^t$ , then the value of density at the next step in time,  $\rho_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$  can be calculated *explicitly* from Eq. (6.5). Analogous Taylor series are written for all the other dependent variables. For example,

$$u_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = u_{i,j}^t + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t + \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}\right)_{i,j}^t \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{2} + \dots \quad (6.6)$$

$$v_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = v_{i,j}^t + \left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t + \left(\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial t^2}\right)_{i,j}^t \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{2} + \dots \quad (6.7)$$

$$e_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = e_{i,j}^t + \left(\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t + \left(\frac{\partial^2 e}{\partial t^2}\right)_{i,j}^t \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{2} + \dots \quad (6.8)$$

Equations (6.5) to (6.8) can be used to advance the flow-field variables at each grid point to the next step in time, based on known values of  $\rho_{i,j}^t$ ,  $u_{i,j}^t$ ,  $v_{i,j}^t$  and  $e_{i,j}^t$  at time  $t$ , as long as we can find numbers for the time derivatives evaluated at time  $t$ , that is, as long as we have numbers for  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)_{i,j}^t$ ,  $(\partial u/\partial t)_{i,j}^t$ ,  $(\partial^2 u/\partial t^2)_{i,j}^t$ , etc., which appear on the right side of Eqs. (6.5) to (6.8). Since Eqs. (6.5) to (6.8) are just mathematics, clearly the physics of the flow must enter the calculation somehow. Physics is what determines the time derivatives  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)_{i,j}^t$ ,  $(\partial^2\rho/\partial t^2)_{i,j}^t$ , etc., where the physics is embodied in the governing flow equations given by Eqs. (6.1) to (6.4). To be more specific, let us concentrate on the calculation of density at time  $t + \Delta t$  as stipulated by Eq. (6.5). In this equation, a number for  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)_{i,j}^t$  is obtained from the continuity equation, Eq. (6.1), where the spatial derivatives are given by second-order central differences. That is, from Eq. (6.1),

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t = & - \left( \rho_{i,j}^t \frac{u_{i+1,j}^t - u_{i-1,j}^t}{2\Delta x} + u_{i,j}^t \frac{\rho_{i+1,j}^t - \rho_{i-1,j}^t}{2\Delta x} \right. \\ & \left. + \rho_{i,j}^t \frac{v_{i,j+1}^t - v_{i,j-1}^t}{2\Delta y} + v_{i,j}^t \frac{\rho_{i,j+1}^t - \rho_{i,j-1}^t}{2\Delta y} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (6.9)$$

In Eq. (6.9), all quantities on the right-hand side are known because the flow field at time  $t$  is known. Hence, Eq. (6.9) provides a number for  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)_{i,j}^t$ , which is inserted into Eq. (6.5). This takes care of the second term on the right side of Eq. (6.5). The third term,  $(\partial^2\rho/\partial t^2)_{i,j}^t$ , is obtained in a similar fashion but requires more effort. Specifically, differentiate Eq. (6.1) with respect to time.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2\rho}{\partial t^2} = & -\rho \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial t} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial^2 \rho}{\partial x \partial t} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \rho \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial y \partial t} \\ & + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + v \frac{\partial^2 \rho}{\partial y \partial t} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial y} \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} \end{aligned} \quad (6.10)$$

The mixed second derivatives in Eq. (6.10), such as  $\partial^2 u / (\partial x \partial t)$ , are obtained by differentiating Eqs. (6.1) to (6.4) with respect to the proper spatial variable. For example,  $\partial^2 u / (\partial x \partial t)$  is obtained by differentiating Eq. (6.2) with respect to  $x$ .

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial t} = -u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)^2 + v \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x^2} - \frac{1}{\rho^2} \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} \quad (6.11)$$

In Eq. (6.11), all terms on the right side are expressed as second-order, centered finite-difference quotients at time  $t$ ; that is,

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial t} \right)_{i,j}^t &= -u_{i,j}^t \frac{u_{i+1,j}^t - 2u_{i,j}^t + u_{i-1,j}^t}{(\Delta x)^2} \\ &\quad + \left( \frac{u_{i+1,j}^t - u_{i-1,j}^t}{2\Delta x} \right)^2 + v_{i,j}^t \frac{u_{i+1,j+1}^t + u_{i-1,j-1}^t - u_{i-1,j+1}^t - u_{i+1,j-1}^t}{4(\Delta x)(\Delta y)} \\ &\quad + \frac{u_{i,j+1}^t - u_{i,j-1}^t}{2\Delta y} \frac{v_{i+1,j}^t - v_{i-1,j}^t}{2\Delta x} + \frac{1}{\rho_{i,j}^t} \frac{p_{i+1,j}^t - 2p_{i,j}^t + p_{i-1,j}^t}{(\Delta x)^2} \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{(\rho_{i,j}^t)^2} \frac{p_{i+1,j}^t - p_{i-1,j}^t}{2\Delta x} \frac{\rho_{i+1,j}^t - \rho_{i-1,j}^t}{2\Delta x} \end{aligned} \quad (6.12)$$

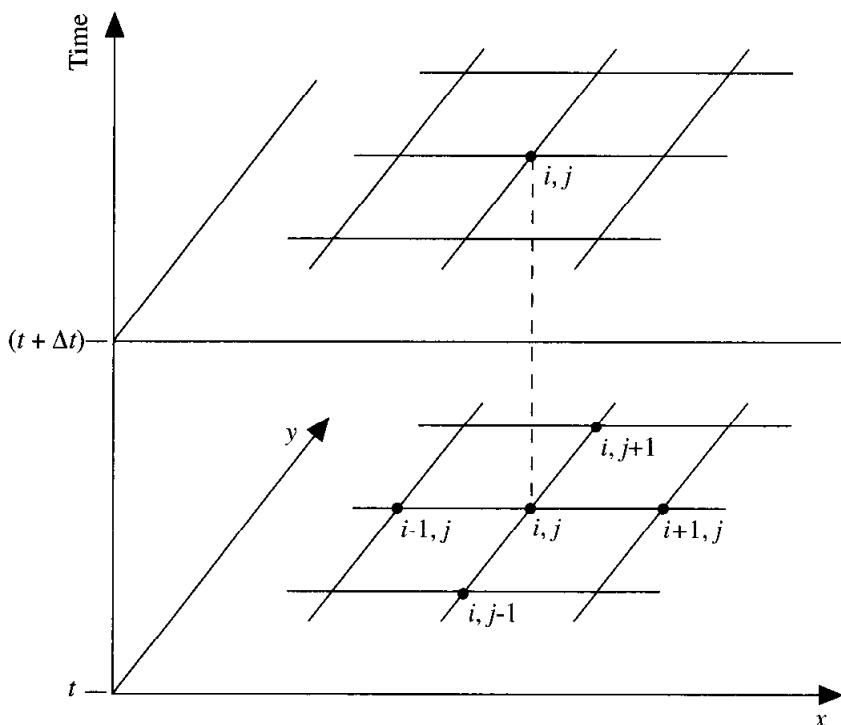
Examine Eq. (6.12); all terms on the right-hand side are known from the known flow field at time  $t$ . This provides a number for the left-hand side, i.e., a number for  $(\partial^2 u / \partial x \partial t)_{i,j}^t$ . In turn, this number is substituted for the term  $\partial^2 u / (\partial x \partial t)$  which appears in Eq. (6.10). Continuing with the evaluation of Eq. (6.10), a number for  $\partial^2 \rho / (\partial x \partial t)$  is found by differentiating Eq. (6.1) with respect to  $x$  and replacing all derivatives on the right side with second-order central differences, analogous to the form of Eq. (6.12). To conserve space, we will not write out the full result here. Continuing further with Eq. (6.10), a number for  $\partial^2 v / (\partial y \partial t)$  is found by differentiating Eq. (6.3) with respect to  $y$  and replacing all derivatives on the right side with second-order central differences. The last mixed derivative in Eq. (6.10),  $\partial^2 \rho / (\partial y \partial t)$ , is found by differentiating Eq. (6.1) with respect to  $y$  and replacing all derivatives on the right side with second-order central differences. The only remaining derivatives on the right side of Eq. (6.10) are the first spatial derivatives, namely,  $\partial u / \partial x$ ,  $\partial v / \partial y$ ,  $\partial \rho / \partial x$ , and  $\partial \rho / \partial y$ , replaced by second-order central differences

$$\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)_{i,j}^t = \frac{u_{i+1,j}^t - u_{i-1,j}^t}{2\Delta x}$$

and so forth, as well as the first time derivatives  $\partial \rho / \partial t$ ,  $\partial u / \partial t$ , and  $\partial v / \partial t$ . A number for  $\partial \rho / \partial t$  has already been obtained from Eq. (6.9). Numbers for  $\partial u / \partial t$  and  $\partial v / \partial t$  are obtained in like fashion by inserting second-order central differences into the right-hand side of Eqs. (6.2) and (6.3), respectively. With all this, we finally obtain a number for  $\partial^2 \rho / \partial t^2$  from Eq. (6.10). In turn, this is substituted into Eq. (6.5). Since  $\partial \rho / \partial t$  was obtained earlier from Eq. (6.9), we now have known values at time  $t$  for all three terms on the right side of Eq. (6.5), namely,  $\rho_{i,j}^t$ ,  $(\partial \rho / \partial t)_{i,j}^t$ , and  $(\partial^2 \rho / \partial t^2)_{i,j}^t$ . This allows the calculation of density at time  $t + \Delta t$ , namely,  $\rho_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$ , obtained from Eq. (6.5).

To find the remaining flow-field variables at grid point  $(i, j)$  at time  $t + \Delta t$ , we simply repeat the above procedure. For example, to find the value of the  $x$  component of velocity at time  $t + \Delta t$ ,  $u_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$ , go to Eq. (6.6) and insert values for  $(\partial u / \partial t)^t$  and  $(\partial^2 u / \partial t^2)^t$  obtained from Eq. (6.2) in a like fashion as described above for the density. As you can see, the algebra marches on, but the idea is the same. To obtain the  $y$  component of velocity at time  $t + \Delta t$ ,  $v_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$ , use Eq. (6.7), where values for  $(\partial v / \partial t)^t$  and  $(\partial^2 v / \partial t^2)^t$  are obtained from Eq. (6.3). To obtain the internal energy at time  $t + \Delta t$ ,  $e_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$ , use Eq. (6.8), where values for  $(\partial e / \partial t)^t$  and  $(\partial^2 e / \partial t^2)^t$  are obtained from Eq. (6.4). With this, the flow-field variables at grid point  $(i, j)$  are now known at time  $t + \Delta t$ . This is illustrated schematically in Fig. 6.2, where the spatial grid in two time planes  $t$  and  $t + \Delta t$  is shown. Examining this figure, we clearly see that the Lax-Wendroff method allows us to obtain *explicitly* the flow-field variables at grid point  $(i, j)$  at time  $t + \Delta t$  from the *known* flow-field variables at grid points  $(i, j)$ ,  $(i + 1, j)$ ,  $(i - 1, j)$ ,  $(i, j - 1)$ , and  $(i, j + 1)$  at time  $t$ . The flow-field variables at all other grid points at time  $t + \Delta t$  are obtained in like fashion.

This is the essence and the details of the Lax-Wendroff method. It has second-order accuracy in both space and time. The idea is straightforward, but the algebra is lengthy; as you can see, most of the lengthy algebra is associated with the *second* time derivatives in Eqs. (6.6) to (6.8). Fortunately, there is a shortcut around much of this algebra—this is the subject of the next section.



**FIG. 6.2**

A schematic of the grid for time marching.

### 6.3 MACCORMACK'S TECHNIQUE

MacCormack's technique is a variant of the Lax-Wendroff approach but is much simpler in its application. Like the Lax-Wendroff method, the MacCormack method is also an explicit finite-difference technique which is second-order-accurate in both space and time. First introduced in 1969 (Ref. 43), it became the most popular explicit finite-difference method for solving fluid flows for the next 15 years. Today, the MacCormack method has been mostly supplanted by more sophisticated approaches, some of which will be discussed in Chap. 11. However, the MacCormack method is very “student friendly;” it is among the easiest to understand and program. Moreover, the results obtained by using MacCormack’s method are perfectly satisfactory for many fluid flow applications. For these reasons, MacCormack’s method is highlighted here and will be used for some of the applications in Part III. It is an excellent method for introducing the fresh learner to the joys of CFD.

Consider again the two-dimensional grid shown in Fig. 6.1. For purposes of illustration, let us address again the solution of the Euler equations itemized in Eqs. (6.1) to (6.4). In Sec. 6.2 we discussed a time-marching solution using the Lax-Wendroff technique. Here, we will address a similar time-marching solution but using MacCormack’s technique. As before, we assume that the flow field at each grid point in Fig. 6.1 is known at time  $t$ , and we proceed to calculate the flow-field variables at the same grid points at time  $t + \Delta t$ , as illustrated in Fig. 6.2. First, consider the density at grid point  $(i, j)$  at time  $t + \Delta t$ . In MacCormack’s method, this is obtained from

$$\rho_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = \rho_{i,j}^t + \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t \quad (6.13)$$

where  $(\partial \rho / \partial t)_{av}$  is a representative mean value of  $\partial \rho / \partial t$  between times  $t$  and  $t + \Delta t$ . Compare Eq. (6.13) with its counterpart for the Lax-Wendroff method, Eq. (6.5). In Eq. (6.5), the time derivatives are evaluated at time  $t$ , and the carrying of the second derivative  $(\partial^2 \rho / \partial t^2)_{i,j}^t$  is necessary to obtain second-order accuracy. In contrast, in Eq. (6.13), the value of  $(\partial \rho / \partial t)_{av}$  is calculated so as to preserve second-order accuracy *without* the need to calculate values of the second time derivative  $(\partial^2 \rho / \partial t^2)_{i,j}^t$ , which is the term which involves a lot of algebra. With MacCormack’s technique, this algebra is circumvented.

Similar relations are written for the other flow-field variables.

$$u_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = u_{i,j}^t + \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t \quad (6.14)$$

$$v_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = v_{i,j}^t + \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t \quad (6.15)$$

$$e_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = e_{i,j}^t + \left( \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t \quad (6.16)$$

Let us illustrate by using the calculation of density as an example. Return to Eq. (6.13). The average time derivative,  $(\partial \rho / \partial t)_{av}$ , is obtained from a predictor-corrector philosophy as follows.

**Predictor step.** In the continuity equation, Eq. (6.1), replace the spatial derivatives on the right-hand side with *forward* differences.

$$\left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t = - \left( \rho_{i,j}^t \frac{u_{i+1,j}^t - u_{i,j}^t}{\Delta x} + u_{i,j}^t \frac{\rho_{i+1,j}^t - \rho_{i,j}^t}{\Delta x} + \rho_{i,j}^t \frac{v_{i,j+1}^t - v_{i,j}^t}{\Delta y} + v_{i,j}^t \frac{\rho_{i,j+1}^t - \rho_{i,j}^t}{\Delta y} \right) \quad (6.17)$$

In Eq. (6.17), all flow variables at time  $t$  are known values; i.e., the right-hand side is known. Now, obtain a *predicted* value of density,  $(\bar{\rho})^{t+\Delta t}$ , from the first two terms of a Taylor series, as follows.

$$(\bar{\rho})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = \rho_{i,j}^t + \left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t \quad (6.18)$$

In Eq. (6.18),  $\rho_{i,j}^t$  is known, and  $(\partial \rho / \partial t)_{i,j}^t$  is a known number from Eq. (6.17); hence  $(\bar{\rho})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$  is readily obtained. The value of  $(\bar{\rho})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$  is only a *predicted* value of density; it is only first-order-accurate since Eq. (6.18) contains only the first-order terms in the Taylor series.

In a similar fashion, predicted values for  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $e$  can be obtained, i.e.,

$$(\bar{u})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = u_{i,j}^t + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t \quad (6.19)$$

$$(\bar{v})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = v_{i,j}^t + \left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t \quad (6.20)$$

$$(\bar{e})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = e_{i,j}^t + \left(\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t \quad (6.20a)$$

In Eqs. (6.19) to (6.20a), numbers for the time derivatives on the right-hand side are obtained from Eqs. (6.2) to (6.4), respectively, with *forward* differences used for the spatial derivatives, similar to those shown in Eq. (6.17) for the continuity equation.

**Corrector step.** In the corrector step, we first obtain a *predicted* value of the *time derivative* at time  $t + \Delta t$ ,  $(\bar{\rho} / \partial t)_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$ , by substituting the *predicted* values of  $\rho$ ,  $u$ , and  $v$  into the right side of the continuity equation, replacing the spatial derivatives with *rearward* differences.

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{\partial \bar{\rho}}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = & - \left[ (\bar{\rho})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} \frac{(\bar{u})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} - (\bar{u})_{i-1,j}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} \right. \\ & + (\bar{u})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} \frac{(\bar{\rho})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} - (\bar{\rho})_{i-1,j}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} + (\bar{\rho})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} \frac{(\bar{v})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} - (\bar{v})_{i,j-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta y} \\ & \left. + (\bar{v})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} \frac{(\bar{\rho})_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} - (\bar{\rho})_{i,j-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta y} \right] \quad (6.21) \end{aligned}$$

The average value of the time derivative of density which appears in Eq. (6.13) is obtained from the arithmetic mean of  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)_{i,j}^t$ , obtained from Eq. (6.17), and  $\overline{(\partial\rho/\partial t)}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$ , obtained from Eq. (6.21).

$$\left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\right)_{av} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\right)_{i,j}^t}_{\text{From Eq. (6.17)}} + \underbrace{\overline{\left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\right)}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}}_{\text{From Eq. (6.21)}} \right] \quad (6.22)$$

This allows us to obtain the final, “corrected” value of density at time  $t + \Delta t$  from Eq. (6.13), repeated below:

$$\rho_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = \rho_{i,j}^t + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\right)_{av} \Delta t \quad (6.13)$$

The predictor-corrector sequence described above yields the value of density at grid point  $(i, j)$  at time  $t + \Delta t$ , as illustrated in Fig. 6.2. This sequence is repeated at all grid points to obtain the density throughout the flow field at time  $t + \Delta t$ . To calculate  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $e$  at time  $t + \Delta t$ , the same technique is used, starting with Eqs. (6.14) to (6.16) and utilizing the momentum and energy equations in the form of Eqs. (6.2) to (6.4) to obtain the average time derivatives via the predictor-corrector sequence, using forward differences on the predictor and rearward differences on the corrector.

MacCormack's technique as described above, because a two-step predictor-corrector sequence is used with forward differences on the predictor and with rearward differences on the corrector, is a second-order-accurate method. Therefore, it has the same accuracy as the Lax-Wendroff method described in Sec. 6.2. However, the MacCormack method is much easier to apply, because there is no need to evaluate the second time derivatives as was the case for the Lax-Wendroff method. To see this more clearly, recall Eqs. (6.10) and (6.11), which are required for the Lax-Wendroff method. These equations represent a large number of additional calculations. Moreover, for a more complex fluid dynamic problem such as the flow of a viscous fluid, the differentiation of the continuity, momentum, and energy equations to obtain the second derivatives, first with respect to time, and then the mixed derivatives with respect to time and space, can be very tedious and provides an extra source for human error. MacCormack's method does *not* require such second derivatives and hence does *not* deal with equations such as (6.10) and (6.11).

In MacCormack's technique, the use of forward differences on the predictor and rearward differences on the corrector is not sacrosanct; the same order of accuracy is obtained by using rearward differences on the predictor and forward differences on the corrector. Indeed, a time-marching solution can be carried out by alternating between these two sequences at every other time step, if you so choose.

#### GUIDEPOST

If you are anxious to start a computer project using MacCormack's technique, you can follow this guidepost now and return to Chap. 6 at a later time.

Go to Sec. 6.6, artificial viscosity.	→	Then go to <i>all</i> of Chap. 7, nozzle flows.
--	---	---

On the other hand, if you want a broader perspective on various CFD techniques *before* you start the applications in Part III, simply continue to read the remaining sections in the present chapter.

## 6.4 SOME COMMENTS: VISCOUS FLOWS, CONSERVATION FORM, AND SPACE MARCHING

We have chosen to illustrate the Lax-Wendroff (Sec. 6.2) and MacCormack (Sec. 6.3) techniques by assuming an inviscid flow, using the nonconservation form of the Euler equations, and discussing a computational time-marching step. None of these have to be the case; these techniques can be applied just as well to viscous flows, to the conservation form of the governing flow equations, and to space marching. Let us examine each of these comments in turn.

### 6.4.1 Viscous Flows

Viscous flows are governed by the Navier-Stokes equations, summarized in Sec. 2.8.1. Written in the form for steady flow, these equations have a mathematical behavior which is partially elliptic. The Lax-Wendroff and MacCormack techniques are not appropriate for the solution of elliptic partial differential equations. However, the *unsteady* Navier-Stokes equations have a mixed parabolic and elliptic behavior, and therefore the Lax-Wendroff and MacCormack techniques are suitable. Indeed, the MacCormack technique has been used extensively for solutions of the unsteady Navier-Stokes equations by means of time-marching solutions. The idea is the same as discussed in Sec. 6.3; the Navier-Stokes equations are written with the time derivatives on the left side and spatial derivatives on the right side of the equations. The spatial derivatives are replaced in turn by forward and rearward differences on the predictor and corrector steps, respectively.\* The approach is exactly the same as discussed in Sec. 6.3; the only difference is the larger number of spatial derivatives that are present in the Navier-Stokes equations compared to the Euler equations.

### 6.4.2 Conservation Form

For simplicity, we will continue to use the Euler equations in our discussion. The conservation form of the Euler equations suitable for CFD calculations was

---

\* This statement is true for the convective terms. However, it has been the author's experience, as well as that of many others, that the *viscous* terms should be *centrally differenced* on both the predictor and corrector steps.

discussed in Sec. 2.10; this form was embodied in the generic equation given by Eq. (2.93). Rearranging this equation, and considering a two-dimensional flow, we have

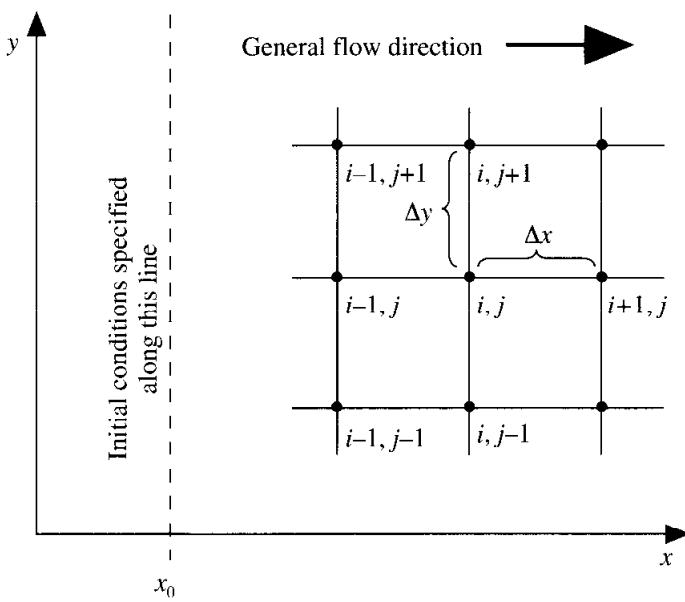
$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} + J \quad (6.23)$$

where the elements of the column vectors  $U$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $J$  are given by Eqs. (2.105) to (2.109), respectively. Clearly, values for the elements of  $U$ , namely,  $\rho$ ,  $\rho u$ ,  $\rho v$ , and  $\rho(e + V^2/2)$ , can be calculated in steps of time using either the Lax-Wendroff or the MacCormack technique. The approach is exactly the same as discussed in Secs. 6.2 and 6.3. Keep in mind that since the dependent variables in Eq. (6.23) are flux variables, the primitive variables have to be decoded at the end of each time step in the fashion given in Eqs. (2.100) to (2.104). At this stage, please return to Sec. 2.10 where such matters associated with the conservation form of the equations are discussed and review that material before progressing further. You will find that, by now, with the technical maturity you have obtained in the ensuing chapters, Sec. 2.10 will have renewed significance for you and your understanding will be enhanced. There is another reason for reviewing Sec. 2.10 right now—it leads directly into the material in the next subsection.

#### 6.4.3 Space Marching

To illustrate the space-marching idea, let us apply MacCormack's technique to the two-dimensional flow shown in Fig. 6.3. The general flow direction is from left to right in the  $xy$  plane. For simplicity, assume the flow is inviscid; hence the governing flow equations are the Euler equations. In the generic, conservation form, this system of equations is given by Eq. (2.110), reduced to a two-dimensional form as

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} = J - \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \quad (6.24)$$



**FIG. 6.3**  
A schematic of the grid for space marching.

For a subsonic flow, Eq. (6.24) is elliptic, and MacCormack's technique does not apply; indeed, *any* space-marching technique will not apply. However, as mentioned in Chap. 3, for a flow that is locally supersonic everywhere, Eq. (6.24) is hyperbolic. In this case, space marching is appropriate, and MacCormack's technique is applicable. With this in mind, notice that Eq. (6.24) is written with the  $x$  derivative isolated on the left-hand side and the source term and the  $y$  derivative on the right-hand side. Return to Fig. 6.3. Assume that the flow-field variables are known along the vertical line in the  $xy$  plane; this line is the *initial data line*. Also assume that the flow is locally supersonic everywhere. Then a solution can be obtained, starting with the initial data line and marching downstream in the  $x$  direction. We will illustrate the process for a single spatial step using MacCormack's technique. The ideas are the same as discussed in Sec. 6.3, except that here the spatial variable  $x$  performs the same role as the time variable  $t$  in Sec. 6.3. For example, in Fig. 6.3 assume the flow variables are known along a vertical line at a given  $x$  location. (The calculation was started using the initial data along the vertical line  $x = x_0$ .) Let this vertical line run through the grid points  $(i, j + 1)$ ,  $(i, j)$  and  $(i, j - 1)$  in Fig. 6.3. That is, the flow variables at these three grid points are considered known. MacCormack's technique allows the calculation of the flow variables at grid point  $(i + 1, j)$  from the known values at  $(i, j + 1)$ ,  $(i, j)$  and  $(i, j - 1)$ , as follows. The value of the solution vector  $F$  in Eq. (6.24) at grid point  $(i + 1, j)$  can be found from

$$F_j^{i+1} = F_j^i + \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \right)_{av} \Delta x \quad (6.25)$$

Note that, in keeping with our previous notation, the index for the marching variable, in this case  $i$ , is used as a superscript. In Eq. (6.25),  $(\partial F / \partial x)_{av}$  is a representative average value of the  $x$  derivative of  $F$  evaluated between  $x$  and  $x + \Delta x$ . It is found from Eq. (6.24) by means of a predictor-corrector approach, as follows.

**Predictor step.** In Eq. (6.24), replace the  $y$  derivative with a forward difference:

$$\left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \right)_j^i = J_j^i - \frac{G_{j+1}^i - G_j^i}{\Delta y} \quad (6.26)$$

In Eq. (6.26), all terms on the right side are known numbers, because the flow is known along the vertical line through point  $(i, j)$ . Calculate a predicted value for  $F$  at point  $(i + 1, j)$  from a Taylor series:

$$\bar{F}_j^{i+1} = F_j^i + \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \right)_j^i \Delta x \quad (6.27)$$

where, as in Sec. 6.3, the barred quantity represents a predicted quantity. Keep in mind that the shorthand vector notation shown in Eqs. (6.26) and (6.27) represents these operations on the individual continuity, momentum, and energy equations, where the elements of  $F$  and  $G$  are given by Eqs. (2.106) and (2.107), respectively. That is,  $\bar{F}_j^{i+1}$  represents the *predicted* values of its individual elements, given for

the present two-dimensional case by

$$\bar{F}_j^{i+1} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} (\bar{\rho u})_j^{i+1} \\ (\bar{\rho u^2 + p})_j^{i+1} \\ (\bar{\rho uv})_j^{i+1} \\ \left[ \bar{\rho u} \left( e + \frac{u^2 + v^2}{2} \right) + pu \right]_j^{i+1} \end{array} \right\} \quad (6.28)$$

Before progressing further, the calculated values on the right side of Eq. (6.28) must be *decoded* to obtain predicted values of the primitive variables, as discussed in that part of Sec. 2.10 associated with Eqs. (2.111a) to (2.111e). These primitive variables are needed to form the numbers for the flux vector  $G$  in the corrector step, as follows.

**Corrector step.** Calculate a predicted value of  $(\partial F / \partial x)_j^{i+1}$  at location  $x + \Delta x$ , denoted by  $(\bar{\partial F} / \partial x)_j^{i+1}$ , by inserting the predicted values for  $J$  and  $G$  into Eq. (6.24), using rearward differences. That is,

$$\left( \frac{\bar{\partial F}}{\partial x} \right)_j^{i+1} = \bar{J}_j^{i+1} - \frac{\bar{G}_j^{i+1} - \bar{G}_{j-1}^{i+1}}{\Delta y} \quad (6.29)$$

In Eq. (6.29), the values of  $\bar{G}_j^{i+1}$  and  $\bar{G}_{j-1}^{i+1}$  are constructed from the predicted primitive variables which had been decoded earlier in the predictor step. The average value,  $(\partial F / \partial x)_{av}$ , is now formed as an arithmetic mean

$$\left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \right)_{av} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \underbrace{\left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \right)_j^i}_{\text{From Eq. (6.26)}} + \underbrace{\left( \frac{\bar{\partial F}}{\partial x} \right)_j^{i+1}}_{\text{From Eq. (6.29)}} \right] \quad (6.30)$$

In turn, the final, corrected value of  $F_{i+1,j}$  is obtained from Eq. (6.25), repeated below:

$$F_j^{i+1} = F_j^i + \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \right)_{av} \Delta x \quad (6.25)$$

Clearly, this spatial, downstream marching solution using MacCormack's technique is a direct analog of the time-marching solution discussed in Sec. 6.3, with the marching variable  $x$  playing the role of the earlier marching variable  $t$ .

There are two noteworthy differences associated with the downstream marching approach compared to the time-marching approach. The first has already been mentioned; it is associated with the need to decode the primitive variables from the flux variables. This decoding is simple when a time-marching solution of the conservation form of the equations is employed, as reflected in Eqs. (2.100) to (2.104), but it is more elaborate when a spatial-marching solution of the con-

servation form equations is used, as reflected in Eqs. (2.111a) to (2.111e). Of course, for a time-marching solution using the nonconservation form of the equations, no decoding is needed at all; the dependent variables are the primitive variables themselves, as we have seen in Secs. 6.2 and 6.3. The second difference between the two marching procedures, at least for explicit solutions, is that the downstream marching procedure demands the use of the conservation form of the governing equations so that the  $x$  derivative can be isolated as a single term, as displayed in Eq. (6.24). This can not be done with the nonconservation form of the equations, as a quick examination of Eqs. (6.1) to (6.4) will show. Here, with the time derivatives set to zero, three out of the four equations have two terms each involving  $x$  derivatives, and therefore a single  $x$  derivative can not be isolated on the left-hand side without another  $x$  derivative still appearing on the right-hand side. This, of course, destroys the explicit nature of the downstream marching approach as discussed here.

## 6.5 THE RELAXATION TECHNIQUE AND ITS USE WITH LOW-SPEED INVISCID FLOW

The relaxation technique is a finite-difference method particularly suited for the solution of elliptic partial differential equations. Low-speed, subsonic inviscid flow is governed by elliptic partial differential equations, as discussed in Sec. 3.4.3. Therefore, the relaxation technique is frequently applied to the solution of low-speed subsonic flow. Relaxation techniques can be either explicit or implicit. See Ref. 13 for an in-depth discussion of various relaxation techniques as applied to CFD problems. In the present section, we will describe an explicit relaxation technique, sometimes called a *point-iterative* method.

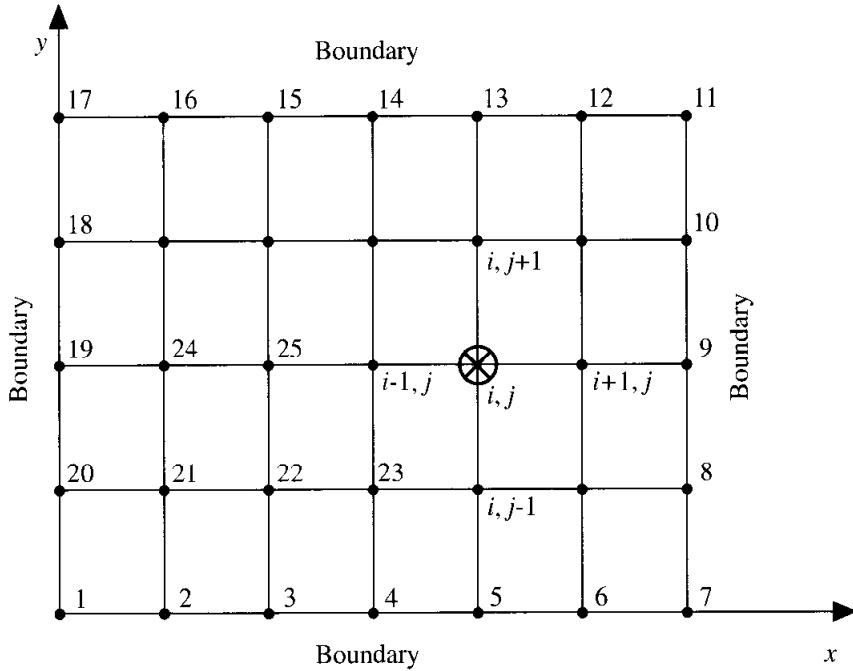
For purposes of illustration, let us consider an inviscid, incompressible, two-dimensional irrotational flow. For such a flow, the governing flow equations reduce to a single partial differential equation, namely, Laplace's equation, in terms of the scalar velocity potential  $\Phi$ , where  $\Phi$  is defined such that  $\mathbf{V} = \nabla\Phi$ . We will not provide the details here but rather make the assumption that you have some familiarity with such matters. If not, or if you simply need a review of the derivation, see, for example, Sec. 3.7 of Ref. 8. We will simply state here that the governing equation is

$$\frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad (6.31)$$

We wish to solve Eq. (6.31) numerically on the grid shown in Fig. 6.4. Replace the partial derivatives in Eq. (6.31) with second-order, central second differences, given by Eqs. (4.12) and (4.13).

$$\frac{\Phi_{i+1,j} - 2\Phi_{i,j} + \Phi_{i-1,j}}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{\Phi_{i,j+1} - 2\Phi_{i,j} + \Phi_{i,j-1}}{(\Delta y)^2} = 0 \quad (6.32)$$

Examining the grid in Fig. 6.4, note that grid points 1 through 20 constitute the



**FIG. 6.4**  
Schematic for relaxation technique.

boundary of the domain. As discussed in Sec. 3.4.3, boundary conditions must be stipulated over the *entire* boundary enclosing the domain in order for the solution of an elliptic equation to be well-posed. In terms of the grid shown in Fig. 6.4, this means that  $\Phi_1$  through  $\Phi_{20}$  are known values, equal to the given boundary conditions at points 1 through 20. The values of  $\Phi$  at all other grid points—the internal grid points—are unknown. Equation (6.32), centered around grid point  $(i, j)$ , contains five of these unknowns, namely,  $\Phi_{i-1, j}$ ,  $\Phi_{i, j}$ ,  $\Phi_{i+1, j}$ ,  $\Phi_{i, j+1}$ ,  $\Phi_{i, j-1}$ . In principle, Eq. (6.32) can be written around each of the internal grid points (there are 15 such points in Fig. 6.4), leading to a system of 15 linear algebraic equations with a total of 15 unknowns. There are several direct methods for solving these simultaneous equations. One is the standard Cramer's rule; however, the number of calculations required for the implementation of Cramer's rule is very large, due to the need to evaluate determinants of the size  $15 \times 15$  for the present example. For any real calculation, hundreds or even thousands of grid points may be employed. Clearly, the use of Cramer's rule is out of the question for such applications. Another, and much more reasonable, direct solution is gaussian elimination (see, for example, Ref. 13). However, the simplest approach is to use a relaxation technique, as described below.

The relaxation technique is an iterative method, wherein values of four of the quantities in Eq. (6.32) are assumed to be the *known* values at iteration step *n* and only one of the quantities is treated as an unknown at iteration step *n + 1*. In Eq. (6.32), let us choose  $\Phi_{i, j}$  as that unknown. Solving Eq. (6.32) for  $\Phi_{i, j}$ , we have

$$\Phi_{i, j}^{n+1} = \frac{(\Delta x)^2 (\Delta y)^2}{2(\Delta y)^2 + 2(\Delta x)^2} \left[ \frac{\Phi_{i+1, j}^n + \Phi_{i-1, j}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{\Phi_{i, j+1}^n + \Phi_{i, j-1}^n}{(\Delta y)^2} \right] \quad (6.33)$$

In Eq. (6.33), the superscripts  $n$  and  $n + 1$  indicates the *iteration* step; it has nothing to do with our previous use of the superscript to designate a time- or space-marching step. Indeed, as we know, such marching is *not* appropriate for the solution of elliptic equations. Rather, in Eq. (6.33),  $\Phi_{i,j}^{n+1}$  represents the unknown to be calculated at the next iteration step,  $n + 1$ , in terms of the known quantities  $\Phi_{i+1,j}^n$ ,  $\Phi_{i-1,j}^n$ ,  $\Phi_{i,j+1}^n$ , and  $\Phi_{i,j-1}^n$  from the previous step  $n$ . (This approach is called the *Jacobi method*.) To get the whole process started, we first *assume* values for  $\Phi$  at all grid points except one, at which  $\Phi$  is treated as the unknown. Equation (6.33) is used to calculate that unknown. After repeated application of Eq. (6.33) to all the grid points, we have finished the first iteration,  $n = 1$ , and we go on to the next step,  $n = 2$ . This whole process is repeated for as many iterations as are necessary to converge to a solution. To be more specific, consider Eq. (6.33) applied at grid point 21 in Fig. 6.4. Assume that we have already carried out  $n$  iterations. Then, for the  $n + 1$  iteration, Eq. (6.33) yields

$$\Phi_{21}^{n+1} = \frac{(\Delta x)^2 (\Delta y)^2}{2(\Delta y)^2 + 2(\Delta x)^2} \left[ \frac{\Phi_{22}^n + \Phi_{20}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{\Phi_{24}^n + \Phi_2^n}{(\Delta y)^2} \right] \quad (6.34)$$

In Eq. (6.34),  $\Phi_{21}^{n+1}$  is the unknown;  $\Phi_{22}^n$  and  $\Phi_{24}^n$  are known from the previous iteration, and  $\Phi_{20}^n$  and  $\Phi_2^n$  are known from the stipulated boundary conditions.

It is suggested that updated values of  $\Phi$  be used as soon as possible on the right-hand side of Eq. (6.33). For example, after we have calculated  $\Phi_{21}^{n+1}$  from Eq. (6.34), we move on to grid point 22, where an application of Eq. (6.33) yields

$$\Phi_{22}^{n+1} = \frac{(\Delta x)^2 (\Delta y)^2}{2(\Delta y)^2 + 2(\Delta x)^2} \left[ \frac{\Phi_{23}^n + \Phi_{21}^{n+1}}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{\Phi_{25}^n + \Phi_3^n}{(\Delta y)^2} \right] \quad (6.35)$$

In Eq. (6.35),  $\Phi_{22}^{n+1}$  is the unknown;  $\Phi_{23}^n$  and  $\Phi_{25}^n$  are known from the previous iteration,  $\Phi_3^n$  is known from the stipulated boundary condition, and  $\Phi_{21}^{n+1}$  is known from Eq. (6.34), which was the immediately preceding calculation. In this fashion, the unknown  $\Phi$ 's at iteration  $n + 1$  are progressively calculated along a given horizontal line, sweeping from left to right. (This approach is called the *Gauss-Seidel method*.) There is nothing magic about this sweeping direction. During the progressive solution of Eq. (6.33), we could just as well set up sequences that sweep from right to left, from top to bottom, or from bottom to top.

The above procedure is repeated for a number of iterations; *convergence* is achieved when  $\Phi_{i,j}^{n+1} - \Phi_{i,j}^n$  becomes less than some prescribed value at all grid points. The degree to which you wish convergence to be achieved is up to you; the more iterations you take, the greater will be the accuracy.

Frequently, the convergence to a solution sometimes can be enhanced by a technique called *successive overrelaxation*. This is an extrapolation procedure based on the following idea. We interpret Eq. (6.33) as yielding an intermediate value of  $\Phi_{i,j}$ , denoted by  $\Phi_{i,j}^{\overline{n+1}}$ , where

$$\Phi_{i,j}^{\overline{n+1}} = \frac{(\Delta x)^2 (\Delta y)^2}{2(\Delta y)^2 + 2(\Delta x)^2} \left[ \frac{\Phi_{i+1,j}^n + \Phi_{i-1,j}^{n+1}}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{\Phi_{i,j+1}^n + \Phi_{i,j-1}^{n+1}}{(\Delta y)^2} \right] \quad (6.36)$$

Note that we have chosen to write the value of  $\Phi_{i-1,j}^{n+1}$  in Eq. (6.36) at iteration level  $n + 1$  with the assumption that we are sweeping from left to right as discussed earlier, and hence the value of  $\Phi_{i-1,j}^{n+1}$  is known at this stage. Similarly,  $\Phi_{i,j-1}^{n+1}$  is known at this stage because we are starting our sweeping procedure at the bottom of the grid, and sequentially stepping to the next higher row of grid points. Then we use the value of  $\Phi_{i,j}^n$  obtained at the end of the previous iteration, and  $\Phi_{i,j}^{n+1}$  obtained from Eq. (6.36), to *extrapolate* a value for  $\Phi_{i,j}^{n+1}$  as follows:

$$\Phi_{i,j}^{n+1} = \Phi_{i,j}^n + \omega(\overline{\Phi_{i,j}^{n+1}} - \Phi_{i,j}^n) \quad (6.37)$$

In Eq. (6.37),  $\omega$  is a relaxation factor whose value is usually found by trial-and-error experimentation for a given problem. If  $\omega > 1$ , the above process is called *successive overrelaxation*. If  $\omega < 1$ , the process is called *underrelaxation* and is usually used when the convergence behavior is oscillating back and forth between some value. For overrelaxation, generally the value of  $\omega$  is bounded by  $1 < \omega < 2$  (see Ref. 13). In any event, the use of Eq. (6.37) with an appropriate value for  $\omega$  can reduce the number of iterations necessary to achieve convergence and therefore reduce the computational time—in some problems by a factor of 30 according to Ref. 13.

## 6.6 ASPECTS OF NUMERICAL DISSIPATION AND DISPERSION; ARTIFICIAL VISCOSITY

Many aspects of life are never quite what they appear to be at first impression—CFD is no different. For example, in the present chapter we have discussed several techniques for the numerical solution of the governing flow equations. We have approached these discussions, as well as those in previous chapters, from the point of view that numerical solutions of the Euler or Navier-Stokes equations are being obtained within an accuracy determined by the truncation and round-off errors. The focus has been on the fact that we are solving some *specific partial differential equations* but that the numerical solutions are always somewhat in error.

There is a different perspective that we can take on this matter, one with a shade of difference compared to our previous discussions. For simplicity, let us consider a model equation, namely, the one-dimensional wave equation given by

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + a \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (6.38)$$

with  $a > 0$ . We consider (6.38) to be the *specific* partial differential equation that we want to solve numerically. Let us choose to discretize this equation by using a first-order forward difference in time and a first-order rearward difference in space. Then Eq. (6.38) is represented by the following difference equation:

$$\frac{u_i^{t+\Delta t} - u_i^t}{\Delta t} + a \frac{u_i^t - u_{i-1}^t}{\Delta x} = 0 \quad (6.39)$$

From our previous perspective, a solution of Eq. (6.39) represents a numerical solution of Eq. (6.38) within a certain accuracy as determined by the truncation and round-off errors. From our discussions in Chap. 4, we know that the accuracy of Eq. (6.39) is given by  $O(\Delta t, \Delta x)$ . Let us now take a slightly different point of view. To help establish this view, we replace  $u_i^{t+\Delta t}$  and  $u_{i-1}^t$  in Eq. (6.39) with Taylor series expansions as follows:

$$u_i^{t+\Delta t} = u_i^t + \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \right)_i^t \Delta t + \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \right)_i^t \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{2} + \left( \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} \right)_i^t \frac{(\Delta t)^3}{6} + \dots \quad (6.40)$$

$$u_{i-1}^t = u_i^t - \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)_i^t \Delta x + \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right)_i^t \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2} - \left( \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \right)_i^t \frac{(\Delta x)^3}{6} + \dots \quad (6.41)$$

Substituting Eqs. (6.40) and (6.41) into (6.39), we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[ \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \right)_i^t + \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \right)_i^t \frac{\Delta t}{2} + \left( \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} \right)_i^t \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{6} + \dots \right] \\ & + a \left[ \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)_i^t - \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right)_i^t \frac{\Delta x}{2} + \left( \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \right)_i^t \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{6} + \dots \right] = 0 \quad (6.42) \end{aligned}$$

Rearranging Eq. (6.42), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \right)_i^t + a \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)_i^t &= - \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} \right)_i^t \frac{\Delta t}{2} - \left( \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} \right)_i^t \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{6} \\ &+ \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right)_i^t \frac{a \Delta x}{2} - \left( \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \right)_i^t \frac{a (\Delta x)^2}{6} + \dots \quad (6.43) \end{aligned}$$

Pause for a moment and examine Eq. (6.43). The left-hand side is exactly the left-hand side of the original partial differential equation given by Eq. (6.38); the right-hand side of Eq. (6.43) is the truncation error associated with the difference equation given by Eq. (6.39). Clearly, this truncation error is  $O(\Delta t, \Delta x)$ . Let us now replace the time derivatives on the right-hand side of Eq. (6.43) with  $x$  derivatives as follows. First, differentiate Eq. (6.43) with respect to  $t$ . (We will drop the subscript  $i$  and superscript  $t$ , since we know that all derivatives are being evaluated at point  $i$  and at time  $t$ .)

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} + a \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial t} &= - \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} \frac{\Delta t}{2} - \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial t^4} \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{6} \\ &+ \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial t} \frac{a \Delta x}{2} - \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^3 \partial t} \frac{a (\Delta x)^2}{6} + \dots \quad (6.44) \end{aligned}$$

Also, differentiate Eq. (6.43) with respect to  $x$  and multiply by  $a$ .

$$a \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t \partial x} + a^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = -\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^2 \partial x} \frac{a \Delta t}{2} - \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial t^3 \partial x} \frac{a(\Delta t)^2}{6} + \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \frac{a^2 \Delta x}{2} - \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^4} \frac{a^2 (\Delta x)^2}{6} + \dots \quad (6.45)$$

Subtracting Eq. (6.45) from (6.44), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} &= a^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} \frac{\Delta t}{2} - \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial t^4} \frac{(\Delta t)^2}{6} + \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial t} \frac{a \Delta x}{2} \\ &\quad - \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^3 \partial t} \frac{a(\Delta x)^2}{6} + \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^2 \partial x} \frac{a \Delta t}{2} + \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial t^3 \partial x} \frac{a(\Delta t)^2}{6} \\ &\quad - \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \frac{a^2 \Delta x}{2} + \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial x^4} \frac{a^2 (\Delta x)^2}{6} + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (6.46)$$

We can express Eq. (6.46) in a more compact form by displaying only the first-order terms, i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} &= a^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\Delta t}{2} \left[ -\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} + a \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^2 \partial x} + O(\Delta t) \right] \\ &\quad + \frac{\Delta x}{2} \left[ a \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial t} - a^2 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} + O(\Delta x) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (6.47)$$

Equation (6.47) provides the expression for  $\partial^2 u / \partial t^2$  which is to be substituted for the first term on the right-hand side of Eq. (6.43). Before carrying out this substitution, however, let us treat the second term on the right-hand side of Eq. (6.43), namely, the third time derivative. We do this by differentiating Eq. (6.47) with respect to time, yielding

$$\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} = a^2 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial t} + O(\Delta t, \Delta x) \quad (6.48)$$

Differentiating Eq. (6.45) with respect to  $x$  and multiplying by  $a$ , we have

$$a^2 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial t} + a^3 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} = O(\Delta t, \Delta x) \quad (6.49)$$

Adding Eqs. (6.48) and (6.49), we have

$$\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} = -a^3 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} + O(\Delta t, \Delta x) \quad (6.50)$$

Equation (6.50) provides an expression for the third time derivative to be inserted into both Eqs. (6.47) and (6.43). Returning to Eq. (6.47), we see two mixed derivatives with respect to  $t$  and  $x$  that must be treated. Differentiating Eq. (6.47) with respect to  $x$ , we have

$$\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3 \partial x} = a^2 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} + O(\Delta t, \Delta x) \quad (6.51)$$

Also, rearranging Eq. (6.48), we have

$$\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial t} = \frac{1}{a^2} \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial t^3} + O(\Delta t, \Delta x) \quad (6.52)$$

Substituting Eq. (6.50) into (6.52), we have

$$\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial t} = -a \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} + O(\Delta t, \Delta x) \quad (6.53)$$

Substituting Eqs. (6.50), (6.51) and (6.53) into (6.47), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} &= a^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\Delta t}{2} \left[ a^3 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} + a^3 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} + O(\Delta t, \Delta x) \right] \\ &\quad + \frac{\Delta x}{2} \left[ -a^2 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} - a^2 \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} + O(\Delta t, \Delta x) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (6.54)$$

Substituting Eqs. (6.54) and (6.50) into (6.43), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + a \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} &= -\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \frac{a^2 \Delta t}{2} - \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \frac{a^3 (\Delta t)^2}{2} + \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \frac{a^2 (\Delta x)(\Delta t)}{2} \\ &\quad + \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \frac{a^3 (\Delta t)^2}{6} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \frac{a \Delta x}{2} - \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \frac{a (\Delta x)^2}{6} \\ &\quad + O[(\Delta t)^3, (\Delta t)^2(\Delta x), (\Delta t)(\Delta x)^2, (\Delta x)^3] \end{aligned} \quad (6.55)$$

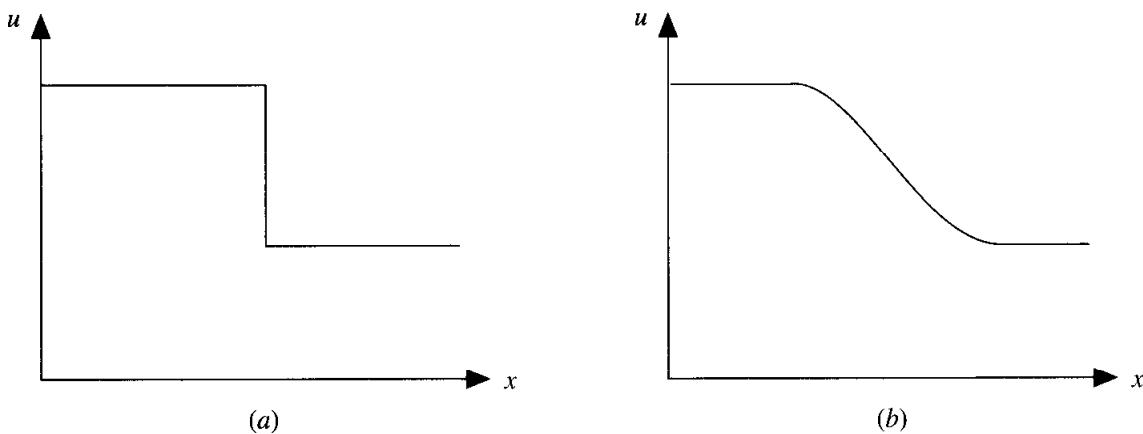
A rearrangement of Eq. (6.55), along with the definition of  $v$  as  $v = a \Delta t / \Delta x$ , yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + a \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} &= \frac{a \Delta x}{2} (1 - v) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{a (\Delta x)^2}{6} (3v - 2v^2 - 1) \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} \\ &\quad + O[(\Delta t)^3, (\Delta t)^2(\Delta x), (\Delta t)(\Delta x)^2, (\Delta x)^3] \end{aligned} \quad (6.56)$$

Note that Eq. (6.56) is a *partial differential equation* in its own right, containing the terms  $\partial u / \partial t$ ,  $\partial u / \partial x$ ,  $\partial^2 u / \partial x^2$ ,  $\partial^3 u / \partial x^3$ , etc. Finally, with Eq. (6.56) in mind, we are ready to emphasize the different perspective mentioned at the beginning of this long paragraph. Previously, we viewed an exact solution (no round-off error) of the difference equation, Eq. (6.39), as constituting a numerical solution of the *original* partial differential equation given by Eq. (6.38) but with an error given by the truncation error. However, there is another way of looking at this matter. In reality, the exact solution (no round-off error) of the difference equation, Eq. (6.39), constitutes an *exact solution* (no truncation error) of a *different* partial differential equation, namely, Eq. (6.56). Eq. (6.56) is called the *modified equation*. To repeat, when the difference equation, Eq. (6.39), is used to obtain a numerical solution of the original partial differential equation, Eq. (6.38), in reality this difference equation is solving quite a different partial differential equation—it is solving Eq. (6.56) instead of Eq. (6.38).

The derivation and display of the modified equation, as obtained above, is of more importance than just establishing a different perspective on the meaning of the

exact solution of a difference equation. Equation (6.56) also gives us some information on the *behavior* to be expected of the numerical solution of the difference equation. For example, examine Eq. (6.56) closely. On the right-hand side there is a term involving  $\partial^2 u / \partial x^2$ . For a moment, shut out all other considerations from your mind and just visualize the governing equations for a viscous flow, namely, the Navier-Stokes equations given by Eqs. (2.58a) to (2.58c). These equations have terms such as  $\partial^2 u / \partial x^2$  multiplied by the viscosity coefficient  $\mu$ . These terms represent the dissipative aspect of the physical viscosity on the flow. Now return to Eq. (6.56). The term  $\partial^2 u / \partial x^2$  appearing here acts as a dissipative term, much like the viscous terms in the Navier-Stokes equations. However, in Eq. (6.56), this term is a consequence of the numerical discretization embodied in the difference equation, Eq. (6.39), and is therefore purely of *numerical origin*, with no physical significance. For this reason, the appearance of this term (and those like it) within the framework of a numerical solution is called *numerical dissipation*. In turn, the coefficient in this term, such as  $(a \Delta x/2)(1 - v)$  in Eq. (6.56), acts much like the physical viscosity and is therefore called the *artificial viscosity*. In CFD, the terms “numerical dissipation” and “artificial viscosity” are frequently used interchangeably and generally connote the diffusive behavior of a numerical solution—a behavior that is purely numerical in origin. For example, the original partial differential equation with which we began this section, Eq. (6.38), describes the propagation of a wave through an inviscid fluid in one dimension. In reality, if we start at time zero with an exact discontinuous wave as sketched in Fig. 6.5, then during the course of the solution the effect of numerical dissipation will be to spread out this wave in much the same way that real physical viscosity would spread the wave. Of course, the reason why the wave will spread in our numerical solution has nothing to do with physical viscosity; rather, it has everything to do with the fact that the exact numerical solution of the difference equation, Eq. (6.39), is a solution of Eq. (6.56) instead of the original partial differential equation given by Eq. (6.38), and Eq. (6.56) has some terms on the right-hand side that play the role of

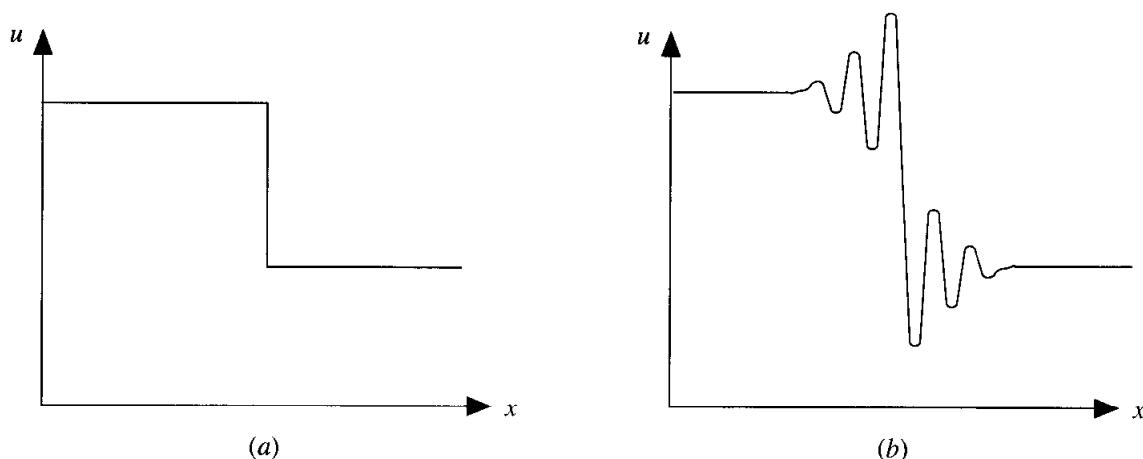
**FIG. 6.5**

Effect of numerical dissipation. (a) Initial wave at time  $t = 0$ . (b) Shape of the wave at some time  $t > 0$  from the numerical solution as affected by numerical dissipation.

dissipation. Many algorithms used in CFD contain this effect of artificial viscosity implicitly in their procedure.

Somewhat related to the above concepts is the effect of *numerical dispersion*, which creates a numerical behavior different from that of numerical dissipation. Dispersion results in a distortion of the propagation of different phases of a wave, which shows up as “wiggles” in front of and behind the wave. This is illustrated schematically in Fig. 6.6. One of the values of deriving and displaying the modified equation associated with a given difference equation is that the relative behavior of diffusion and dispersion can be assessed. Numerical dissipation is the direct result of the even-order derivatives on the right-hand side of the modified equation ( $\partial^2 u / \partial x^2$ ,  $\partial^4 u / \partial x^4$ , etc.), and numerical dispersion is the direct result of the odd-order derivatives ( $\partial^3 u / \partial x^3$ , etc.). Since the right-hand side of the modified equation is the truncation error, we can state that generally when the leading term of the truncation error is an even-order derivative, the numerical solution will display mainly dissipative behavior, and when the leading term is an odd-order derivative, the solution will display mainly dispersive behavior.

We come now to the bottom line of the discussion in this section. We have shown that artificial viscosity can appear within a given algorithm simply because of the form of the modified equation—such artificial viscosity is said to be present implicitly in the numerical solution. Although such artificial viscosity compromises the accuracy of a solution (which is a bad thing), it always serves to *improve* the *stability* of a solution (which is a good thing.) Indeed, for many applications in CFD, the solution does not have enough artificial viscosity implicitly in the algorithm, and the solution will go unstable unless more artificial viscosity is added *explicitly* to the calculation. This raises one of the most perplexing aspects of CFD. As you intentionally add more artificial viscosity to a numerical solution, you are increasing the probability of making the solution more inaccurate. On the other hand, by adding this artificial viscosity, you are at least able to obtain a stable solution, whereas without it, in some cases no solution would be attainable. (Flow problems with very strong gradients, such as shock waves, wherein such shock waves are



**FIG. 6.6**

Effect of numerical dispersion. (a) Initial wave at  $t = 0$ . (b) Shape of the wave at some time  $t > 0$  from the numerical solution as affected by numerical dispersion.

*captured* within the flow by using a shock-capturing approach, are particularly sensitive and usually require the explicit addition of artificial viscosity for a stable and smooth solution.) Is any solution, no matter how inaccurate, better than no solution at all? The answer to this question for any given problem is a matter of circumstance and judgment. It is this author's opinion, backed up by the collective experience of the CFD community, that in those applications where the use of artificial viscosity has been necessary, the *judicious* use of this quantity has led, for the most part, to reasonable and sometimes very accurate numerical solutions. However, you have to know what you are doing in this regard.

Let us examine a specific form of artificial viscosity which has been reasonably successful in many applications and which has been used frequently in connection with MacCormack's technique described in Sec. 6.3. For purposes of illustration, assume that we are dealing with the governing flow equations in the form of Eq. (2.93), written below for an unsteady, two-dimensional flow.

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} + J \quad (6.57)$$

where  $U$  is the solution vector,  $U = [\rho, \rho u, \rho v, \rho(e + V^2/2)]$ . At each step of the time-marching solution, a small amount of artificial viscosity can be added in the following form:

$$S_{i,j}^t = \frac{C_x |p_{i+1,j}^t - 2p_{i,j}^t + p_{i-1,j}^t|}{p_{i+1,j}^t + 2p_{i,j}^t + p_{i-1,j}^t} (U_{i+1,j}^t - 2U_{i,j}^t + U_{i-1,j}^t) + \frac{C_y |p_{i,j+1}^t - 2p_{i,j}^t + p_{i,j-1}^t|}{p_{i,j+1}^t + 2p_{i,j}^t + p_{i,j-1}^t} (U_{i,j+1}^t - 2U_{i,j}^t + U_{i,j-1}^t) \quad (6.58)$$

Equation (6.58) is a fourth-order numerical dissipation expression; it is designed to "tweak" the calculations by a magnitude equivalent to a fourth-order term in the truncation error; i.e., it is equivalent to adding an extra fourth-order term to the right-hand side of the modified equations for the system of difference equations which are being solved. The fourth-order nature of Eq. (6.58) can be seen in the numerators, which are products of two second-order central difference expressions for second derivatives. In Eq. (6.58),  $C_x$  and  $C_y$  are two arbitrarily specified parameters; typical values of  $C_x$  and  $C_y$  range from 0.01 to 0.3. The choice is up to you and is usually determined after some experimentation with different values, assessing their effect on the particular calculation. In Eq. (6.58),  $U$  denotes the individual elements of the solutions vector, taken separately. To see this more clearly, assume that we are using MacCormack's technique. On the predictor step,  $S_{i,j}^t$  is evaluated based on the known quantities at time  $t$ ; on the corrector step, the

values on the right-hand side of Eq. (6.58) are the predicted (barred) quantities, with the corresponding value of  $S_{i,j}^t$  so obtained denoted by  $\bar{S}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{S}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = & \frac{C_x |\bar{p}_{i+1,j}^{t+\Delta t} - 2\bar{p}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} + \bar{p}_{i-1,j}^{t+\Delta t}|}{\bar{p}_{i+1,j}^{t+\Delta t} + 2\bar{p}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} + \bar{p}_{i-1,j}^{t+\Delta t}} (\bar{U}_{i+1,j}^{t+\Delta t} - 2\bar{U}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} + \bar{U}_{i-1,j}^{t+\Delta t}) \\ & + \frac{C_y |\bar{p}_{i,j+1}^{t+\Delta t} - 2\bar{p}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} + \bar{p}_{i,j-1}^{t+\Delta t}|}{\bar{p}_{i,j+1}^{t+\Delta t} + 2\bar{p}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} + \bar{p}_{i,j-1}^{t+\Delta t}} (\bar{U}_{i,j+1}^{t+\Delta t} - 2\bar{U}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} + \bar{U}_{i,j-1}^{t+\Delta t})\end{aligned}\quad (6.59)$$

The values of  $S_{i,j}^t$  and  $\bar{S}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$  are added to MacCormack's technique at the following stages of the calculation. Using the calculation of density from the continuity equation as an example, calculate  $S_{i,j}^t$  from Eq. (6.58) with  $U = \rho$ . Then add the artificial viscosity term to Eq. (6.58), which now becomes

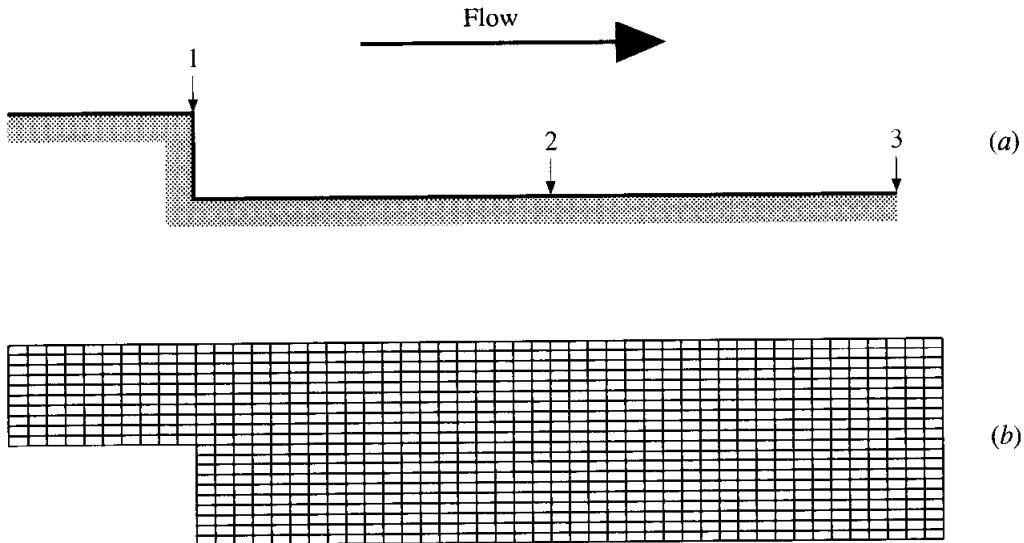
$$\bar{\rho}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = \rho_{i,j}^t + \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{i,j}^t \Delta t + S_{i,j}^t \quad (6.60)$$

On the corrector step, the corrected value of density at time  $t + \Delta t$  is obtained from Eq. (6.13) with the artificial viscosity  $\bar{S}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t}$  calculated from Eq. (6.59) added as an extra term, that is,

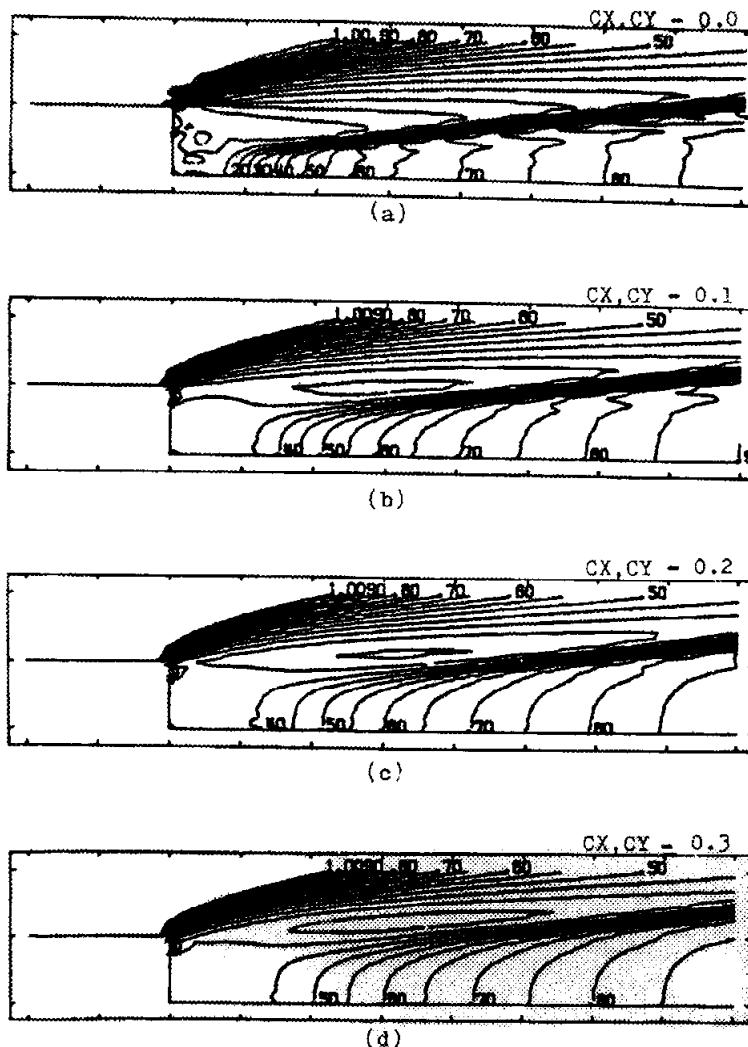
$$\rho_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} = \rho_{i,j}^t + \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t + \bar{S}_{i,j}^{t+\Delta t} \quad (6.61)$$

*Note:* There is nothing sacrosanct about the form for artificial viscosity expressed by Eqs. (6.58) and (6.59). It happens to be an empirically based expression which is given here just for the sake of discussion.

To what extent does the addition of artificial viscosity affect the accuracy of a problem? There is no pat answer to this question; it depends in a large part on the nature of the flow problem itself. However, some feel for the extent to which artificial viscosity can impact the solution of a flow problem can be obtained from Ref. 44; there, a series of numerical experiments are reported wherein the value of artificial viscosity was progressively varied and the resulting effects on the flow-field variables were examined. Some of the results are reviewed here so that you can obtain some of this feel. The flow problem is that of the supersonic viscous flow over a rearward-facing step, as shown in Fig. 6.7a. The finite-difference grid used for this study is shown in Fig. 6.7b. The flow field is calculated by means of a time-marching numerical solution of the Navier-Stokes equations using the MacCormack technique described in Sec. 6.3. The expression for artificial viscosity is given by Eqs. (6.58) and (6.59), and various calculations are made with values of  $C_x$  and  $C_y$  ranging from 0 to 0.3. The calculations are made for a freestream Mach number of 4.08 and a Reynolds number (based on step height) of 849. The step height is 0.51 cm, and the calculations are made for a surface which extends 12.5 cm upstream of the step and 2.04 cm downstream of the step. A calorically perfect gas with the ratio of specific heats equal to 1.31 is used (this is to partially simulate the "effective gamma" for partially dissociated air in a supersonic combustion ramjet environment). Figure 6.8 shows the computed pressure contours for the flow, using MacCormack's technique. Here, four different contour pictures are shown, one each

**FIG. 6.7**(a) Rearward-facing step geometry. (b)  $51 \times 21$  grid used for the calculations.

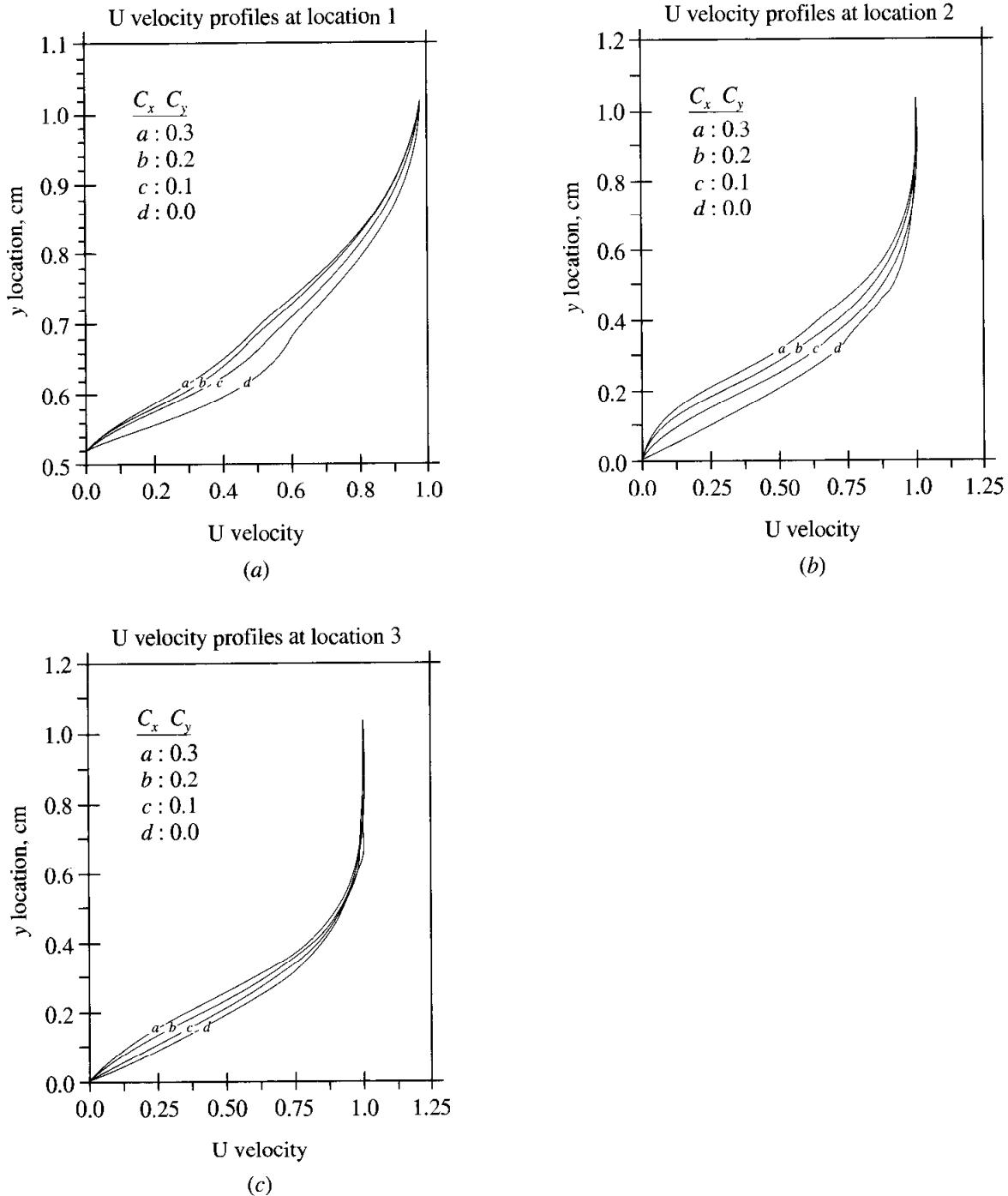
for a different value of  $C_x$  and  $C_y$  ranging from 0 to 0.3. At the top of Fig. 6.8 we see the computed flow field using zero artificial viscosity. The frame immediately below it gives the results wherein  $C_x = C_y = 0.1$ . The next frame corresponds to  $C_x = C_y = 0.2$ , and the final frame has  $C_x = C_y = 0.3$ . The expansion wave from the top corner and the recompression shock wave downstream of the step can be seen in all frames. However, careful examination of Fig. 6.8 shows that as  $C_x$  and  $C_y$  are progressively increased (the magnitude of the artificial viscosity is increased), the quantitative and qualitative aspects of the flow are perturbed. In Fig. 6.8a, where zero artificial viscosity is used, the recompression shock wave is fairly sharp and distinct, but there are wiggles ahead of and behind the shock. It is not easy to obtain a stable, converged solution in this case; the calculations are sensitive, and some “nursing” of the program is required. As the magnitude of the artificial viscosity is progressively increased, as shown in Fig. 6.8b to d, the solution behaves in a more stable fashion, but the structures of the resulting steady-state flows are somewhat different. This can be seen by comparing Fig. 6.8a and d; in Fig. 6.8d with heavy artificial viscosity, the recompression shock has been smoothed by the increased numerical dissipation. In contrast to Fig. 6.8a, we see no wiggles in Fig. 6.8d, and the shock wave is much more diffuse, while at the same time its location has translated upward. In Fig. 6.7a, three different axial locations are denoted by the numbers 1, 2, and 3. The velocity profiles (velocity versus vertical location  $y$ ) for these three locations are shown in Fig. 6.9a to c. In each figure, the profiles are given for four different values of the artificial viscosity. Note that the velocity profiles are affected by artificial viscosity. Finally, the wall pressure distribution—the variation of pressure on the wall versus  $x$  location measured along the surface—is given in Fig. 6.10. Here,  $x = 1$  cm is the location of the step, and the pressure distributions shown are those downstream of the step. The pressure at  $x = 1$  cm is essentially the base pressure, i.e., the pressure on the vertical step itself. Four different curves are shown in Fig. 6.10, each one corresponding to a different value

**FIG. 6.8**

Numerical experiment on the effects of artificial viscosity. Pressure contours calculated with values of the dissipation factors  $C_x$  and  $C_y$  ranging from 0 to 0.3. The freestream conditions are  $M_\infty = 4.08$ ,  $T_\infty = 1046$  K, ratio of specific heats  $\gamma = 1.31$ , and Reynolds number = 849 (based on a step height of 0.51 cm). The wall temperature  $T_W = 0.2957T_\infty$ .

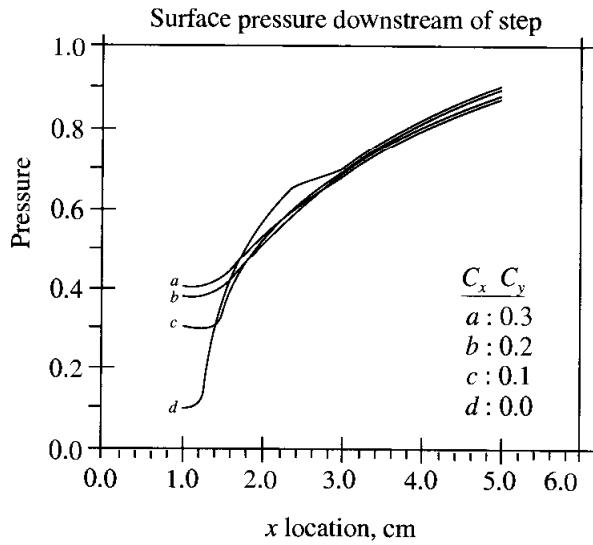
of artificial viscosity. Although the pressure distribution farther downstream of the step is relatively insensitive to the amount of artificial viscosity, the base pressure itself is quite sensitive to the artificial viscosity.

*Note:* The impact of artificial viscosity on the qualitative aspects of a flow solution is like that of the physical viscosity  $\mu$ . By increasing the artificial viscosity, shock waves are thickened and smoothed, just like an increased physical coefficient of viscosity would cause. The details of separated flow regions are affected by artificial viscosity, just like an increase in physical viscosity would cause. By adding artificial viscosity, we are changing the overall entropy level of the flow field, just as physical viscosity would cause. Finally, by increasing the artificial viscosity in a numerical solution, we are in effect reducing the effective Reynolds number of the flow, just as an increase in  $\mu$  would cause.

**FIG. 6.9**

Numerical experiment on the effects of artificial viscosity. Velocity profiles at the three locations marked in Fig. 6.7a. Same freestream conditions as listed in Fig. 6.8. The velocity given here is the nondimensional value referenced to freestream velocity.

The purpose of this section has been to introduce you to the concepts of numerical dissipation and the use of artificial viscosity for the stabilization and smoothing of some numerical solutions. Many applications in CFD do not require the addition of artificial viscosity. On the other hand, artificial viscosity, both implicit in an algorithm and explicitly added as needed, is a fact of life in many other CFD solutions. Such matters still remain a highly empirical aspect of CFD

**FIG. 6.10**

Numerical experiment on the effects of artificial viscosity. Surface pressure distributions downstream of the step. Pressure given here is the nondimensional pressure referenced to freestream pressure. Same freestream conditions as listed in Fig. 6.8.

solutions; you will usually want to play around with various amounts of artificial viscosity until you are satisfied with the quality of the solution. Finally, this rather arbitrary, almost capricious aspect of CFD has been a thorn in the side of practitioners for the past several decades. However, in the past few years, innovative methods in applied mathematics have addressed the problem of artificial viscosity in an intelligent fashion, leading to new algorithms which automatically use only the proper amount of artificial viscosity only in regions where it is needed. An example is the TVD (total-variation-diminishing) concept. Such aspects are discussed in Chap. 11. As you proceed further with your studies of CFD in the future, you will most likely reap the benefits of such mathematical advancements.

## 6.7 THE ALTERNATING-DIRECTION-IMPLICIT (ADI) TECHNIQUE

Let us return to the consideration of implicit solutions as exemplified by the Crank-Nicolson technique, introduced in Sec. 4.4. In this section, an example of a marching solution is given; Eq. (3.28) is used as a model equation with  $t$  as the marching variable. There exists only one other independent variable in the equation, namely,  $x$ . As long as we are dealing with linear equations, the implicit solutions using the Crank-Nicolson scheme are directly obtained from the use of Thomas' algorithm (see App. A). This is the case in Sec. 4.4, where a finite-difference representation of Eq. (3.28) is given in the tridiagonal form by Eq. (4.42). This tridiagonal form is readily solved by the use of Thomas' algorithm.

Note that the difference equation is linear. In Sec. 4.4, the original partial differential equation, Eq. (3.28), is linear, hence leading to a linear difference equation. In cases governed by nonlinear partial differential equations, a more general idea for obtaining linear difference equations is discussed in Sec. 11.3.1. When solving an inherently nonlinear problem by means of an implicit scheme, the matter of linearizing the difference equations is of utmost importance so that Thomas' algorithm (or some equivalent) can be used to expedite the calculations.

Such matters are discussed in Sec. 11.3.1; it is not necessary for us to elaborate further in this section.

The main thrust of the present section is concerned with the other aspect that destroys the tridiagonal nature of the difference equations, namely, multidimensionality involving more than one variable in addition to the marching variable. To see this more clearly, consider a model equation based on the unsteady, two-dimensional heat conduction equation, Eq. (3.27), written in two spatial dimensions as follows:

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \alpha \left( \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial y^2} \right) \quad (6.62)$$

Paralleling the Crank-Nicolson development in Sec. 4.4, Eq. (6.62) can be written in finite-difference form as

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{T_{i,j}^{n+1} - T_{i,j}^n}{\Delta t} &= \alpha \frac{\frac{1}{2}(T_{i+1,j}^{n+1} + T_{i-1,j}^n) + \frac{1}{2}(-2T_{i,j}^{n+1} - 2T_{i,j}^n) + \frac{1}{2}(T_{i-1,j}^{n+1} + T_{i-1,j}^n)}{(\Delta x)^2} \\ &\quad + \alpha \frac{\frac{1}{2}(T_{i,j+1}^{n+1} + T_{i,j-1}^n) + \frac{1}{2}(-2T_{i,j}^{n+1} - 2T_{i,j}^n) + \frac{1}{2}(T_{i,j-1}^{n+1} + T_{i,j-1}^n)}{(\Delta y)^2} \end{aligned} \quad (6.63)$$

Equation (6.63) is the equivalent in  $xy$  space to the one-dimensional form given by Eq. (4.40). However, unlike Eq. (4.40) which reduces to the tridiagonal form given by Eq. (4.42), Eq. (6.63) contains five unknowns, namely,  $T_{i+1,j}^{n+1}$ ,  $T_{i,j}^{n+1}$ ,  $T_{i-1,j}^{n+1}$ ,  $T_{i,j+1}^{n+1}$ , and  $T_{i,j-1}^{n+1}$ , where the last two unknowns prevent a tridiagonal form. Hence, Thomas' algorithm can not be used. Although matrix methods exist which can solve Eq. (6.63), the computer time is much longer than that for a tridiagonal system. As a result, there is a distinct advantage in developing a scheme that will allow Eq. (6.62) to be solved by means of tridiagonal forms only. Such a scheme, namely, the alternating-direction-implicit (ADI) scheme, is the main subject of this section.

Recall that Eq. (6.62) is being solved by means of a marching technique; that is,  $T(t + \Delta t)$  is being obtained in some fashion from the known values of  $T(t)$ . Let us achieve the solution of  $T(t + \Delta t)$  in a *two-step process*, where intermediate values of  $T$  are found at an intermediate time,  $t + \Delta t/2$ , as follows. In the first step over a time interval  $\Delta t/2$ , replace the spatial derivatives in Eq. (6.62) with central differences, where only the  $x$  derivative is treated implicitly. That is, from Eq. (6.62),

$$\frac{T_{i,j}^{n+1/2} - T_{i,j}^n}{\Delta t/2} = \alpha \frac{T_{i+1,j}^{n+1/2} - 2T_{i,j}^{n+1/2} + T_{i-1,j}^{n+1/2}}{(\Delta x)^2} + \alpha \frac{T_{i,j+1}^n - 2T_{i,j}^n + T_{i,j-1}^n}{(\Delta y)^2} \quad (6.64)$$

Equation (6.64) reduces to the tridiagonal form

$$AT_{i-1,j}^{n+1/2} - BT_{i,j}^{n+1/2} + AT_{i+1,j}^{n+1/2} = K_i \quad (6.65)$$

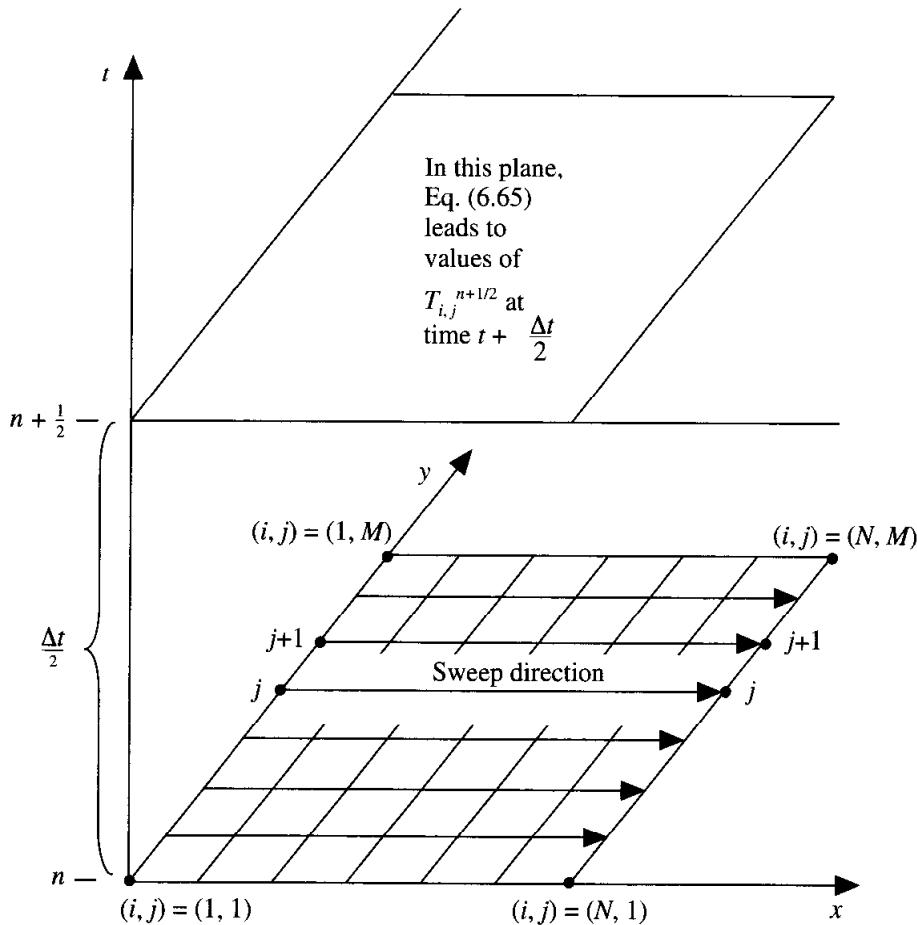
where

$$A = \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta x)^2}$$

$$B = 1 + \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2}$$

$$K_i = -T_{i,j}^n - \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta y)^2} (T_{i,j+1}^n - 2T_{i,j}^n + T_{i,j-1}^n)$$

Equation (6.65) yields a solution for  $T_{i,j}^{n+1/2}$  for all  $i$ , keeping  $j$  fixed, using Thomas' algorithm. That is, examining Fig. 6.11, at a fixed value of  $j$ , we "sweep" in the  $x$  direction, using Eq. (6.65) to solve for  $T_{i,j}^{n+1/2}$  for all values of  $i$ . If there are  $N$  grid points in the  $x$  direction, then we sweep from  $i = 1$  to  $N$ . This sweep utilizes Thomas's algorithm once. This calculation is then repeated at the next row of grid points designated by  $j + 1$ . That is, replace  $j$  in Eq. (6.65) by  $j + 1$  and solve for  $T_{i,j+1}^{n+1/2}$  for all values of  $i$  from 1 to  $N$ , using Thomas' algorithm. If there are  $M$  grid points in the  $y$  direction, this process is repeated  $M$  times; i.e., there are  $M$  sweeps in the  $x$  direction, resulting in Thomas' algorithm being used  $M$  times. This sweeping



**FIG. 6.11**

First step in the ADI process. Sweeping in the  $x$  direction to obtain  $T$  at time  $t + \Delta t/2$ .

in the  $x$  direction is shown schematically in Fig. 6.11. At the end of this step, the values of  $T$  at the intermediate time  $t + \Delta t/2$  are known at all grid points  $(i, j)$ ; that is,  $T_{i,j}^{n+1/2}$  is known at all  $(i, j)$ .

The second step of the ADI scheme takes the solution to time  $t + \Delta t$ , using the known values at time  $t + \Delta t/2$ . For this second step, the spatial derivatives in Eq. (6.62) are replaced with central differences, where the  $y$  derivative is treated implicitly. That is, from Eq. (6.62),

$$\frac{T_{i,j}^{n+1} - T_{i,j}^{n+1/2}}{\Delta t/2} = \alpha \frac{T_{i+1,j}^{n+1/2} - 2T_{i,j}^{n+1/2} + T_{i-1,j}^{n+1/2}}{(\Delta x)^2} + \alpha \frac{T_{i,j+1}^{n+1} - 2T_{i,j}^{n+1} + T_{i,j-1}^{n+1}}{(\Delta y)^2} \quad (6.66)$$

Equation (6.66) reduces to the tridiagonal form

$$CT_{i,j+1}^{n+1} - DT_{i,j}^{n+1} + CT_{i,j-1}^{n+1} = L_j \quad (6.67)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} C &= \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta y)^2} \\ D &= 1 + \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{(\Delta y)^2} \\ L_j &= -T_{i,j}^{n+1/2} - \frac{\alpha \Delta t}{2(\Delta x)^2} (T_{i+1,j}^{n+1/2} - 2T_{i,j}^{n+1/2} + T_{i-1,j}^{n+1/2}) \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $T^{n+1/2}$  is known at all grid points from the first step. Equation (6.67) yields a solution for  $T_{i,j}^{n+1}$  for all  $j$ , keeping  $i$  fixed, using Thomas' algorithm. That is, examining Fig. 6.12, at a fixed value of  $i$ , we sweep in the  $y$  direction, using Eq. (6.67) to solve for  $T_{i,j}^{n+1}$  for all values of  $j$ , where  $j$  goes from 1 to  $M$ . This sweep utilizes Thomas's algorithm once. This calculation is then repeated at the next column of grid points designated by  $i + 1$ . That is, replace  $i$  in Eq. (6.67) by  $i + 1$  and solve for  $T_{i+1,j}^n$  for all values of  $j$  from 1 to  $M$ , using Thomas's algorithm. This process is repeated  $N$  times; i.e., there are  $N$  sweeps in the  $y$  direction, resulting in Thomas' algorithm being used  $N$  times. This sweeping in the  $y$  direction is shown schematically in Fig. 6.12. At the end of this step, the values of  $T$  at time  $t + \Delta t$  are known at all grid points  $(i, j)$ ; that is,  $T_{i,j}^{n+1}$  is known at all  $(i, j)$ .

At the end of this two-step process, the dependent variable  $T$  has been marched a value  $\Delta t$  in the direction of  $t$ . Although there are two independent spatial variables  $x$  and  $y$  in addition to the marching variable  $t$ , this marching scheme involves only tridiagonal forms, and the solution has been achieved by the repeated application of Thomas' algorithm. Because the scheme involves two steps, one in which the difference equation is implicit in  $x$  and the other in which the difference equation is implicit in  $y$ , the source of the name of the scheme—*alternating-direction-implicit*—is obvious.

The ADI scheme is second-order-accurate in  $t$ ,  $x$ , and  $y$ ; that is, the truncation error is of  $O[(\Delta t)^2, (\Delta x)^2, (\Delta y)^2]$ . See Refs. 13 to 17 for details.

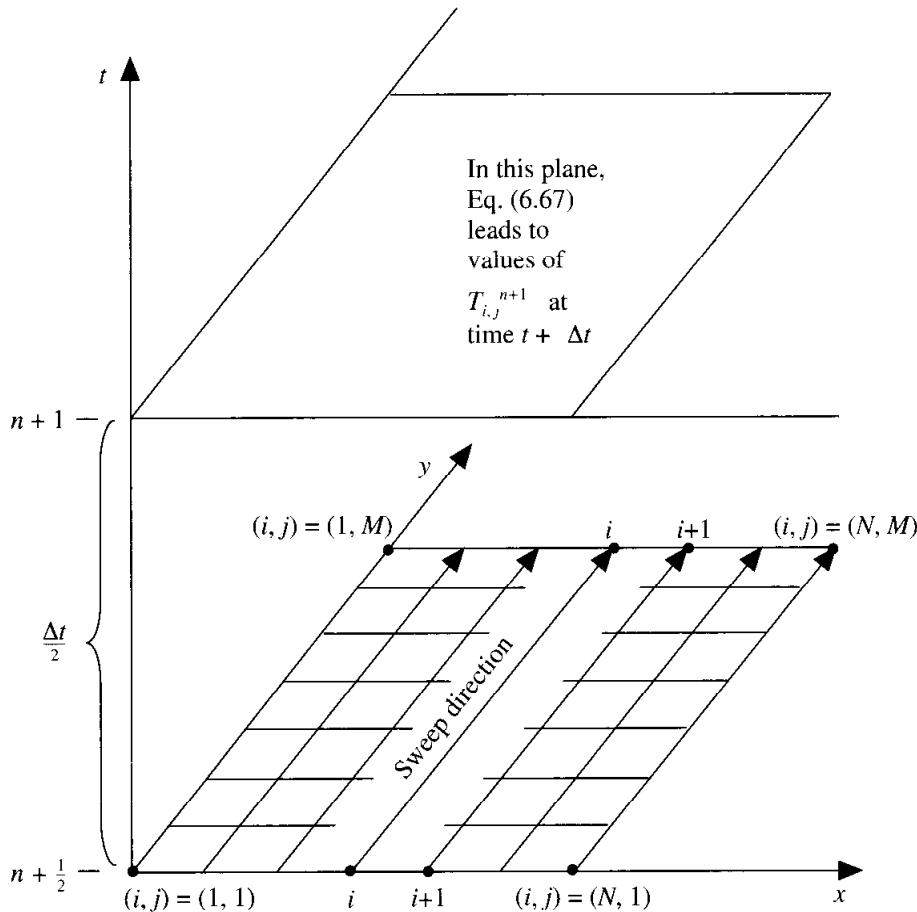


FIG. 6.12

Second step in the ADI process. Sweeping in the  $y$  direction to obtain  $T$  at time  $t + \Delta t$ .

This scheme has found application in many fluid flow problems. In the form described above, it is particularly useful for the solution of problems described by parabolic partial differential equations. Also, the scheme described above is a special form of a *general class* of schemes involving a splitting of two or more directions in an implicit solution of the governing flow equations so as to obtain tridiagonal forms. Hence, ADI can represent a general descriptor of a whole class of schemes, one of which has been described in this section. Another popular version of an ADI scheme is called *approximate factorization*; this is a more advanced topic which is discussed in Sec. 11.3.2.

## 6.8 THE PRESSURE CORRECTION TECHNIQUE: APPLICATION TO INCOMPRESSIBLE VISCOUS FLOW

A numerical technique for the solution of inviscid, incompressible flow was discussed in Sec. 6.5, namely, the relaxation technique. Inviscid, incompressible flow is governed by elliptic partial differential equations, and the relaxation technique, which is essentially an *iterative* process, is a classical numerical method for solving elliptic problems. In contrast, *viscous*, incompressible flow is governed

by the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations, which exhibit a mixed elliptic-parabolic behavior, and hence the standard relaxation technique as described in Sec. 6.5 is not particularly helpful. The purpose of the present section is to describe an iterative process called the *pressure correction technique*, which has found widespread application in the numerical solution of the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations. The pressure correction technique has been developed for practical engineering solutions by Patankar and Spalding (Ref. 67) and is discussed at length in Ref. 68. The technique is embodied in an algorithm called SIMPLE (semi-implicit method for pressure-linked equations), pioneered by Patankar and Spalding, which has found widespread application over the past 20 years for both compressible and incompressible flows. However, in the present section we will focus on the use of the pressure correction method to solve incompressible, viscous flow.

Before describing the pressure correction method, there are two considerations associated with an incompressible flow solution that need to be addressed. They are the subject of the next two subsections.

### 6.8.1 Some Comments on the Incompressible Navier-Stokes Equations

The compressible Navier-Stokes equations are derived in Chap. 2 and summarized in Sec. 2.8.1. The incompressible Navier-Stokes equations can be obtained from the compressible form simply by setting density equal to a constant. That is, with  $\rho = \text{constant}$ , Eq. (2.29) becomes

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = 0 \quad (6.68)$$

With the further assumption that  $\mu$  is constant throughout the flow, Eqs. (2.50a) to (2.50c) combined with Eqs. (2.57a) to (2.57f) become

$$\rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + 2\mu \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right) + \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) + \rho f_x \quad (6.69)$$

$$\rho \frac{Dv}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right) + 2\mu \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial y^2} + \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} \right) + \rho f_y \quad (6.70)$$

$$\rho \frac{Dw}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) + \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} \right) + 2\mu \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial z^2} + \rho f_z \quad (6.71)$$

Note that in writing Eqs. (6.69) to (6.71), the terms in Eqs. (2.57a) to (2.57f) explicitly involving  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V}$  have been set to zero due to Eq. (6.68). The fact that  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = 0$  for incompressible flow allows a further reduction of Eqs. (6.69) to (6.71), as follows.

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = 0 \quad (6.72)$$

Rearranging Eq. (6.72), we have

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = -\frac{\partial v}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \quad (6.72a)$$

Differentiating Eq. (6.72a) with respect to  $x$ , we obtain

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = -\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x \partial y} - \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x \partial y} \quad (6.73)$$

Adding  $\partial^2 u / \partial x^2$  to both sides of Eq. (6.73) and multiplying by  $\mu$ , we obtain

$$2\mu \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = \mu \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \mu \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x \partial y} - \mu \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x \partial y} \quad (6.74)$$

Substituting Eq. (6.74) for the second term on the right side of Eq. (6.69) and expanding other terms in Eq. (6.69), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = & -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \mu \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \mu \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x \partial y} - \mu \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x \partial y} + \mu \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x \partial y} \\ & + \mu \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \mu \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} + \mu \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x \partial y} + \rho f_x \end{aligned} \quad (6.75)$$

Cancelling terms in Eq. (6.75), we obtain a convenient form of the  $x$ -momentum equation for a viscous, incompressible flow as

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = & -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \mu \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} \right) + \rho f_x \\ \text{or} \quad \rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = & -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \mu \nabla^2 u + \rho f_x \end{aligned} \quad (6.76)$$

where  $\nabla^2 u$  is the laplacian of the  $x$  component of velocity,  $u$ . Equations (6.70) and (6.71) can be treated in a similar fashion. The resulting system of equations is the *incompressible Navier-Stokes equations*, summarized below.

Continuity :	$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = 0$	(6.77)
--------------	-------------------------------	--------

$x$ momentum :	$\rho \frac{Du}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \mu \nabla^2 u + \rho f_x$	(6.78)
----------------	---	--------

$y$ momentum :	$\rho \frac{Dv}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \mu \nabla^2 v + \rho f_y$	(6.79)
----------------	---	--------

$z$ momentum :	$\rho \frac{Dw}{Dt} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + \mu \nabla^2 w + \rho f_z$	(6.80)
----------------	---	--------

Note that Eqs. (6.77) to (6.80) are self-contained; they are four equations for the four dependent variables  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ , and  $p$ . Through the assumptions of  $\rho = \text{constant}$  and  $\mu = \text{constant}$ , the energy equation has been completely decoupled from the analysis. The implication here is that the continuity and momentum equations are all that are necessary to solve for the velocity and pressure fields in an incompressible flow, and that if a given problem involves heat transfer, and hence temperature

gradients exist in the flow, the temperature field can be obtained directly from the energy equation *after* the velocity and pressure fields are obtained. In this section, we will not deal with a temperature field; rather, we will assume that  $T = \text{constant}$ , which is compatible with our earlier assumption that  $\mu = \text{constant}$  [because  $\mu = f(T)$ ]. Hence, Eqs. (6.77) to (6.80) are sufficient for our discussion here.

Clearly, from the above discussion we see that the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations are derived in a straightforward fashion from the compressible Navier-Stokes equations. In turn, this might lead us to think that a *numerical* solution of the incompressible equations might be obtained in a straightforward fashion from a numerical technique fashioned for the compressible equations. Unfortunately, this is not the case. For example, if we write a computer code to solve the compressible Navier-Stokes equations using a time-marching MacCormack's technique as described in Sec. 6.3, the explicit time step  $\Delta t$  is restricted by stability conditions. An approximate stability condition for an explicit Navier-Stokes solution is given in Ref. 13 as

$$\Delta t \leq \frac{1}{|u|/\Delta x + |v|/\Delta y + a\sqrt{1/(\Delta x)^2 + 1/(\Delta y)^2}} \quad (6.81)$$

For a compressible flow, the speed of sound  $a$  is finite, and Eq. (6.81) will yield a finite value of  $\Delta t$  for the numerical solution. However, for an incompressible flow, the speed of sound is theoretically infinite, and hence Eq. (6.81) would yield  $\Delta t = 0$  for such a case. Clearly, for the numerical solution of an incompressible flow, something else must be done. This phenomenon is further reinforced by the observation that a compressible-flow CFD solution technique, when applied to a flow field where the Mach number is progressively reduced toward zero, takes progressively more time steps to converge; it is the author's experience that a compressible-flow code run for a flow which is everywhere at a local Mach number of about 0.2 or less takes a prohibitive amount of time to converge, and indeed has a tendency to be unstable at such a low Mach number.

For such reasons, in CFD, solution techniques for the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations are usually different from those used for the solution of the compressible Navier-Stokes equations. The pressure correction method, to be described shortly, transcends this difficulty; it has been used with reasonable success for compressible flow but with even more success for incompressible flow. It is an accepted and widely used technique for incompressible, viscous, CFD applications. Therefore, we focus on this method in the present section.

### 6.8.2 Some Comments on Central Differencing of the Incompressible Navier-Stokes Equations: The Need for a Staggered Grid

The incompressible continuity equation is given by Eq. (6.77), which in two dimensions is

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (6.82)$$

A central difference equation representing Eq. (6.82) is

$$\frac{u_{i+1,j} - u_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta x} + \frac{v_{i,j+1} - v_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta y} = 0 \quad (6.83)$$

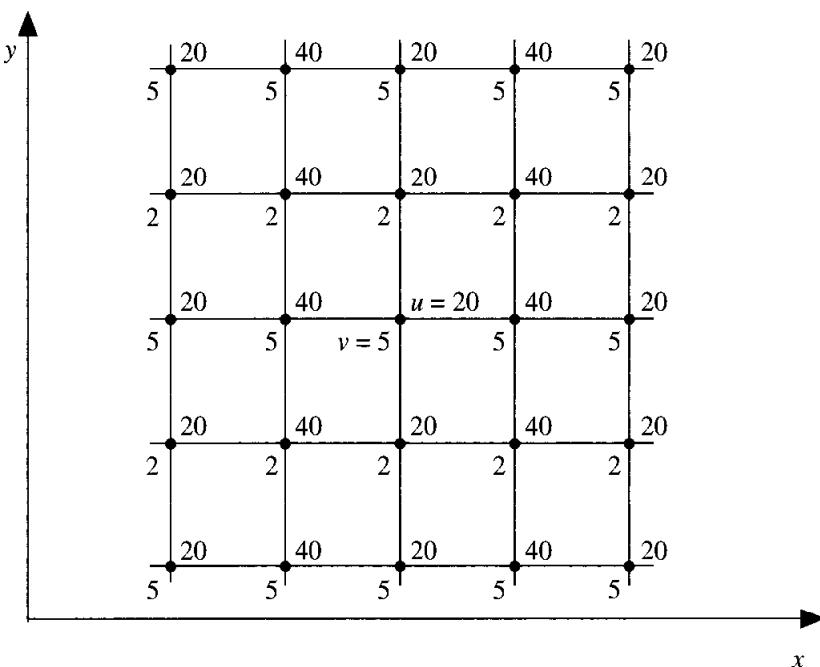
This difference equation numerically allows the checkerboard velocity distribution given in Fig. 6.13. Illustrated there is a zigzag type of distribution of both the  $x$  component and  $y$  component of the velocity,  $u$  and  $v$ , respectively. In the  $x$  direction,  $u$  varies as 20, 40, 20, 40, etc., at successive grid points, and in the  $y$  direction,  $v$  varies as 5, 2, 5, 2, etc., at successive grid points. If these numbers are substituted into Eq. (6.83), both terms are zero at every grid point; i.e., the discrete velocity distribution shown in Fig. 6.13 satisfies the central difference form of the continuity equation. On the other hand, the checkerboard velocity distribution in Fig. 6.13 is basically nonsense in terms of any real, physical flow field.

The problem described above does not occur for compressible flow, where the inclusion of the density variation in the continuity equation would generally wipe out the checkerboard pattern illustrated in Fig. 6.13 after the first time step.

A related problem is encountered in regard to central differences in the momentum equations, Eqs. (6.78) to (6.80). Imagine a two-dimensional discrete, checkerboard pressure pattern as illustrated in Fig. 6.14. In particular, consider the central difference formulation for the pressure gradients:

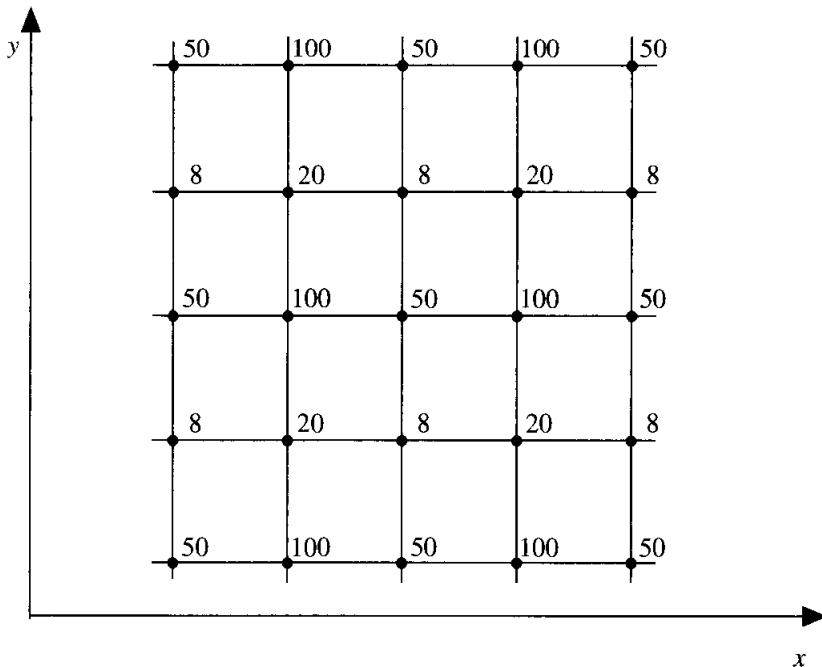
$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = \frac{p_{i+1,j} - p_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta x} \quad (6.84a)$$

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} = \frac{p_{i,j+1} - p_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta y} \quad (6.84b)$$



**FIG. 6.13**

Discrete checkerboard velocity distribution at each grid point; the number at the upper right is  $u$  and that at the lower left is  $v$ .

**FIG. 6.14**

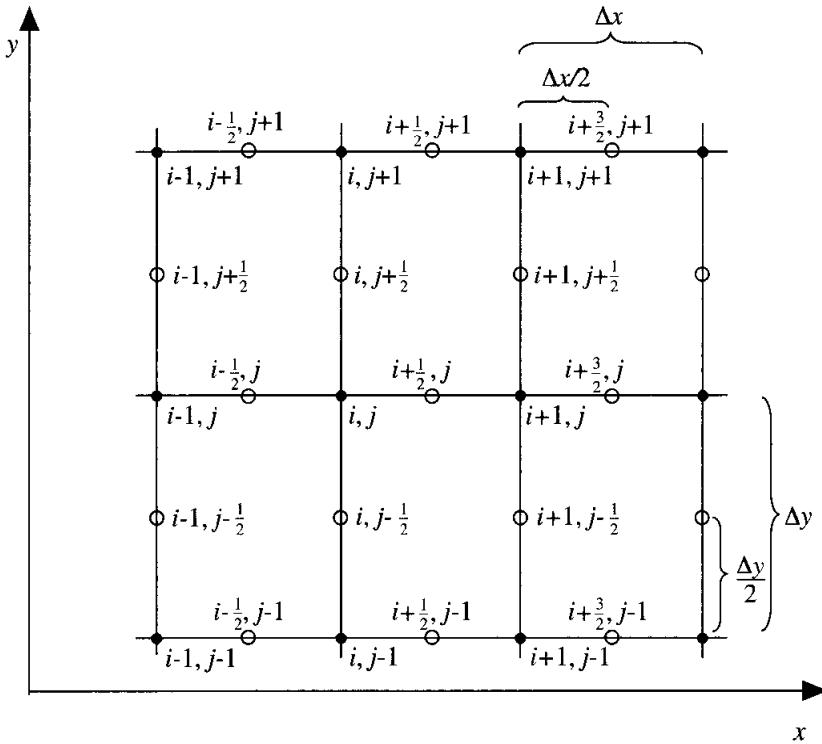
Discrete checkerboard pressure distribution.

For the checkerboard pressure distribution illustrated in Fig. 6.14, Eqs. (6.84a) and (6.84b) give zero pressure gradients in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions, respectively. Clearly, the pressure field discretized in Fig. 6.14 would not be felt by the Navier-Stokes equations; rather, the numerical solution would effectively see only a uniform pressure in  $x$  and  $y$ .

In short, when central differences are used for the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations, the resulting difference equations are of a form that, when presented with the nonsensical velocity and pressure distributions shown in Figs. 6.13 and 6.14, will tend to perpetuate these distributions. Admittedly, some early central difference algorithms for incompressible viscous flow ignored this problem, and successful solutions were still obtained, presumably because of special treatment of the boundary conditions or by some other fortuitous aspect of the numerical procedure. However, given the weakness of the central difference formulation described above, we should justifiably feel uncomfortable, and we should look for some “fix” before embarking on the solution of a given problem.

Two such fixes are suggested. If upwind differences are used instead of central differences, the problem immediately goes away. A discussion of upwind differences is given in Sec. 11.4. However, another fix is to maintain central differencing but *stagger* the grid, as described below.

A staggered grid is illustrated in Fig. 6.15. Here, the pressures are calculated at the solid grid points, labeled  $(i - 1, j)$ ,  $(i, j)$ ,  $(i + 1, j)$ ,  $(i, j + 1)$ ,  $(i, j - 1)$ , etc., and the velocities are calculated at the open grid points, labeled  $(i - \frac{1}{2}, j)$ ,  $(i + \frac{1}{2}, j)$ ,  $(i, j + \frac{1}{2})$ ,  $(i, j - \frac{1}{2})$ , etc. Specifically,  $u$  is calculated at points  $(i - \frac{1}{2}, j)$ ,  $(i + \frac{1}{2}, j)$ ,



**FIG. 6.15**  
Staggered grid.

etc., and  $v$  is calculated at different points  $(i, j + \frac{1}{2})$ ,  $(i, j - \frac{1}{2})$ , etc. The key feature here is that pressures and velocities are calculated at *different* grid points. In Fig. 6.15, the open grid points are shown equidistant between the solid grid points, but this is not a necessity. An advantage of this staggered grid is, for example, that when  $u_{i+1/2, j}$  is calculated, a central difference for  $\partial p/\partial x$  yields  $(p_{i+1, j} - p_{i, j})/\Delta x$ ; that is, the pressure gradient is based on *adjacent* pressure points, which eliminates the possibility of a checkerboard pressure pattern as sketched in Fig. 6.14. Also, a central difference expression for the continuity equation, Eq. (6.82), centered around point  $(i, j)$  becomes

$$\frac{u_{i+1/2, j} - u_{i-1/2, j}}{\Delta x} + \frac{v_{i, j+1/2} - v_{i, j-1/2}}{\Delta y} = 0 \quad (6.85)$$

Because Eq. (6.85) is based on *adjacent* velocity points, the possibility of a checkerboard velocity pattern as sketched in Fig. 6.13 is eliminated.

### 6.8.3 The Philosophy of the Pressure Correction Method

The pressure correction technique is basically an iterative approach, where some innovative physical reasoning is used to construct the next iteration from the results of the previous iteration. The thought process is as follows:

1. Start the iterative process by guessing the pressure field. Denote the guessed pressures by  $p^*$ .
2. Use the values of  $p^*$  to solve for  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  from the momentum equations. Since these velocities are those associated with the values of  $p^*$ , denote them by  $u^*$ ,  $v^*$ , and  $w^*$ .
3. Since they were obtained from guessed values of  $p^*$ , the values  $u^*$ ,  $v^*$ , and  $w^*$ , when substituted into the continuity equation, will not necessarily satisfy that equation. Hence, using the continuity equation, construct a pressure correction  $p'$  which when added to  $p^*$  will bring the velocity field more into agreement with the continuity equation. That is, the “corrected” pressure  $p$  is

$$p = p^* + p' \quad (6.86)$$

Corresponding velocity corrections  $u'$ ,  $v'$ , and  $w'$  can be obtained from  $p'$  such that

$$u = u^* + u' \quad (6.87a)$$

$$v = v^* + v' \quad (6.87b)$$

$$w = w^* + w' \quad (6.87c)$$

4. In Eq. (6.86), designate the new value  $p$  on the left-hand side as the new value of  $p^*$ . Return to step 2, and repeat the process until a velocity field is found that does satisfy the continuity equation. When this is achieved, the correct flow field is at hand.

#### 6.8.4 The Pressure Correction Formula

The pressure correction  $p'$  was introduced in Eq. (6.86). The calculation of the value of  $p'$  is the subject of this subsection. For simplicity, we will consider a two-dimensional flow; the additional terms associated with the third dimension are treated in a like manner. Also, we will neglect body forces.

The  $x$ - and  $y$ -momentum equations for an incompressible viscous flow are given by Eqs. (6.78) and (6.79), respectively. These equations are in nonconservation form. In conservation form, they are (see Sec. 2.8)

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho u^2)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho uv)}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \mu \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} \right) \quad (6.88)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho vu)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho v^2)}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} + \mu \left( \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial y^2} \right) \quad (6.89)$$

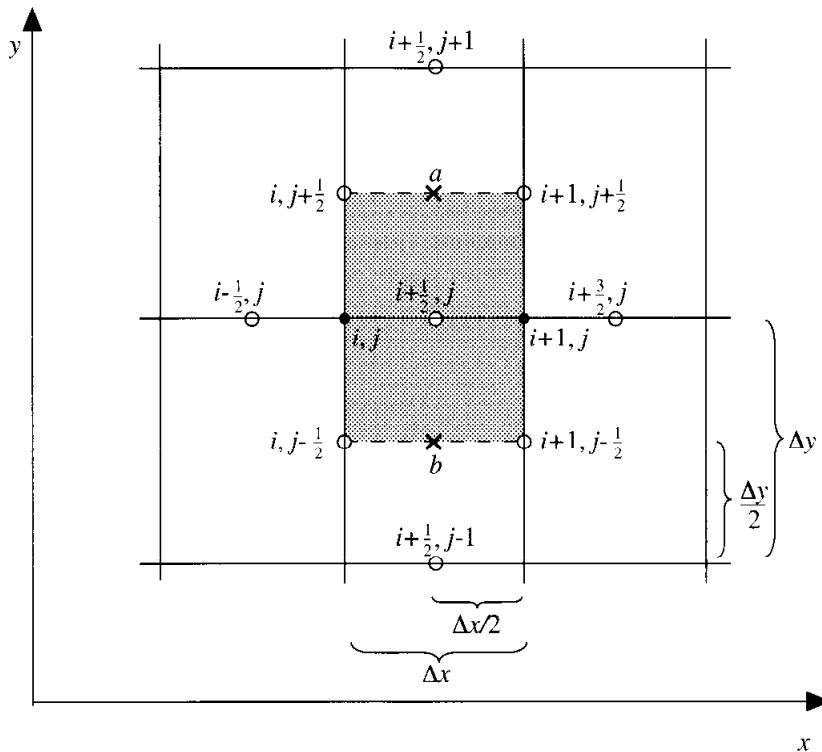
As discussed in Chap. 2, the conservation form follows directly from the model of an infinitely small volume fixed in space. Because of this model, a finite-difference form of Eqs. (6.88) and (6.89) will be somewhat akin to the discretized equations obtained from a finite-volume approach. The original formulation of the pressure correction method by Patankar and Spalding (Refs. 67 and 68) involved a finite-

volume approach. In the present section, we will continue with a finite-difference approach; by using the conservation form of the governing partial differential equations, this finite-difference approach gives essentially the same discretized equations as would be obtained in a finite-volume method. We proceed to develop the discretized equations which are the basic tools of the pressure correction method. We choose to use a forward difference in time, and central differences for the spatial derivatives. Note that the pressure correction method is really a certain philosophy, i.e., a certain approach, as explained in Sec. 6.8.3, and the choice of any particular differencing scheme within this philosophy is generally satisfactory. That is, the scheme developed below is not the only approach; it is just a reasonable choice out of several.

Consider a region in a staggered grid as illustrated in Fig. 6.16. Recall that the pressures are evaluated at the solid grid points and the velocities at the open grid points. We will difference Eq. (6.88) centered around the point  $(i + \frac{1}{2}, j)$  in Fig. 6.16. (For reference purposes, an equivalent finite-volume approach would deal with the shaded cell in Fig. 6.16.) We will need average values of  $v$  at the points  $a$  and  $b$  on the top and bottom, respectively, of the shaded cell. These are defined by linear interpolation between the two adjacent points; i.e., *define*

$$\text{At point } a : \quad \bar{v}_{j+1/2} \equiv \frac{1}{2}(v_{i,j+1/2} + v_{i+1,j+1/2}) \quad (6.90a)$$

$$\text{At point } b : \quad v_{j-1/2} \equiv \frac{1}{2}(v_{i,j-1/2} + v_{i+1,j-1/2}) \quad (6.90b)$$



**FIG. 6.16**

Computational module for the  $x$ -momentum equation. The filled-in area is an effective control volume.

Centered around point  $(i + \frac{1}{2}, j)$  a difference representation of Eq. (6.88) is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(\rho u)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} - (\rho u)_{i+1/2,j}^n}{\Delta t} = & - \left[ \frac{(\rho u^2)_{i+3/2,j}^n - (\rho u^2)_{i-1/2,j}^n}{2\Delta x} \right. \\ & \left. + \frac{(\rho u \bar{v})_{i+1/2,j+1}^n - (\rho u v)_{i+1/2,j-1}^n}{2\Delta y} \right] - \frac{p_{i+1,j}^n - p_{i,j}^n}{\Delta x} \\ & + \mu \left[ \frac{u_{i+3/2,j}^n - 2u_{i+1/2,j}^n + u_{i-1/2,j}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{u_{i+1/2,j+1}^n - 2u_{i+1/2,j}^n + u_{i+1/2,j-1}^n}{(\Delta y)^2} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (6.91)$$

or

$$(\rho u)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} = (\rho u)_{i+1/2,j}^n + A \Delta t - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} (p_{i+1,j}^n - p_{i,j}^n) \quad (6.92)$$

where, from Eq. (6.91),

$$\begin{aligned} A = & - \left[ \frac{(\rho u^2)_{i+3/2,j}^n - (\rho u^2)_{i-1/2,j}^n}{2\Delta x} + \frac{(\rho u \bar{v})_{i+1/2,j+1}^n - (\rho u v)_{i+1/2,j-1}^n}{2\Delta y} \right] \\ & + \mu \left[ \frac{u_{i+3/2,j}^n - 2u_{i+1/2,j}^n + u_{i-1/2,j}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{u_{i+1/2,j+1}^n - 2u_{i+1/2,j}^n + u_{i+1/2,j-1}^n}{(\Delta y)^2} \right] \end{aligned}$$

Equation (6.92) is a difference equation representing the  $x$ -momentum equation. Note that  $\bar{v}$  and  $v$  in Eqs. (6.91) and (6.92) are those values defined by Eqs. (6.90a and b), i.e.,  $\bar{v}$  and  $v$  use different grid points than those for  $u$ .

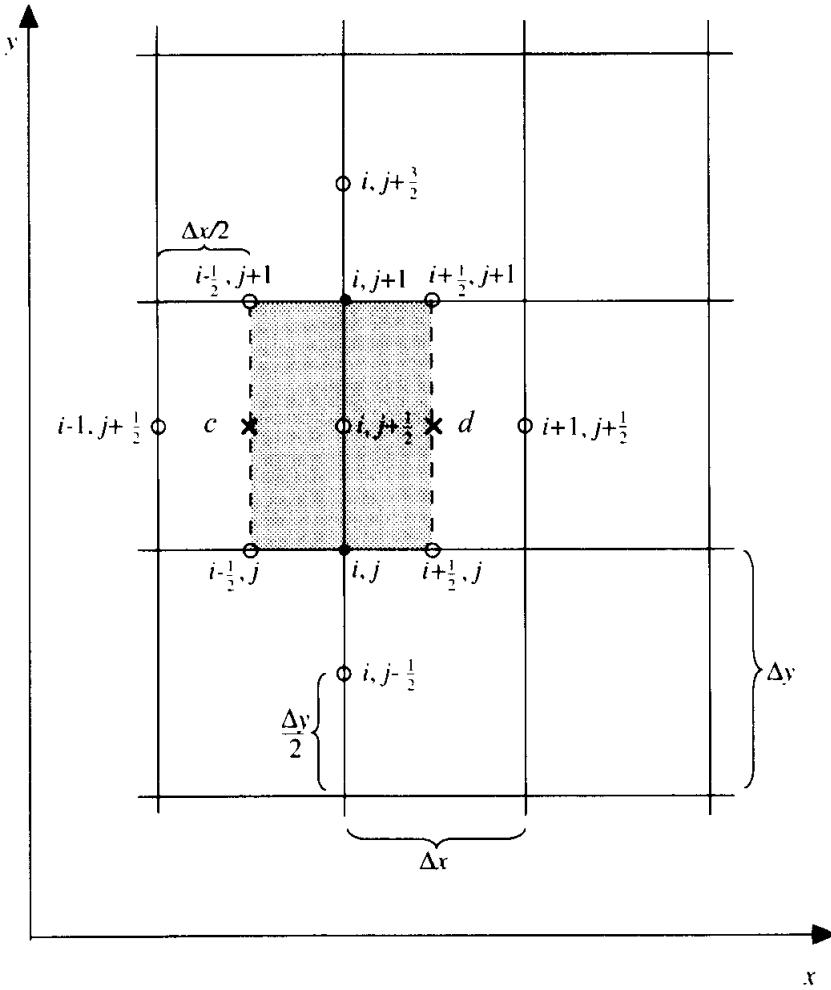
In like manner, a difference equation for the  $y$ -momentum equation is obtained. Here, we will difference Eq. (6.89) centered around point  $(i, j + \frac{1}{2})$  as shown in Fig. 6.17. We define average values of  $u$  at the points  $c$  and  $d$  on the left and right sides of the shaded cell in Fig. 6.17 as follows:

$$\text{At point } c : \quad u = \frac{1}{2} (u_{i-1/2,j} + u_{i-1/2,j+1})$$

$$\text{At point } d : \quad \bar{u} = \frac{1}{2} (u_{i+1/2,j} + u_{i+1/2,j+1})$$

Using a forward difference in time and central differences in space, Eq. (6.89) becomes

$$(\rho v)_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} = (\rho v)_{i,j+1/2}^n + B \Delta t - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} (p_{i,j+1}^n - p_{i,j}^n) \quad (6.93)$$

**FIG. 6.17**

Computational module for the  $y$ -momentum equation. The filled-in area is an effective control volume.

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 B = & - \left[ \frac{(\rho v \bar{u})_{i+1,j+1/2}^n - (\rho v u)_{i-1,j+1/2}^n}{2\Delta x} + \frac{(\rho v^2)_{i,j+3/2}^n - (\rho v^2)_{i,j-1/2}^n}{2\Delta y} \right] \\
 & + \mu \left[ \frac{v_{i+1,j+1/2}^n - 2v_{i,j+1/2}^n + v_{i-1,j+1/2}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{v_{i,j+3/2}^n - 2v_{i,j+1/2}^n + v_{i,j-1/2}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $u$  and  $\bar{u}$  in Eq. (6.93) are those values defined by the average values at points  $c$  and  $d$ , i.e.,  $u$  and  $\bar{u}$  use different grid points than those for  $v$ .

As outlined in Sec. 6.8.3, at the beginning of each new iteration,  $p = p^*$ . For this situation, Eqs. (6.92) and (6.93) become, respectively,

$$(\rho u^*)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} = (\rho u^*)_{i+1/2,j}^n + A^* \Delta t - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} (p_{i+1,j}^* - p_{i,j}^*) \quad (6.94)$$

and

$$(\rho v^*)_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} = (\rho v^*)_{i,j+1/2}^n + B^* \Delta t - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta y} (p_{i,j+1}^* - p_{i,j}^*) \quad (6.95)$$

Subtracting Eq. (6.94) from Eq. (6.92), we have

$$(\rho u')_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} = (\rho u')_{i+1/2,j}^n + A' \Delta t - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} (p'_{i+1,j} - p'_{i,j}) \quad (6.96)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} (\rho u')_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} &= (\rho u)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} - (\rho u^*)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} \\ (\rho u')_{i+1/2,j}^n &= (\rho u)_{i+1/2,j}^n - (\rho u^*)_{i+1/2,j}^n \\ A' &= A - A^* \\ p'_{i+1,j} &= p_{i+1,j} - p_{i+1,j}^* \\ p'_{i,j} &= p_{i,j} - p_{i,j}^* \end{aligned}$$

Subtracting Eq. (6.95) from Eq. (6.93), we obtain

$$(\rho v')_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} = (\rho v')_{i,j+1/2}^n + B' \Delta t - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta y} (p'_{i,j+1} - p'_{i,j}) \quad (6.97)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} (\rho v')_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} &= (\rho v)_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} - (\rho v^*)_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} \\ (\rho v')_{i,j+1/2}^n &= (\rho v)_{i,j+1/2}^n - (\rho v^*)_{i,j+1/2}^n \\ B' &= B - B^* \\ p'_{i,j+1} &= p_{i,j+1} - p_{i,j+1}^* \\ p'_{i,j} &= p_{i,j} - p_{i,j}^* \end{aligned}$$

Eqs. (6.96) and (6.97) are the  $x$ - and  $y$ -momentum equations expressed in terms of the pressure and velocity corrections  $p'$ ,  $u'$ , and  $v'$  defined by Eqs. (6.86), (6.87a), and (6.87b), respectively.

We are now in a position to obtain a formula for the pressure correction  $p'$  by insisting that the velocity field must satisfy the continuity equation. However, we are reminded that the pressure correction method is an iterative approach, and therefore there is no inherent reason why the formula designed to predict  $p'$  from one iteration to the next be physically correct; rather, we are concerned with only two aspects: (1) the formula for  $p'$  must yield the values that ultimately lead to the proper, converged solution, and (2) in the limit of the converged solution, the formula for  $p'$  must reduce to the physically correct continuity equation. That is, we are allowed to construct a formula for  $p'$  which is simply a *numerical artifice* designed to expedite the convergence of the velocity field to a solution that satisfies the continuity equation. When this convergence is achieved,  $p' \rightarrow 0$ , and the formula for  $p'$  reduces to the physically correct continuity equation.

With the above aspects in mind, let us proceed to obtain the pressure correction formula. Following Patankar (Ref. 68), let us arbitrarily set  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,

$(\rho u')^n$ , and  $(\rho v')^n$  equal to zero in Eqs. (6.96) and (6.97), obtaining

$$(\rho u')_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} = -\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} (p'_{i+1,j} - p'_{i,j})^n \quad (6.98)$$

and

$$(\rho v')_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} = -\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta y} (p'_{i,j+1} - p'_{i,j})^n \quad (6.99)$$

Considering that we are simply constructing a numerical artifice which will provide some guidance in the iterative procedure, the above should not make you totally uncomfortable. Returning to the definition of  $(\rho u')_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1}$  given just below Eq. (6.96), namely,

$$(\rho u')_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} = (\rho u)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} - (\rho u^*)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1}$$

we can write Eq. (6.98) as

$$(\rho u)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} = (\rho u^*)_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} (p'_{i+1,j} - p'_{i,j})^n \quad (6.100)$$

Returning to the definition of  $(\rho v')_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1}$  given just below Eq. (6.97), namely,

$$(\rho v')_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} = (\rho v)_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} - (\rho v^*)_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1}$$

we can write Eq. (6.99) as

$$(\rho v)_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} = (\rho v^*)_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta y} (p'_{i,j+1} - p'_{i,j})^n \quad (6.101)$$

Returning to the continuity equation

$$\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial y} = 0$$

and writing the corresponding central difference equations centered around point  $(i, j)$ , we have

$$\frac{(\rho u)_{i+1/2,j} - (\rho u)_{i-1/2,j}}{\Delta x} + \frac{(\rho v)_{i,j+1/2} - (\rho v)_{i,j-1/2}}{\Delta y} = 0 \quad (6.102)$$

Substituting Eqs. (6.100) and (6.101) into (6.102) and dropping the superscripts,

we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{(\rho u^*)_{i+1/2,j} - \Delta t / \Delta x (p'_{i+1,j} - p'_{i,j}) - (\rho u^*)_{i-1/2,j} + \Delta t / \Delta x (p'_{i,j} - p'_{i-1,j})}{\Delta x} \\ & + \frac{(\rho v^*)_{i,j+1/2} - \Delta t / \Delta y (p'_{i,j+1} - p'_{i,j}) - (\rho v^*)_{i,j-1/2} + \Delta t / \Delta x (p'_{i,j} - p'_{i,j-1})}{\Delta y} = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (6.103)$$

Rearranging Eq. (6.103), we obtain

$$ap'_{i,j} + bp'_{i+1,j} + bp'_{i-1,j} + cp'_{i,j+1} + cp'_{i,j-1} + d = 0 \quad (6.104)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} a &= 2 \left[ \frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} + \frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta y)^2} \right] \\ b &= -\frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta x)^2} \\ c &= -\frac{\Delta t}{(\Delta y)^2} \\ d &= \frac{1}{\Delta x} [(\rho u^*)_{i+1/2,j} - (\rho u^*)_{i-1/2,j}] + \frac{1}{\Delta y} [(\rho v^*)_{i,j+1/2} - (\rho v^*)_{i,j-1/2}] \end{aligned}$$

Equation (6.104) is the *pressure correction formula*. It has an elliptic behavior, consistent with the fact that a pressure disturbance will propagate everywhere throughout an incompressible flow. Thus, Eq. (6.104) can be solved for  $p'$  by means of a numerical relaxation technique, such as described in Sec. 6.5.

Note that  $d$  in Eq. (6.104) is the central difference formulation of the left-hand side of the continuity equation expressed in terms of  $u^*$  and  $v^*$ . During the course of the iterative process,  $u^*$  and  $v^*$  define a velocity field that does *not* satisfy the continuity equation; hence in Eq. (6.104),  $d \neq 0$  for all but the last iteration. In this sense,  $d$  is a *mass source* term. By definition, in the last iteration, the velocity field has converged to a field that satisfies the continuity equation, and hence, theoretically,  $d = 0$  for this last iteration. In this sense, although a mathematical artifice was used to obtain Eq. (6.104), in the last iterative step we can construe Eq. (6.104) as being a proper physical statement of the conservation of mass.

It is interesting to note that the pressure correction formula, Eq. (6.104), is a central difference formulation of the *Poisson equation* in terms of the pressure correction  $p'$ .

$$\frac{\partial^2 p'}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 p'}{\partial y^2} = Q \quad (6.105)$$

If the second partial derivatives in Eq. (6.105) are replaced by central differences and if  $Q = d / (\Delta t \Delta x)$ , then Eq. (6.104) is obtained. (This short derivation is left as

Prob. 6.1.) Poisson's equation is one of the well-known equations from classical physics and mathematics, and it is worthwhile to observe that the pressure correction formula is nothing more than a difference equation representation of the Poisson equation for  $p'$ . We also note that the Poisson equation is an *elliptic* equation, which mathematically verifies the elliptic behavior of the pressure correction formula.

### 6.8.5 The Numerical Procedure: The SIMPLE Algorithm

To bring all the above discussion into perspective, we now summarize the numerical steps for the pressure correction method. The following description is the essence of the SIMPLE algorithm as set forth in Patankar (Ref. 68). The acronym SIMPLE stems from semi-implicit method for pressure-linked equations. The semi-implicit terminology refers to our arbitrary setting of  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $(\rho u')^n$ , and  $(\rho v')^n$  equal to zero in Eqs. (6.96) and (6.97), thus allowing the pressure correction formula, Eq. (6.104), to have  $p'$  appearing at only four grid points. If this artifice had not been used, the resulting pressure correction formula would have included velocities at neighboring grid points. These velocities are in turn influenced by pressure corrections in their neighborhood, and the resulting pressure correction formula would have reached much further into the flow field, essentially coupling the entire pressure correction field in one equation. This would have represented a "fully implicit" equation. Instead, because of the above artifice, Eq. (6.104) contains pressure corrections at only four grid points, and hence it is termed as only *semi-implicit* by Patankar (Ref. 68).

The step-by-step procedure for the SIMPLE algorithm is as follows:

1. Keeping in mind the staggered grid as sketched in Fig. 6.15, guess values of  $(p^*)^n$  at all the "pressure" grid points (the filled points in Fig. 6.15). Also, arbitrarily set values of  $(\rho u^*)^n$  and  $(\rho v^*)^n$  at the proper "velocity" grid points (the open points in Fig. 6.15). Here, we are considering the grid points internal to the flow field; the treatment of points on the boundaries will be discussed later.
2. Solve for  $(\rho u^*)^{n+1}$  from Eq. (6.94) and  $(\rho v^*)^{n+1}$  from Eq. (6.95) at all appropriate internal grid points.
3. Substitute these values of  $(\rho u^*)^{n+1}$  and  $(\rho v^*)^{n+1}$  into Eq. (6.104), and solve for  $p'$  at all interior grid points. (This solution can be carried out by a relaxation procedure such as described in Sec. 6.5.)
4. Calculate  $p^{n+1}$  at all internal grid points from Eq. (6.86), i.e.,

$$p^{n+1} = (p^*)^n + p'$$

5. The values of  $p^{n+1}$  obtained in step 4 are used to solve the momentum equations again. For this, we designate  $p^{n+1}$  obtained above as the *new* values of  $(p^*)^n$  to be inserted into Eqs. (6.94) and (6.95). With this interpretation, return to step 2 and repeat steps 2 to 5 until convergence is achieved. A reasonable criterion to use for a measure of convergence is when the mass source term  $d$  approaches zero.

When convergence is achieved, the velocity distribution has been obtained which satisfies the continuity equation. The whole function of the pressure correction formula, Eq. (6.104), is to aim the iteration process in such a direction that, when the velocity distribution is calculated from the momentum equations, it will eventually converge to the correct distribution which satisfies the continuity equation.

Something needs to be said in regard to the superscripts  $n$  and  $n + 1$  used in the above equations. Equations (6.88) and (6.89) are the *unsteady* momentum equations, and hence the corresponding difference equations, Eqs. (6.92) and (6.93), utilize the standard superscript notation,  $n$  for a given time level and  $n + 1$  for the next time level. On the other hand, the terms that were neglected in the derivation of the pressure correction formula, Eq. (6.104), result in a stepwise iteration process (the process described by steps 2–5 above) which in no way is timewise-accurate. However, this is no problem, because the pressure correction method is designed to solve for a *steady* flow, and we obtain this steady flow via an iterative process. From this point of view, it is best to interpret the superscripts  $n$  and  $n + 1$  in the above equations as simply designating *sequential iteration steps*, with no significance to any *real* transient variation. Also in this sense, the value of  $\Delta t$  that appears in the above equations can be viewed simply as a parameter which has some effect on the speed at which convergence is achieved.

On a related matter, Eq. (6.104) may exhibit a divergent (rather than a convergent) behavior for some applications. Patankar suggests using some underrelaxation in such cases; i.e., instead of using Eq. (6.86) in step 4, use the equation

$$p^{n+1} = (p^*)^n + \alpha_p p' \quad (6.106)$$

where  $\alpha_p$  is an underrelaxation factor; a value of about 0.8 is suggested. It may also be helpful in some cases to underrelax the values of  $u^*$  and  $v^*$  obtained from Eqs. (6.94) and (6.95).

### 6.8.6 Boundary Conditions for the Pressure Correction Method

How are boundary conditions specified consistent with the philosophy of the pressure correction method? This question is addressed here. For geometric simplicity, consider the constant-area duct sketched in Fig. 6.18; a staggered grid is distributed inside the duct. For an incompressible viscous flow, the physical problem is uniquely specified if:

1. At the inflow boundary,  $p$  and  $v$  are specified and  $u$  is allowed to float. If  $p$  is specified, then  $p'$  is zero at the inflow boundary. Hence, in Fig. 6.18,

$$p'_1 = p'_3 = p'_5 = p'_7 = 0$$

$v_2, v_4, v_6$  are specified and held fixed.

2. At the outflow boundary,  $p$  is specified and  $u$  and  $v$  are allowed to float. Hence

$$p'_8 = p'_{10} = p'_{12} = p'_{14} = 0$$

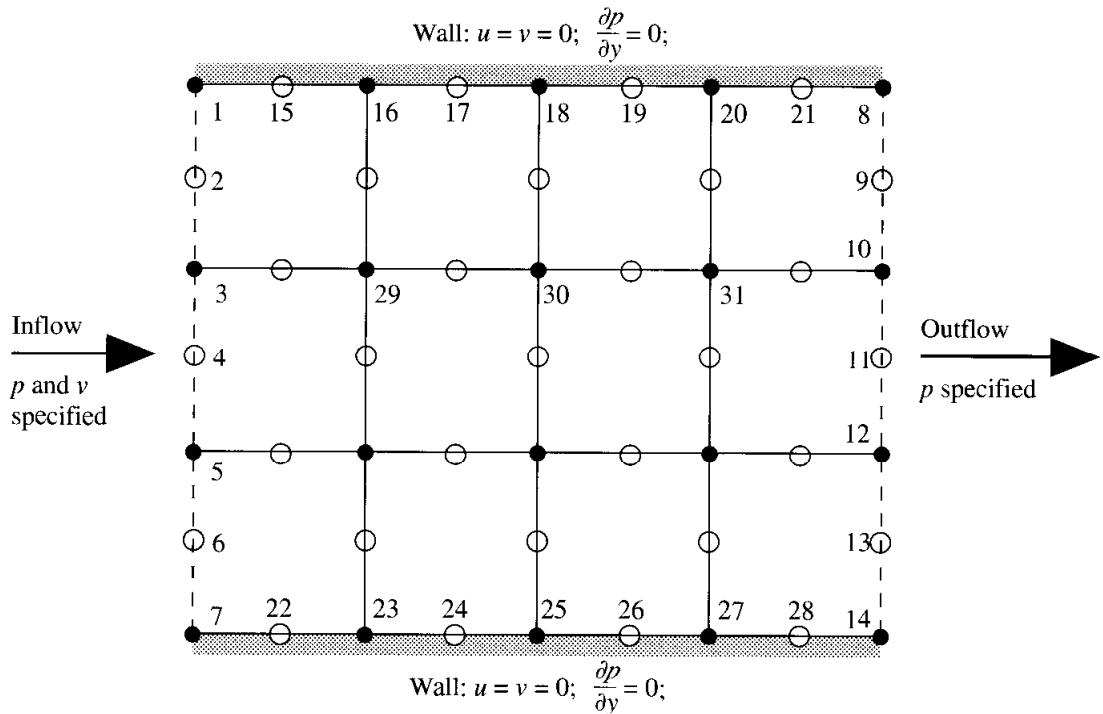


FIG. 6.18

Grid schematic for the discussion of boundary conditions for the pressure correction method.

**3. At the walls,** the viscous, no-slip condition holds at the wall. Hence, the velocity at the wall is zero.

$$u_{15} = u_{17} = u_{19} = u_{21} = u_{22} = u_{24} = u_{26} = u_{28} = 0$$

For the numerical solution, we need one more boundary condition at the wall. Since Eq. (6.104) has elliptic behavior and is solved by a relaxation technique, a boundary condition associated with  $p'$  must be specified over the *complete* boundary containing the computational domain. From items 1 and 2 above, we have  $p' = 0$  at the inflow and outflow boundaries. A condition associated with  $p'$  at the walls can be derived as follows. Evaluate the  $y$ -momentum equation at the wall, where  $u = v = 0$ . With these velocity values inserted into Eq. (6.79), we have at the wall (neglecting body forces)

$$\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial y}\right)_w = \mu \left( \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial y^2} \right)_w \quad (6.107)$$

Since  $v_w = 0$ , then in Eq. (6.107),  $(\partial^2 v / \partial x)_w = 0$ . Also, in the near vicinity of the wall,  $v$  is small; hence, in Eq. (6.107) we can reasonably assume that  $(\partial^2 v / \partial y)_w$  is small. Thus, from Eq. (6.107) we can comfortably state the approximate (but reasonable) pressure boundary condition at the wall to be given by

$$\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial y}\right)_w = 0 \quad (6.108)$$

Discretizing Eq. (6.108), we have (referring to Fig. 6.18)

$$p_1 = p_3 \quad p_{16} = p_{29} \quad p_5 = p_7 \quad \text{etc.}$$

With this, a pressure boundary condition is numerically specified over the *complete* boundary enclosing the computational domain.

#### GUIDEPOST

The previous discussion on the pressure correction method is all that you need to know to tackle the incompressible viscous flow problem in Sec. 9.4, namely, the solution of Couette flow by means of an iterative solution of the two-dimensional incompressible Navier-Stokes equations. Therefore, if you are anxious to set up a computer project using the pressure correction method, you can

Go directly to Sec. 9.4.

However, if you choose this route, make certain to afterward return to the present location in the book and resume your general reading with the next section on computer graphics.

## 6.9 SOME COMPUTER GRAPHIC TECHNIQUES USED IN CFD

We end this chapter on simple CFD techniques with a discussion of some computer graphic “techniques” that are frequently employed in the presentation of CFD data. This section is different from the preceding sections in that we are not going to present any specific numerical technique for the solution of a flow problem; rather, in the present section we discuss how computer graphics is used as an essential *tool* by the computational fluid dynamicist to display the *results* of a CFD calculation. There are various graphical techniques used for the presentation of data, and hence it seems appropriate to include in this chapter on techniques an overview of such graphical techniques that are most frequently encountered in CFD.

We can classify the ways that CFD data are usually presented under six categories, to be discussed below. The computational fluid dynamicist usually implements these various modes of graphical representation via the use of existing computer graphic software rather than developing the details of new computer graphic programs himself or herself. It is generally not the purview of CFD to be involved with the development details of computer graphic software but rather to simply use this software as a *tool*. We will reflect this attitude in the present section. There are many existing software packages used by computational fluid dynamicists today. In the case of this author’s students, TECPLOT, a software package provided by Amtec Engineering, is used. For this reason, many of the various computer graphic figures presented in this section were generated with TECPLOT; this is not to be construed as an endorsement of a specific product but rather simply as an example of a standard graphics software approach. New techniques and software for computer graphics are evolving as rapidly as those for CFD itself, so when your time comes, you will want to make your own choice of an appropriate graphics software package.

The majority of ways that CFD results are presented graphically can be classified under six general categories. Illustrations of these categories constitute the remainder of this section.

### 6.9.1 $xy$ Plots

You are perhaps most familiar with  $xy$  plots; you have been dealing with them at least since your first course in algebra. On a two-dimensional graph, they represent the variation of one dependent variable versus another independent variable. Return for a moment to Fig. 1.6b to f. These are good examples of  $xy$  plots. In this case they are plots of pressure coefficient versus nondimensional chordwise distance; each different plot, from Fig. 1.6b to f, corresponds to a different spanwise station. Such  $xy$  plots are the simplest and most straightforward category of computer graphical representation of CFD results. Although such graphs are not particularly sophisticated, they still remain the most *precise* quantitative way to present numerical data on a graph; that is, another person can readily read quantitative data from curves on an  $xy$  plot without making any mental or arithmetic interpolation.

### 6.9.2 Contour Plots

A disadvantage of  $xy$  plots as described above is that they usually do not illustrate the *global* nature of a set of CFD results all in one view. On the other hand, contour plots do provide such a global view.

A contour line is a line along which some property is constant. We have already seen some contour plots. For example, return to Fig. 1.6a. This is a contour plot for pressure coefficient on the surface of an F-20 fighter airplane. Each line corresponds to a constant value of pressure coefficient. Generally, contours are plotted such that the *difference* between the quantitative value of the dependent variable from one contour line to an adjacent contour line is held constant. In this fashion, in regions where the dependent variable is rapidly changing in space, the adjacent contour lines are closely spaced together; in contrast, in regions where the dependent variable is slowly changing in space, the adjacent contour lines are widely spaced. In Fig. 1.6a, the regions where the contour lines are bunched together indicate regions of large pressure gradients on the surface—in this case pinpointing regions where shock waves are present on the surface of the airplane. Another example of contour plots is given in Fig. 6.8a to d. Here, pressure contours are shown for the two-dimensional, viscous, supersonic flow over a rearward-facing step. The regions of large gradients in the flow—the expansion wave from the top edge of the step and the recompression shock wave further downstream—are clearly seen in these contour plots.

It is clear from examining these contour plots that the *global* nature of the flow is seen in one single view; to obtain the same global feeling for the results from  $xy$  plots, say to ascertain the locations of the shock and expansion waves, we would have to examine a number of  $xy$  plots. Contour plots are clearly a superior graphical representation from this point of view. On the other hand, it requires more effort to read precise quantitative data from a contour plot as compared to a curve in an  $xy$  plot. Although each contour may be labeled as to the constant numerical value of the property it represents, the obtaining of numerical values *between* contour lines requires some mental and/or numerical interpolation in space, an imprecise process to say the least.

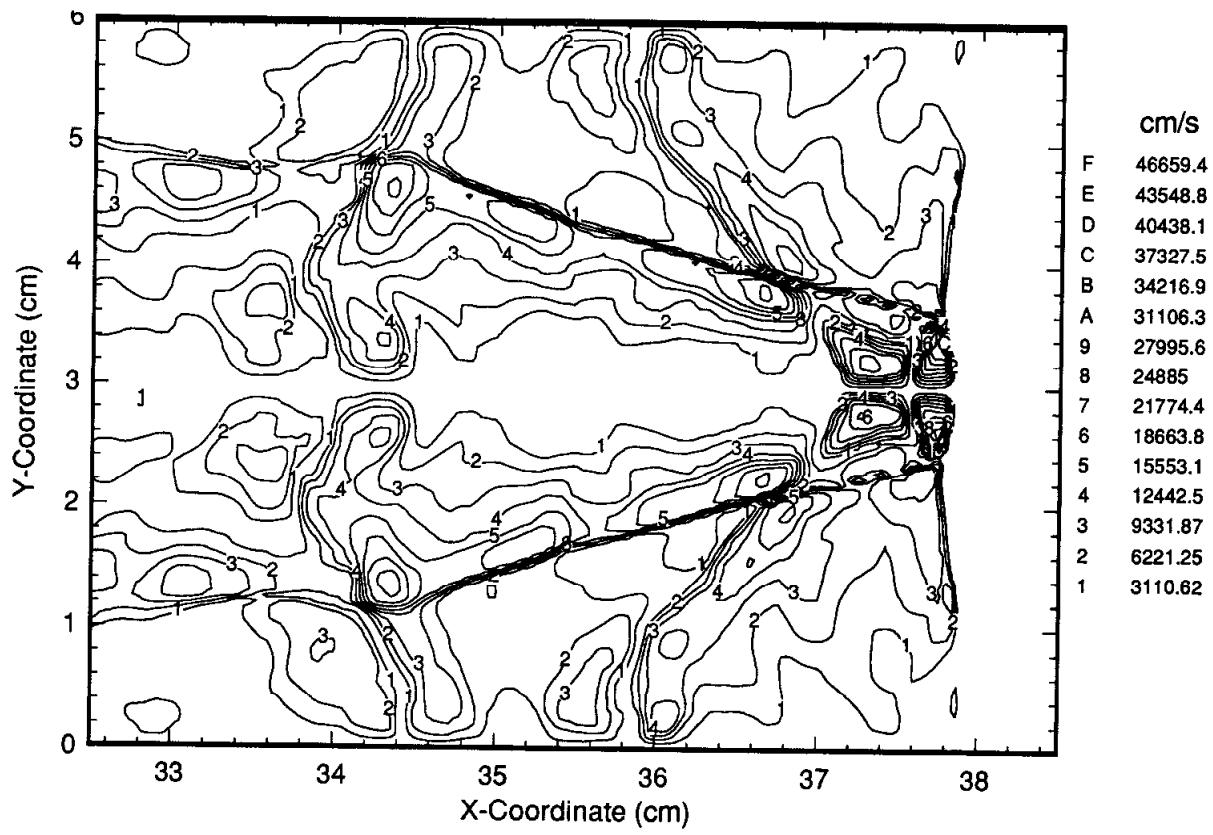
The plotting of a contour diagram by hand is a long, laborious process, although such plots were made (very infrequently) by some intrepid souls before the advent of the computer. This is in contrast to *xy* plots, which have been made by hand with aplomb since the days of Rene Descartes in the seventeenth century. Therefore, the proliferation of contour plots with the advent of the computer is understandable; in CFD, contour plots are one of the most commonly found graphical representations of data.

Let us examine a few more examples of contour plots from some modern CFD applications, pointing out various nuances and subcategories. For example, consider Fig. 6.19*a* and *b*. These are contour plots of the transverse velocity (the *y* component of velocity, *v*) in the flow field behind a detonation wave propagating through a combustible mixture of H<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub>, and argon. The detonation wave is propagating from left to right; the front of the wave is seen as the almost perpendicular cluster of contours at the right of the figures. The detonation wave is propagating into a uniform gas, which is the region to the right of the front; by definition there are no contours in this uniform, constant-property region—it appears as a totally clear region at the extreme right in the figures. Combustion of the hydrogen and oxygen occurs behind the detonation front. Because of the physical presence of slight disturbances in the flow behind the front, the flow field becomes two-dimensional, with transverse waves, along with various slip lines, as can be seen in the contour plot. The purpose of including Fig. 6.19*a* and *b* in this discussion is to point out the effect of the *number* of contour lines chosen for a given graph. Figure 6.19*a* contains 15 different contour levels; each contour is labeled with a number or letter, and the value of the transverse velocity in centimeters per second is given in the table of contour values at the right of the graph. Now examine Fig. 6.19*b*; this is the same set of data but plotted with 35 contour levels. Clearly, Fig. 6.19*b* gives a sharper, clearer picture of the flow field than Fig. 6.19*a*. This comparison clearly illustrates the value of including a sufficiently large number of contour lines in your plot.

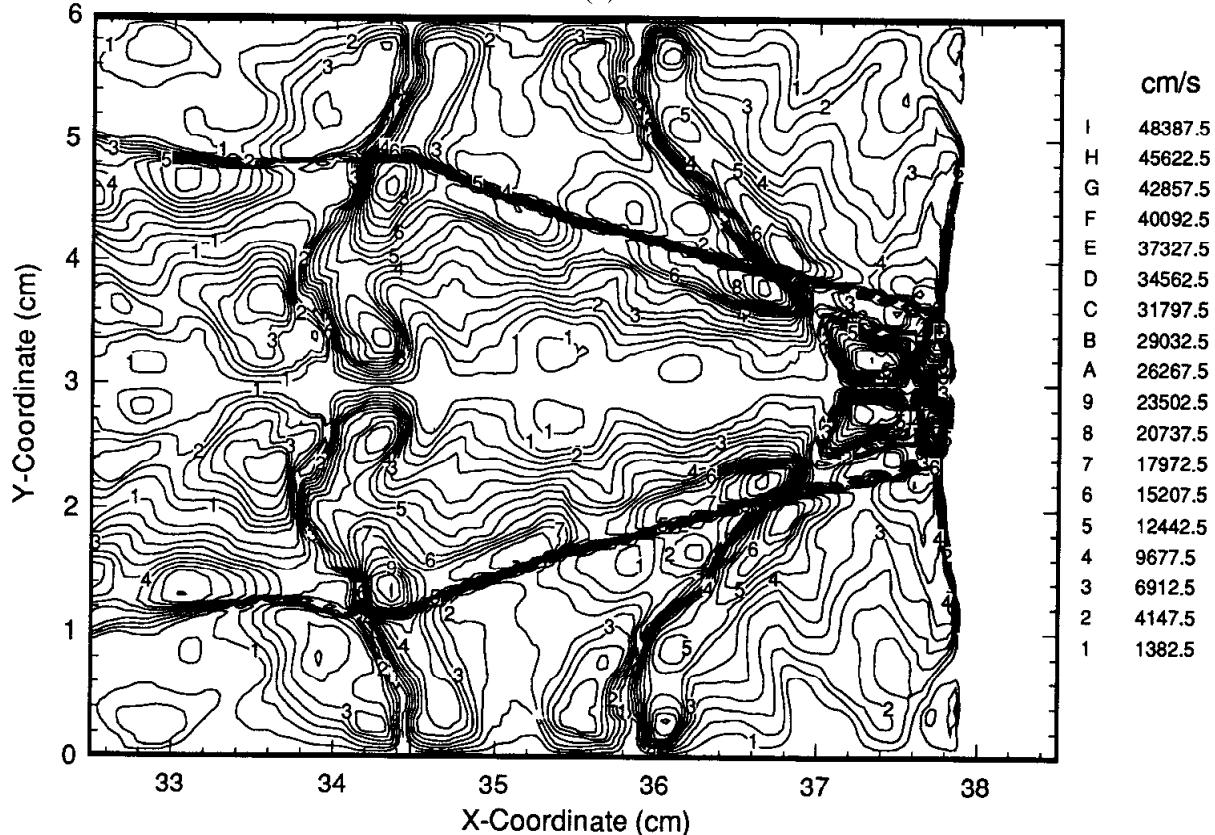
Figure 6.19*a* and *b* is an example of *line* contour plots. Another type of contour plot is a *flooded contour*, illustrated in Fig. 6.20. This figure shows the same data for the transverse velocity as presented in Fig. 6.19*b*, but instead of using lines, a constant property is denoted by a constant *intensity of color shading*. In this case, gray is the color, and Fig. 6.20 is called a *gray-scale color map*. Therefore, instead of illustrating the flow with a discrete number of contour lines, the regions between these lines are simply filled with a color intensity that denotes the value of the flow-field property—the regions between the lines are “flooded” with color intensity. The color-coded velocity scale is shown at the right of Fig. 6.20.

The author wishes to thank James Weber, one of his graduate students at the University of Maryland, for providing these figures obtained as part of his doctoral research. These calculations were made using a finite-volume scheme called the *flux-corrected transport* (FCT) method, as described in Ref. 69.

Let us examine contour plots for another type of flow-field situation, in this case the shock-shock interaction problem sketched in Fig. 6.21. Here, the straight oblique shock from a wedge in a Mach 8 flow impinges on the bow shock from a cylinder placed above the wedge. The interaction of the shock waves from the



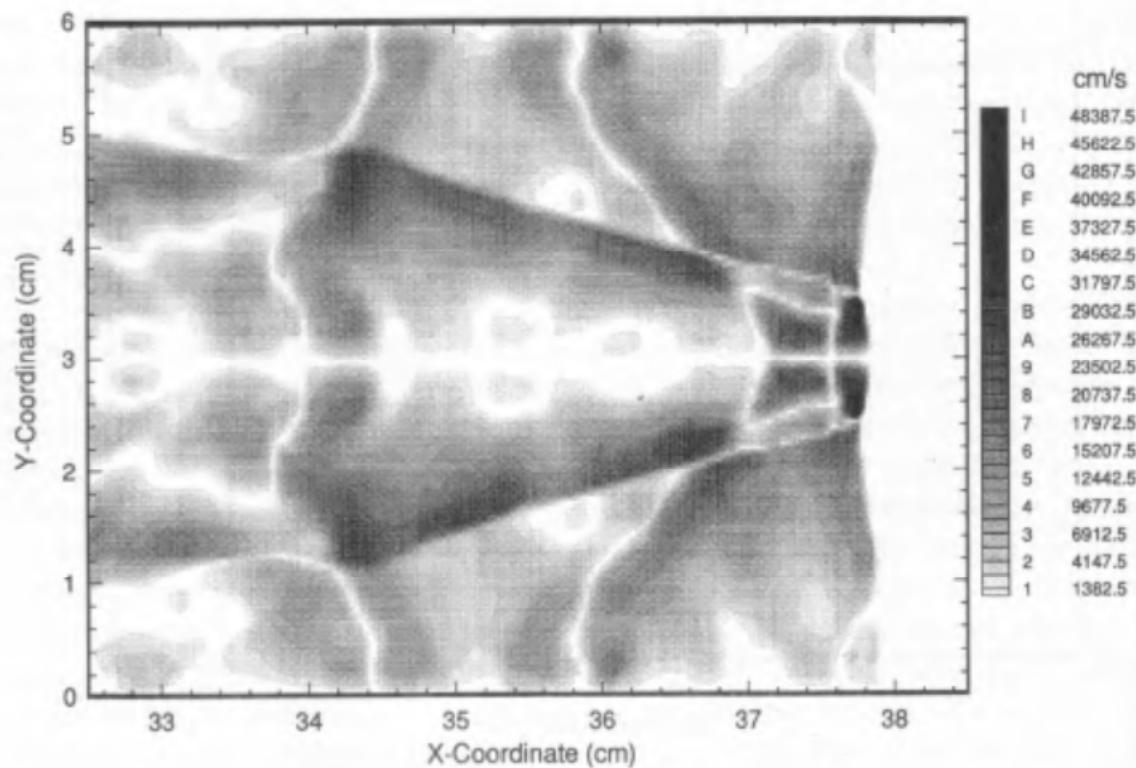
(a)



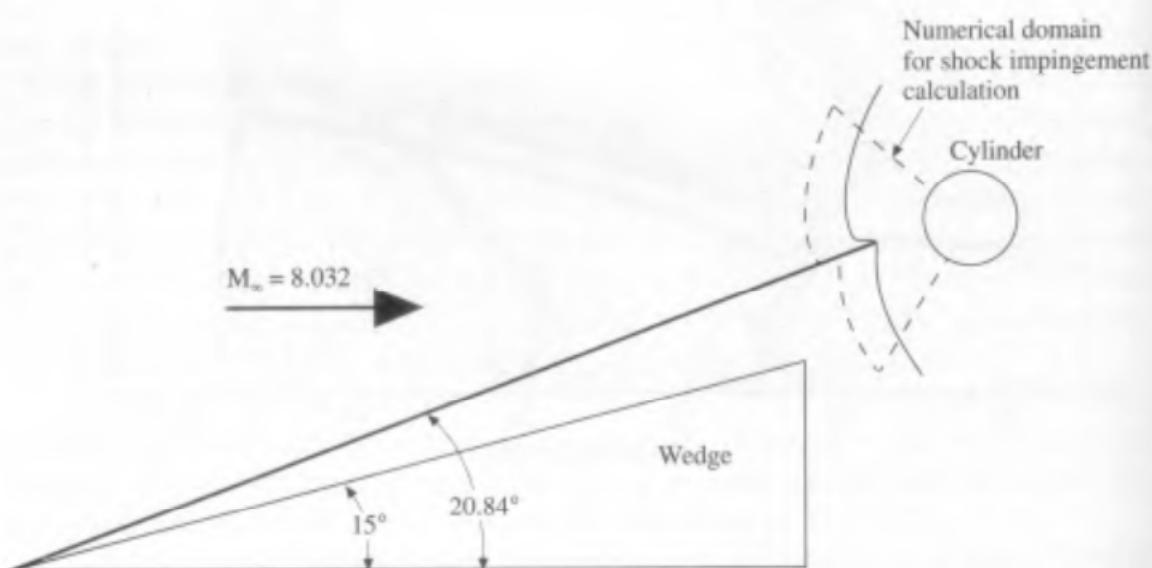
(b)

**FIG. 6.19**

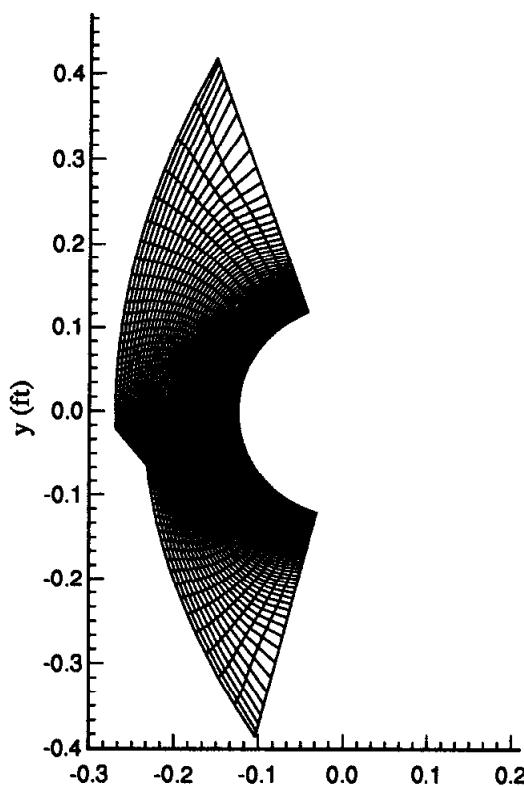
Transverse velocity line contours in the flow behind a detonation wave propagating into a 20% H<sub>2</sub>, 10% O<sub>2</sub>, and 70% A mixture: (a) 15 contour levels; (b) 35 contour levels. The comparison between (a) and (b) shows the clarity obtained by using an increased number of contour lines. (*Calculations made by, and figure obtained from, James Weber, University of Maryland.*)

**FIG. 6.20**

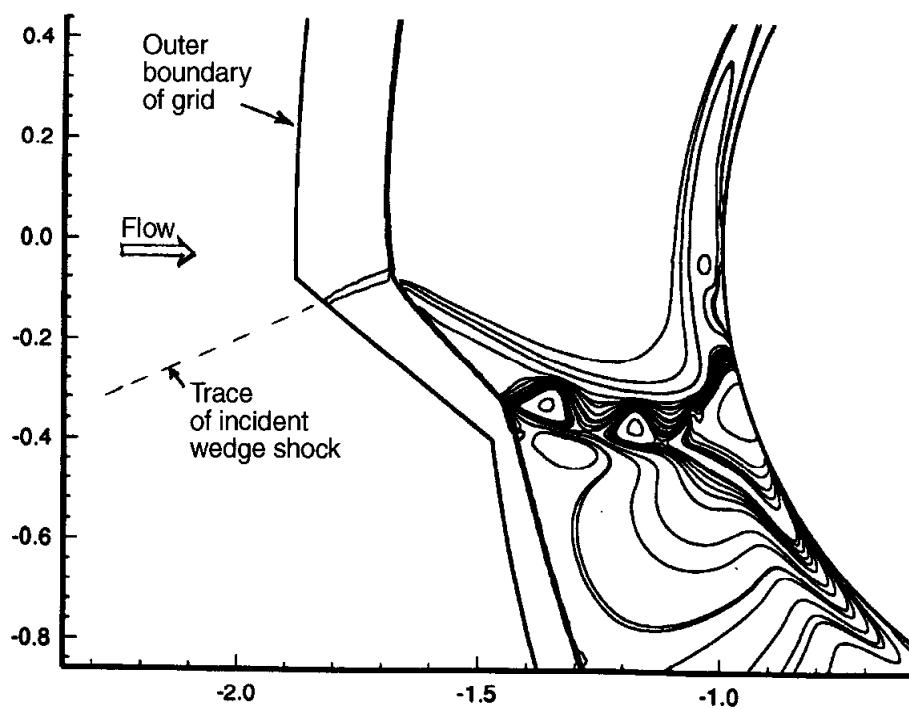
Flooded contours on a gray-scale color map. Same data for transverse velocity as given in Fig. 6.19b.  
(Calculations by, and figure obtained from, James Weber, University of Maryland.)

**FIG. 6.21**

Schematic of the shock-shock interaction from a wedge shock impinging on a bow shock from a cylinder mounted above the wedge. (Obtained from Charles Lind, University of Maryland.)



**FIG. 6.22**  
Boundary-fitted grid for the shock interaction calculation. (Obtained from Charles Lind, University of Maryland.)

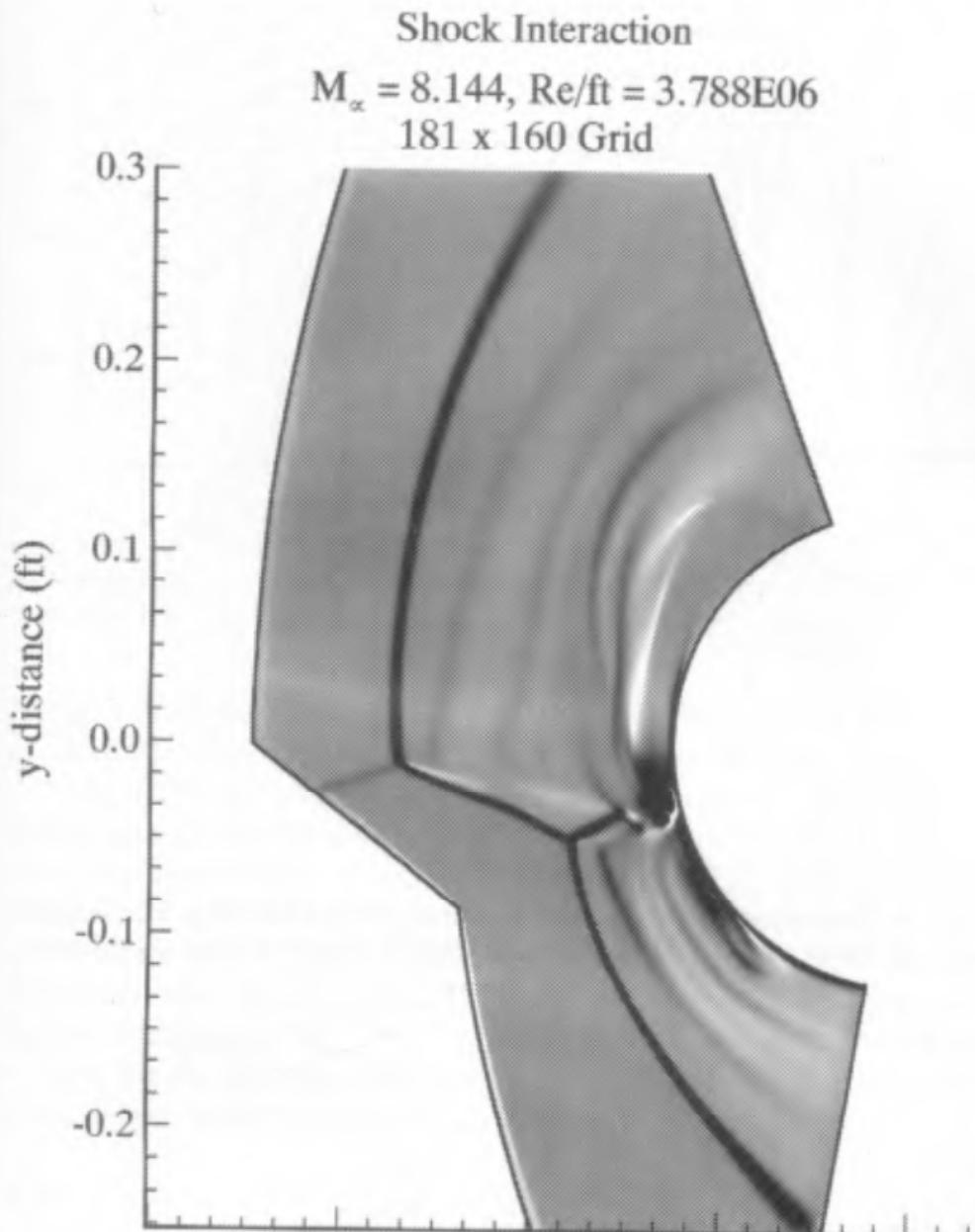


**FIG. 6.23**  
Density contour plot of the type IV shock–shock interaction;  $M_\infty = 5.04$ , Reynolds number (based on cylinder diameter) =  $3.1 \times 10^5$ . (Calculations by, and figure obtained from, Charles Lind, University of Maryland.)

wedge and the cylinder creates a complex flow field in the region of interaction. Notice in Fig. 6.21 that the curved shock wave from the cylinder becomes kinked in the region where the wedge shock impinges. The boundary-fitted coordinate system shown in Fig. 6.22 is created to solve the Navier-Stokes equations in this interaction region, using a finite-difference method. Density contours for this flow field (designated a *type IV shock interaction* because of the special geometric features of the angles made by the two intersecting shocks) are shown in Fig. 6.23. The incident wedge shock enters the computational grid from the lower left, as shown. The bow shock from the cylinder is identified by the very sharp clustering of contour lines bordering the left of the interaction region. The flow downstream of the bow shock is a complex region of refracted shocks and slip lines. However, the details of this type of flow can be made clearer by constructing a contour plot not of density but of the density *gradient*. Such a plot is shown in Fig. 6.24. This is a flooded contour plot on a gray-scale color map of *density gradient*. It is interesting to note that, in a physical laboratory situation, actual photographs of shock waves can be made by means of a special optical system called a *schlieren system*. In a schlieren photograph, shock and expansion waves are made visible by the refraction of light waves through the flow, which creates a pattern of various dark and light intensities proportional to the magnitude of the local *gradient* of density in the flow. Hence, the flooded contour plot in Fig. 6.24 is really a *CFD-generated schlieren picture* of the flow-field, analogous in every sense to a schlieren photograph that would be obtained in the laboratory. This illustrates another subcategory of contour plots and shows the tremendous versatility of the whole concept of contour plotting.

The author wishes to thank Charles Lind, a graduate student at the University of Maryland, for providing these figures obtained as part of his doctoral research.

The contour plots shown in Figs. 6.8 and 6.19 to 6.24 are made from two-dimensional flow-field calculations; the representation of these contour lines in the plane of the paper is therefore sufficient to give a global picture covering the whole geometric extent of the flow. But what happens when you have a three-dimensional flow? One answer is a multizone three-dimensional contour plot, such as shown in Fig. 6.25, taken from Ref. 70. Here we see pressure contours drawn for the transonic flow over an airplane wing, where the graphic shows the three-dimensional flow in perspective. Contours in three vertical planes at different spanwise stations are shown, along with contours on the upper surface of the wing. Such a plot gives a reasonable global picture of the three-dimensional flow over the wing, including the location of a shock wave on the upper surface near the leading edge, evidenced by the bunching up of some of the contour lines. An improvisation of such a three-dimensional perspective plot is the “straight-on” composite view shown in Fig. 6.26, taken from Ref. 71. Here we see helicity density contours shown directly (not in perspective) in four different cross-flow planes for the flow over an ogive-cylinder in low-speed, subsonic flow at a  $40^\circ$  angle of attack. The side view of the body is also shown, with the axial locations of the four cross-flow planes clearly marked. In addition, some of the streamlines in the separated flow over the top of the body are shown in the side view.

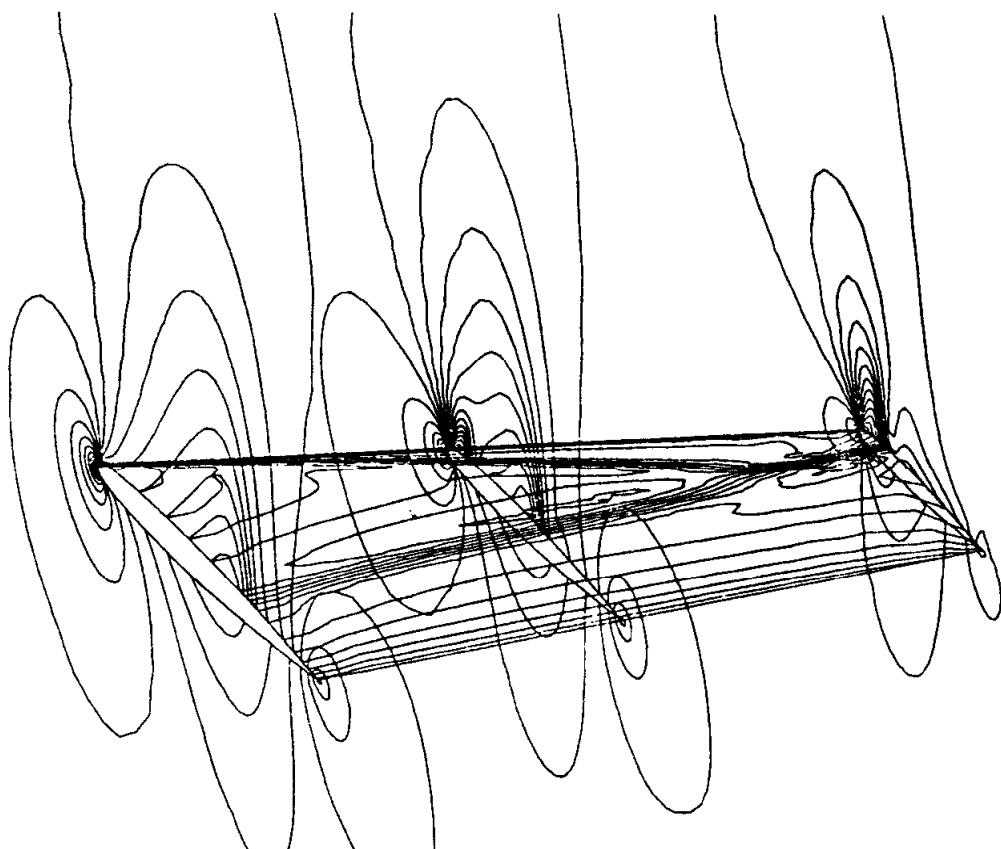


**FIG. 6.24**

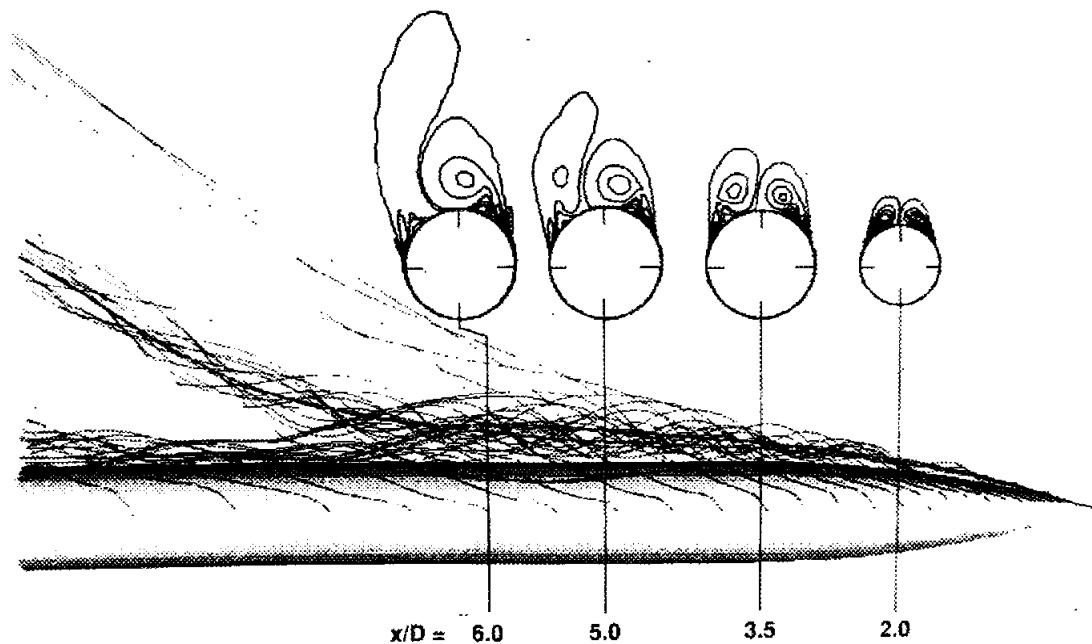
Computer-produced schlieren of the type IV interaction; a flooded contour plot of density gradient from a CFD calculation. (*Calculations by, and figure obtained from, Charles Lind, University of Maryland.*)

### 6.9.3 Vector and Streamline Plots

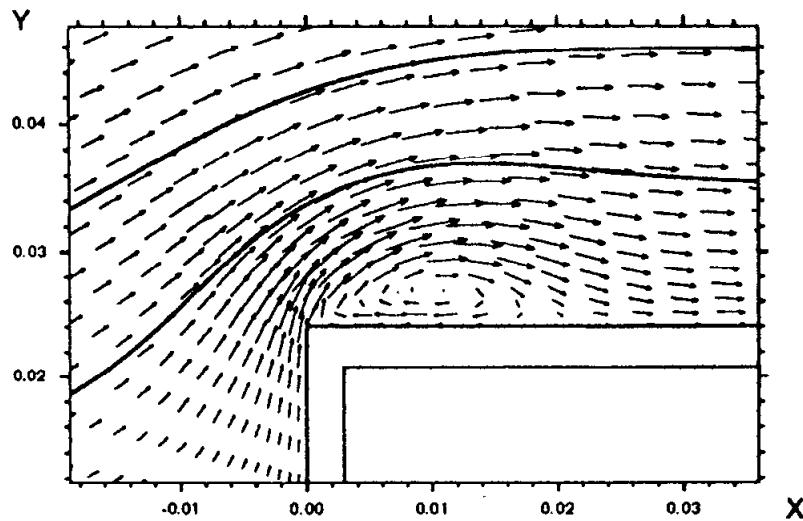
A vector plot is a display of a vector quantity (in CFD, usually velocity) at discrete grid points, showing both magnitude and direction, where the base of each vector is located at the respective grid point. We have already seen examples of vector plots for two-dimensional flows in Figs. 1.13, 1.15, 1.19, 1.23, and 1.25, and for a three-dimensional flow in Fig. 1.21. Return to these figures, and examine them from the point of view of examples of a computer graphic technique. For convenience, a vector plot for the compressible subsonic flow over a forward-facing step is shown



**FIG. 6.25**  
Pressure contours in the three-dimensional transonic flow over an ONERA M6 wing. Euler solution.  
 $M_\infty = 0.835$ , angle of attack =  $3.06^\circ$ . (From Ref. 70. Courtesy of Elsevier Science Publishers.)



**FIG. 6.26**  
Off-surface streamlines and helicity density contours around an ogive cylinder.  $M_\infty = 0.28$ , angle of attack =  $40^\circ$ , Reynolds number based on body diameter =  $3 \times 10^6$ . (From Ref. 71. Copyright © 1991, AIAA. Reprinted with permission.)

**FIG. 6.27**

Two-dimensional vector plot and streamlines for the compressible subsonic flow over a forward-facing step. (After Ref. 72. Courtesy of Amtec Engineering, Bellevue, Washington.)

in Fig. 6.27, obtained from Ref. 72. Two streamlines are also shown in Fig. 6.27—an example of a composite plot illustrating two variables on the same graph.

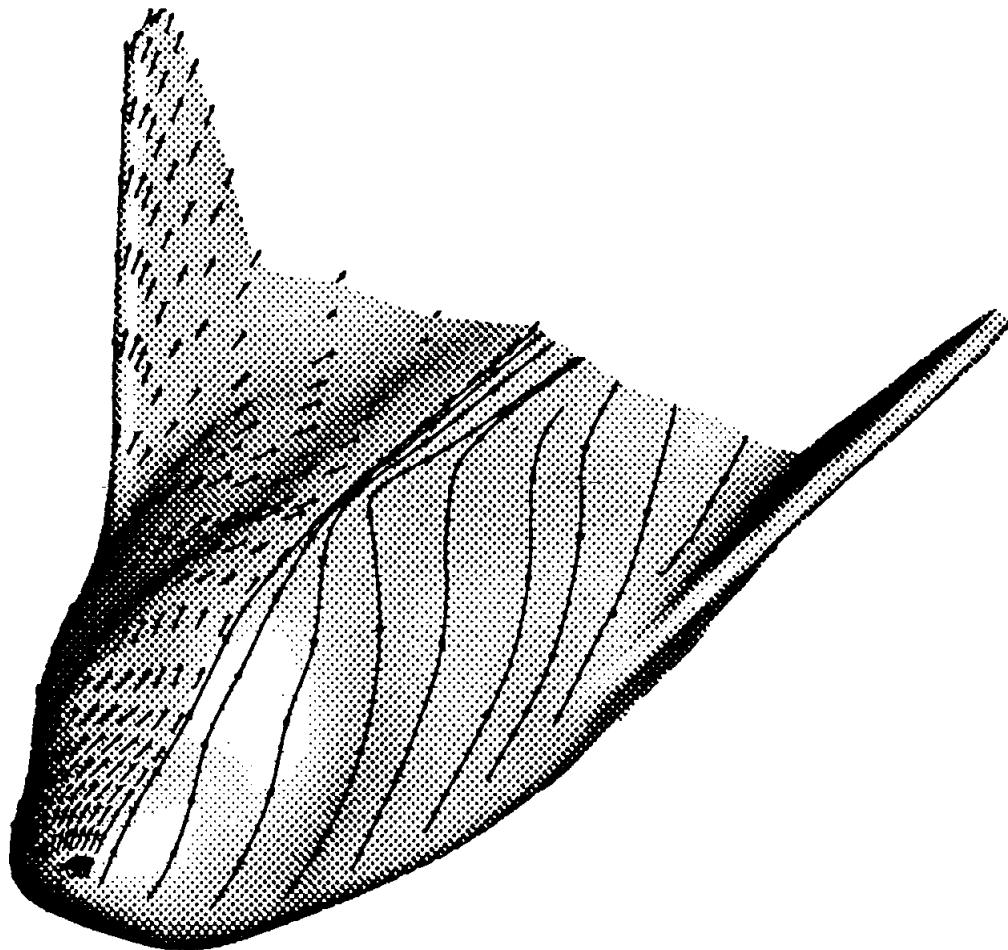
In CFD, as in all aspects of fluid dynamics in general, illustrations of streamlines are excellent tools for examining the nature of a flow. We have already seen two-dimensional streamline plots in Figs. 1.3, 1.10, 1.17, and 1.27. An example of a three-dimensional streamline plot is seen in Fig. 1.7. The three-dimensional particle tracks shown in Fig. 1.8 are essentially in this same category. Return to these figures, and examine them in light of our discussion here. For further illustration, Fig. 6.28 shows a composite of both streamlines and velocity vectors for the inviscid flow over the surface of a three-dimensional hypersonic body shape, obtained from Ref. 72.

#### 6.9.4 Scatter Plots

In a scatter plot, a symbol (square, circle, etc.) is drawn at discrete grid points in the flow, where the magnitude of some scalar quantity (pressure, temperature, etc.) is indicated by either the size of the symbol, its shading, its color, or some combination thereof. For example, Fig. 6.29 is a scatter plot for the compressible subsonic flow over a forward-facing step, obtained from Ref. 72. The diameter of each circle indicates the magnitude of the  $y$  component of velocity, and the shading of each circle indicates the magnitude of the density.

#### 6.9.5 Mesh Plots

Mesh plots consist of lines connecting grid points in either a two- or three-dimensional grid. We have already seen examples of two-dimensional mesh plots in Figs. 1.9, 1.11, 5.9, 5.10, 5.13 to 5.17, 5.19, and 5.20. A three-dimensional mesh plot is shown in Fig. 1.26. Examine again these figures, this time as examples of a computer graphic technique. A computer graphic display of a mesh for a three-

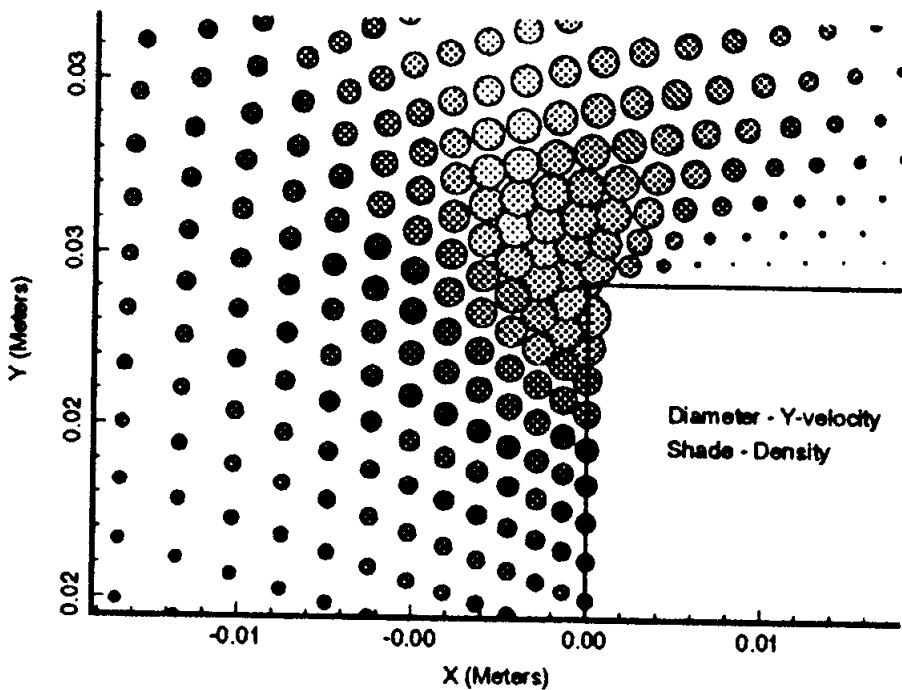
**FIG. 6.28**

Three-dimensional vectors and streamlines on the surface of a hypersonic body. (*From Ref. 72. Courtesy of Amtec Engineering, Bellevue, Washington.*)

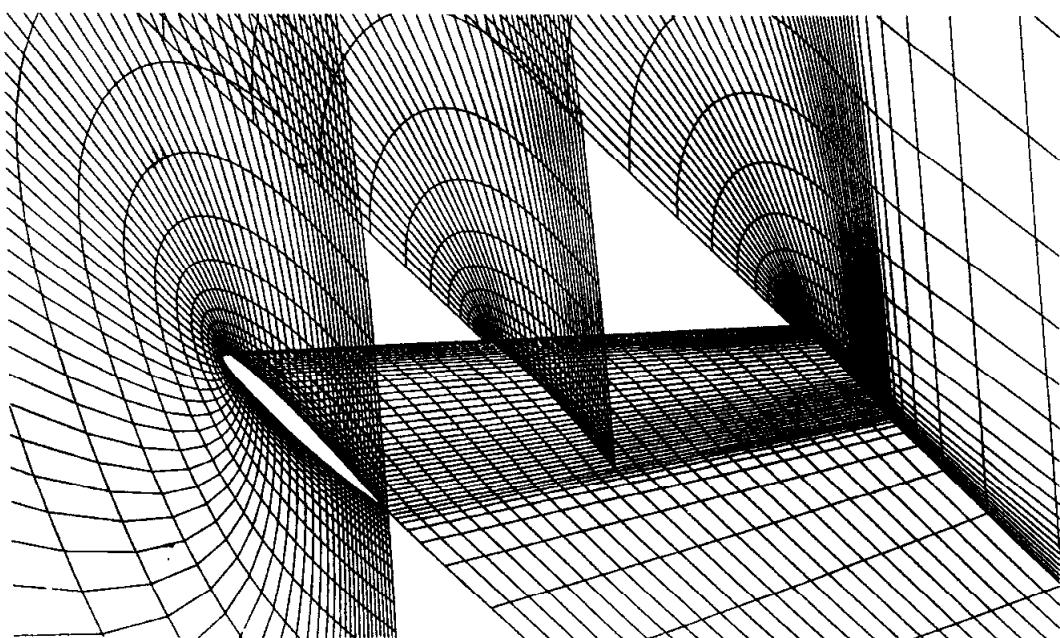
dimensional flow calculation over a wing is shown in Fig. 6.30, obtained from Ref. 70. This mesh was used for the calculation of the transonic flow results shown in Fig. 6.25. Another type of mesh plot is that showing only the mesh on the surface of a body, such as illustrated in Fig. 6.31. Here, the mesh covers the entire body, including both top and bottom surfaces, but the computer graphic display is designed to remove the hidden lines, therefore obtaining a clearer picture. Finally, another improvisation is shown in Fig. 6.32, which illustrates a three-dimensional mesh with the body shape shown as a light-source-shaded surface. This figure is a dramatic example of the quality and sophistication of modern computer graphics.

### 6.9.6 Composite Plots

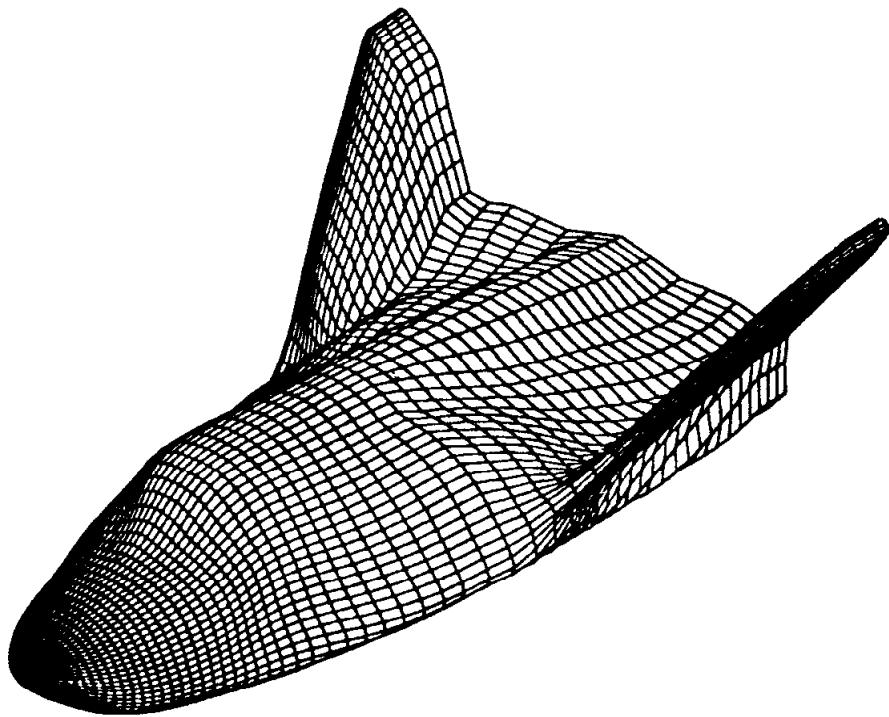
Many of the categories of different plots described above can be combined into a single plot, called a *composite plot*. Figure 6.27 is a simple example of a composite plot, where two quantities are overlaid in the same graph. Figure 6.33 illustrates a composite plot showing four different zones on a body surface, where different graphical results are shown in each zone.

**FIG. 6.29**

A two-dimensional scatter plot showing the magnitude of the  $y$  component of velocity (diameter of circles) and the value of density (shading of circles) for the compressible subsonic flow over a forward-facing step. (From Ref. 72. Courtesy of Amtec Engineering, Bellevue, Washington.)

**FIG. 6.30**

A three-dimensional mesh plot for the calculation of the flow over an airplane wing used to obtain the flow field results shown in Fig. 6.25. (From Ref. 70. Courtesy of Elsevier Science Publishers.)

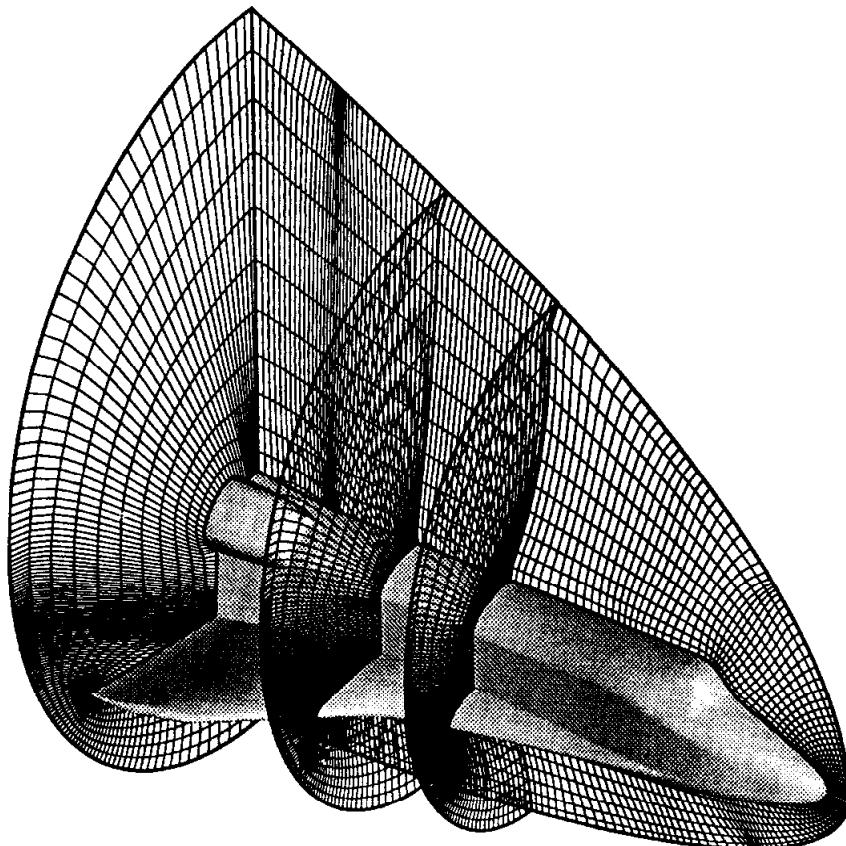
**FIG. 6.31**

A three-dimensional mesh plot on the surface of a body. The mesh is wrapped completely over the body, but the computer graphic shown here is designed to remove the hidden lines, for clarity. (*From Ref. 72. Courtesy of Amtec Engineering, Bellevue, Washington.*)

### 6.9.7 Summary on Computer Graphics

Computer graphics is a dynamically evolving discipline, and the CFD community is constantly taking advantage of any new techniques for the display of its data. The graphical display of three-dimensional CFD results, a dream in the minds of researchers just 20 years ago, is commonplace today. As one final example, we offer Fig. 6.34, obtained from Ref. 73. Here we see a complete airplane displayed in three-dimensional perspective, with contours of pressure coefficient displayed over its surface. Such a computer graphics display is not only a technical record of quantitative results, it is also an aesthetic work of art.

Yes, a work of art—that is part of modern computer graphics. Perhaps no better example of this can be given than the Engineering Research Center for Computational Field Simulation—a National Science Foundation Center for engineering research established at Mississippi State University for the purpose of enhancing the methods of grid generation, CFD, and computer graphics. Under the direction of Dr. Joe Thompson at Mississippi State, this interdisciplinary center has become one of the world's leading sources of new advancements in CFD and in graphical displays. An important and unique aspect of this center is that on its staff are faculty from the university's department of art—a true testimonial that computer graphics today is a work of art.



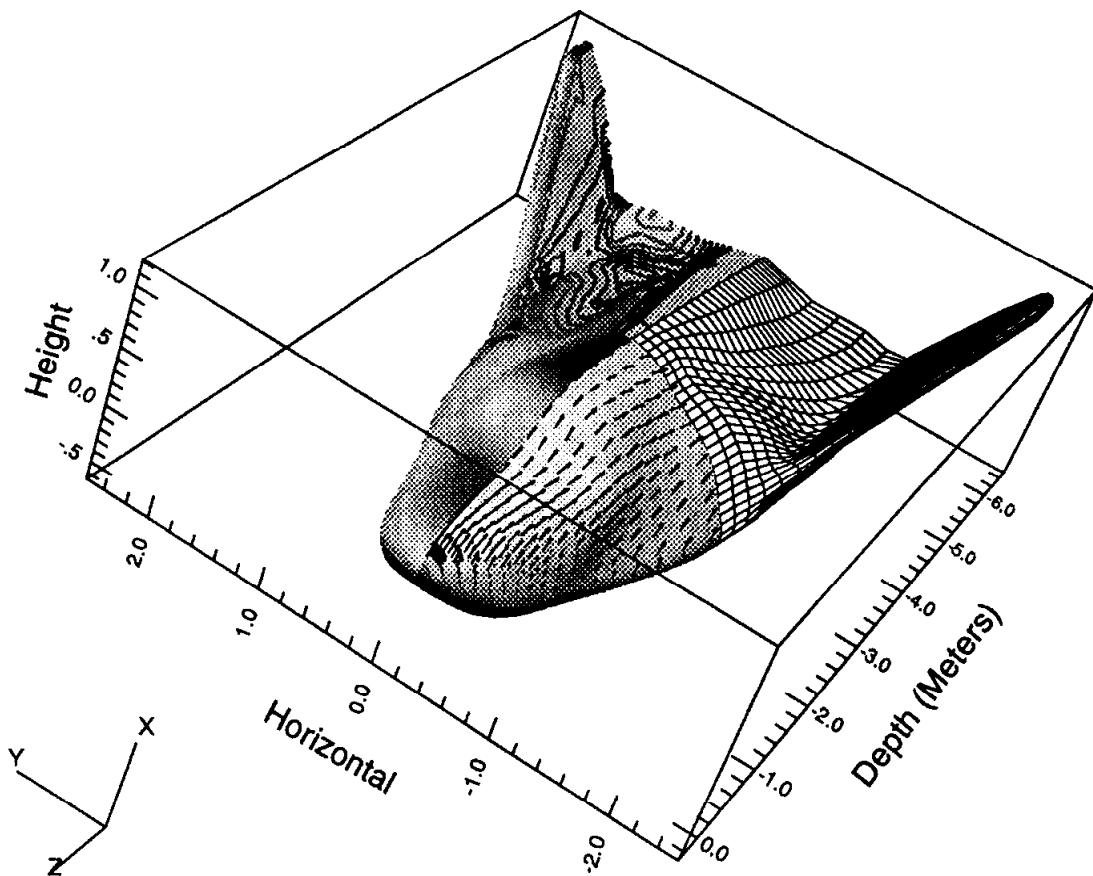
**FIG. 6.32**

A three-dimensional mesh plot for the calculation of the flow over a body, where the body is shown as a light-source-shaded surface. (From Ref. 72. Courtesy of Amtec Engineering, Bellevue, Washington.)

Finally, we note that Chap. 12 contains many additional examples of CFD results displayed by computer graphic techniques; you may want to turn to Chap. 12 at this point in your reading and just flip through those results to further enhance your appreciation of the roll of computer graphics in CFD.

## 6.10 SUMMARY

In this chapter, we have taken the final steps in our discussion of the basics of the numerics necessary for the numerical solution of the governing flow equations. In particular, we have tied together the fundamental aspects of numerical discretization discussed in Chap. 4 and shown how they can be put together to form various *techniques* for the numerical solution of the continuity, momentum, and energy equations. We have seen that the choice of an appropriate numerical technique is closely related to the mathematical behavior of the original partial differential equations. (Is the problem driven by elliptic, parabolic, or hyperbolic behavior, or some combination thereof?) The techniques discussed in this chapter have been well-established over the past two decades (and longer for some cases). They are intentionally chosen for their relative simplicity and straightforward aspects—they establish a certain foundation that will enable you to better appreciate the more

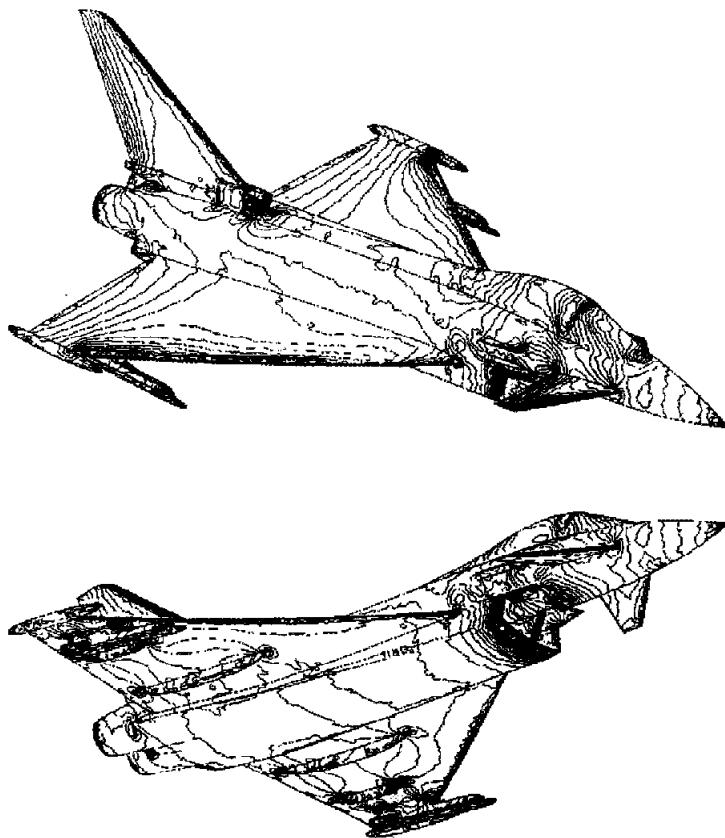
**FIG. 6.33**

A composite plot, illustrating four different zones on a body surface, where different graphical results are shown in each zone. (From Ref. 72. Courtesy of Amtec Engineering, Bellevue, Washington.)

modern, more sophisticated techniques which you will find in more advanced studies of CFD and in the modern applications of CFD in industry and research laboratories.

We did not begin this chapter with a road map, but it is fitting that we end with one. Figure 6.35 gives the general path; look over this road map and make certain that you feel comfortable with the details associated with each box in the map. If you are not quite certain about any aspects, return to the appropriate section in this chapter and review the material again. After you have done this, you will be ready to forge ahead to Part III of this book.

Remember the techniques in this chapter were chosen on the basis of their relative simplicity, while at the same time being sufficient for the applications to be treated in Part III. These techniques are essentially “student-friendly,” and they have a great deal to offer in opening up the joys and power of CFD to the beginning student. Indeed, the material in Parts I and II of this book is intended to introduce the reader to some of the philosophy, the definitions, and concepts of the discipline in a (hopefully) easy-to-understand manner. The intent is to make you feel comfortable with the material, not to overwhelm you with some of the more

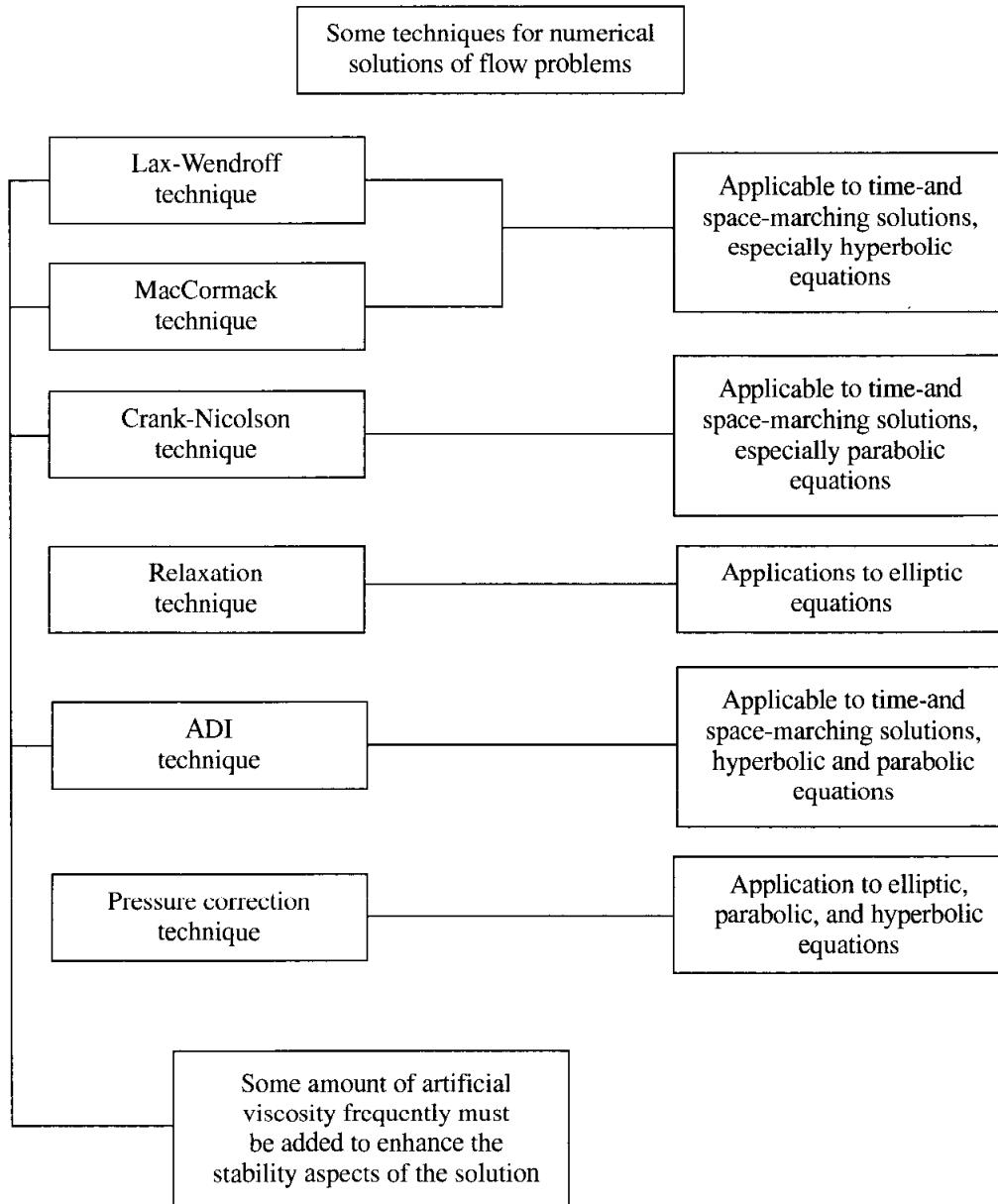
**FIG. 6.34**

Three-dimensional pressure coefficient contours over the surface of a generic fighter aircraft.  $M_\infty = 0.85$ , angle of attack =  $10^\circ$ , angle of yaw =  $30^\circ$ . (From Ref. 73. Courtesy of Elsevier Science Publishers.)

mathematically sophisticated new techniques that represent the current state-of-the-art of CFD. However, you will not be left totally in the dark about the modern CFD; Part IV will introduce you to some aspects of this modern state-of-the-art, but at a proper stage in your learning process so that it hopefully will make sense to you. So press on to Parts III and IV; Part III will serve to reinforce what you have already learned, and Part IV will inform you about some of the new techniques that characterize CFD today.

## PROBLEMS

- 6.1.** Show that the pressure correction formula, Eq. (6.104), is a central difference formulation of Poisson's equation for the pressure correction, namely, Eq. (6.105).
- 6.2.** The velocity potential for an incompressible, inviscid, irrotational flow over a circular cylinder is governed by Laplace's equation, as described in Sec. 6.5. Write Laplace's equation in polar coordinates. Write a computer program that numerically solves this equation for the velocity potential in the flow field around the cylinder. Plot the velocity



**FIG. 6.35**  
Road map for Chap. 6.

potential as a function of radial distance away from the cylinder, at several angular positions. Calculate and plot the pressure coefficient distribution along the surface of the cylinder. Finally, compare all these numerical results with exact results from the classical analytical solution for the flow over a cylinder.

---

## PART III

---

### SOME APPLICATIONS

We are now ready to examine *precisely* how CFD can be used to solve various flow problems. We have had to wait to do this until we completed our study of the governing flow equations and their mathematical behavior in Part I. We have also had to wait until we completed our study of the basic numerical aspects of discretization of partial differential equations (finite differences) or of integral equations (finite volumes), our discussion of grid generation and transformations, and our development of various techniques in Part II. We have had to wait for all these aspects to fall into place before we could address some applications, because the application of CFD generally requires the simultaneous knowledge of all the above aspects. However, we are now ready to launch into the world of applications—the subject of Part III of this book. The applications chosen in Part III all have a common theme; they are flow problems which are relatively basic and straightforward and which, for the most part, have exact analytical or semianalytical solutions obtained from an independent, theoretical study. These choices are made for three reasons: (1) they allow the clear illustration of the details of application of CFD to flow problems without muddying these applications with complex fluid dynamic details; (2) they are flow problems

which you are most likely to be familiar with from previous studies, and therefore feel somewhat comfortable with; and (3) the known, exact solutions allow a direct comparison with our CFD results, thus allowing us to obtain a feeling for how accurate CFD can be and what it takes to achieve this accuracy. Therefore, each of the chapters in Part III treats a specific flow problem and highlights the application of CFD to that specific problem. The applications will involve one or more of the techniques discussed in Chap. 6. In the process, you will have the opportunity to see the detailed implementation of these techniques, to see their strengths and weaknesses, to obtain a better understanding of what these techniques really mean, and to obtain a feeling for the real “nitty-gritty” aspects of working through CFD solutions for various types of flows. No effort is made to deal with the complex three-dimensional flows which constitute the bulk of modern CFD attention today—this is left to more advanced studies and workplace applications well beyond the scope of this book. Some of these modern applications were discussed in Chap. 1 and serve as an incentive for you to pursue further studies of CFD after finishing this book (further studies in the form of advanced books, courses, and applications in the workplace).

---

# CHAPTER

# 7

---

## NUMERICAL SOLUTIONS OF QUASI- ONE- DIMENSIONAL NOZZLE FLOWS

*When you measure what you are speaking about, and express it in numbers, you know something about it; but when you cannot measure it, when you cannot express it in numbers, your knowledge is of a meager and unsatisfactory kind: it may be the beginning of knowledge, but you have scarcely, in your thoughts, advanced to the stage of science.*

William Thomson, Lord Kelvin, from Popular Lectures  
and Addresses, 1891–1894

### 7.1 INTRODUCTION: THE FORMAT FOR CHAPTERS IN PART III

For the next four chapters, which constitute Part III, the following format will be followed. Each chapter will deal with a specific flow field; for example, the present chapter deals with the quasi-one-dimensional flow through a convergent-divergent nozzle. Each chapter will be subdivided into three main parts:

1. *Physical description of the flow.* The physical aspects of the flow will be described, and pertinent equations and relationships obtained from the analytical solution will be reviewed. If experimental data are appropriate, they will be

discussed. The purpose here is to give you a physical understanding of the flow field, to be calculated subsequently with our CFD techniques.

2. *CFD solution: intermediate steps.* A specific CFD technique (one of those discussed in Chap. 6) will be chosen for the numerical solution of the flow problem. The pertinent partial differential equations or the integral form of the equations, as the case may be, most suited for the specific CFD technique as applied to the specific flow problem will be set forth. The solution will be set up, step by step, and the numerical operations will be carried through in detail for the first few steps. Numbers will be given for all stages of the calculation during these intermediate steps so that you can compare them directly with your own calculations. Such matters as the calculations at internal points, at the boundaries, the numerical implementation of boundary conditions, and the determination of step size (if appropriate) will be covered in detail.
3. *CFD solution: final results.* Tabulations and graphs of the final numerical solution to the flow field will be given. These final results will be compared with the exact analytical (and/or experimental) results, and an evaluation of the accuracy of the CFD solution will be made.

*Note:* You have an option at this stage. You can decide simply to read these chapters, obtain a detailed understanding of the implementation of various CFD techniques to various problems, and get a feeling for the results. Or, you can also decide to write your own computer programs to calculate the answers yourself. It is for those of you who make the latter decision that some of the intermediate numbers obtained on the way toward a solution will be given. These numbers will be boxed and easy to follow so that you can check on the early calculational aspects of the problem. Also, the final answers will be given in some detail so that you can check the final results obtained from your computer program. You are strongly encouraged to make this latter decision: to write your own computer programs for the various solutions as we progress through the next four chapters. Simply reading the material is certainly worthwhile, but it is analogous to sitting on the sidelines watching a football game. By writing your own programs and calculating along with the steps given in the book, you will be playing the game yourself and getting your hands dirty. To really learn CFD, you must get your hands dirty; i.e., you must wade into the calculations and do them yourself. The flow problems and their CFD solutions given in the next four chapters are suitable for personal computers; you do not need a powerful mainframe or even a major workstation for their solution. Indeed, the present author has used his own Macintosh computer for the solutions described herein.

In some cases, more than one CFD technique will be used to solve the same flow problem. This is done to give you some comparison of the strengths and weaknesses of one technique versus another and a feeling for the relative difficulty of setting up one technique on the computer compared to another.

We are finally ready to go. This author wishes you happy computing!

## 7.2 INTRODUCTION TO THE PHYSICAL PROBLEM: SUBSONIC-SUPersonic ISENTROPIC FLOW

The flow problem discussed here can be found in any gas dynamic textbook; for example, it is covered in detail in Chap. 10 of the author's book *Fundamentals of Aerodynamics*, 2d ed. (Ref. 8), as well as in Chap. 5 of the author's book *Modern Compressible Flow*, 2d ed. (Ref. 21). In the present section, we will review some of the important physical and analytical aspects of this flow.

We consider the steady, isentropic flow through a convergent-divergent nozzle as sketched in Fig. 7.1. The flow at the inlet to the nozzle comes from a reservoir where the pressure and temperature are denoted by  $p_0$ , and  $T_0$ , respectively. The cross-sectional area of the reservoir is large (theoretically,  $A \rightarrow \infty$ ), and hence the velocity is very small ( $V \rightarrow 0$ ). Thus,  $p_0$  and  $T_0$  are the stagnation values, or *total* pressure and *total* temperature, respectively. The flow expands isentropically to supersonic speeds at the nozzle exit, where the exit pressure, temperature, velocity, and Mach number are denoted by  $p_e$ ,  $T_e$ ,  $V_e$ , and  $M_e$ , respectively. The flow is locally subsonic in the convergent section of the nozzle, sonic at the throat (minimum area), and supersonic at the divergent section. The sonic flow ( $M = 1$ ) at the throat means that the local velocity at this location is equal to

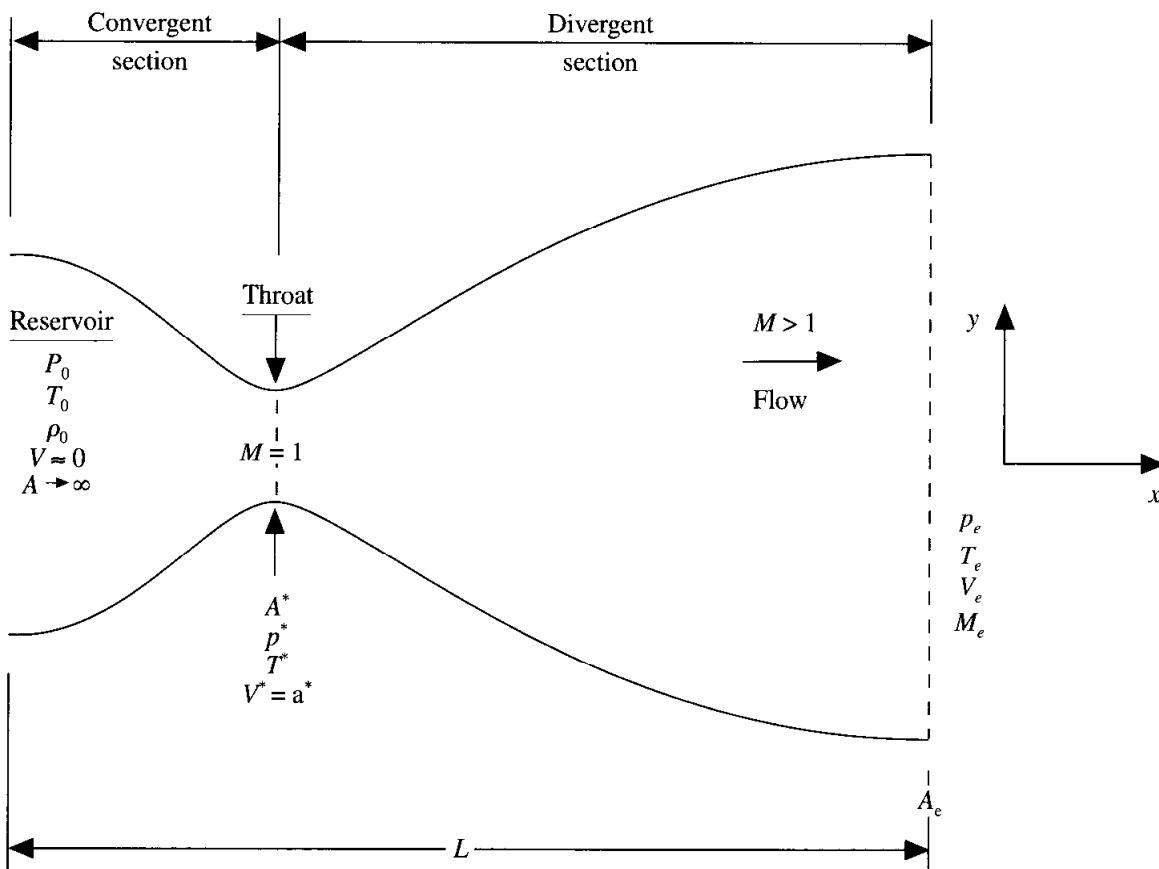


FIG. 7.1

Schematic for subsonic-supersonic isentropic nozzle flow.

the local speed of sound. Using an asterisk to denote sonic flow values, we have at the throat  $V = V^* = a^*$ . Similarly, the sonic flow values of pressure and temperature are denoted by  $p^*$  and  $T^*$ , respectively. The area of the sonic throat is denoted by  $A^*$ . We assume that at a given section, where the cross-sectional area is  $A$ , the flow properties are uniform across that section. Hence, although the area of the nozzle changes as a function of distance along the nozzle,  $x$ , and therefore in reality the flow field is two-dimensional (the flow varies in the two-dimensional  $xy$  space), we make the *assumption* that the flow properties vary only with  $x$ ; this is tantamount to assuming uniform flow properties across any given cross section. Such flow is defined as *quasi-one-dimensional* flow.

The governing continuity, momentum, and energy equations for this quasi-one-dimensional, steady, isentropic flow can be expressed, respectively, as

$$\text{Continuity : } \rho_1 V_1 A_1 = \rho_2 V_2 A_2 \quad (7.1)$$

$$\text{Momentum : } p_1 A_1 + \rho_1 V_1^2 A_1 + \int_{A_1}^{A_2} p \, dA = p_2 A_2 + \rho_2 V_2^2 A_2 \quad (7.2)$$

$$\text{Energy : } h_1 + \frac{V_1^2}{2} = h_2 + \frac{V_2^2}{2} \quad (7.3)$$

where subscripts 1 and 2 denote different locations along the nozzle. In addition, we have the perfect gas equation of state,

$$p = \rho R T \quad (7.4)$$

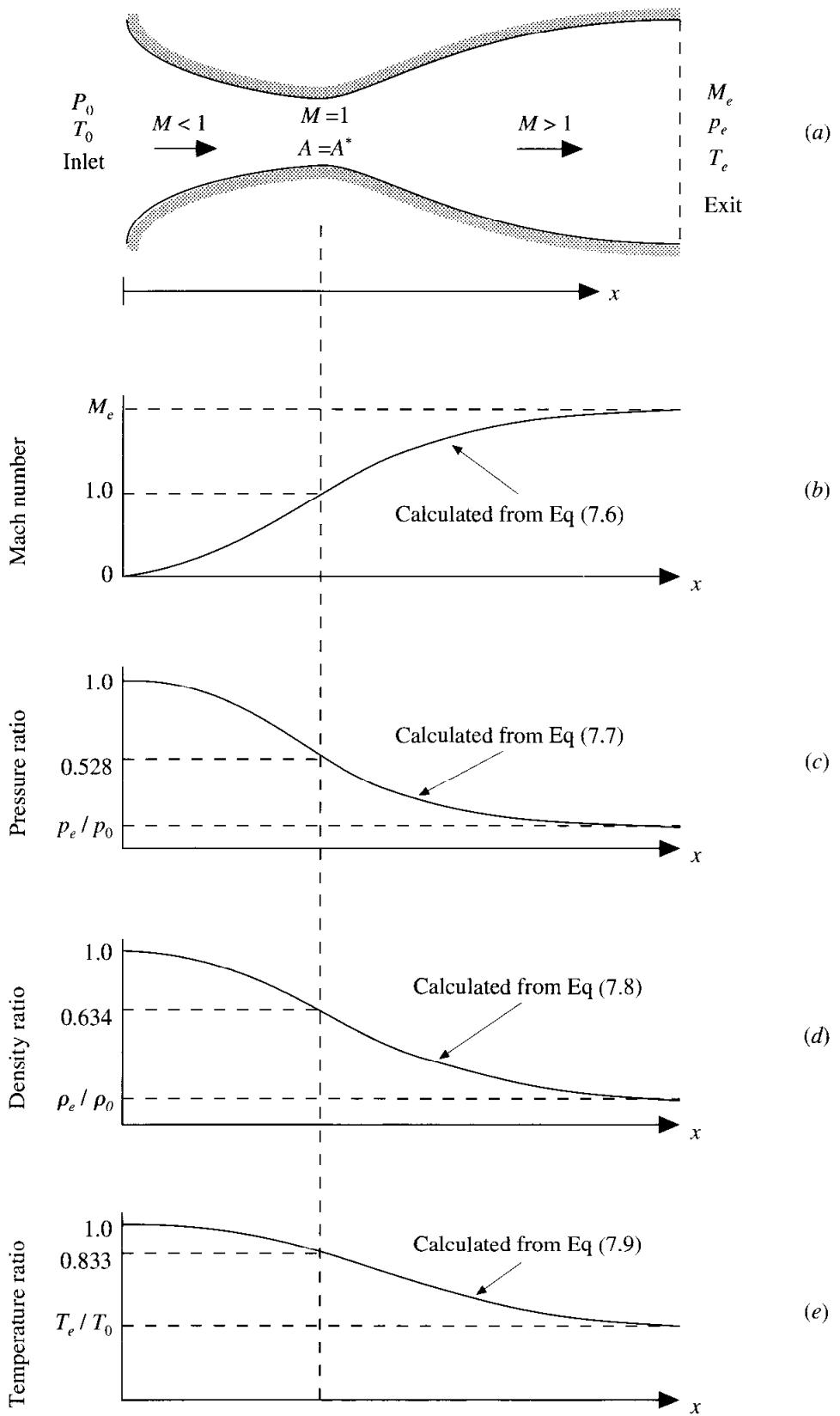
as well as the relation for a calorically perfect gas,

$$h = c_p T \quad (7.5)$$

Equations (7.1) to (7.5) can be solved analytically for the flow through the nozzle. Some results are as follows. The Mach number variation through the nozzle is governed exclusively by the area ratio  $A/A^*$  through the relation

$$\left(\frac{A}{A^*}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{M^2} \left[ \frac{2}{\gamma + 1} \left( 1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M^2 \right) \right]^{(\gamma+1)/(\gamma-1)} \quad (7.6)$$

where  $\gamma$  = ratio of specific heats =  $c_p/c_v$ . For air at standard conditions,  $\gamma = 1.4$ . For a nozzle where  $A$  is specified as a function of  $x$ , hence  $A/A^*$  is known as a function of  $x$ , then Eq. (7.6) allows the (implicit) calculation of  $M$  as a function of  $x$ . This is sketched in Fig. 7.2b. In turn, the variation of pressure, density, and temperature as a function of Mach number (and hence as a function of  $A/A^*$ , thus  $x$ ) is given,

**FIG. 7.2**

Qualitative aspects of quasi-one-dimensional nozzle flow: isentropic subsonic-supersonic solution.

respectively, by

$$\frac{p}{p_0} = \left(1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M^2\right)^{-\gamma/(\gamma-1)} \quad (7.7)$$

$$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0} = \left(1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M^2\right)^{-1/(\gamma-1)} \quad (7.8)$$

$$\frac{T}{T_0} = \left(1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M^2\right)^{-1} \quad (7.9)$$

These variations are sketched in Fig. 7.2c to e.

The nozzle flow described above just does not “happen” by itself. That is, if you take the nozzle sketched in Fig. 7.2a and place it on a desk in front of you, the air does not just start flowing through the nozzle by itself. As with all mechanical systems, it takes a force to accelerate a given mass; the nozzle flow is no different. In this case, the force exerted on the gas to accelerate it through the nozzle is supplied by the pressure ratio across the nozzle,  $p_0/p_e$ . For a nozzle with a specified area ratio  $A_e/A^*$ , the pressure ratio required to establish the subsonic-supersonic isentropic flow sketched in Fig. 7.2 must be a very specific value, namely, that value shown in Fig. 7.2c. This pressure ratio is a boundary condition applied to the flow; in the laboratory, it is provided by a high-pressure air reservoir at the inlet and/or a vacuum source at the exit.

### 7.3 CFD SOLUTION OF SUBSONIC-SUPersonic ISENTROPIC NOZZLE FLOW: MACCORMACK’S TECHNIQUE

At this point, you are reminded that *any* numerical solution of the steady, isentropic quasi-one-dimensional nozzle flow is overkill; we have a closed-form analytical solution as described in Sec. 7.2, and therefore in general a numerical solution is not needed. However, that is not the point. What we want to accomplish here is to illustrate the application of various CFD techniques, and we are intentionally choosing a flow problem with a known analytic solution for this illustration. That is, we are following the philosophy as set forth in Sec. 7.1.

In this section we choose to illustrate the application of MacCormack’s technique as described in Sec. 6.3. In particular, we will set up a time-marching, finite-difference solution for the quasi-one-dimensional nozzle flow. Before progressing further, pause at this point, return to Sec. 6.3, and read it again, carefully. In the present section, we will assume that you fully understand MacCormack’s technique to the extent described in Sec. 6.3. Also, reexamine Fig. 1.32b, which illustrates the major ideas that feed into this application.

#### 7.3.1 The Setup

In this section, we will set up three eschelons of equations as follows:

1. The governing flow equations will be couched in terms of *partial differential equations* suitable for the time-marching solution of quasi-one-dimensional flow (the closed-form algebraic equations discussed in Sec. 7.2 are for a steady flow and are not suitable for the present purpose).
2. The finite-difference expressions pertaining to MacCormack's technique as applied to this problem will be set up.
3. Other details for the numerical solution (such as the calculation of the time step and the treatment of boundary conditions) will be formulated.

**THE GOVERNING FLOW EQUATIONS.** Beginning with step 1 above, recall that we have derived the governing partial differential equations for inviscid flow (the Euler equations) in Chap. 2; these are summarized in Eqs. (2.82) to (2.86). Since we are dealing with a one-dimensional inviscid flow for our nozzle problem, it would seem appropriate to take Eqs. (2.82) to (2.86), simply write them down for one-dimensional flow, and proceed ahead. After all, these equations have been derived in Chap. 2 in the most general sense, and we should be able to make use of them. *However, such is not the case with quasi-one-dimensional nozzle flow.* Why? The answer lies with the simplifying assumption we have made with quasi-one-dimensional flow as described in Sec. 7.2, namely, we assume that the flow properties are uniform across any given cross section of the nozzle. In so doing, we have somewhat twisted the physics of the flow.\* Return to Fig. 7.1 for a moment. Note that, in reality, the real nozzle flow is a two-dimensional flow because, with the area changing as a function of  $x$ , in actuality there will be flow-field variations in both the  $x$  and  $y$  directions. This is the real physics of the flow, and Eqs. (2.82) to (2.86) properly describe such a two-dimensional flow. On the other hand, the *assumption* of quasi-one-dimensional flow dictates that the flow properties are functions of  $x$  only. Since this assumption twists the real physics of the flow, then Eqs. (2.82) to (2.86) are not necessarily appropriate for quasi-one-dimensional flow. On the other hand, for the equations that *are* appropriate for quasi-one-dimensional flow, we would at least like for the overall physical principles of (1) mass conservation, (2) Newton's second law, and (3) energy conservation to hold exactly, in spite of our twisted physics due to the quasi-one-dimensional assumption. To ensure that these physical principles are satisfied, we must return to the *integral forms* of the governing equations derived in Chap. 2 and apply these integral forms to a control volume consistent with the quasi-one-dimensional assumption. Let us proceed.

---

\* To say that we are "twisting" the physics of the flow is a rather strong statement in order to emphasize a point. What we are really doing with our quasi-one-dimensional assumptions is constructing a *simplified engineering model* of the flow. Such *modeling* to simplify more complicated problems is done very frequently in engineering and physical science. Of course, the price we pay for such modeling is usually some compromise with the real physics of the flow.

We start with the integral form of the continuity equation given by Eq. (2.19), repeated below:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int \int \int_{V'} \rho \, dV + \int \int_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0 \quad (2.19)$$

We apply this equation to the shaded control volume shown in Fig. 7.3. This control volume is a slice of the nozzle flow, where the infinitesimal thickness of the slice is  $dx$ . On the left side of the control volume, consistent with the quasi-one-dimensional assumption, the density, velocity, pressure, and internal energy, denoted by  $\rho$ ,  $V$ ,  $p$ , and  $e$ , respectively, are uniform over the area  $A$ . Similarly, on the right side of the control volume, the density, velocity, pressure, and internal energy, denoted by  $\rho + d\rho$ ,  $V + dV$ ,  $p + dp$ , and  $e + de$ , respectively, are uniform over the area  $A + dA$ . Applied to the control volume in Fig. 7.3, the volume integral in Eq. (2.19) becomes, in the limit as  $dx$  becomes very small,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int \int \int_{V'} \rho \, dV = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\rho A \, dx) \quad (7.10)$$

where  $A \, dx$  is the volume of the control volume in the limit of  $dx$  becoming vanishingly small. The surface integral in Eq. (2.19) becomes

$$\int \int_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = -\rho V A + (\rho + d\rho)(V + dV)(A + dA) \quad (7.11)$$

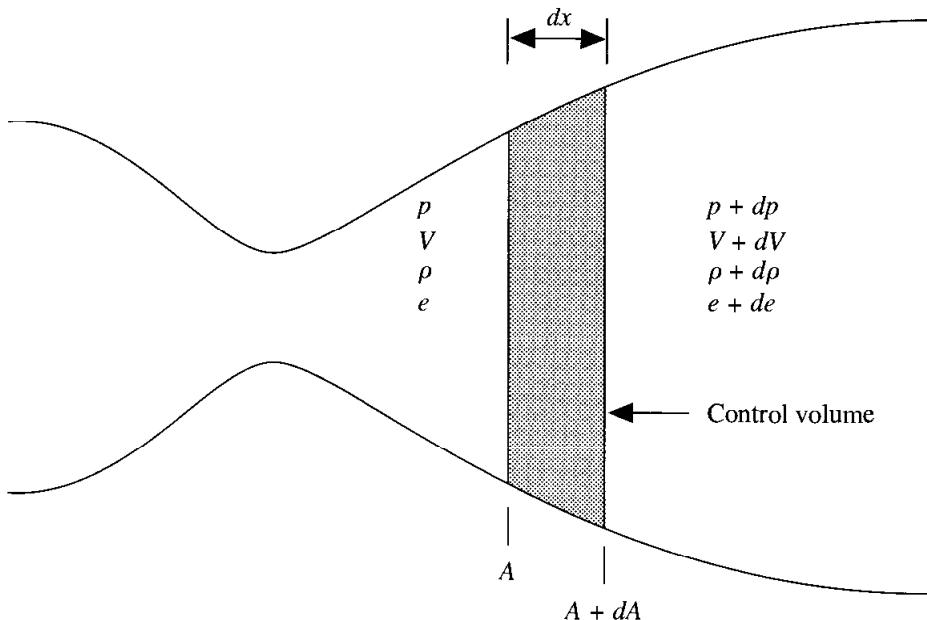


FIG. 7.3

Control volume for deriving the partial differential equations for unsteady, quasi-one-dimensional flow.

where the minus sign on the leading term on the right-hand side is due to the vectors  $\mathbf{V}$  and  $d\mathbf{S}$  pointing in opposite directions over the left face of the control volume, and hence the dot product is negative. (Recall from Chap. 2 that  $d\mathbf{S}$  always points *out* of the control volume, by convention.) Expanding the triple product term in Eq. (7.11), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \iint_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S} &= -\rho VA + \rho VA + \rho V dA + \rho A dV + \rho dV dA \\ &\quad + AV d\rho + V dA d\rho + A dV d\rho + d\rho dV dA \end{aligned} \quad (7.12)$$

In the limit as  $dx$  becomes very small, the terms involving *products* of differentials in Eq. (7.12), such as  $\rho dV dA$ ,  $d\rho dV dA$ , go to zero much faster than those terms involving only one differential. Hence, in Eq. (7.12), all terms involving *products* of differentials can be dropped, yielding in the limit as  $dx$  becomes very small

$$\iint_S \rho \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \rho V dA + \rho A dV + AV d\rho = d(\rho AV) \quad (7.13)$$

Substituting Eqs. (7.10) and (7.13) into (2.19), we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\rho A dx) + d(\rho AV) = 0 \quad (7.14)$$

Dividing Eq. (7.14) by  $dx$  and noting that  $d(\rho AV)/dx$  is, in the limit as  $dx$  goes to zero, the definition of the partial derivative with respect to  $x$ , we have

$$\frac{\partial(\rho A)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho AV)}{\partial x} = 0$$

(7.15)

Equation (7.15) is the partial differential equation form of the continuity equation *suitable for unsteady, quasi-one-dimensional flow*. It ensures that mass is conserved for this model of the flow.

It is interesting to pause for a moment and compare this with the general continuity equation for three-dimensional flow, Eq. (2.82b), specialized for one-dimensional flow. For such a case, Eq. (2.82b) becomes

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (7.16)$$

where  $u$  is the  $x$  component of velocity. Clearly, Eq. (7.16) is different from Eq. (7.15). Equation (7.16) applies to a *truly* one-dimensional flow, where  $A$  is constant with respect to  $x$ . It does *not* represent a proper statement of the conservation of mass for our *model* of quasi-one-dimensional flow, where  $A = A(x)$ ; instead, Eq. (7.15) is a proper statement of mass conservation for our model. Of course, note that for the special case of constant-area flow, Eq. (7.15) reduces to Eq. (7.16).

We now turn to the integral form of the  $x$  component of the momentum equation, (from Prob. 2.2) written below for an inviscid flow (neglecting the viscous

stress terms) with no body forces,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int \int \int_{\mathcal{V}} (\rho u) d\mathcal{V} + \int \int_S (\rho u \mathbf{V}) \cdot d\mathbf{S} = - \int \int_S (p dS)_x \quad (7.17)$$

where the term  $(p dS)_x$  denotes the  $x$  component of the vector  $p d\mathbf{S}$ . We apply Eq. (7.17) to the shaded control volume in Fig. 7.3. In Eq. (7.17), the integrals on the left side are evaluated in the same manner as discussed above in regard to the continuity equation. That is,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int \int \int_{\mathcal{V}} (\rho u) d\mathcal{V} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\rho V A dx) \quad (7.18)$$

and

$$\int \int_S (\rho u \mathbf{V}) \cdot d\mathbf{S} = -\rho V^2 A + (\rho + d\rho)(V + dV)^2(A + dA) \quad (7.19)$$

The evaluation of the pressure force term on the right-hand side of Eq. (7.17) is best carried out with the aid of Fig. 7.4. Here, the  $x$  components of the vector  $p d\mathbf{S}$  are shown on all four sides of the control volume. Remember that  $d\mathbf{S}$  always points away from the control volume; hence any  $x$  component  $(p dS)_x$  that acts toward the left (in the negative  $x$  direction) is a negative quantity, and any  $x$  component  $(p dS)_x$  that acts toward the right (in the positive  $x$  direction) is a positive quantity. Also note that the  $x$  component of  $p d\mathbf{S}$  acting on the top and bottom inclined faces of the control volume in Fig. 7.4 can be expressed as the pressure  $p$  acting on the component of the inclined area projected perpendicular to the  $x$  direction,  $(dA)/2$ ; hence, the contribution of each inclined face (top or bottom) to the pressure integral in Eq. (7.17) is  $-p(dA/2)$ . All together, the right-hand side of Eq. (7.17) is expressed as follows:

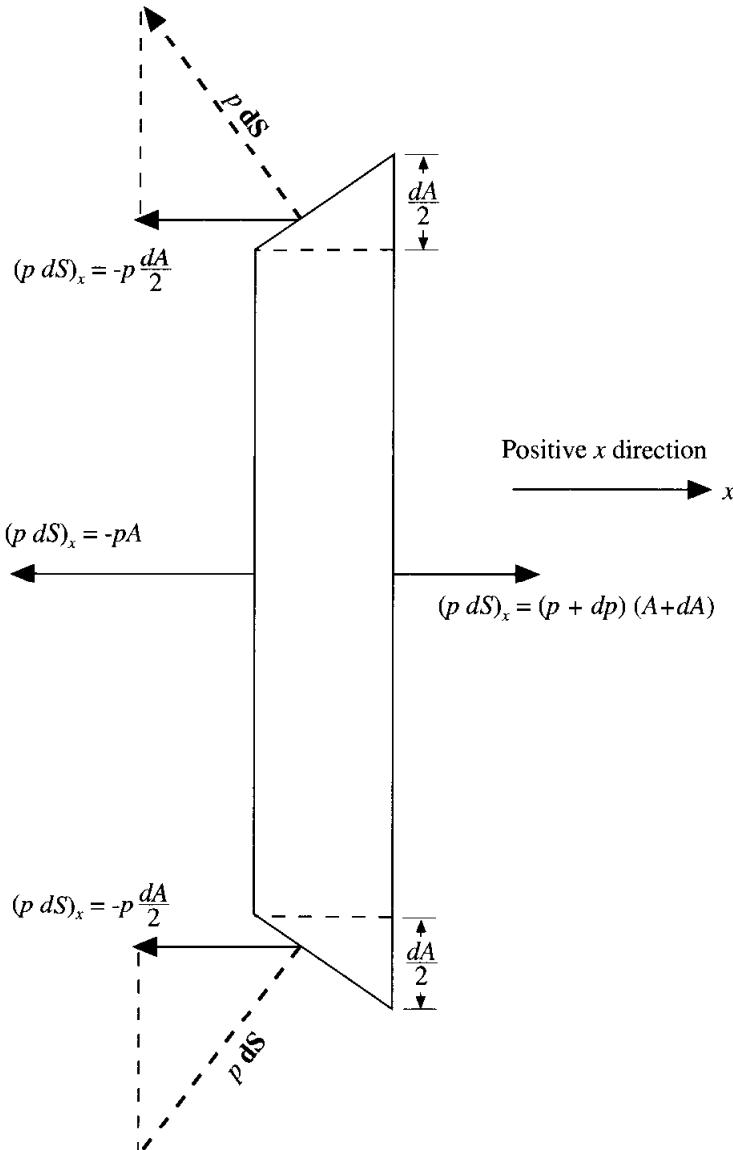
$$\int \int (p dS)_x = -pA + (p + dp)(A + dA) - 2p \left( \frac{dA}{2} \right) \quad (7.20)$$

Substituting Eqs. (7.18) to (7.20) into (7.17), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\rho V A dx) - \rho V^2 A + (\rho + d\rho)(V + dV)^2(A + dA) \\ = pA - (p + dp)(A + dA) + p dA \end{aligned} \quad (7.21)$$

Canceling like terms and ignoring products of differentials, Eq. (7.21) becomes in the limit of  $dx$  becoming very small

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\rho V A dx) + d(\rho V^2 A) = -A dp \quad (7.22)$$



**FIG. 7.4**  
The forces in the  $x$  direction acting on the control volume.

Dividing Eq. (7.22) by  $dx$  and taking the limit as  $dx$  goes to zero, we obtain the partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial(\rho VA)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho V^2 A)}{\partial x} = -A \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \quad (7.23)$$

We could live with Eq. (7.23) as it stands—it represents the *conservation* form of the momentum equation for quasi-one-dimensional flow. However, let us obtain the equivalent nonconservation form. This is done by multiplying the continuity equation, Eq. (7.15), by  $V$ , obtaining

$$V \frac{\partial(\rho A)}{\partial t} + V \frac{\partial(\rho VA)}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (7.24)$$

and then subtracting Eq. (7.24) from Eq. (7.23).

$$\frac{\partial(\rho VA)}{\partial t} - V \frac{\partial(\rho A)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho V^2 A)}{\partial x} - V \frac{\partial(\rho VA)}{\partial x} = -A \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \quad (7.25)$$

Expanding the derivatives on the left-hand side of Eq. (7.25) and canceling like terms, we have

$$\rho A \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + \rho A V \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} = -A \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \quad (7.26)$$

Dividing Eq. (7.26) by  $A$ , we finally obtain

$$\boxed{\rho \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + \rho V \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} = - \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}} \quad (7.27)$$

Equation (7.27) is the momentum equation appropriate for quasi-one-dimensional flow, written in nonconservation form.

One of the reasons for obtaining the nonconservation form of the momentum equation is to compare it with the general result expressed by Eq. (2.83a). For one-dimensional flow with no body forces, Eq. (2.83a) is written as

$$\rho \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \rho u \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = - \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \quad (7.28)$$

This is stylistically the same form as Eq. (7.27) for quasi-one-dimensional flow. Equations (7.27) and (7.28) simply demonstrate that the classic form of Euler's equation, generically written as

$$dp = -\rho V dV$$

holds for both types of flow.

Finally, let us consider the integral form of the energy equation, as obtained in Prob. 2.2. For an adiabatic flow ( $\dot{q} = 0$ ) with no body forces and no viscous effects, the integral form of the energy equation is

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int \int \int_{\mathcal{V}} \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) d\mathcal{V} + \int \int_{\mathcal{S}} \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) \mathbf{V} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = - \int \int_{\mathcal{S}} (p\mathbf{V}) \cdot d\mathbf{S} \quad (7.29)$$

Applied to the shaded control volume in Fig. 7.3, and keeping in mind the pressure forces shown in Fig. 7.4, Eq. (7.29) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) A dx \right] - \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) VA \\ & + (\rho + d\rho) \left[ e + de + \frac{(V + dV)^2}{2} \right] (V + dV)(A + dA) \\ & = - \left[ -pVA + (p + dp)(V + dV)(A + dA) - 2 \left( pV \frac{dA}{2} \right) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (7.30)$$

Neglecting products of differentials and canceling like terms, Eq. (7.30) becomes

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) A dx \right] + d(\rho e VA) + \frac{d(\rho V^3 A)}{2} = -d(pAV) \quad (7.31)$$

or

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) A dx \right] + d \left[ \rho \left( e + \frac{V^2}{2} \right) VA \right] = -d(pAV) \quad (7.32)$$

Taking the limit as  $dx$  approaches zero, Eq. (7.32), becomes the following partial differential equation:

$$\frac{\partial[\rho(e + V^2/2)A]}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial[\rho(e + V^2/2)VA]}{\partial x} = -\frac{\partial(pAV)}{\partial x} \quad (7.33)$$

Equation (7.33) is the conservation form of the energy equation expressed in terms of the total energy  $e + V^2/2$ , appropriate for unsteady, quasi-one-dimensional flow. Let us obtain from Eq. (7.33) the nonconservation form expressed in terms of internal energy by itself. The latter can be achieved by multiplying Eq. (7.23) by  $V$ , obtaining

$$\frac{\partial[\rho(V^2/2)A]}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial[\rho(V^3/2)A]}{\partial x} = -AV \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \quad (7.34)$$

and subtracting Eq. (7.34) from (7.33), yielding

$$\frac{\partial(\rho e A)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho e V A)}{\partial x} = -p \frac{\partial(AV)}{\partial x} \quad (7.35)$$

Equation (7.35) is the conservation form of the energy equation expressed in terms of internal energy  $e$ , suitable for quasi-one-dimensional flow. The nonconservation form is then obtained by multiplying the continuity equation, Eq. (7.15), by  $e$ ,

$$e \frac{\partial(\rho A)}{\partial t} + e \frac{\partial(\rho AV)}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (7.36)$$

and subtracting Eq. (7.36) from Eq. (7.35), yielding

$$\rho A \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} + \rho AV \frac{\partial e}{\partial x} = -p \frac{\partial(AV)}{\partial x} \quad (7.37)$$

Expanding the right-hand side and dividing by  $A$ , Eq. (7.37) becomes

$$\rho \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} + \rho V \frac{\partial e}{\partial x} = -p \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} - p \frac{V}{A} \frac{\partial A}{\partial x}$$

or

$$\rho \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} + \rho V \frac{\partial e}{\partial x} = -p \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} - p V \frac{\partial(\ln A)}{\partial x} \quad (7.38)$$

Equation (7.38) is the nonconservation form of the energy equation expressed in terms of internal energy, appropriate to unsteady, quasi-one-dimensional flow.

The reason for obtaining the energy equation in the form of Eq. (7.38) is that, for a calorically perfect gas, it leads directly to a form of the energy equation in terms of temperature  $T$ . For our solution of the quasi-one-dimensional nozzle flow of a calorically perfect gas, this is a fundamental variable, and therefore it is convenient

to deal with it as the primary dependent variable in the energy equation. For a calorically perfect gas

$$e = c_v T$$

Hence, Eq. (7.38) becomes

$$\rho c_v \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} + \rho V c_v \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} = -p \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} - pV \frac{\partial(\ln A)}{\partial x} \quad (7.39)$$

As an interim summary, our continuity, momentum, and energy equations for unsteady, quasi-one-dimensional flow are given by Eqs. (7.15), (7.27), and (7.39), respectively. Take the time to look at these equations; you see three equations with four unknown variables  $\rho$ ,  $V$ ,  $p$ , and  $T$ . The pressure can be eliminated from these equations by using the equation of state

$$p = \rho RT \quad (7.40)$$

along with its derivative

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = R \left( \rho \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} + T \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} \right) \quad (7.41)$$

With this, we expand Eq. (7.15) and rewrite Eqs. (7.27) and (7.39), respectively, as

$$\text{Continuity : } \frac{\partial(\rho A)}{\partial t} + \rho A \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} + \rho V \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} + VA \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (7.42)$$

$$\text{Momentum : } \rho \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + \rho V \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} = -R \left( \rho \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} + T \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} \right) \quad (7.43)$$

$$\text{Energy : } \rho c_v \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} + \rho V c_v \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} = -\rho RT \left[ \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} + V \frac{\partial(\ln A)}{\partial x} \right] \quad (7.44)$$

At this stage, we could readily proceed to set up our numerical solution of Eqs. (7.42) to (7.44). Note that these are written in terms of dimensional variables. This is fine, and many CFD solutions are carried out directly in terms of such dimensional variables. Indeed, this has an added engineering advantage because it gives you a feeling for the magnitudes of the real physical quantities as the solution progresses. However, for nozzle flows, the flow-field variables are frequently expressed in terms of nondimensional variables, such as those sketched in Fig. 7.2, where the flow variables are referenced to their reservoir values. The nondimensional variables  $p/p_0$ ,  $\rho/\rho_0$ , and  $T/T_0$  vary between 0 and 1, which is an “aesthetic” advantage when presenting the results. Because fluid dynamicists dealing with nozzle flows so frequently use these nondimensional terms, we will follow suit here. (A number of CFD practitioners prefer to always deal with nondimensional variables, whereas others prefer dimensional variables; as far as the numerics are concerned, there should be no real difference, and the choice is really a matter of your personal preference.) Therefore, returning to Fig. 7.1, where the

reservoir temperature and density are denoted by  $T_0$  and  $\rho_0$ , respectively, we define the nondimensional temperature and density, respectively, as

$$T' = \frac{T}{T_0} \quad \rho' = \frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$$

where (for the time being) the prime denotes a dimensionless variable. Moreover, letting  $L$  denote the length of the nozzle, we define a dimensionless length as

$$x' = \frac{x}{L}$$

Denoting the speed of sound in the reservoir as  $a_0$ , where

$$a_0 = \sqrt{\gamma R T_0}$$

we define a dimensionless velocity as

$$V' = \frac{V}{a_0}$$

Also, the quantity  $L/a_0$  has the dimension of time, and we define a dimensionless time as

$$t' = \frac{t}{L/a_0}$$

Finally, we ratio the local area  $A$  to the sonic throat area  $A^*$  and define a dimensionless area as

$$A' = \frac{A}{A^*}$$

Returning to Eq. (7.42) and introducing the nondimensional variables, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(\rho' A')}{\partial t'} \left( \frac{\rho_0 A^*}{L/a_0} \right) + \rho' A' \frac{\partial V'}{\partial x'} \left( \frac{\rho_0 A^* a_0}{L} \right) + \rho' V' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'} \left( \frac{\rho_0 a_0 A^*}{L} \right) \\ + V' A' \frac{\partial \rho'}{\partial x'} \left( \frac{a_0 A^* \rho_0}{L} \right) = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (7.45)$$

Note that  $A'$  is a function of  $x'$  only; it is *not* a function of time (the nozzle geometry is fixed, invariant with time). Hence, in Eq. (7.45) the time derivative can be written as

$$\frac{\partial(\rho' A')}{\partial t'} = A' \frac{\partial \rho'}{\partial t'}$$

With this, Eq. (7.45) becomes

$$\boxed{\text{Continuity : } \frac{\partial \rho'}{\partial t'} = -\rho' \frac{\partial V'}{\partial x'} - \rho' V' \frac{\partial (\ln A')}{\partial x'} - V' \frac{\partial \rho'}{\partial x'}} \quad (7.46)$$

Returning to Eq. (7.43) and introducing the nondimensional variables, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \rho' \frac{\partial V'}{\partial t'} \left( \frac{\rho_0 a_0}{L/a_0} \right) + \rho' V' \frac{\partial V'}{\partial x'} \left( \frac{\rho_0 a_0^2}{L} \right) &= -R \left( \rho' \frac{\partial T'}{\partial x'} + T' \frac{\partial \rho'}{\partial x'} \right) \left( \frac{\rho_0 T_0}{L} \right) \\ \text{or } \rho' \frac{\partial V'}{\partial t'} &= -\rho' V' \frac{\partial V'}{\partial x'} - \left( \rho' \frac{\partial T'}{\partial x'} + T' \frac{\partial \rho'}{\partial x'} \right) \frac{RT_0}{a_0^2} \end{aligned} \quad (7.47)$$

In Eq. (7.47), note that

$$\frac{RT_0}{a_0^2} = \frac{\gamma RT_0}{\gamma a_0^2} = \frac{a_0^2}{\gamma a_0^2} = \frac{1}{\gamma}$$

Hence, Eq. (7.47) becomes

$$\boxed{\text{Momentum : } \frac{\partial V'}{\partial t'} = -V' \frac{\partial V'}{\partial x'} - \frac{1}{\gamma} \left( \frac{\partial T'}{\partial x'} + \frac{T'}{\rho'} \frac{\partial \rho'}{\partial x'} \right)} \quad (7.48)$$

Returning to Eq. (7.44) and introducing the nondimensional variables, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \rho' c_v \frac{\partial T'}{\partial t'} \left( \frac{\rho_0 T_0}{L/a_0} \right) + \rho' V' c_v \frac{\partial T'}{\partial x'} \left( \frac{\rho_0 a_0 T_0}{L} \right) \\ = -\rho' RT' \left[ \frac{\partial V'}{\partial x'} + V' \frac{\partial (\ln A')}{\partial x'} \right] \left( \frac{\rho_0 T_0 a_0}{L} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (7.49)$$

In Eq. (7.49), the factor  $R/c_v$  is given by

$$\frac{R}{c_v} = \frac{R}{R/(\gamma - 1)} = \gamma - 1$$

Hence, Eq. (7.49) becomes

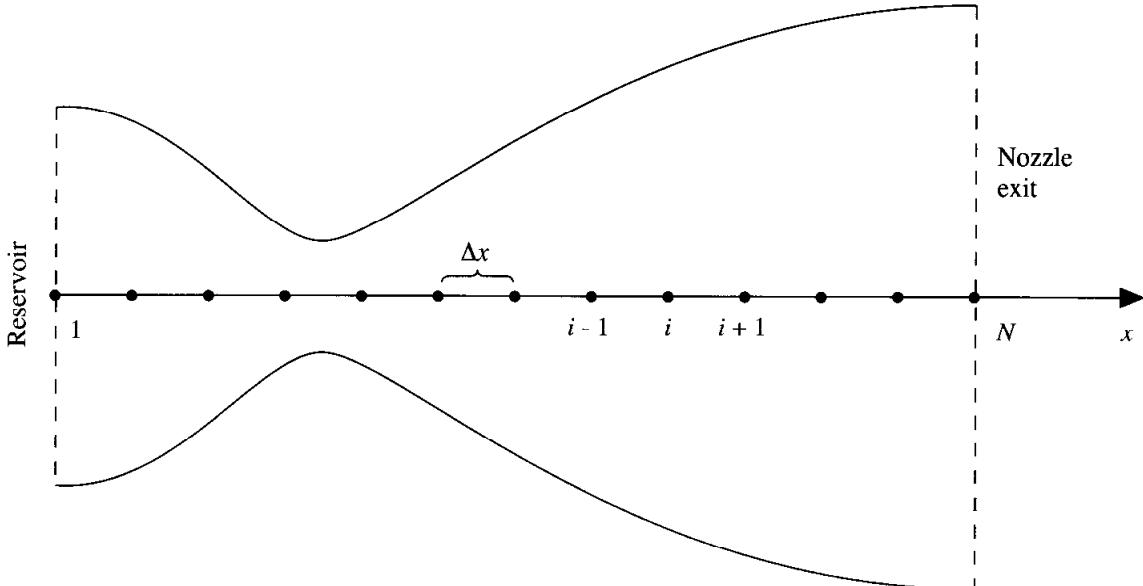
$$\boxed{\text{Energy : } \frac{\partial T'}{\partial t'} = -V' \frac{\partial T'}{\partial x'} - (\gamma - 1) T' \left[ \frac{\partial V'}{\partial x'} + V' \frac{\partial (\ln A')}{\partial x'} \right]} \quad (7.50)$$

That is it! We are finally finished with the first eschelon as itemized at the beginning of this subsection. After what may seem like an interminable manipulation of the governing equations, we have finally set up that particular form of the equations that will be most appropriate as well as convenient for the time-marching solution of quasi-one-dimensional nozzle flow, namely, Eqs. (7.46), (7.48), and (7.50).

**THE FINITE-DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS.** We now proceed to the next eschelon, namely, the setting up of the finite-difference expressions using MacCormack's explicit technique for the numerical solution of Eqs. (7.46), (7.48), and (7.50). To implement a finite-difference solution, we divide the  $x$  axis along the nozzle into a number of discrete grid points, as shown in Fig. 7.5. (Recall that in our quasi-one-dimensional nozzle assumption, the flow variables *across* the nozzle cross section at any particular grid point, say point  $i$ , are uniform.) In Fig. 7.5, the first grid point, labeled point 1, is assumed to be in the reservoir. The points are evenly distributed along the  $x$  axis, with  $\Delta x$  denoting the spacing between grid points. The last point, namely, that at the nozzle exit, is denoted by  $N$ ; we have a total number of  $N$  grid points distributed along the axis. Point  $i$  is simply an arbitrary grid point, with points  $i - 1$  and  $i + 1$  as the adjacent points. Recall from Sec. 6.3 that MacCormack's technique is a predictor-corrector method. In the time-marching approach, remember that we know the flow-field variables at time  $t$ , and we use the difference equations to solve explicitly for the variables at time  $t + \Delta t$ .

First, consider the predictor step. Following the discussion in Sec. 6.3, we set up the spatial derivatives as forward differences. Also, to reduce the complexity of the notation, we will drop the use of the prime to denote a dimensionless variable. In what follows, *all* variables are the nondimensional variables, denoted earlier by the prime notation. Analogous to Eq. (6.17), from Eq. (7.46) we have

$$\left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_i^t = -\rho_i^t \frac{V_{i+1}^t - V_i^t}{\Delta x} - \rho_i^t V_i^t \frac{\ln A_{i+1} - \ln A_i}{\Delta x} - V_i^t \frac{\rho_{i+1}^t - \rho_i^t}{\Delta x} \quad (7.51)$$



**FIG. 7.5**  
Grid point distribution along the nozzle.

From Eq. (7.48), we have

$$\left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_i^t = -V_i^t \frac{V_{i+1}^t - V_i^t}{\Delta x} - \frac{1}{\gamma} \left( \frac{T_{i+1}^t - T_i^t}{\Delta x} + \frac{T_i^t \rho_{i+1}^t - \rho_i^t}{\Delta x} \right) \quad (7.52)$$

From Eq. (7.50), we have

$$\left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_i^t = -V_i^t \frac{T_{i+1}^t - T_i^t}{\Delta x} - (\gamma - 1) T_i^t \left( \frac{V_{i+1}^t - V_i^t}{\Delta x} + V_i^t \frac{\ln A_{i+1} - \ln A_i}{\Delta x} \right) \quad (7.53)$$

Analogous to Eqs. (6.18) to (6.21), we obtain predicted values of  $\rho$ ,  $V$ , and  $T$ , denoted by barred quantities, from

$$\bar{\rho}_i^{t+\Delta t} = \rho_i^t + \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_i^t \Delta t \quad (7.54)$$

$$\bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} = V_i^t + \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_i^t \Delta t \quad (7.55)$$

$$\bar{T}_i^{t+\Delta t} = T_i^t + \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_i^t \Delta t \quad (7.56)$$

In Eqs. (7.54) to (7.56),  $p_i^t$ ,  $V_i^t$ , and  $T_i^t$  are known values at time  $t$ . Numbers for the time derivatives in Eqs. (7.54) to (7.56) are supplied directly by Eqs. (7.51) to (7.53).

Moving to the corrector step, we return to Eqs. (7.46), (7.48), and (7.50) and replace the spatial derivatives with rearward differences, using the predicted (barred) quantities. Analogous to Eq. (6.22), we have from Eq. (7.46)

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_i^{t+\Delta t} &= -\bar{\rho}_i^{t+\Delta t} \frac{\bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} - \bar{V}_{i-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} - \bar{\rho}_i^{t+\Delta t} \bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} \frac{\ln A_i - \ln A_{i-1}}{\Delta x} \\ &\quad - \bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} \frac{\bar{\rho}_i^{t+\Delta t} - \bar{\rho}_{i-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} \end{aligned} \quad (7.57)$$

From Eq. (7.48), we have

$$\left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_i^{t+\Delta t} = -\bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} \frac{\bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} - \bar{V}_{i-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} - \frac{1}{\gamma} \left( \frac{\bar{T}_i^{t+\Delta t} - \bar{T}_{i-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} + \frac{\bar{T}_i^{t+\Delta t} \bar{\rho}_i^{t+\Delta t} - \bar{\rho}_{i-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} \right) \quad (7.58)$$

From Eq. (7.50), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_i^{t+\Delta t} &= -\bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} \frac{\bar{T}_i^{t+\Delta t} - \bar{T}_{i-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} - (\gamma - 1) \bar{T}_i^{t+\Delta t} \\ &\quad \times \left( \frac{\bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} - \bar{V}_{i-1}^{t+\Delta t}}{\Delta x} + \bar{V}_i^{t+\Delta t} \frac{\ln A_i - \ln A_{i-1}}{\Delta x} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (7.59)$$

Analogous to Eq. (6.22), the average time derivatives are given by

$$\left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{av} = 0.5 \left[ \underbrace{\left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_i^t}_{\text{From Eq. (7.51)}} + \underbrace{\left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_i^{t+\Delta t}}_{\text{From Eq. (7.57)}} \right] \quad (7.60)$$

$$\left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_{av} = 0.5 \left[ \underbrace{\left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_i^t}_{\text{From Eq. (7.52)}} + \underbrace{\left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_i^{t+\Delta t}}_{\text{From Eq. (7.58)}} \right] \quad (7.61)$$

$$\left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_{av} = 0.5 \left[ \underbrace{\left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_i^t}_{\text{From Eq. (7.53)}} + \underbrace{\left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_i^{t+\Delta t}}_{\text{From Eq. (7.59)}} \right] \quad (7.62)$$

Finally, analogous to Eqs. (6.13) to (6.16), we have for the corrected values of the flow-field variables at time  $t + \Delta t$

$$\rho_i^{t+\Delta t} = \rho_i^t + \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t \quad (7.63)$$

$$V_i^{t+\Delta t} = V_i^t + \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t \quad (7.64)$$

$$T_i^{t+\Delta t} = T_i^t + \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t \quad (7.65)$$

Keep in mind that all the variables in Eqs. (7.51) to (7.65) are the *nondimensional* values. Also, Eqs. (7.51) to (7.65) constitute our second eschelon of equations, namely, the finite-difference expressions of the governing equations in a form that pertains to MacCormack's technique.

**CALCULATION OF TIME STEP.** We now proceed to the third and final eschelon of equations mentioned at the beginning of this section, namely, the setting up of other details necessary for the numerical solution of the quasi-one-dimensional nozzle flow problem. First, we ask the question: What about the magnitude of  $\Delta t$ ? The governing system of equations, Eqs. (7.42) to (7.44), is hyperbolic with respect to time. Recalling our discussion of stability considerations in Sec. 4.5, a stability constraint exists on this system analogous to that found in Eq. (4.84), namely,

$$\Delta t = C \frac{\Delta x}{a + V} \quad (7.66)$$

Recall from Sec. 4.5 that  $C$  is the *Courant number*; the simple stability analysis of a linear hyperbolic equation carried out in Sec. 4.5 gives the result that  $C \leq 1$  for an explicit numerical solution to be stable. The present application to subsonic-supersonic isentropic nozzle flow is governed by *nonlinear* partial differential equations, namely, Eqs. (7.46), (7.48), and (7.50). In this case, the exact stability criterion for a linear equation, namely, that  $C \leq 1$ , can only be viewed as general guidance for our present nonlinear problem. However, it turns out to be quite good guidance, as we shall see. Also note that, in contrast to Eq. (4.84), Eq. (7.66) is written with the sum  $a + V$  in the denominator. Equation (7.66) is the *Courant-Friedrichs-Lowry (CFL) criterion* for a one-dimensional flow, where  $V$  is the local flow velocity at a point in the flow and  $a$  is the local speed of sound. Equation (7.66), along with  $C \leq 1$ , simply states that  $\Delta t$  must be less than, or at best equal to, the time it takes a sound wave to move from one grid point to the next. Equation (7.66) is in dimensional form. However, when  $t$ ,  $x$ ,  $a$ , and  $V$  are nondimensionalized, the nondimensional form of Eq. (7.66) is exactly the same form as the dimensional case. (Prove this to yourself.) Hence, we will hereafter treat the variables in Eq. (7.66) as our nondimensional variables defined earlier. That is, in Eq. (7.66),  $\Delta t$  is the increment in nondimensional time and  $\Delta x$  is the increment in nondimensional space;  $\Delta t$  and  $\Delta x$  in Eq. (7.66) are precisely the same as appear in the non-dimensional equations (7.51) to (7.65). Examining Eq. (7.66) more carefully, we note that, although  $\Delta x$  is the same throughout the flow, both  $V$  and  $a$  are variables. Hence, at a given grid point at a given time step, Eq. (7.66) is written as

$$(\Delta t)_i^t = C \frac{\Delta x}{a_i^t + V_i^t} \quad (7.67)$$

At an adjacent grid point, we have from Eq. (7.66)

$$(\Delta t)_{i+1}^t = C \frac{\Delta x}{a_{i+1}^t + V_{i+1}^t} \quad (7.68)$$

Clearly,  $(\Delta t)_i^t$  and  $(\Delta t)_{i+1}^t$  obtained from Eqs. (7.67) and (7.68), respectively are, in general, different values. Hence, in the implementation of the time-marching solution, we have two choices:

1. In utilizing Eqs. (7.54) to (7.56) and (7.63) to (7.65), we can, at each grid point  $i$ , employ the *local* values of  $(\Delta t)_i^t$  determined from Eq. (7.67). In this fashion, the flow-field variables at each grid point in Fig. 7.5 will be advanced in time according to their own, local time step. Hence, the resulting flow field at time  $t + \Delta t$  will be in a type of *artificial “time warp,”* with the flow-field variables at a given grid point corresponding to some nonphysical time different from that of the variables at an adjacent grid point. Clearly, such a *local time-stepping* approach does not realistically follow the *actual, physical transients* in the flow and hence cannot be used for an accurate solution of the *unsteady* flow. However, if the final steady-state flow field in the limit of large time is the only desired result, then the intermediate variation of the flow-field variables with time is irrelevant. Indeed, if such is the case, the *local* time stepping will frequently lead

to *faster* convergence to the steady state. This is why some practitioners use the local time-stepping approach. However, there is always a philosophical question that arises here, namely, does the *local* time-stepping method always lead to the *correct* steady state? Although the answer is usually yes, there is still some reason for a small feeling of discomfort in this regard.

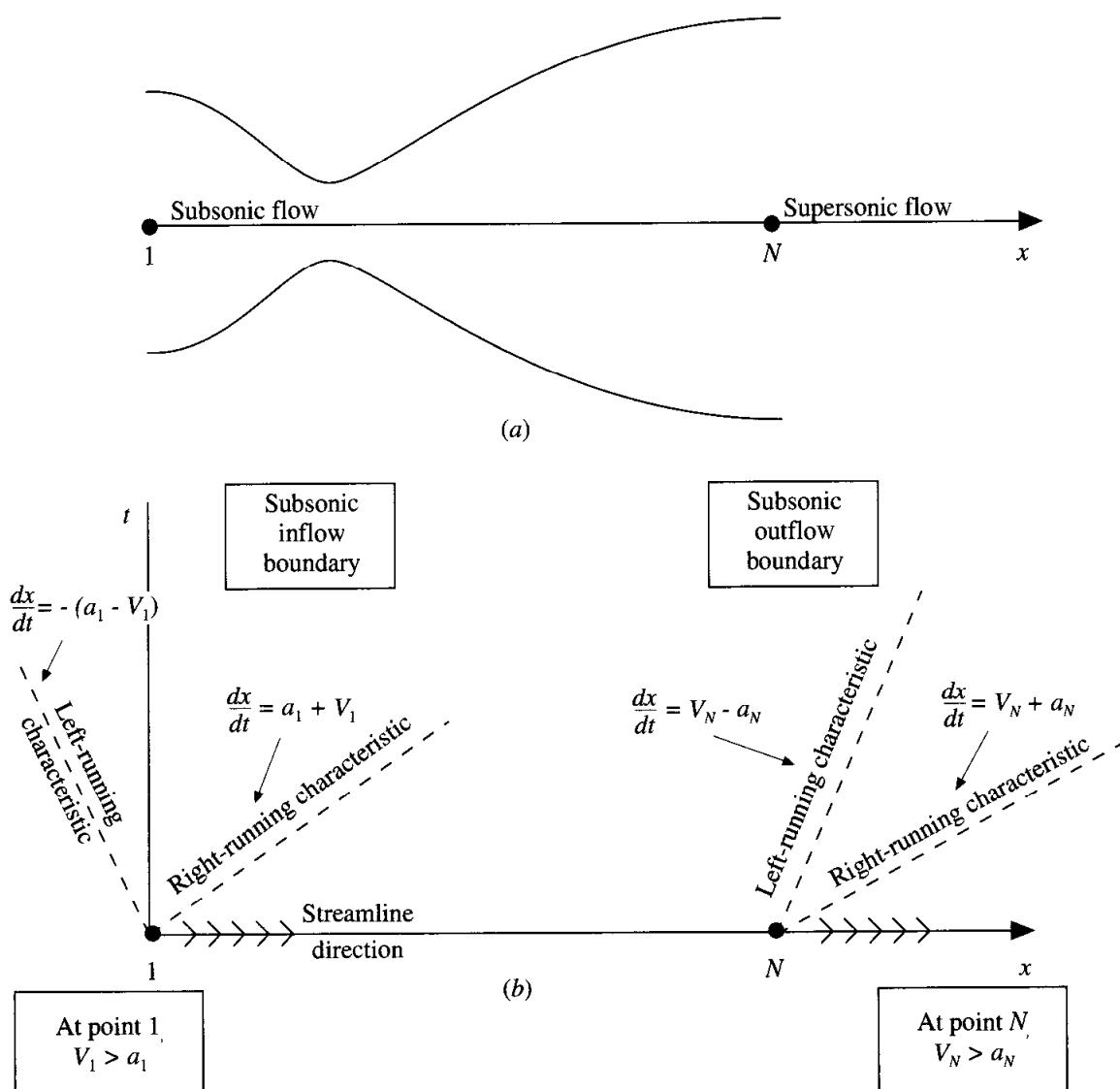
2. The other choice is to calculate  $(\Delta t)_i^t$  at all the grid points,  $i = 1$  to  $i = N$ , and then choose the *minimum* value for use in Eqs. (7.54) to (7.56) and (7.63) to (7.65). That is,

$$\Delta t = \text{minimum}(\Delta t_1^t, \Delta t_2^t, \dots, \Delta t_i^t, \dots, \Delta t_N^t) \quad (7.69)$$

The resulting  $\Delta t$  obtained from Eq. (7.69) is then used in Eqs. (7.54) to (7.56) and (7.63) to (7.65). In this fashion, the flow-field variables at all the grid points at time  $t + \Delta t$  all correspond to the *same* physical time. Hence, the time-marching solution is following the actual unsteady flow variations that would exist in nature; i.e., the solution gives a time-accurate solution of the actual transient flow field, consistent with the unsteady continuity, momentum, and energy equations. This consistent time marching is the approach we will use in the present book. Although it may require more time steps to approach the steady state in comparison to the “local” time stepping described earlier, we can feel comfortable that the consistent time-marching approach is giving us the physically meaningful transient variations—which frequently are of intrinsic value by themselves. Thus, in our subsequent calculations, we will use Eq. (7.69) to determine the value of  $\Delta t$ .

**BOUNDARY CONDITIONS.** Another aspect of the numerical solution is that of *boundary conditions*—an all-important aspect, because without the physically proper implementation of boundary conditions and their numerically proper representation, we have no hope whatsoever in obtaining a proper numerical solution to our flow problem. First, let us examine the physical boundary conditions for the subsonic-supersonic isentropic flow shown in Fig. 7.2, which is the subject of this section. Returning to Fig. 7.5, we note that grid points 1 and  $N$  represent the two boundary points on the  $x$  axis. Point 1 is essentially in the reservoir; it represents an *inflow* boundary, with flow coming from the reservoir and entering the nozzle. In contrast, point  $N$  is an *outflow* boundary, with flow leaving the nozzle at the nozzle exit. Moreover, the flow velocity at point 1 is a very low, subsonic value. (The flow velocity at point 1, which corresponds to a finite area ratio  $A_1/A^*$ , cannot be precisely zero; if it were, there would be no mass flow entering the nozzle. Hence, point 1 does not correspond *exactly* to the reservoir, where by definition the flow velocity is zero. That is, the area for the reservoir is theoretically infinite, and we are clearly starting our own calculation at point 1 where the cross-sectional area is finite.) Hence, not only is point 1 an *inflow* boundary, it is a *subsonic inflow* boundary. *Question:* Which flow quantities should be specified at this subsonic inflow boundary and which should be calculated as part of the solution (i.e., allowed to “float” as a function of time)? A formal answer can be obtained by using the method of characteristics for an unsteady, one-dimensional flow, as introduced in

Chap. 3. We did not develop the method of characteristics in Chap. 3 to the extent necessary to precisely study this question about the boundary conditions; indeed, such a matter is beyond the scope of this book. However, we will mention the result of such a study, which you will find to be physically acceptable. In a subsection of Sec. 3.4.1, we indicated that unsteady, inviscid flow is governed by hyperbolic equations, and therefore for one-dimensional unsteady flow there exist two real characteristic lines through any point in the  $xt$  plane. This is illustrated in Fig. 3.6; return to this figure and examine it carefully before continuing on. Note that the two characteristic lines through point  $P$  in Fig. 3.6 are labeled left- and right-running characteristics, respectively. Physically, these two characteristics represent infinitely weak Mach waves which are propagating upstream and downstream, respectively. Both Mach waves are traveling at the speed of sound  $a$ . Now turn to Fig. 7.6, which shows our convergent-divergent nozzle (Fig. 7.6a) with an  $xt$  diagram sketched below it (Fig. 7.6b). Concentrate on grid point 1 in the  $xt$  plane in Fig. 7.6b. At point



**FIG. 7.6**  
Study of boundary conditions: subsonic inflow and supersonic outflow.

1, the local flow velocity is subsonic,  $V_1 < a_1$ . Hence, the left-running characteristic at point 1 travels *upstream*, to the left in Fig. 7.6; i.e., the left-running Mach wave, which is traveling toward the left (relative to a moving fluid element) at the speed of sound easily works its way *upstream* against the low-velocity subsonic flow, which is slowly moving from left to right. Hence, in Fig. 7.6b, we show the left-running characteristic running to the left with a combined speed  $a_1 - V_1$  (relative to the fixed nozzle in Fig. 7.6a). Since the domain for the flow field to be calculated is contained between grid points 1 and  $N$ , then at point 1 we see that the left-running characteristic is propagating *out of* the domain; it is propagating to the left, away from the domain. In contrast, the right-running characteristic, which is a Mach wave propagating to the right at the speed of sound relative to a fluid element, is clearly moving toward the right in Fig. 7.6b. This is for two reasons: (1) the fluid element at point 1 is already moving toward the right, and (2) the right-running Mach wave (characteristic) is moving toward the right at the speed of sound relative to the fluid element. Hence, the right-running characteristic is propagating to the right (relative to the nozzle) at a combined velocity of  $V_1 + a_1$ . What we see here is that the right-running characteristic is propagating from point 1 *into* the domain of the calculation.

What does all this have to do with boundary conditions? The method of characteristics tells us that at a boundary where one characteristic propagates *into* the domain, then the value of one dependent flow-field variable must be *specified* at that boundary, and if one characteristic line propagates *out of* the domain, then the value of another dependent flow-field variable must be allowed to *float* at the boundary; i.e., it must be calculated in steps of time as a function of the timewise solution of the flow field. Also, note that at point 1 a streamline flows *into* the domain, across the inflow boundary. In terms of denoting what should and should not be specified at the boundary, the streamline *direction* plays the same role as the characteristic directions; i.e., the streamline moving *into* the domain at point 1 stipulates that the value of a second flow-field variable must be *specified* at the inflow boundary. *Conclusion:* At the *subsonic inflow boundary*, we must *stipulate* the values of *two* dependent flow-field variables, whereas the value of *one* other variable must be allowed to *float*. (Please note that the above discussion has been intentionally hand-waving and somewhat intuitive; a rigorous mathematical development is deferred for your future studies, beyond the scope of this book.)

Let us apply the above ideas to the *outflow boundary*, located at grid point  $N$  in Fig. 7.6. As before, the left-running characteristic at point  $N$  propagates to the left at the speed of sound *a relative to a fluid element*. However, because the speed of the fluid element itself is supersonic, the left-running characteristic is carried *downstream* at the speed (relative to the nozzle) of  $V_N - a_N$ . The right-running characteristic at point  $N$  propagates to the right at the speed of sound *a* relative to the fluid element, and thus it is swept downstream at the speed (relative to the nozzle) of  $V_N + a_N$ . Hence, at the *supersonic outflow boundary*, we have both characteristics propagating *out of* the domain; so does the streamline at point  $N$ . Therefore, there are *no* flow-field variables which require their values to be stipulated at the supersonic outflow boundary; *all* variables must be allowed to *float* at this boundary.

The above discussion details how the inflow and outflow boundary conditions are to be handled on an *analytical* basis. The *numerical* implementation of this discussion is carried out as follows.

**Subsonic inflow boundary (point 1).** Here, we must allow one variable to float; we choose the velocity  $V_1$ , because on a physical basis we know the mass flow through the nozzle must be allowed to adjust to the proper steady state, and allowing  $V_1$  to float makes the most sense as part of this adjustment. The value of  $V_1$  changes with time and is calculated from information provided by the flow-field solution over the internal points. (The *internal* points are those *not* on a boundary, i.e., points 2 through  $N - 1$  in Fig. 7.5). We use linear extrapolation from points 2 and 3 to calculate  $V_1$ . This is illustrated in Fig. 7.7. Here, the slope of the linear extrapolation line is determined from points 2 and 3 as

$$\text{Slope} = \frac{V_3 - V_2}{\Delta x}$$

Using this slope to find  $V_1$  by linear extrapolation, we have

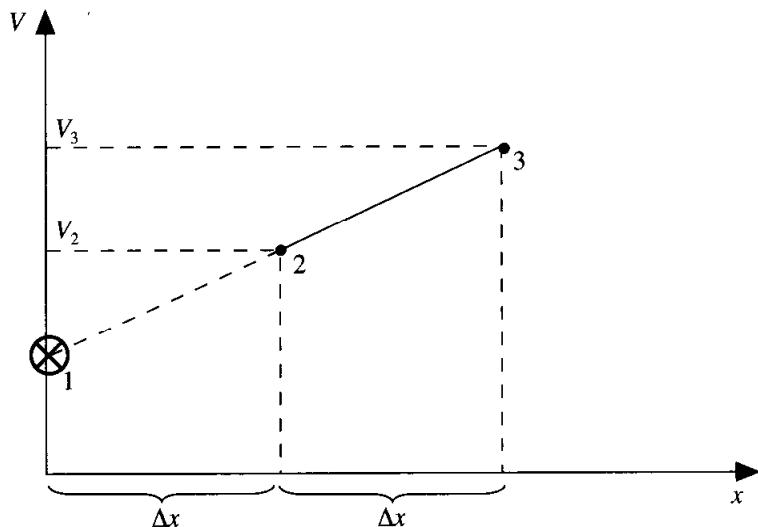
$$V_1 = V_2 - \frac{V_3 - V_2}{\Delta x} \Delta x$$

or

$$V_1 = 2V_2 - V_3 \quad (7.70)$$

All other flow-field variables are specified. Since point 1 is viewed as essentially the reservoir, we stipulate the density and temperature at point 1 to be their respective stagnation values,  $\rho_0$  and  $T_0$ , respectively. These are held *fixed*, independent of time. Hence, in terms of the *nondimensional* variables, we have

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \rho_1 = 1 \\ T_1 = 1 \end{array} \right\} \text{fixed, independent of time} \quad (7.71)$$



**FIG. 7.7**  
Sketch for linear extrapolation.

**Supersonic outflow boundary (point  $N$ ).** Here, we must allow *all* flow-field variables to float. We again choose to use linear extrapolation based on the flow-field values at the internal points. Specifically, we have, for the *nondimensional* variables,

$$V_N = 2V_{N-1} - V_{N-2} \quad (7.72a)$$

$$\rho_N = 2\rho_{N-1} - \rho_{N-2} \quad (7.72b)$$

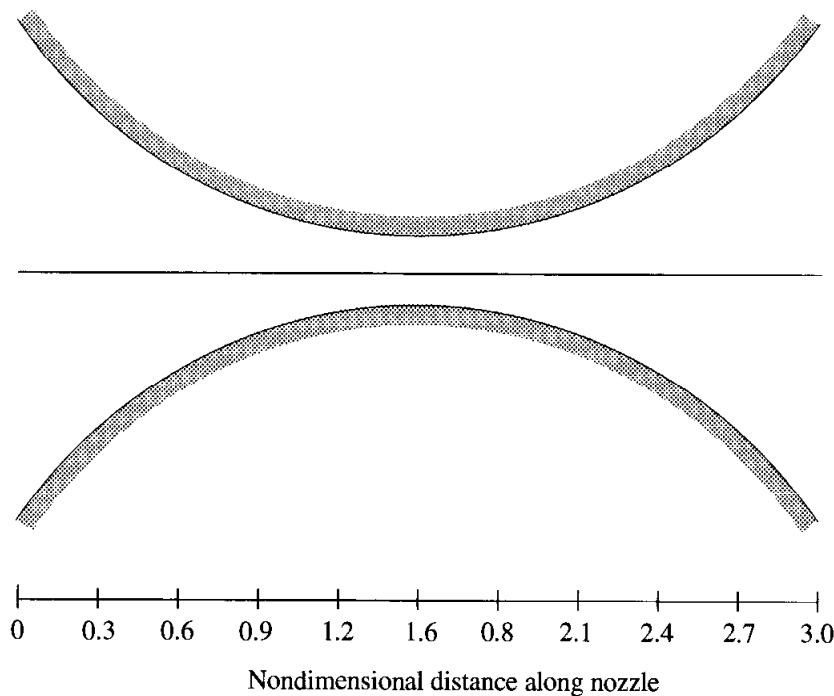
$$T_N = 2T_{N-1} - T_{N-2} \quad (7.72c)$$

**NOZZLE SHAPE AND INITIAL CONDITIONS.** The nozzle shape,  $A = A(x)$ , is specified and held fixed, independent of time. For the case illustrated in this section, we choose a parabolic area distribution given by

$$A = 1 + 2.2(x - 1.5)^2 \quad 0 \leq x \leq 3 \quad (7.73)$$

Note that  $x = 1.5$  is the throat of the nozzle, that the convergent section occurs for  $x < 1.5$ , and that the divergent section occurs for  $x > 1.5$ . This nozzle shape is drawn to scale in Fig. 7.8.

To start the time-marching calculations, we must stipulate *initial* conditions for  $\rho$ ,  $T$ , and  $V$  as a function of  $x$ ; that is, we must set up values of  $\rho$ ,  $T$ , and  $V$  at time  $t = 0$ . In *theory*, these initial conditions can be purely arbitrary. In practice, there are



**FIG. 7.8**

Shape of the nozzle used for the present calculations. This geometric picture is not unique; for a calorically perfect gas, what is germane is the area ratio distribution along the nozzle. Hence, assuming a two-dimensional nozzle, the ordinates of the shape shown here can be ratioed by any constant factor, and the nozzle solution would be the same.

two reasons why you want to choose the initial conditions *intelligently*:

1. The closer the initial conditions are to the final steady-state answer, the faster the time-marching procedure will converge, and hence the shorter will be the computer execution time.
2. If the initial conditions are too far away from reality, the initial timewise gradients at early time steps can become huge; i.e., the *time derivatives* themselves are initially very large. For a given time step  $\Delta t$  and a given spatial resolution  $\Delta x$ , it has been the author's experience that *inordinately* large gradients during the early part of the time-stepping procedure can cause the program to go unstable. In a sense, you can visualize the behavior of a time-marching solution as a stretched rubber band. At early times, the rubber band is highly stretched, thus providing a *strong* potential to push the flow field *rapidly* toward the steady-state solution. As time progresses, the flow field gets closer to the steady-state solution, and the rubber band progressively relaxes, hence slowing down the rate of approach [i.e., at larger times, the values of the time derivatives calculated from Eqs. (7.60) to (7.62) become progressively smaller]. At the beginning of the calculation, it is wise not to pick initial conditions which are so far off that the rubber band is "stretched too far," and may even break.

Therefore, in your choice of initial conditions, you are encouraged to use *any* knowledge you may have about a given problem in order to intelligently pick some initial conditions. For example, in the present problem, we know that  $\rho$  and  $T$  *decrease* and  $V$  *increases* as the flow expands through the nozzle. Hence, we choose initial conditions that *qualitatively* behave in the same fashion. For simplicity, let us assume linear variations of the flow-field variables, as a function of  $x$ . For the present case, we assume the following values at time  $t = 0$ .

$$\rho = 1 - 0.3146x \quad (7.74a)$$

$$T = 1 - 0.2314x \quad \left. \right\} \text{initial conditions at } t = 0 \quad (7.74b)$$

$$V = (0.1 + 1.09x)T^{1/2} \quad (7.74c)$$

### 7.3.2 Intermediate Numerical Results: The First Few Steps

In this section, we give a few numerical results which reflect the first stages of the calculation. This is to give you a more solid impression of what is going on and to provide some intermediate results for you to compare with when you write and run your own computer solution to this problem.

The first step is to feed the nozzle shape and the initial conditions into the program. These are given by Eqs. (7.73) and (7.74); the resulting numbers are tabulated in Table 7.1. The values of  $\rho$ ,  $V$ , and  $T$  given in this table are for  $t = 0$ .

The next step is to put these initial conditions into Eqs. (7.51) to (7.53) to initiate calculations pertaining to the predictor step. For purposes of illustration, let us return to the sketch shown in Fig. 7.5 and focus on the calculations associated

**TABLE 7.1**  
Nozzle shape and initial conditions

$\frac{x}{L}$	$\frac{A}{A^*}$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{V}{a_0}$	$\frac{T}{T_0}$
0	5.950	1.000	0.100	1.000
0.1	5.312	0.969	0.207	0.977
0.2	4.718	0.937	0.311	0.954
0.3	4.168	0.906	0.412	0.931
0.4	3.662	0.874	0.511	0.907
0.5	3.200	0.843	0.607	0.884
0.6	2.782	0.811	0.700	0.861
0.7	2.408	0.780	0.790	0.838
0.8	2.078	0.748	0.877	0.815
0.9	1.792	0.717	0.962	0.792
1.0	1.550	0.685	1.043	0.769
1.1	1.352	0.654	1.122	0.745
1.2	1.198	0.622	1.197	0.722
1.3	1.088	0.591	1.268	0.699
1.4	1.022	0.560	1.337	0.676
1.5	1.000	0.528	1.402	0.653
1.6	1.022	0.497	1.463	0.630
1.7	1.088	0.465	1.521	0.607
1.8	1.198	0.434	1.575	0.583
1.9	1.352	0.402	1.625	0.560
2.0	1.550	0.371	1.671	0.537
2.1	1.792	0.339	1.713	0.514
2.2	2.078	0.308	1.750	0.491
2.3	2.408	0.276	1.783	0.468
2.4	2.782	0.245	1.811	0.445
2.5	3.200	0.214	1.834	0.422
2.6	3.662	0.182	1.852	0.398
2.7	4.168	0.151	1.864	0.375
2.8	4.718	0.119	1.870	0.352
2.9	5.312	0.088	1.870	0.329
3.0	5.950	0.056	1.864	0.306

with grid point  $i$ . We will choose  $i = 16$ , which is the grid point at the throat of the nozzle drawn in Fig. 7.8. From the initial data given in Table 7.1, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \rho_i &= \rho_{16} = 0.528 \\
 \rho_{i+1} &= \rho_{17} = 0.497 \\
 V_i &= V_{16} = 1.402 \\
 V_{i+1} &= V_{17} = 1.463 \\
 T_i &= T_{16} = 0.653 \\
 T_{i+1} &= T_{17} = 0.630 \\
 \Delta x &= 0.1 \\
 A_i &= A_{16} = 1.0 \quad \ln A_{16} = 0 \\
 A_{i+1} &= A_{17} = 1.022 \quad \ln A_{17} = 0.02176
 \end{aligned}$$

Substitute these values into Eq. (7.51).

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{16}^{t=0} &= -0.528 \left( \frac{1.463 - 1.402}{0.1} \right) - 0.528(1.402) \left( \frac{0.02176 - 0}{0.1} \right) \\ &\quad - 1.402 \left( \frac{0.497 - 0.528}{0.1} \right) \\ &= \boxed{-0.0445} \end{aligned}$$

Substitute the above values into Eq. (7.52)

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_{16}^{t=0} &= -1.402 \left( \frac{1.463 - 1.402}{0.1} \right) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{1.4} \left[ \frac{0.630 - 0.653}{0.1} + \frac{0.653}{0.528} \left( \frac{0.497 - 0.528}{0.1} \right) \right] \\ &= \boxed{-0.418} \end{aligned}$$

Substitute the above values into Eq. (7.53).

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_{16}^{t=0} &= -1.402 \left( \frac{0.630 - 0.653}{0.1} \right) - (1.4 - 1)(0.653) \\ &\quad \times \left[ \frac{1.463 - 1.402}{0.1} + 1.402 \left( \frac{0.02176 - 0}{0.1} \right) \right] \\ &= \boxed{0.0843} \end{aligned}$$

*Please note:* The numbers shown in the boxes above are the precise numbers, rounded to three significant figures, that came out of the author's Macintosh computer. If you choose to run through the above calculations with your hand calculator using all the above entries, there will be slight differences because the numbers you feed into the calculator are *already* rounded to three significant figures, and hence the subsequent arithmetic operations on your calculator will lead to slight errors compared to the computer results. That is, your hand-calculator results may not always give you *precisely* the numbers you will find in the boxes, but they will certainly be close enough to check the results.

The next step is to calculate the *predicted* values (the "barred" quantities) from Eqs. (7.54) to (7.56). To do this, we first note that  $\Delta t$  is calculated from Eq. (7.69), which picks the minimum value of  $\Delta t_i$  from all those calculated from Eq. (7.67) evaluated for all internal points  $i = 2, 3, \dots, 30$ . We do not have the space to show all these calculations here. As a sample calculation, let us calculate  $(\bar{\Delta t})_{16}^{t=0}$  from Eq. (7.67). At present, we will assume a Courant number equal to 0.5; that is,  $C = 0.5$ . Also, in nondimensional terms, the speed of sound is given by

$$a = \sqrt{T} \tag{7.75}$$

where in Eq. (7.75) both  $a$  and  $T$  are the *nondimensional* values ( $a$  denotes the local speed of sound divided by  $a_0$ ). Derive Eq. (7.75) for yourself. Thus, from Eq. (7.67), we have

$$(\Delta t)_{16}^{t=0} = C \left[ \frac{\Delta x}{(T_{16})^{1/2} + V_{16}} \right] = 0.5 \left[ \frac{0.1}{(0.653)^{1/2} + 1.402} \right] = 0.0226$$

This type of calculation is made at all the interior grid points, and the minimum value is chosen. The resulting minimum value is

$$\Delta t = 0.0201$$

With this, we can calculate  $\bar{\rho}$ ,  $\bar{V}$ , and  $\bar{T}$  as follows. From Eq. (7.54), noting that  $t = 0 + \Delta t = \Delta t$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\rho}_{16}^{t=\Delta t} &= \rho_{16}^{t=0} + \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{16}^{t=0} \Delta t = 0.528 + (-0.0445)(0.0201) \\ &= \boxed{0.527} \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (7.55)

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{V}_{16}^{t=\Delta t} &= V_{16}^{t=0} + \left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_{16}^{t=0} \Delta t = 1.402 + (-0.418)(0.0201) \\ &= \boxed{1.39} \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (7.56)

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{T}_{16}^{t=\Delta t} &= T_{16}^{t=0} + \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_{16}^{t=0} \Delta t = 0.653 + (0.0843)(0.0201) \\ &= \boxed{0.655} \end{aligned}$$

At this stage, we note that the above calculations are carried out over *all* the internal grid points  $i = 2$  to  $30$ . The calculations are too repetitive to include here. Simply note that when the predictor step is completed, we have  $\bar{\rho}$ ,  $\bar{V}$ , and  $\bar{T}$  at all the internal grid points  $i = 2$  to  $30$ . This includes, of course,  $\bar{\rho}_{15}^{t=\Delta t}$ ,  $\bar{V}_{15}^{t=\Delta t}$ , and  $\bar{T}_{15}^{t=\Delta t}$ . Focusing again on grid point 16, we now insert these *barred* quantities at grid points 15 and 16 into Eqs. (7.57) to (7.59). This is the beginning of the corrector step. From Eq. (7.57) we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \overline{\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}} \right)_{16}^{t=\Delta t} &= -0.527(0.653) - 0.527(1.39)(-0.218) - 1.39(-0.368) \\ &= \boxed{0.328} \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (7.58) we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \overline{\frac{\partial V}{\partial t}} \right)_{16}^{t=\Delta t} &= -1.39(0.653) - \frac{1}{1.4} \left( -0.257 + \frac{0.655}{0.527} \right) = \boxed{-0.400} \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (7.59) we have

$$\left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_{16}^{t=\Delta t} = -1.39(-0.257) - (1.4 - 1)(0.655)[0.653 + 1.39(-0.218)] \\ = \boxed{0.267}$$

With these values, we form the *average* time derivatives using Eqs. (7.60) to (7.62). From Eq. (7.60), we have at grid point  $i = 16$ ,

$$\left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \right)_{av} = 0.5(-0.0445 + 0.328) = \boxed{0.142}$$

From Eq. (7.61), we have at grid point  $i = 16$ ,

$$\left( \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} \right)_{av} = 0.5(-0.418 + 0.400) = \boxed{-0.409}$$

From Eq. (7.62), we have at grid point  $i = 16$ ,

$$\left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \right)_{av} = 0.5(0.0843 + 0.267) = \boxed{0.176}$$

We now complete the corrector step by using Eqs. (7.63) to (7.65). From Eq. (7.63), we have at  $i = 16$ ,

$$\rho_{16}^{t=\Delta t} = 0.528 + 0.142(0.0201) = \boxed{0.531}$$

From Eq. (7.64), we have at  $i = 16$ ,

$$V_{16}^{t=\Delta t} = 1.402 + (-0.409)(0.0201) = \boxed{1.394}$$

From Eq. (7.65), we have at  $i = 16$ ,

$$T_{16}^{t=\Delta t} = 0.653 + 0.176(0.0201) = \boxed{0.656}$$

Defining a nondimensional pressure as the local static pressure divided by the reservoir pressure  $p_0$ , the equation of state is given by

$$p = \rho T$$

where  $p$ ,  $\rho$ , and  $T$  are *nondimensional* values. Thus, at grid point  $i = 16$ , we have

$$p_{16}^{t=\Delta t} = \rho_{16}^{t=\Delta t} T_{16}^{t=\Delta t} = 0.531(0.656) = \boxed{0.349}$$

*This now completes the corrector step for grid point  $i = 16$ . When the above corrector-step calculations are carried out for all grid points from  $i = 2$  to 30, then we have completed the corrector step for all the *internal* grid points.*

It remains to calculate the flow-field variables at the boundary points. At the subsonic inflow boundary ( $i = 1$ ),  $V_1$  is calculated by linear extrapolation from grid

points 2 and 3. At the end of the corrector step, from a calculation identical to that given above, the values of  $V_2$  and  $V_3$  at time  $t = \Delta t$  are  $V_2 = 0.212$  and  $V_3 = 0.312$ . Thus, from Eq. (7.70), we have

$$V_1 = 2V_2 - V_3 = 2(0.212) - 0.312 = \boxed{0.111}$$

At the supersonic outflow boundary ( $i = 31$ ) all the flow-field variables are calculated by linear extrapolation from Eqs. (7.72a) to (7.72c). At the end of the corrector step, from a calculation identical to that given above,  $V_{29} = 1.884$ ,  $V_{30} = 1.890$ ,  $\rho_{29} = 0.125$ ,  $\rho_{30} = 0.095$ ,  $T_{29} = 0.354$ , and  $T_{30} = 0.332$ . When these values are inserted into Eqs. (7.72a) to (7.72c), we have

$$V_{31} = 2V_{30} - V_{29} = 2(1.890) - 1.884 = \boxed{1.895}$$

$$\rho_{31} = 2\rho_{30} - \rho_{29} = 2(0.095) - 0.125 = \boxed{0.066}$$

$$T_{31} = 2T_{30} - T_{29} = 2(0.332) - 0.354 = \boxed{0.309}$$

With this, we have completed the calculation of all the flow-field variables at all the grid points after the first time step, i.e., at time  $t = \Delta t$ . A tabulation of these variables is given in Table 7.2. Note that the Mach number is included in this tabulation. In terms of the nondimensional velocity and temperature, the Mach number (which is already a dimensionless parameter defined as the local velocity divided by the local speed of sound) is given by

$$M = \frac{V}{\sqrt{T}} \quad (7.76)$$

Examine Table 7.2 closely. By reading across the line labeled  $I = 16$ , you will find the familiar numbers that we have generated for grid point  $i = 16$  in the above discussion. Take the time to make this comparison. The entries for all other internal grid points are calculated in a like manner. Also note the values at the boundary points, labeled  $I = 1$  and  $I = 31$  in Table 7.2. You will find the numbers to be the same as discussed above.

### 7.3.3 Final Numerical Results: The Steady-State Solution

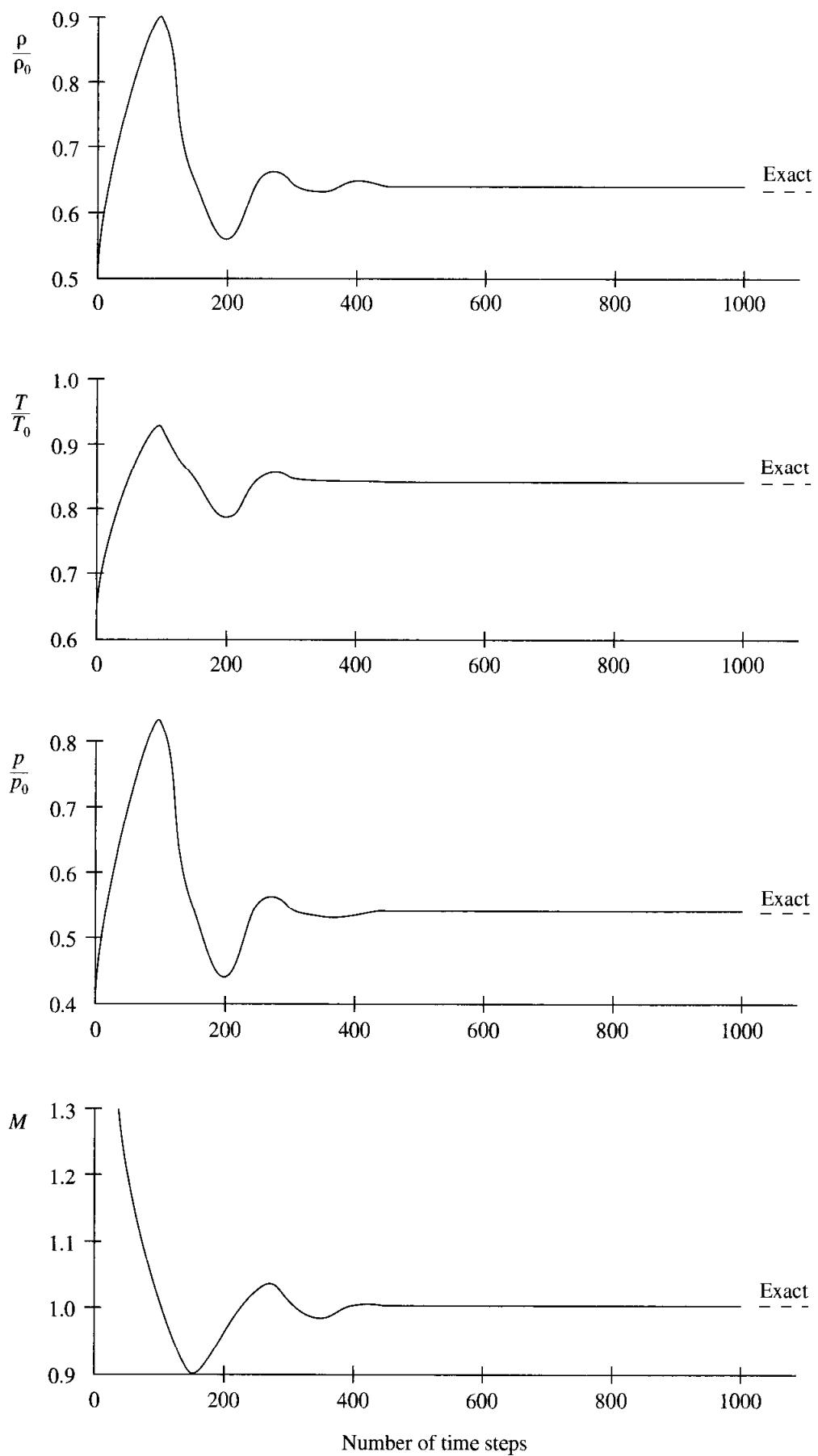
Compare the flow-field results obtained after one time step (Table 7.2) with the same quantities at the previous time (in this case the initial conditions given in Table 7.1). Comparing these two tables, we see that the flow-field variables *have changed*. For example, the nondimensional density at the throat (where  $A = 1$ ) has changed from 0.528 to 0.531, a 0.57 percent change over one time step. This is the natural behavior of a time-marching solution—the flow-field variables change from one time step to the next. However, in the approach toward the steady-state solution, at larger values of time (after a large number of time steps), the *changes* in the flow-field variables from one time step to the next become smaller and approach zero in

**TABLE 7.2**  
Flow-field variables after the first time step

<i>I</i>	$\frac{x}{L}$	$\frac{A}{A^*}$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{V}{a_0}$	$\frac{T}{T_0}$	$\frac{p}{p_0}$	<i>M</i>
1	0.000	5.950	1.000	0.111	1.000	1.000	0.111
2	0.100	5.312	0.955	0.212	0.972	0.928	0.215
3	0.200	4.718	0.927	0.312	0.950	0.881	0.320
4	0.300	4.168	0.900	0.411	0.929	0.836	0.427
5	0.400	3.662	0.872	0.508	0.908	0.791	0.534
6	0.500	3.200	0.844	0.603	0.886	0.748	0.640
7	0.600	2.782	0.817	0.695	0.865	0.706	0.747
8	0.700	2.408	0.789	0.784	0.843	0.665	0.854
9	0.800	2.078	0.760	0.870	0.822	0.625	0.960
10	0.900	1.792	0.731	0.954	0.800	0.585	1.067
11	1.000	1.550	0.701	1.035	0.778	0.545	1.174
12	1.100	1.352	0.670	1.113	0.755	0.506	1.281
13	1.200	1.198	0.637	1.188	0.731	0.466	1.389
14	1.300	1.088	0.603	1.260	0.707	0.426	1.498
15	1.400	1.022	0.567	1.328	0.682	0.387	1.609
16	1.500	1.000	0.531	1.394	0.656	0.349	1.720
17	1.600	1.022	0.494	1.455	0.631	0.312	1.833
18	1.700	1.088	0.459	1.514	0.605	0.278	1.945
19	1.800	1.198	0.425	1.568	0.581	0.247	2.058
20	1.900	1.352	0.392	1.619	0.556	0.218	2.171
21	2.000	1.550	0.361	1.666	0.533	0.192	2.282
22	2.100	1.792	0.330	1.709	0.510	0.168	2.393
23	2.200	2.078	0.301	1.748	0.487	0.146	2.504
24	2.300	2.408	0.271	1.782	0.465	0.126	2.614
25	2.400	2.782	0.242	1.813	0.443	0.107	2.724
26	2.500	3.200	0.213	1.838	0.421	0.090	2.834
27	2.600	3.662	0.184	1.858	0.398	0.073	2.944
28	2.700	4.168	0.154	1.874	0.376	0.058	3.055
29	2.800	4.718	0.125	1.884	0.354	0.044	3.167
30	2.900	5.312	0.095	1.890	0.332	0.032	3.281
31	3.000	5.950	0.066	1.895	0.309	0.020	3.406

the limit of large time. At this stage, the steady state (for all practical purposes) has been achieved, and the calculation can be stopped. This termination of the calculation can be done automatically by the computer program itself by having a test in the program to sense when the changes in the flow-field variables become smaller than some prescribed value (prescribed by you, depending on your desired accuracy of the final “steady-state” solution). Another option, and that preferred by the present author, is to simply stop the calculation after a prescribed number of time steps, look at the results, and see if they have approached the stage where the flow-field variables are not materially changing any more. If such is not the case, simply resume the calculations, and carry them out for the requisite number of time steps until you do see that the steady-state results have been reached.

What patterns do the timewise variations of the flow-field variables take? Some feeling for the answer is provided by Fig. 7.9, which shows the variation of  $\rho$ ,



**FIG. 7.9**

Timewise variations of the density, temperature, pressure, and Mach number at the nozzle throat (at grid point  $i = 15$ , where  $A = 1$ ).

$T$ ,  $p$ , and  $M$  at the nozzle throat plotted versus the number of time steps. The abscissa starts at zero, which represents the initial conditions, and ends at time step 1000. Hence, the abscissa is essentially a time axis, with time increasing to the right. Note that the largest changes take place at early times, after which the final, steady-state value is approached almost asymptotically. Here is the “rubber band effect” mentioned previously; at early times the rubber band is “stretched” tightly, and therefore the flow-field variables are driven by a stronger potential and hence change rapidly. At later times, as the steady state is approached, the rubber band is less stretched; it becomes more “relaxed”, and the changes become much smaller with time. The dashed lines to the right of the curves shown in Fig. 7.9 represent the exact, analytical values as obtained from the equations discussed in Sec. 7.2. Note that the numerical time-marching procedure converges to the proper theoretical steady-state answer. We also note that no artificial viscosity has been explicitly added for these calculations; it is not needed.

It is interesting to examine the variation of the time derivatives as a function of time itself, or equivalently as a function of the number of time steps. Once again focusing on the nozzle throat (at grid point  $i = 16$ ), Fig. 7.10 gives the variation of the time derivatives of nondimensional density and velocity as a function of the

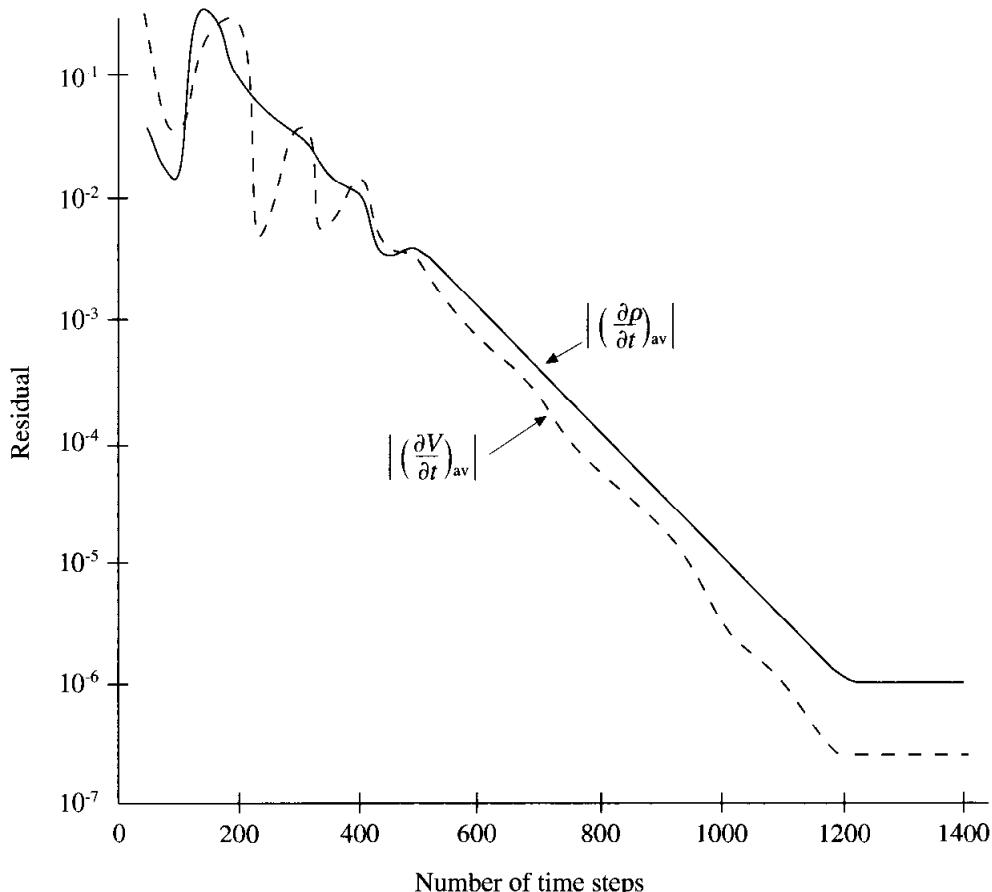


FIG. 7.10

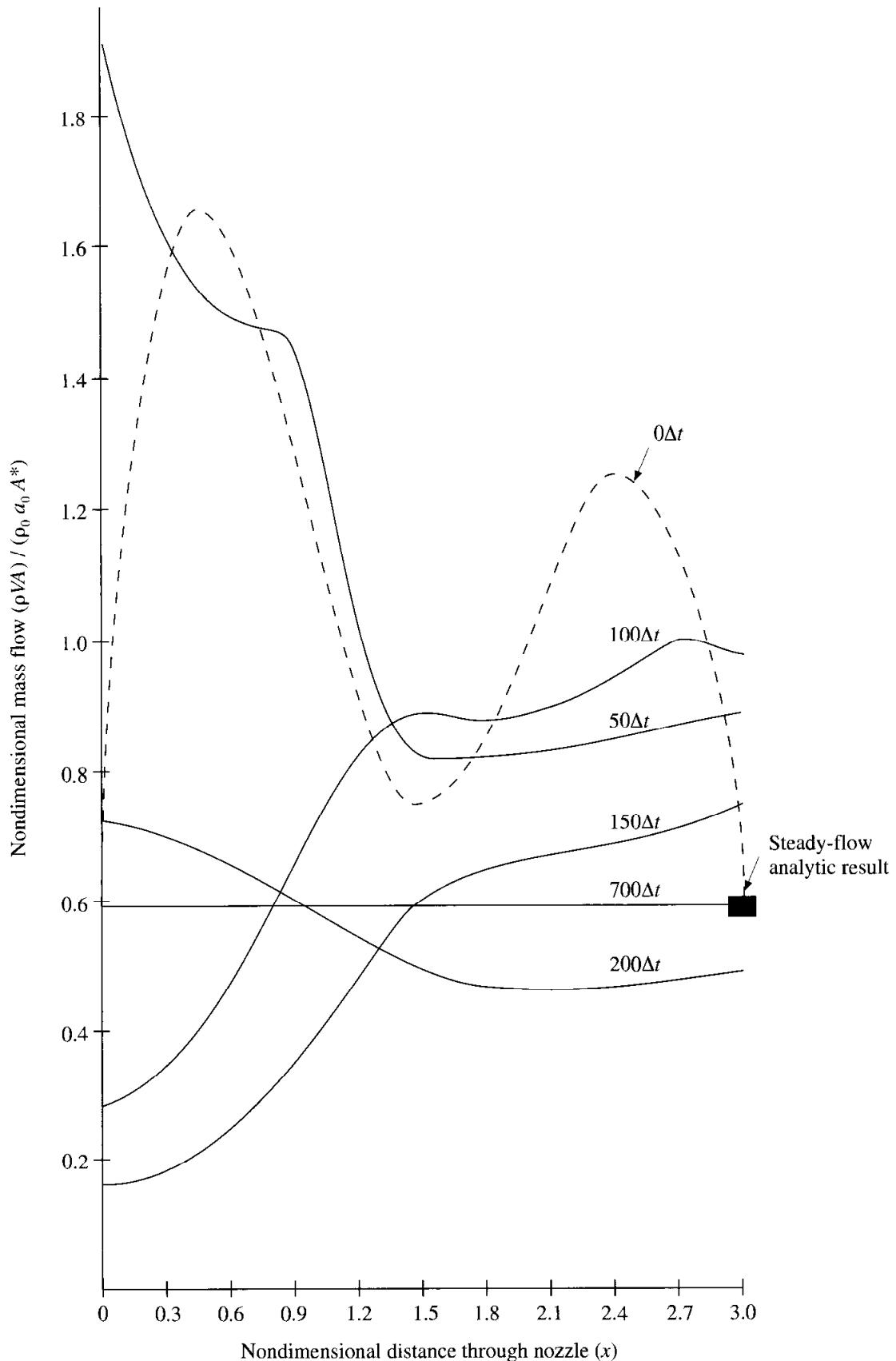
Timewise variations of the absolute values of the time derivatives of nondimensional density and velocity at the nozzle throat (at grid point  $i = 16$ ).

number of time steps. These are the *average* time derivatives calculated from Eqs. (7.60) and (7.61), respectively. The *absolute value* of these time derivatives is shown in Fig. 7.10. From these results, note two important aspects:

1. At early times, the time derivatives are large, and they oscillate in value. These oscillations are associated with various unsteady compression and expansion waves which propagate through the nozzle during the transient process. (See Chap. 7 of Ref. 21 for a discussion of unsteady wave motion in a duct.)
2. At later times, the time derivatives rapidly grow small, changing by six orders of magnitude over a span of 1000 time steps. This is, of course, what we want to see happen. In the theoretical limit of the steady state (which is achieved at infinite time), the time derivatives should go to zero. However, numerically this will never happen over a finite number of time steps. In fact, the results shown in Fig. 7.10 indicate that the values of the time derivatives plateau after 1200 time steps. This seems to be a characteristic of MacCormack's technique. However, the values of the time derivatives at these plateaus are so small that, for all practical purposes, the numerical solution has arrived at the steady-state solution. Indeed, in terms of the values of the flow-field variables themselves, the results of Fig. 7.9 indicate that the steady state is realistically achieved after 500 time steps, during which the time derivatives in Fig. 7.10 have decreased only by two orders of magnitude.

Return to Eqs. (7.46) and (7.48) for a moment; we might visualize that what is being plotted in Fig. 7.10 are the numerical values of the right-hand side of these equations. As time progresses and as the steady-state is approached, the right-hand side of these equations should approach zero. Since the *numerical* values of the right-hand side are not precisely zero, they are called *residuals*. This is why the ordinate in Fig. 7.10 is labeled as the residual. When CFD experts are comparing the relative merits of two or more different algorithms for a time-marching solution to the steady state, the magnitude of the residuals and their rate of decay are often used as figures of merit. That algorithm which gives the fastest decay of the residuals to the smallest value is usually looked upon most favorably.

Another insight to the mechanics of the timewise variation of the flow and its approach to the steady state is provided by the mass flow variations shown in Fig. 7.11. Here, the nondimensional mass flow  $\rho VA$  (where  $\rho$ ,  $V$ , and  $A$  are the nondimensional values) is plotted as a function of nondimensional distance through the nozzle. Six different curves are shown, each for a different time during the course of the time-marching procedure. The dashed curve is the variation of  $\rho VA$  which pertains to the initial conditions, and hence it is labeled  $0\Delta t$ . The strange-looking, distorted sinelike variation of this dashed curve is simply the product of the assumed initial values for  $\rho$  and  $V$  combined with the specified parabolic variation of the nozzle area ratio  $A$ . After 50 time steps, the mass flow distribution through the nozzle has changed considerably; this is given by the curve labeled  $50\Delta t$ . After 100 time steps ( $100\Delta t$ ), the mass flow distribution has changed radically; the mass flow variation is simply flopping around inside the nozzle due to

**FIG. 7.11**

Instantaneous distributions of the nondimensional mass flow as a function of distance through the nozzle at six different times during the time-marching approach to the steady state.

the transient variation of the flow-field variables. However, after 200 time steps ( $200\Delta t$ ), the mass flow distribution is beginning to settle down, and after 700 time steps ( $700\Delta t$ ), the mass flow distribution is a straight, horizontal line across the graph. This says that the mass flow has converged to a *constant*, steady-state value throughout the nozzle. This agrees with our basic knowledge of steady-state nozzle flows, namely, that

$$\rho VA = \text{constant}$$

Moreover, it has converged to essentially the *correct value* of the steady mass flow, which in terms of the *nondimensional* variables evaluated at the nozzle throat is given by

$$\rho VA = \rho^* \sqrt{T^*} \quad (\text{at throat}) \quad (7.77)$$

where  $\rho^*$  and  $T^*$  are the nondimensional density and temperature at the throat, and where  $M = 1$ . [Derive Eq. (7.77) yourself—it is easy.] From the analytical equations discussed in Sec. 7.2, when  $M = 1$  and  $\gamma = 1.4$ , we have  $\rho^* = 0.634$  and  $T^* = 0.833$ . With these numbers, Eq. (7.77) yields

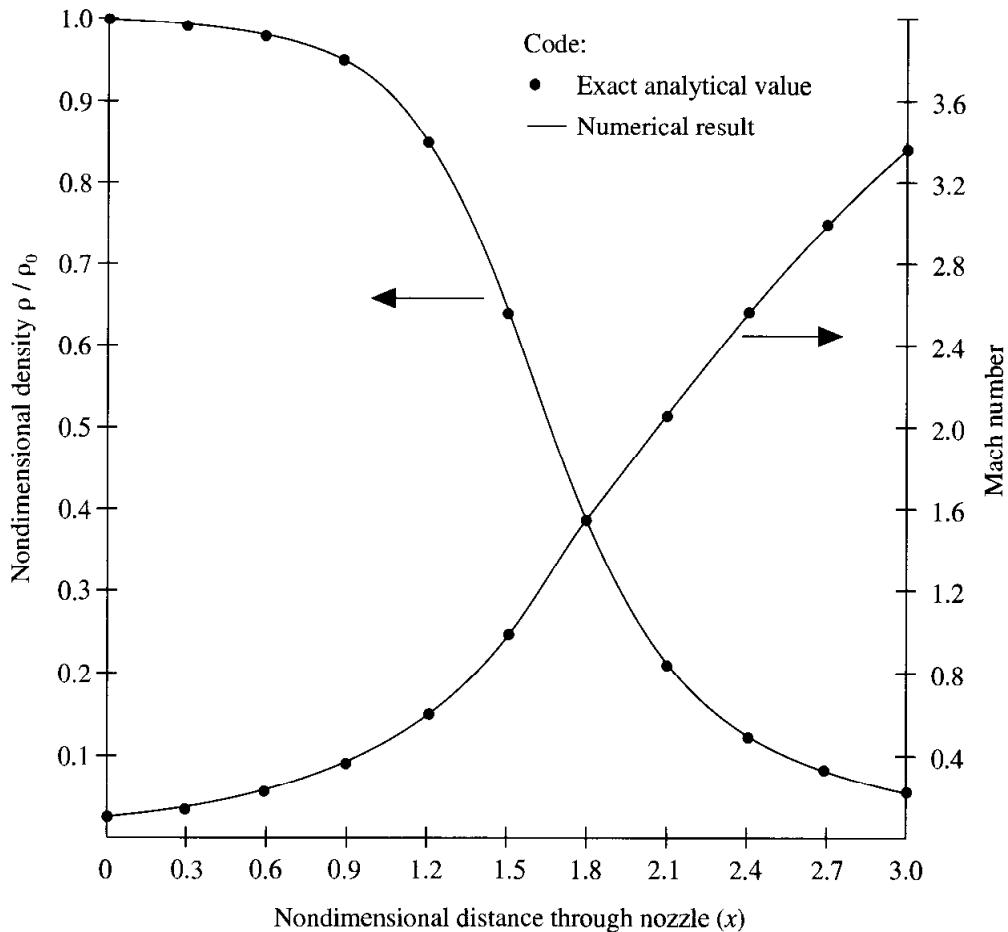
$$\rho VA = \text{constant} = 0.579$$

This value is given by the dark square in Fig. 7.11; the mass flow result for  $700\Delta t$  agrees reasonably well with the dark square.

Finally, let us examine the steady-state results. From the discussion above and from examining Fig. 7.9, the steady state is, for all practical purposes, reached after about 500 time steps. However, being very conservative, we will examine the results obtained after 1400 time steps; between 700 and 1400 time steps, there is no change in the results, at least to the three-decimal-place accuracy given in the tables herein.

A feeling for the graphical accuracy of the numerically obtained steady state is given by Fig. 7.12. Here, the steady-state nondimensional density and Mach number distributions through the nozzle are plotted as a function of nondimensional distance along the nozzle. The numerical results, obtained after 1400 time steps, are given by the solid curves, and the exact analytical results are given by the circles. The analytical results are obtained from the equations discussed in Sec. 7.2; they can readily be obtained from the tables at the back of most compressible flow texts, such as Ref. 21. They can also be obtained by writing your own short computer program to calculate numbers from the theoretically derived equations in Sec. 7.2. In any event, the comparison shown in Fig. 7.12 clearly demonstrates that the numerical results agree very well with the exact analytical values, certainly to within graphical accuracy.

The detailed numerical results, to three decimal places, are tabulated in Table 7.3. These are the results obtained after 1400 time steps. They are given here for you to compare numbers from your own computer program. It is interesting to note that the elapsed nondimensional time, starting at zero with the initial conditions, is, after 1400 time steps, a value of 28.952. Since time is nondimensionalized by the quantity  $L/a_0$ , let us assume a case where the length of the nozzle is 1 m and the reservoir temperature is the standard sea level value,  $T = 288$  K. For this case,  $L/a_0 = (1 \text{ m})/(340.2 \text{ m/s}) = 2.94 \times 10^{-3} \text{ s}$ . Hence, the total *real* time that has

**FIG. 7.12**

Steady-state distributions of nondimensional density and Mach number as a function of nondimensional distance through the nozzle. Comparison between the exact analytical values (circles) and the numerical results (solid curves).

elapsed over the 1400 time steps is  $(2.94 \times 10^{-3})(28.952) = 0.0851$  s. That is, the nozzle flow, starting from the assumed initial conditions, takes only 85.1 ms to reach steady-state conditions; in reality, since convergence is obtained for all practical purposes after about 500 time steps, the practical convergence time is more on the order of 30 ms.

A comparison between some of the numerical results and the corresponding exact analytical values is given in Table 7.4; this provides you with a more detailed comparison than is given in Fig. 7.12. Compared are the numerical and analytical results for the density ratio and Mach number. Note that the numerical results, to three decimal places, are not in precise agreement with the analytical values; there is a small percentage disagreement between the two sets of results, ranging from 0.3 to 3.29 percent. This amount of error is not discernable on the graphical display in Fig. 7.12. At first thought, there might be three reasons for these small numerical inaccuracies: (1) a small inflow boundary condition error, (2) truncation errors associated with the finite value of  $\Delta x$ , such as discussed in Sec. 4.3, and (3) possible effects of the Courant number being substantially less than unity (recall that in the

**TABLE 7.3**

Flow-field variables after 1400 time steps (nonconservation form of the governing equations)

<i>I</i>	$\frac{x}{L}$	$\frac{A}{A^*}$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{V}{a_0}$	$\frac{T}{T_0}$	$\frac{p}{p_0}$	<i>M</i>	<i>m</i>
1	0.000	5.950	1.000	0.099	1.000	1.000	0.099	0.590
2	0.100	5.312	0.998	0.112	0.999	0.997	0.112	0.594
3	0.200	4.718	0.997	0.125	0.999	0.996	0.125	0.589
4	0.300	4.168	0.994	0.143	0.998	0.992	0.143	0.591
5	0.400	3.662	0.992	0.162	0.997	0.988	0.163	0.589
6	0.500	3.200	0.987	0.187	0.995	0.982	0.187	0.589
7	0.600	2.782	0.982	0.215	0.993	0.974	0.216	0.588
8	0.700	2.408	0.974	0.251	0.989	0.963	0.252	0.588
9	0.800	2.078	0.963	0.294	0.985	0.948	0.296	0.587
10	0.900	1.792	0.947	0.346	0.978	0.926	0.350	0.587
11	1.000	1.550	0.924	0.409	0.969	0.895	0.416	0.586
12	1.100	1.352	0.892	0.485	0.956	0.853	0.496	0.585
13	1.200	1.198	0.849	0.575	0.937	0.795	0.594	0.585
14	1.300	1.088	0.792	0.678	0.911	0.722	0.710	0.584
15	1.400	1.022	0.721	0.793	0.878	0.633	0.846	0.584
16	1.500	1.000	0.639	0.914	0.836	0.534	0.099	0.584
17	1.600	1.022	0.551	1.037	0.789	0.434	1.167	0.584
18	1.700	1.088	0.465	1.155	0.737	0.343	1.345	0.584
19	1.800	1.198	0.386	1.263	0.684	0.264	1.528	0.585
20	1.900	1.352	0.318	1.361	0.633	0.201	1.710	0.586
21	2.000	1.550	0.262	1.446	0.585	0.153	1.890	0.587
22	2.100	1.792	0.216	1.519	0.541	0.117	2.065	0.588
23	2.200	2.078	0.179	1.582	0.502	0.090	2.233	0.589
24	2.300	2.408	0.150	1.636	0.467	0.070	2.394	0.590
25	2.400	2.782	0.126	1.683	0.436	0.055	2.549	0.590
26	2.500	3.200	0.107	1.723	0.408	0.044	2.696	0.591
27	2.600	3.662	0.092	1.759	0.384	0.035	2.839	0.591
28	2.700	4.168	0.079	1.789	0.362	0.029	2.972	0.592
29	2.800	4.718	0.069	1.817	0.342	0.024	3.105	0.592
30	2.900	5.312	0.061	1.839	0.325	0.020	3.225	0.595
31	3.000	5.950	0.053	1.862	0.308	0.016	3.353	0.585

calculations discussed so far, the Courant number is chosen to be 0.5), such as discussed at the end of Sec. 4.5. Let us examine each of these reasons in turn.

**INFLOW BOUNDARY CONDITION ERROR.** There is a “built-in” error at the inflow boundary. At the first grid point, at  $x = 0$ , we *assume* that the density, pressure, and temperature are the reservoir properties  $\rho_0$ ,  $p_0$ , and  $T_0$ , respectively. This is strictly true only if  $M = 0$  at this point. In reality, there is a finite area ratio at  $x = 0$ , namely,  $A/A^* = 5.95$ , and hence a finite Mach number must exist at  $x = 0$ , both numerically and analytically (to allow a finite value of mass flow through the nozzle). Hence, in Table 7.4, the numerical value of  $\rho/\rho_0$  at  $x = 0$  is equal to 1.0—

**TABLE 7.4**  
Density ratio and Mach number distributions through the nozzle

$x$	$A$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$ (numerical results)	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$ (exact analytical results)	Difference, %	$M$ (numerical results)	$M$ (exact analytical results)	Difference, %
$L$	$A^*$						
0.000	5.950	1.000	0.995	0.50	0.099	0.098	1.01
0.100	5.312	0.998	0.994	0.40	0.112	0.110	1.79
0.200	4.718	0.997	0.992	0.30	0.125	0.124	0.08
0.300	4.168	0.994	0.990	0.40	0.143	0.140	2.10
0.400	3.662	0.992	0.987	0.50	0.163	0.160	1.84
0.500	3.200	0.987	0.983	0.40	0.187	0.185	1.07
0.600	2.782	0.982	0.978	0.41	0.216	0.214	0.93
0.700	2.408	0.974	0.970	0.41	0.252	0.249	1.19
0.800	2.078	0.963	0.958	0.52	0.296	0.293	1.01
0.900	1.792	0.947	0.942	0.53	0.350	0.347	0.86
1.000	1.550	0.924	0.920	0.43	0.416	0.413	0.72
1.100	1.352	0.892	0.888	0.45	0.496	0.494	0.40
1.200	1.198	0.849	0.844	0.59	0.594	0.592	0.34
1.300	1.088	0.792	0.787	0.63	0.710	0.709	0.14
1.400	1.022	0.721	0.716	0.69	0.846	0.845	0.12
1.500	1.000	0.639	0.634	0.78	0.999	1.000	0.10
1.600	1.022	0.551	0.547	0.73	1.167	1.169	0.17
1.700	1.088	0.465	0.461	0.87	1.345	1.348	0.22
1.800	1.198	0.386	0.382	1.04	1.528	1.531	0.20
1.900	1.352	0.318	0.315	0.94	1.710	1.715	0.29
2.000	1.550	0.262	0.258	1.53	1.890	1.896	0.32
2.100	1.792	0.216	0.213	1.39	2.065	2.071	0.29
2.200	2.078	0.179	0.176	1.68	2.233	2.240	0.31
2.300	2.408	0.150	0.147	2.00	2.394	2.402	0.33
2.400	2.782	0.126	0.124	2.38	2.549	2.557	0.31
2.500	3.200	0.107	0.105	1.87	2.696	2.706	0.37
2.600	3.662	0.092	0.090	2.17	2.839	2.848	0.32
2.700	4.168	0.079	0.078	1.28	2.972	2.983	0.37
2.800	4.718	0.069	0.068	1.45	3.105	3.114	0.29
2.900	5.312	0.061	0.059	3.29	3.225	3.239	0.43
3.000	5.950	0.053	0.052	1.89	3.353	3.359	0.18

this is our prescribed boundary condition. On the other hand, the exact analytical value of  $\rho/\rho_0$  at  $x = 0$  is 0.995, giving a 0.5 percent error. This built-in error is not viewed as serious, and we will not be concerned with it here.

**TRUNCATION ERROR: THE MATTER OF GRID INDEPENDENCE.** The matter of *grid independence* is a serious consideration in CFD, and this stage of our data analysis is a perfect time to introduce the concept. In general, when you solve a problem using CFD, you are employing a finite number of grid points (or a finite mesh) distributed over the flow field. Assume that you are using  $N$  grid points. If everything goes well during your solution, you will get some numbers out for the

flow-field variables at these  $N$  grid points, and these numbers may look qualitatively good to you. However, assume that you rerun your solution, this time using twice as many grid points,  $2N$ , distributed over the same domain; i.e., you have decreased the value of the increment  $\Delta x$  (and also  $\Delta y$  in general, if you are dealing with a two-dimensional solution). You may find that the values of your flow-field variables are quite different for this second calculation. If this is the case, then your solution is a function of the number of grid points you are using—an untenable situation. You must, if at all practical, continue to increase the number of grid points until you reach a solution which is no longer sensitive to the number of points. When you reach this situation, then you have achieved *grid independence*.

*Question:* Do we have grid independence for the present calculation? Recall that we have used 31 grid points distributed evenly through the nozzle. To address this question, let us double the number of grid points; i.e., let us halve the value of  $\Delta x$  by using 61 grid points. Table 7.5 compares the steady-state results for density, temperature, and pressure ratios, as well as for Mach numbers, at the throat for both the cases using 31 and 61 grid points. Also tabulated in Table 7.5 are the exact analytical results. Note that although doubling the number of grid points did improve the numerical solution, it did so only marginally. The same is true for all locations within the nozzle. In other words, the two steady-state numerical solutions are essentially the same, and therefore we can conclude that our original calculations using 31 grid points is essentially *grid-independent*. This grid independent solution does not agree *exactly* with the analytical results, but it is certainly close enough for our purposes. The degree of grid independence that you need to achieve in a given problem depends on what you want out of the solution. Do you need extreme accuracy? If so, you need to press the matter of grid independence in a very detailed fashion. Can you tolerate answers that can be a little less precise numerically (such as the 1 or 2 percent accuracy shown in the present calculations)? If so, you can slightly relax the criterion for extreme grid independence and use fewer grid points, thus saving computer time (which frequently means saving money). The proper decision depends on the circumstances. However, you should always be conscious of the question of grid independence and resolve the matter to your satisfaction for any CFD problem you solve. For example, in the present problem, do you think you can drive the numerical results shown in Table 7.5 to agree exactly with the analytical results by using more and more grid points? If so, how many grid points

**TABLE 7.5**  
Demonstration of grid independence

	Conditions at the nozzle throat			
	$\frac{\rho^*}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{T^*}{T_0}$	$\frac{p^*}{p_0}$	$M$
Case 1: 31 points	0.639	0.836	0.534	0.999
Case 2: 61 points	0.638	0.835	0.533	1.000
Exact analytical solution	0.634	0.833	0.528	1.000

will you need? You might want to experiment with this question by running your own program and seeing what happens.

**COURANT NUMBER EFFECTS.** At the end of Sec. 4.5, we broached the possibility that if the Courant number were too small, and hence the analytical domain for a given grid point were much smaller than the numerical domain, there might be problems in regard to the accuracy of the solution, albeit the solution will be very stable. Do we have such a problem with the present calculations? We have employed  $C = 0.5$  for the present calculations. Is this too small, considering that the stability criterion for *linear* hyperbolic equations (see Sec. 4.5) is  $C \leq 1.0$ ? To examine this question, we can simply repeat the previous calculations but with progressively higher values of the Courant number. The resulting steady-state flow-field values at the nozzle throat are tabulated in Table 7.6; the tabulations are given for six different values of  $C$ , starting at  $C = 0.5$  and ranging to 1.2. For values ranging to as high as  $C = 1.1$ , the results were only marginally different, as seen in Table 7.6. By increasing  $C$  to as high as 1.1., the numerical results do not agree any better with the exact analytical results (as shown in Table 7.6) than the results at lower values of  $C$ . Hence, all our previous results obtained by using  $C = 0.5$  are not tainted by any noticeable error due to the smaller-than-necessary value of  $C$ . Indeed, if anything, the numerical results for  $C = 0.5$  in Table 7.6 are marginally *closer* to the exact analytical solution than the results for higher Courant numbers. For the steady-state numerical results tabulated in Table 7.6, the number of time steps was adjusted each time  $C$  was changed so that the nondimensional time at the end of each run was essentially the same. This adjustment is necessary because the value of  $\Delta t$  calculated from Eqs. (7.66) and (7.69) will obviously be different for different values of  $C$ . For example, when  $C = 0.5$  as in our previous results, we carried out the time-marching procedure to 1400 time steps, which corresponded to a nondimensional time of 28.952. When  $C$  is increased to 0.7, the number of time steps carried out was  $1400(\frac{5}{7}) = 1000$ . This corresponded to a nondimensional time of 28.961—essentially the same as for the previous run. In the same manner, all the numerical data compared in Table 7.6 pertain to the same nondimensional time.

TABLE 7.6  
Courant number effects

Courant number	$\frac{\rho^*}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{T^*}{T_0}$	$\frac{p^*}{p_0}$	$M$
0.5	0.639	0.836	0.534	0.999
0.7	0.639	0.837	0.535	0.999
0.9	0.639	0.837	0.535	0.999
1.0	0.640	0.837	0.535	0.999
1.1	0.640	0.837	0.535	0.999
1.2	Program went unstable and blew up			
Exact analytical solution	0.634	0.833	0.528	1.000

It is interesting to note that for the present application, the CFL criterion as first introduced by Eq. (4.84), namely, that  $C \leq 1$ , does not hold exactly. In Table 7.6, we show results where  $C = 1.1$ ; a stable solution is obtained in spite of the fact that the CFL criterion is violated. However, as noted in Table 7.6, when the Courant number is increased to 1.2, instabilities do occur, and the program blows up. Therefore, for the flow problem we have been discussing in this chapter, which is governed by *nonlinear* hyperbolic partial differential equations, the CFL criterion (which is based on linear equations) does not hold exactly. However, from the above results, we can see that the CFL criterion is certainly a good *estimate* for the value of  $\Delta t$ ; it is the most reliable estimate for  $\Delta t$  that we can use, even though the governing equations are nonlinear.

## 7.4 CFD SOLUTION OF PURELY SUBSONIC ISENTROPIC NOZZLE FLOW

In this section we treat the case of purely subsonic flow through a duct. The physical aspects of such a flow are described in detail in Refs. 8 and 21. They differ from the subsonic-supersonic isentropic solution described in Sec. 7.2 in the following ways:

1. For subsonic flow in the duct, there are an *infinite* number of possible isentropic flow solutions, each one corresponding to a specific pressure ratio  $p_e/p_0$ , between the exit and the reservoir. Two such solutions are sketched in Fig. 7.13. For one case, labeled case *a*, the exit pressure is  $(p_e)_a$ , where  $(p_e)_a$  is only slightly smaller than the reservoir pressure  $p_0$ . This small pressure difference across the nozzle causes a “gentle wind” to blow through the duct, with the local Mach number increasing with distance in the convergent portion of the duct, reaching a peak value at the minimum area section (where this peak value of  $M$  is considerably less than 1), and then decreasing in the divergent section, resulting in the value of the Mach number at the exit  $(M_e)_a$ , being very small. If the exit pressure is reduced, hence creating a larger pressure difference across the nozzle, the flow through the nozzle will be faster. For example, for the case labeled *b* in Fig. 7.13, where  $(p_e)_b < (p_e)_a$ , the Mach number is larger through the nozzle, albeit still purely subsonic throughout. If the exit pressure is further reduced, there will be some value of  $p_e$ , say  $(p_e)_c$ , which results in the Mach number at the throat just barely grazing unity, such as sketched in Fig. 7.13. At the same time, the pressure at the minimum area section will equal  $0.528p_0$ , which corresponds to local sonic conditions. Examining Fig. 7.13 carefully, we note that for exit pressures  $p_e$  such that  $(p_e)_c < p_e < p_0$ , the flow through the duct will be purely subsonic. There are an infinite number of such flows, corresponding to the infinite choice of  $p_e$  in the range from  $p_0$  to  $(p_e)_c$ . Therefore, when the flow is totally subsonic throughout the duct, the local flow properties are dictated by *both* the local area ratio  $A/A_t$  (where  $A_t$  is the minimum area—the throat area) *and* the pressure ratio across the nozzle  $p_e/p_0$ . This is in contrast to the subsonic-supersonic case described in Sec. 7.2, where the local Mach number is strictly a function of the area ratio only [from Eq. (7.6)].

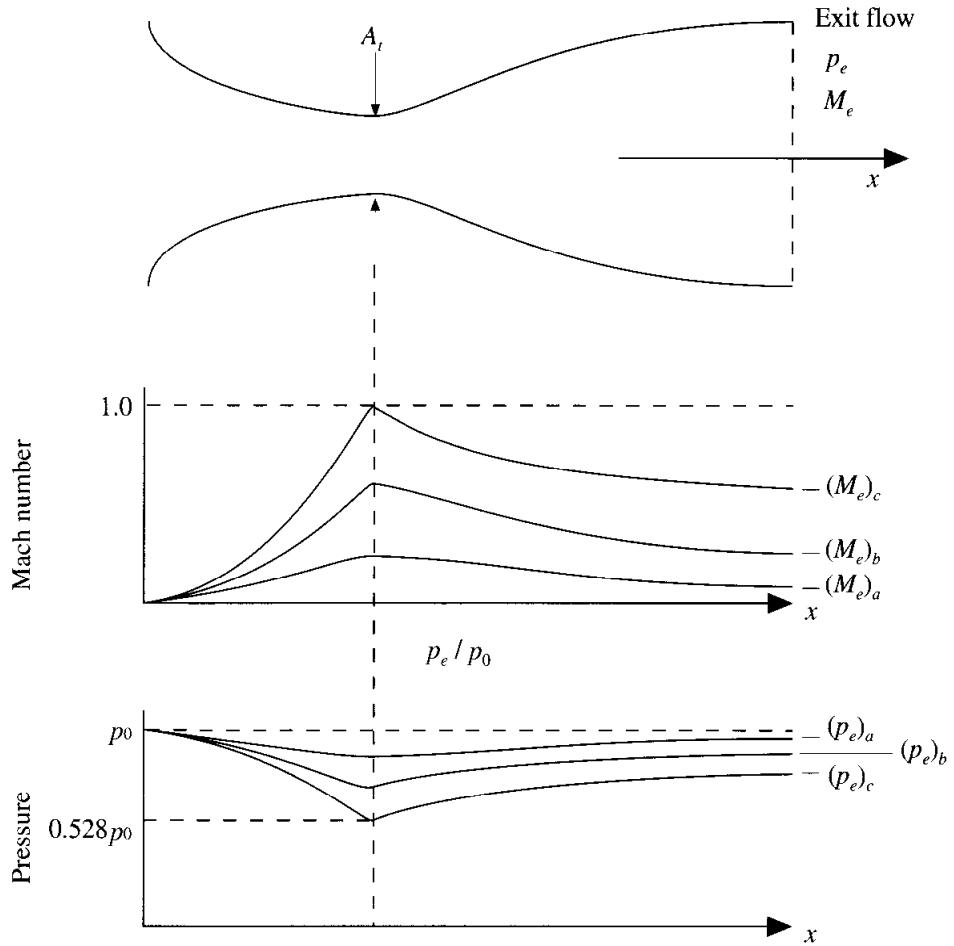


FIG. 7.13

Schematic of purely subsonic flow in a convergent-divergent nozzle.

2. In the subsonic case, the Mach number at the minimum area  $A_t$  is less than 1. Hence,  $A_t$  is *not* the same as  $A^*$ , which is defined in Sec. 7.2 as the *sonic* throat area; that is,  $A^*$  is the throat area which corresponds to sonic flow. Hence, in the purely subsonic flow case,  $A^*$  is simply a reference area; moreover, in this situation,  $A^* < A_t$ .

The exact analytical solution of the purely subsonic flow case proceeds as follows. The exit-to-reservoir pressure ratio must be specified; that is,  $p_e/p_0$  is given. Since the total pressure is constant through the nozzle, the value of  $p_e/p_0$  defines  $M_e$  through Eq. (7.7), i.e.,

$$\frac{p_e}{p_0} = \left(1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M_e^2\right)^{-\gamma/(\gamma - 1)} \quad (7.78)$$

Once  $M_e$  is known from a solution of Eq. (7.78), the value of  $A^*$  can be calculated from Eq. (7.6) as

$$\frac{A_e}{A^*} = \frac{1}{M_e^2} \left[ \frac{2}{\gamma + 1} \left(1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M_e^2\right)\right]^{(\gamma + 1)/(\gamma - 1)} \quad (7.79)$$

where  $A^*$  is simply a reference value in this case;  $A^*$  is smaller than the throat area  $A_t$ . In turn, with  $A^*$  known, the local area divided by  $A^*$ , namely,  $A/A^*$ , determines the local Mach number  $M$  via Eq. (7.6). Finally, this local value of  $M$  determines the local values of  $p/p_0$ ,  $\rho/\rho_0$ , and  $T/T_0$  from Eqs. (7.7) to (7.9).

#### 7.4.1 The Setup: Boundary and Initial Conditions

For this calculation, we will specify a nozzle with the following area distribution, where all symbols are in dimensional terms:

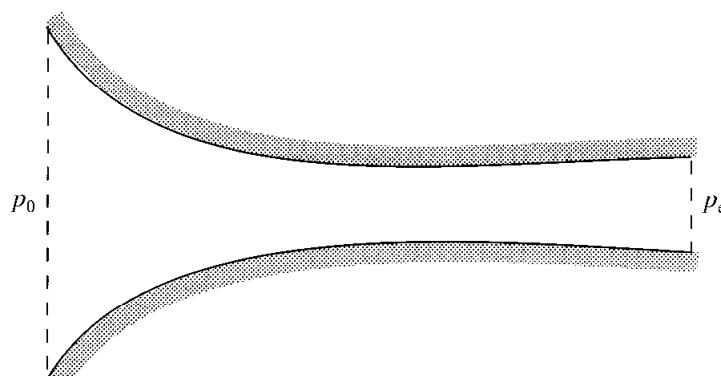
$$\frac{A}{A_t} = \begin{cases} 1 + 2.2\left(\frac{x}{L} - 1.5\right)^2 & \text{for } 0 \leq \frac{x}{L} \leq 1.5 \\ 1 + 0.2223\left(\frac{x}{L} - 1.5\right)^2 & \text{for } 1.5 \leq \frac{x}{L} \leq 3.0 \end{cases} \quad (7.80a)$$

$$(7.80b)$$

In the above equations,  $A_t$  denotes the area of the nozzle throat. Keep in mind that as long as the flow is subsonic at the throat,  $A_t$  is *not* equal to  $A^*$ ; indeed,  $A_t > A^*$ . A plot of the area distribution given by Eqs. (7.80a) and (7.80b) is shown in Fig. 7.14.

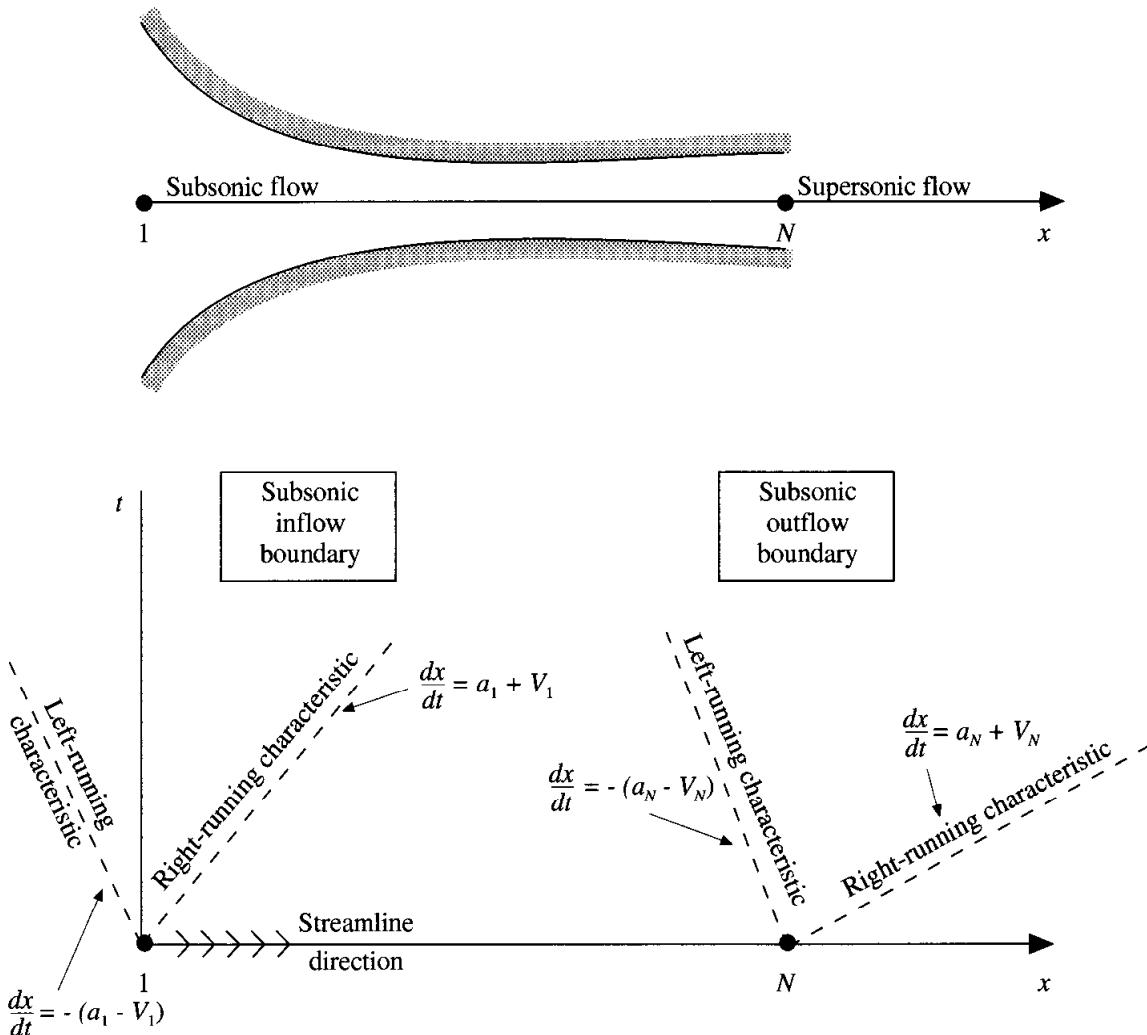
The governing flow equations are the same as used for the subsonic-supersonic solutions discussed in Sec. 7.3, namely, Eqs. (7.46), (7.48), and (7.50).

The treatment of the boundary conditions for the present subsonic flow solution must reflect the need to *specify* the pressure ratio across the nozzle in order to have a unique solution, as discussed at the beginning of Sec. 7.4. Referring to Fig. 7.15, the subsonic inflow boundary, point 1, is treated exactly as discussed in the Boundary Conditions subsection to Sec. 7.3.1. However, in the present problem, the *outflow boundary* is also *subsonic*. In the context of the discussion of the Boundary Conditions subsection, we have at the subsonic outflow boundary one characteristic line (the right-running characteristic) propagating to the right and the other characteristic line (the left-running characteristic) propagating to the left. Also, the streamline at point  $N$  is moving toward the right. Examining Fig. 7.15, we see at point  $N$  one characteristic moving *out* of the domain, namely, the right-running characteristic, as well as the flow along the streamline moving *out* of the domain. Consistent with our discussion in the Boundary Condition subsection to



**FIG. 7.14**

Sketch of nozzle for the purely subsonic flow solution discussed in Sec. 7.4.



**FIG. 7.15**  
Study of boundary conditions for subsonic inflow and outflow.

Sec. 7.3.1 this means that two flow variables should be allowed to *float* at the boundary point  $N$ . On the other hand, we also see at point  $N$  *one* characteristic moving *into* the domain, namely, the left-running characteristic. As discussed in the Boundary Conditions subsection, this means that the value of *one* flow variable must be *specified* at the boundary point  $N$ . Of course, this is consistent with our earlier physical discussion, namely, that to have a unique solution of the purely subsonic flow in the duct, we need to specify the pressure ratio across the nozzle,  $p_0/p_e$ ; that is, for a fixed  $p_0$ , we need to *specify* the exit pressure  $p_e$ .

How do we implement the specification of  $p_e$  within the numerical solution? Returning to the governing equations, Eqs. (7.46), (7.48) and (7.50), we note that the dependent variables in these equations are density, velocity, and temperature—not pressure. However, through the equation of state,

$$p = \rho RT \quad (7.81)$$

Hence, specifying the value of  $p_e$  is the same as specifying the product  $\rho_e R T_e$ . In terms of the nondimensional variables in Eqs. (7.46), (7.48), and (7.50), we can

express Eq. (7.81) evaluated at the duct exit as

$$p'_e = \rho'_e T'_e \quad (7.82)$$

The numerical implementation of the boundary conditions is carried out as follows. The subsonic inflow boundary is treated exactly as in the Boundary Conditions subsection to Sec. 7.3.1; that is, Eqs. (7.70) and (7.71) are used here. For the subsonic *outflow* boundary, we have

$$p'_N = \text{specified value} \quad (7.83)$$

Since  $\rho'_N$  and  $T'_N$  are the dependent variables appropriate to our governing equations, we must make certain that both  $\rho'_N$  and  $T'_N$ , which will vary as a function of time, are strongly coupled to the pressure boundary condition given by Eq. (7.83); that is, no matter how  $\rho'_N$  and  $T'_N$  vary from one time step to the next, at each time step they must satisfy the constraint that

$$\rho'_N T'_N = p'_N = \text{specified value} \quad (7.84)$$

One way to accomplish this strong coupling is as follows. Let us linearly extrapolate  $T'_N$  obtaining

$$T'_N = 2T'_{N-1} - T'_{N-2} \quad (7.85)$$

From this value of  $T'_N$ , calculate  $\rho'_N$  from the equation of state such that Eq. (7.83) is satisfied, i.e.,

$$\rho'_N = \frac{p'_N}{T'_N} = \frac{\text{specified value}}{T'_N} \quad (7.86)$$

The values of  $T'_N$  from Eq. (7.85) along with  $\rho'_N$  from Eq. (7.86) ensure that  $p'_N$  remains constant at the specified value. Alternatively, we could obtain  $\rho'_N$  by linear extrapolation,

$$\rho'_N = 2\rho'_{N-1} - \rho'_{N-2} \quad (7.87)$$

and calculate  $T'_N$  from the equation of state,

$$T'_N = \frac{p'_N}{\rho'_N} = \frac{\text{specified value}}{\rho'_N} \quad (7.88)$$

The values of  $\rho'_N$  and  $T'_N$  obtained from Eqs. (7.87) and (7.88), respectively, also ensure that  $p'_N$  remains constant at the specified value. (It has been the author's experience that either combination works equally as well, i.e., the combination of Eqs. (7.85) and (7.86) where temperature is extrapolated or the combination of Eqs. (7.87) and (7.88) where density is extrapolated.) Finally, as before, the velocity at the downstream boundary is extrapolated:

$$V'_N = 2V'_{N-1} - V'_{N-2} \quad (7.89)$$

*Note:* There is more than meets the eye to the way we have set up the boundary conditions to this problem. We will return to this point in Sec. 7.4.2.

Finally, for the initial conditions, let us somewhat arbitrarily set up the following variations:

$$\rho' = 1.0 - 0.023x' \quad (7.90a)$$

$$T' = 1.0 - 0.009333x' \quad (7.90b)$$

$$V' = 0.05 + 0.11x' \quad (7.90c)$$

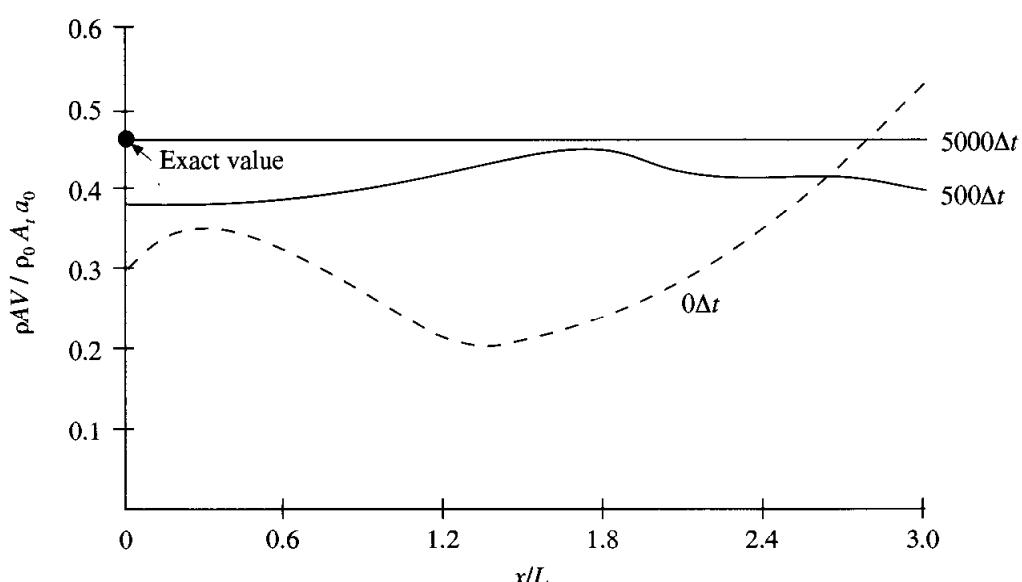
These specify the initial flow field at time  $t = 0$ .

We will carry out a time-marching solution of the purely subsonic flowfield using MacCormack's predictor-corrector explicit finite-difference method just as utilized for the previous subsonic-supersonic solution. The details are exactly the same. Indeed, to treat the subsonic flow described in this section, only a slight modification is needed to the computer program you might have written for the previous case—just the initial conditions, the nozzle shape, and the downstream boundary conditions need to be changed. Therefore, no further details are needed here.

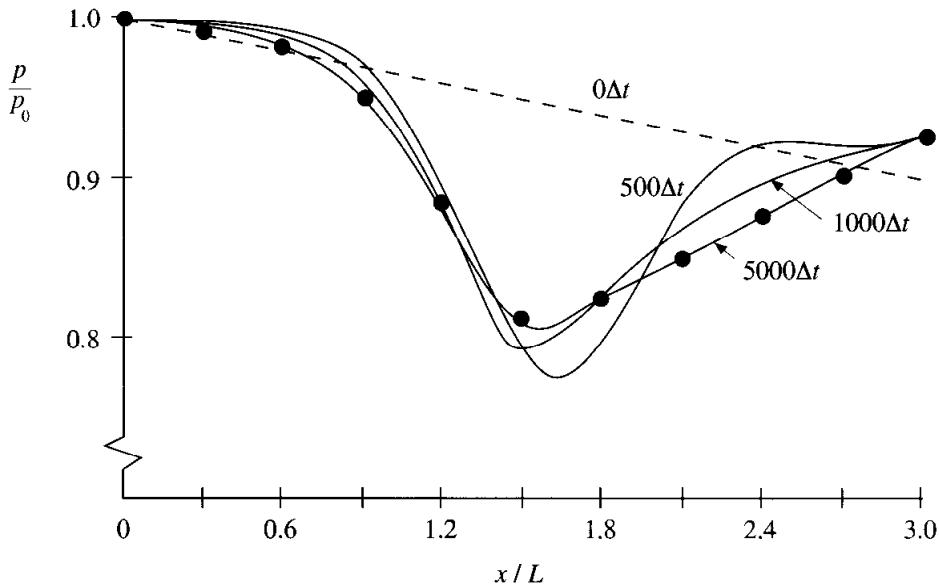
#### 7.4.2 Final Numerical Results: MacCormack's Technique

In Sec. 7.3.2 we discussed some intermediate results pertaining to the detailed calculations on the first time step. Since exactly the same method is being used here, there is no need to discuss the intermediate calculations. Let us proceed to the final numerical results.

A feeling for the timewise variation of the flow field as it marches toward the steady-state solution is provided by Fig. 7.16 and 7.17. These results pertain to a



**FIG. 7.16**  
Variation of mass flow through the nozzle at different times; purely subsonic flow case with  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$ .

**FIG. 7.17**

Variation of the pressure distribution through the nozzle at different times; purely subsonic flow case with  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$ . Circles indicate exact analytical values.

specified pressure ratio across the nozzle of  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$ . The distribution of the nondimensional mass flow through the nozzle at three different times is shown in Fig. 7.16. The dashed curve labeled  $0\Delta t$  corresponds to the initial condition. Note that after 500 time steps (the curve labeled  $500\Delta t$ ) the mass flow is moving toward the steady-state value. After 5000 time steps, the mass flow has converged to a horizontal line; that is,  $\rho AV = \text{constant}$ . The dark circle is the exact analytical value; note that good agreement is achieved between the numerical and the analytical results. The timewise variation of the pressure distribution through the nozzle at four different times is shown in Fig. 7.17. Again, the dashed line is the initial distribution. Note that the initial condition for the pressure ratio at the exit is slightly below the specified value of 0.93; however, after the first time step, the boundary condition imposed by Eq. (7.84) is in effect, with  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$ . This is reflected in the fact that the pressure distributions for  $500\Delta t$ ,  $1000\Delta t$ , and  $5000\Delta t$  all meet at the same point at the nozzle exit. The dark circles in Fig. 7.17 give the exact analytical values.

The final, steady-state values of the flow-field variables, including the mass flow, as a function of distance through the nozzle are tabulated in Table 7.7. For these calculations, 31 grid points are distributed through the nozzle, and the Courant number is 0.5. These results are for time step 5000. This is a conservative number of time steps; in reality, convergence is obtained for all practical purposes after 2500 time steps. The convergence behavior of the solution is further indicated by the values of the residuals (the average nondimensional time derivatives), which are on the order of  $10^{-2}$  after 500 time steps,  $10^{-3}$  after 2500 time steps, and  $10^{-5}$  after 5000 time steps.

A comparison of the numerical results after 5000 time steps with the exact analytical results is tabulated in Table 7.8. The accuracy of the numerical results for

**TABLE 7.7**  
Flow-field variables after 5000 time steps—subsonic flow

<i>I</i>	$\frac{x}{L}$	$\frac{A}{A_t}$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{V}{a_0}$	$\frac{T}{T_0}$	$\frac{p}{p_0}$	<i>M</i>	<i>m</i>
1	0.000	5.950	1.000	0.079	1.000	1.000	0.079	0.469
2	0.100	5.312	0.998	0.089	0.999	0.997	0.089	0.472
3	0.200	4.718	0.998	0.099	0.999	0.997	0.099	0.467
4	0.300	4.168	0.996	0.113	0.998	0.995	0.113	0.468
5	0.400	3.662	0.995	0.128	0.998	0.992	0.128	0.467
6	0.500	3.200	0.992	0.147	0.997	0.989	0.147	0.467
7	0.600	2.782	0.989	0.170	0.995	0.984	0.170	0.466
8	0.700	2.408	0.984	0.197	0.993	0.977	0.197	0.466
9	0.800	2.078	0.977	0.229	0.991	0.968	0.230	0.466
10	0.900	1.792	0.968	0.268	0.987	0.955	0.270	0.465
11	1.000	1.550	0.955	0.314	0.982	0.937	0.317	0.465
12	1.100	1.352	0.938	0.367	0.975	0.914	0.371	0.465
13	1.200	1.198	0.916	0.424	0.966	0.885	0.431	0.465
14	1.300	1.088	0.892	0.480	0.955	0.853	0.491	0.466
15	1.400	1.022	0.871	0.524	0.946	0.824	0.539	0.467
16	1.500	1.000	0.862	0.542	0.942	0.812	0.559	0.467
17	1.600	1.002	0.863	0.540	0.943	0.814	0.556	0.467
18	1.700	1.009	0.865	0.535	0.944	0.816	0.551	0.467
19	1.800	1.020	0.869	0.526	0.946	0.822	0.541	0.467
20	1.900	1.036	0.875	0.516	0.948	0.829	0.530	0.467
21	2.000	1.056	0.881	0.502	0.951	0.838	0.515	0.467
22	2.100	1.080	0.888	0.487	0.954	0.847	0.499	0.467
23	2.200	1.109	0.896	0.470	0.957	0.857	0.481	0.467
24	2.300	1.142	0.903	0.453	0.960	0.867	0.462	0.467
25	2.400	1.180	0.911	0.434	0.963	0.877	0.443	0.467
26	2.500	1.222	0.918	0.416	0.966	0.887	0.423	0.467
27	2.600	1.269	0.925	0.398	0.970	0.897	0.404	0.467
28	2.700	1.320	0.932	0.379	0.972	0.906	0.385	0.467
29	2.800	1.376	0.938	0.362	0.975	0.915	0.366	0.467
30	2.900	1.436	0.944	0.344	0.977	0.923	0.348	0.467
31	3.000	1.500	0.949	0.327	0.980	0.930	0.331	0.466

this purely subsonic case is about the same as that obtained for the subsonic-supersonic isentropic flow case (see Table 7.4).

It is interesting to note the values of time required to come to a reasonable steady state. For the present case,  $t' = t/(L/a_0) = 84.3$ . This is to be compared with the nondimensional time required for convergence in the subsonic-supersonic flow case calculated earlier, which after 500 time steps was 10.3. For the same nozzle length  $L$  and reservoir speed of sound  $a_0$ , the subsonic flow takes a much longer time to converge to the steady state. That is, in part, a reflection of the time it takes for a fluid element to travel through the nozzle, which we will call the *transit time*. For the steady state to be reached, there should be a time lapse of several transit times—this is required for the history of the initial conditions to “flush through” the nozzle. For a purely subsonic flow, the fluid elements have an average velocity much

**TABLE 7.8**  
Comparison between numerical and analytical values

$\frac{x}{L}$	$\frac{A}{A_t}$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$ (numerical results)	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$ (exact analytical results)	Difference, %	$M$ (numerical results)	$M$ (exact analytical results)	Difference, %
0.000	5.950	1.000	0.997	0.30	0.079	0.077	2.50
0.100	5.312	0.998	0.996	0.20	0.089	0.086	3.30
0.200	4.718	0.998	0.995	0.30	0.099	0.097	2.00
0.300	4.168	0.996	0.994	0.20	0.113	0.110	2.65
0.400	3.662	0.995	0.992	0.30	0.128	0.126	1.56
0.500	3.200	0.992	0.990	0.20	0.147	0.144	2.04
0.600	2.782	0.989	0.986	0.30	0.170	0.167	1.76
0.700	2.408	0.984	0.981	0.30	0.197	0.194	1.52
0.800	2.078	0.977	0.975	0.20	0.230	0.226	1.74
0.900	1.792	0.968	0.966	0.20	0.270	0.265	1.85
1.000	1.550	0.955	0.953	0.21	0.317	0.312	1.58
1.100	1.352	0.938	0.936	0.21	0.371	0.365	1.62
1.200	1.198	0.916	0.916	0.00	0.431	0.423	1.86
1.300	1.088	0.892	0.893	0.11	0.491	0.480	2.24
1.400	1.022	0.871	0.875	0.46	0.539	0.524	2.78
1.500	1.000	0.862	0.867	0.58	0.559	0.541	3.22
1.600	1.002	0.863	0.868	0.58	0.556	0.539	3.06
1.700	1.009	0.865	0.870	0.57	0.551	0.534	3.09
1.800	1.020	0.869	0.874	0.58	0.541	0.526	2.77
1.900	1.036	0.875	0.879	0.46	0.530	0.514	3.02
2.000	1.056	0.881	0.885	0.45	0.515	0.500	2.91
2.100	1.080	0.888	0.892	0.45	0.499	0.485	2.81
2.200	1.109	0.896	0.898	0.33	0.481	0.468	2.91
2.300	1.142	0.903	0.906	0.33	0.462	0.450	2.60
2.400	1.180	0.911	0.913	0.22	0.443	0.431	2.71
2.500	1.222	0.918	0.920	0.22	0.423	0.413	2.36
2.600	1.269	0.925	0.926	0.11	0.404	0.394	2.48
2.700	1.320	0.932	0.933	0.11	0.385	0.376	2.34
2.800	1.376	0.938	0.939	0.11	0.366	0.358	2.19
2.900	1.436	0.944	0.944	0.00	0.348	0.340	2.30
3.000	1.500	0.949	0.949	0.00	0.331	0.324	2.11

lower than for the subsonic-supersonic case; hence the transit time for the subsonic case is much larger. For this reason, nature simply takes a longer time to establish a steady subsonic flow compared to that for a steady supersonic flow. Such a trend is clearly evident in our results here.

#### 7.4.3 The Anatomy of a Failed Solution

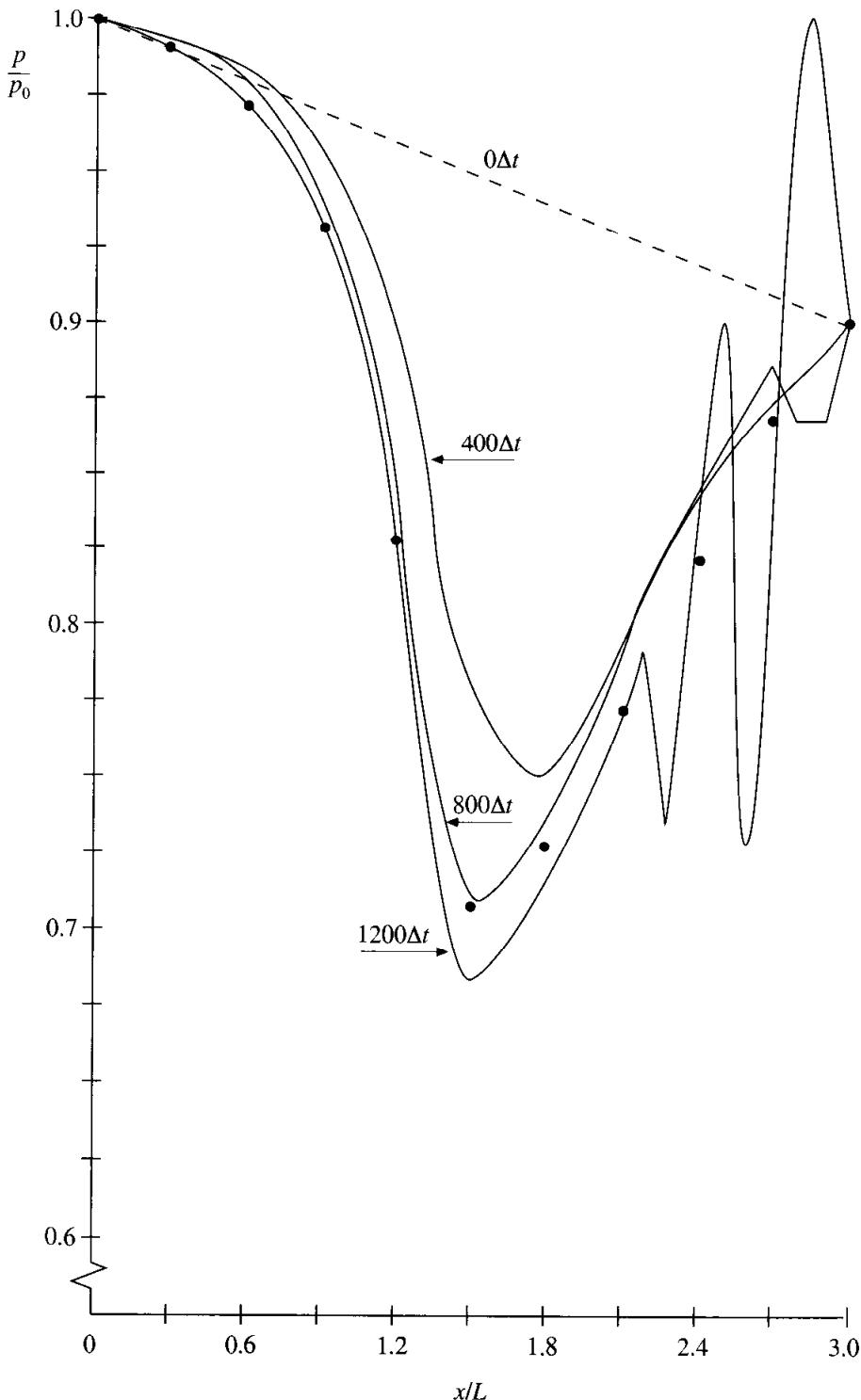
In our discussion of the way we have set up the boundary conditions in Sec. 7.4.1, we noted that there was more to it than meets the eye. Let us examine this comment further.

Consider a case where  $p_e/p_0 = 0.9$ ; this is a stronger pressure ratio across the nozzle than the case discussed in Sec. 7.4.2, where  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$ . Therefore, the flow Mach number inside the nozzle will be larger. However, according to the exact analytical solution, the steady flow through our nozzle with  $p_e/p_0 = 0.9$  should still be subsonic everywhere; the highest Mach number, which occurs at the throat, is theoretically  $M_t = 0.721$ , and the theoretical Mach number at the exit is 0.391. Nevertheless, under the same conditions as those used in Sec. 7.4.2 (same initial conditions, Courant number, and boundary condition treatment) the case with  $p_e/p_0 = 0.9$  goes unstable and blows up. It is instructional to investigate the behavior of the blowup and to surmise the reasons for this behavior.

The distribution of pressure through the nozzle at four different times is shown in Fig. 7.18. The dashed line labeled  $0\Delta t$  is the initial distribution at time  $t = 0$ . After 400 time steps (the curve labeled  $400\Delta t$ ), the flow appears to be moving toward a qualitatively proper solution. After 800 time steps, for the most part, the solution appears to be approaching a proper steady-state result; for example, at  $800\Delta t$ , the numerical results show the Mach number at the throat  $M_t = 0.704$ , very close to the theoretical value of 0.721. A further comparison is given by the solid circles in Fig. 7.18, which represent the exact analytical results for  $p/p_0$ . Note that in the convergent section of the nozzle ( $x/L < 1.5$ ), the proper steady state is almost achieved. However, tracing through the curve for  $800\Delta t$ , we see a small but disturbing oscillation forming at the downstream boundary. At  $1200\Delta t$ , this oscillation has escalated enormously, and shortly thereafter the solution blows up. This behavior, which occurs when  $p_e/p_0 = 0.9$ , is completely different than the behavior shown in Fig. 7.17 for the case of  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$ , where the steady state is successfully approached after about 2500 time steps.

Why do the oscillations shown in Fig. 7.18 develop? In short, they are due to finite waves that reflect off the downstream boundary, where the reflection is due to purely numerical reasons. Since we are holding the exit pressure  $p_e$  constant throughout the calculation, there is every reason to expect that finite, unsteady compression and expansion waves that are traveling to the right in the unsteady nozzle flow will reflect off this constant-pressure boundary. If these waves are strong enough, massive oscillations will occur near the downstream boundary. Given enough time, the oscillations eventually lead to a blowup of the calculations. Obviously, for a less severe pressure ratio across the nozzle, such as  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$ , the weaker unsteady waves produced within the nozzle, when reflected from the downstream boundary, do not set up an oscillation.

Let us reexamine the downstream boundary condition on a physical basis. Our stipulation of a *fixed*, constant pressure at the exit is physically valid only in the *steady-state* case. During the unsteady flow, finite compression and expansion waves travel up and down the nozzle. As these waves travel out of the nozzle at the downstream boundary, *all* the flow variables, including the pressure, *fluctuate* with time. This is the real *physical* situation. (See Chap. 7 of Ref. 21 for a discussion of unsteady, one-dimensional, finite-wave properties.) In the numerical calculation discussed above, we are not allowing the pressure at the downstream boundary to fluctuate; we are stipulating that it is fixed, independent of time. This is the proper boundary condition as the flow approaches the steady state, but it is physically

**FIG. 7.18**

Variation of the pressure distribution through the nozzle at different times; purely subsonic flow case with  $p_e/p_0 = 0.90$ . Note the oscillatory behavior after 1200 time steps. Circles indicate exact analytical values.

improper during the unsteady flow variations that take place during the time-marching process. As a result, with the numerically fixed pressure at the exit, we are in part “bottling up” the waves inside the nozzle. When the pressure ratio  $p_e/p_0$  is

strong enough (such as in the case of  $p_e/p_0 = 0.9$ ), the unsteady finite waves produced at early times in the nozzle are sufficiently strong, and the nonphysical reflections from the constant-pressure boundary eventually grow into the type of oscillations shown in Fig. 7.18, with the result that the calculations blow up. On the other hand, if the pressure ratio  $p_e/p_0$  is milder (such as in the case of  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$ ), the unsteady finite waves are weaker, and we are able to obtain a proper, steady state, as described earlier.

There are several “fixes” that we could try in order to improve the behavior of the attempted solution for  $p_e/p_0 = 0.9$ . First, we could simply try different initial conditions, ones that are closer to the steady-state answers. In this fashion, the unsteady finite waves set up during the transient approach to the steady state will be weaker, therefore diminishing the tendency for the oscillation buildup as reflected in Fig. 7.18. Second, we could add some artificial viscosity for the reasons discussed in Sec. 6.6. Note that so far in the our nozzle calculations, we have not explicitly added artificial viscosity. However, one of the purposes of artificial viscosity is to help damp the type of oscillations shown in Fig. 7.18. Such a ploy may be effective for the present case.

We will not pursue either of these possible fixes here because we need to turn our attention to other, more pressing matters. We will have the opportunity to explore the matter of adding artificial viscosity to our nozzle calculation in Sec. 7.6, which deals with a shock-capturing case.

## 7.5 THE SUBSONIC-SUPERSONIC ISENTROPIC NOZZLE SOLUTION REVISITED: THE USE OF THE GOVERNING EQUATIONS IN CONSERVATION FORM

In Chap. 2 we made a distinction between the nonconservation form and the conservation form of the governing flow equations. We made the point that, theoretically, either form of the equations is a suitable representation of the fundamental physical principles of mass conservation, Newton’s second law, and energy conservation. However, in CFD, there are some good numerical reasons to use one form or the other for the solution of certain flow problems. An important example is the case of shock capturing (see Sec. 2.10), where we noted that the conservation form of the equations is the proper form to employ; the nonconservation form will lead to poor numerical results.

In the present section, we take the opportunity to examine the differences between results obtained from the nonconservation form of the equations and those obtained from the conservation form. We will first cast the governing equations for quasi-one-dimensional flow in conservation form. Then we will set up the numerical solution of these equations using MacCormack’s technique, as applied to the subsonic-supersonic isentropic flow case. The matter of shock capturing within the nozzle will be deferred until Sec. 7.6. Finally, we will compare the numerical results obtained from the conservation form of the equations to those obtained from the nonconservation form.

### 7.5.1 The Basic Equations in Conservation Form

Returning to Eq. (7.15), repeated below.

$$\frac{\partial(\rho A)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho A V)}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (7.15)$$

This is the continuity equation for quasi-one-dimensional flow. It is already in conservation form. Nondimensionalizing the variables according to the forms given in Sec. 7.2, we have

$$\frac{\partial\left(\frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \frac{A}{A^*}\right)}{\partial\left(\frac{t}{L/a_0}\right)} \left(\frac{\rho_0 A^* a_0}{L}\right) + \frac{\partial\left(\frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \frac{A}{A^*} \frac{V}{a_0}\right)}{\partial(x/L)} \left(\frac{\rho_0 A^* a_0}{L}\right) = 0$$

or

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial(\rho' A')}{\partial t'} + \frac{\partial(\rho' A' V')}{\partial x'}} \quad (7.91)$$

As before, the primes in Eq. (7.91) denote the nondimensional variables.

Return to Eq. (7.23), repeated below.

$$\frac{\partial(\rho A V)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho A V^2)}{\partial x} = -A \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \quad (7.23)$$

This is the momentum equation for quasi-one-dimensional flow. It is already in conservation form. Let us combine the two  $x$  derivatives in Eq. (7.23) as follows. Since

$$\frac{\partial(pA)}{\partial x} = p \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} + A \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \quad (7.92)$$

we can add Eq. (7.92) to Eq. (7.23), obtaining

$$\frac{\partial(\rho A V)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho A V^2 + pA)}{\partial x} = p \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} \quad (7.93)$$

Nondimensionalizing Eq. (7.93), we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\partial\left(\frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \frac{A}{A^*} \frac{V}{a_0}\right)}{\partial\left(\frac{t}{L/a_0}\right)} \left(\frac{\rho_0 A^* a_0^2}{L}\right) + \frac{\partial\left[\frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \frac{A}{A^*} \frac{V^2}{a_0^2} (\rho_0 A^* a_0^2) + \frac{p}{p_0} \frac{A}{A^*} (p_0 A^*)\right]}{\partial\left(\frac{x}{L}\right) L} \\ &= \frac{p}{p_0} \frac{\partial(A/A^*)}{\partial(x/L)} \left(\frac{p_0 A^*}{L}\right) \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\frac{\partial(\rho' A' V')}{\partial t'} + \frac{\partial[\rho' A' V'^2 + p' A' (p_0/\rho_0 a_0^2)]}{\partial x'} = p' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'} \left(\frac{p_0}{\rho_0 a_0^2}\right) \quad (7.94)$$

However,

$$\frac{p_0}{\rho_0 a_0^2} = \frac{\rho_0 R T_0}{\rho_0 a_0^2} = \frac{\rho_0 R T_0}{\rho_0 \gamma R T_0} = \frac{1}{\gamma}$$

Thus, Eq. (7.94) becomes

$$\frac{\partial(\rho' A' V')}{\partial t'} + \frac{\partial[\rho' A' V'^2 + (1/\gamma)p' A']}{\partial x'} = \frac{1}{\gamma} p' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'} \quad (7.95)$$

Returning to Eq. (7.33), repeated below.

$$\frac{\partial[\rho(e + V^2/2)A]}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial[\rho(e + V^2/2)AV]}{\partial x} = -\frac{\partial(pAV)}{\partial x} \quad (7.33)$$

This is the energy equation for quasi-one-dimensional flow. It is already in conservation form. Combining the  $x$  derivatives in Eq. (7.33), we have

$$\frac{\partial[\rho(e + V^2/2)A]}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial[\rho(e + V^2/2)AV + pAV]}{\partial x} = 0 \quad (7.96)$$

Let us define a nondimensional internal energy as follows:

$$e' = \frac{e}{e_0} \quad \text{where } e_0 = c_v T_0 = \frac{RT_0}{\gamma - 1}$$

With this, the nondimensional form of Eq. (7.96) is obtained as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\partial \left\{ \frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \left[ \frac{e}{e_0} (e_0) + \frac{V^2}{2a_0^2} (a_0^2) \right] \frac{A}{A^*} \right\}}{\partial \left( \frac{t}{L/a_0} \right)} \left( \frac{\rho_0 A^* a_0}{L} \right) \\ & + \frac{\partial \left\{ \frac{\rho}{\rho_0} \left[ \frac{e}{e_0} (e_0) + \frac{V^2}{2a_0^2} (a_0^2) \right] \frac{V}{a_0} \frac{A}{A^*} (\rho_0 a_0 A^*) + \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \frac{A}{A^*} \frac{V}{a_0} \right) (p_0 A^* a_0) \right\}}{\partial \left( \frac{x}{L} \right) L} = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (7.97)$$

Since  $e_0 = RT_0/(\gamma - 1)$ , Eq. (7.97) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\partial \left[ \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) A' \right]}{\partial t'} \left( \frac{\rho_0 A^* a_0 R T_0}{L} \right) \\ & + \frac{\partial \left[ \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) V' A' \left( \frac{\rho_0 a_0 A^* R T_0}{L} \right) + (p' A' V') \left( \frac{p_0 A^* a_0}{L} \right) \right]}{\partial x'} = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (7.98)$$

Divide Eq. (7.98) by  $\rho_0 A^* a_0 R T_0 / L$ .

$$\frac{\partial \left[ \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) A' \right]}{\partial t'} + \frac{\partial \left[ \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) V' A' + p' A' V' \left( \frac{p_0}{\rho_0 R T_0} \right) \right]}{\partial x'} = 0 \quad (7.99)$$

However, in Eq. (7.99),

$$\frac{p_0}{\rho_0 R T_0} = \frac{\rho_0 R T_0}{\rho_0 R T_0} = 1$$

Thus, Eq. (7.99) becomes

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial \left[ \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) A' \right]}{\partial t'} + \frac{\partial \left[ \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) V' A' + p' A' V' \right]}{\partial x'} = 0} \quad (7.100)$$

Equations (7.91), (7.95), and (7.100) are the nondimensional conservation form of the continuity, momentum, and energy equations for quasi-one-dimensional flow, respectively. Return to Eq. (2.93), which is a generic form of the governing equations for unsteady, three-dimensional flow. The equations for quasi-one-dimensional flow can be expressed in a similar generic form. Let us define the elements of the solutions vector  $U$ , the flux vector  $F$ , and the source term  $J$  as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} U_1 &= \rho' A' \\ U_2 &= \rho' A' V' \\ U_3 &= \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) A' \\ F_1 &= \rho' A' V' \\ F_2 &= \rho' A' V'^2 + \frac{1}{\gamma} p' A' \\ F_3 &= \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) V' A' + p' A' V' \\ J_2 &= \frac{1}{\gamma} p' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'} \end{aligned}$$

With these elements, Eqs. (7.91), (7.95), and (7.100) can be written, respectively, as

$$\frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t'} = - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x'} \quad (7.101a)$$

$$\frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t'} = - \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x'} + J_2 \quad (7.101b)$$

$$\frac{\partial U_3}{\partial t'} = - \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial x'} \quad (7.101c)$$

We are now finished with the governing equations for quasi-one-dimensional flow. Equations (7.101a) to (7.101c) represent the continuity, momentum, and energy equations for quasi-one-dimensional flow, in conservation form. These are the equations we wish to numerically solve using MacCormack's technique.

Before setting up this numerical solution, keep in mind from our discussions in Chap. 2 that in the conservation form of the equations the dependent variables (the variables for which we directly obtain numbers) are *not* the primitive variables. For example, in Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c), our numerical solution will give us numbers directly for  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  in steps of time; this is why  $U$  is called the *solutions vector*. To obtain the primitive variables ( $\rho$ ,  $V$ ,  $T$ ,  $p$ , etc.), we must *decode* the elements  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  as follows. From the definitions of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  given above, we have

$$\rho' = \frac{U_1}{A'} \quad (7.102)$$

$$V' = \frac{U_2}{U_1} \quad (7.103)$$

$$T' = e' = (\gamma - 1) \left( \frac{U_3}{U_1} - \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) \quad (7.104)$$

$$p' = \rho' T' \quad (7.105)$$

Note in Eq. (7.104) that we have recognized the fact that  $e' = T'$ , or

$$e' \equiv \frac{e}{e_0} = \frac{c_v T}{c_v T_0} = \frac{T}{T_0} = T'$$

Therefore, after we obtain  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  at each time step from the numerical solution of Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c), we can immediately calculate the corresponding primitive variables at each time step,  $\rho'$ ,  $V'$ ,  $T'$ , and  $p'$ , from Eqs. (7.102) to (7.105).

### 7.5.2 The Setup

Return to Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) for a moment; we note that the flux vector elements  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  are couched in terms of the primitive variables [see the relations for  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  immediately preceding Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c)]. It has been the author's experience that when the computer program is written with  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  expressed directly in terms of  $\rho'$ ,  $V'$ ,  $p'$ , and  $e'$ , instabilities develop during the course of the time-marching solution. For example, in the present example of quasi-one-dimensional, subsonic-supersonic, isentropic nozzle flow, instabilities develop in the subsonic section which finally cause the program to blow up after about 300 time steps. This behavior is an example of a lack of "purity" in the formulation of the governing equations in conservation form, a lack which eventually causes numerical problems. If we were to write a computer program to implement the equations exactly as written in Sec. 7.5.1, we would set up the

numerical solution of Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) for  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  at each time step. We would then *decode* these elements of the solutions vector to obtain the primitive variables at each time step, as shown in Eqs. (7.102) to (7.105). These primitive variables  $\rho'$ ,  $V'$ ,  $e'$ , and  $p'$  would, in turn, be used to construct  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  for use in the solution of Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) for the next time step, and so forth. As stated above, in the author's experience, when the primitive variables are used to construct  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$ , numerical difficulties occasionally arise. This is somehow connected to the fact that the dependent variables which appear *explicitly* in Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) are  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$ —not the primitive variables. For this reason, it is best to couch  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  *directly* in terms of the dependent variables  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  and avoid the use of the primitive variables in Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c). That is, in Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c), we will write

$$F_1 = F_1(U_1, U_2, U_3) \quad (7.106a)$$

$$F_2 = F_2(U_1, U_2, U_3) \quad (7.106b)$$

$$F_3 = F_3(U_1, U_2, U_3) \quad (7.106c)$$

$$J_2 = J(U_1, U_2, U_3) \quad (7.106d)$$

such that the governing equations are “purely” in terms of the elements of the solution vector, i.e., in terms of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  *only*. Let us proceed to obtain the specific forms indicated by Eqs. (7.106a) to (7.106d).

**“PURE” FORM OF THE FLUX TERMS.** Consider the flux term  $F_1$ , given in Sec. 7.5.1 by

$$F_1 = \rho' A' V' \quad (7.107)$$

Substituting Eqs. (7.102) and (7.103) for  $\rho'$  and  $V'$ , respectively, into Eq. (7.107), we have

$$\boxed{F_1 = U_2} \quad (7.108)$$

Consider the flux term  $F_2$ , given in Sec. 7.5.1 by

$$F_2 = \rho' A' V'^2 + \frac{1}{\gamma} p' A' \quad (7.109)$$

From Eq. (7.105), the pressure in Eq. (7.109) can be replaced by the product  $\rho' T'$ . In turn,  $\rho'$ ,  $V'$ , and  $T'$  can be expressed in terms of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  via Eqs. (7.102) to (7.104). Hence, Eq. (7.109) becomes

$$F_2 = \frac{U_2^2}{U_1} + \frac{1}{\gamma} U_1 (\gamma - 1) \left[ \frac{U_3}{U_1} - \frac{\gamma}{2} \left( \frac{U_2}{U_1} \right)^2 \right]$$

or

$$\boxed{F_2 = \frac{U_2^2}{U_1} + \frac{\gamma - 1}{\gamma} \left( U_3 - \frac{\gamma}{2} \frac{U_2^2}{U_1} \right)} \quad (7.110)$$

Consider the flux term  $F_3$ , given in Sec. 7.5.1 by

$$F_3 = \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) V' A' + p' A' V' \quad (7.111)$$

Substituting Eqs. (7.102) to (7.105) into Eq. (7.111), we have

$$\begin{aligned} F_3 &= U_2 \left( \frac{U_3}{U_1} - \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) + U_2 T' \\ &= \frac{U_2 U_3}{U_1} + (\gamma - 1) U_2 \left[ \frac{U_3}{U_1} - \frac{\gamma}{2} \left( \frac{U_2}{U_1} \right)^2 \right] \end{aligned}$$

or

$$F_3 = \gamma \frac{U_2 U_3}{U_1} - \frac{\gamma(\gamma - 1)}{2} \frac{U_2^3}{U_1^2} \quad (7.112)$$

Finally, the source term  $J_2$  was given in Sec. 7.5.1 as

$$J_2 = \frac{1}{\gamma} p' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'} \quad (7.113)$$

From Eq. (7.105), this becomes

$$J_2 = \frac{1}{\gamma} \rho' T' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'} \quad (7.114)$$

Substituting Eqs. (7.102) and (7.104) into (7.114), we have

$$J_2 = \frac{1}{\gamma} \frac{U_1}{A'} (\gamma - 1) \left[ \frac{U_3}{U_1} - \frac{\gamma}{2} \left( \frac{U_2}{U_1} \right)^2 \right] \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'}$$

or

$$J_2 = \frac{\gamma - 1}{\gamma} \left( U_3 - \frac{\gamma}{2} \frac{U_2^2}{U_1} \right) \frac{\partial(\ln A')}{\partial x'} \quad (7.115)$$

We now return to our governing flow equations in conservation form as given by Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c). With  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ ,  $F_3$ , and  $J_2$  given by Eqs. (7.108), (7.110), (7.112), and (7.115), respectively, then Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) are expressed in terms of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  only—the primitive variables are nowhere to be found. This is the “pure” form of the governing equations in conservation form; it is the form which we will use in the following sections. When a computer program is written to solve the equations in this pure form, the solution is stable and convergence to a steady state is achieved.

*A comment:* The behavior discussed above, namely, that instabilities are sometimes encountered when  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  are constructed in terms of the primitive variables, whereas a stable solution is obtained when  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  are constructed in terms of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$ , is one of those nonintuitive peculiarities of CFD. So what if  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  are written in terms of  $\rho'$ ,  $V'$ ,  $T'$ , and  $p'$  instead of

$U_1$ ,  $U_2$ ,  $U_3$ ? On a *theoretical* basis, there is no difference. However, on a numerical basis, there is a big difference—the difference between instability and stability. This author has no simple mathematical explanation for this behavior. Let us simply consider it as part of the “art” of CFD. On the other hand, we have here an example of the advantages to be obtained by writing our CFD programs using the most consistent, or pure, form of the equations and by treating all steps in the computer program in a consistent fashion, i.e., by not changing horses in midstream.

**BOUNDARY CONDITIONS.** The boundary conditions for the subsonic-supersonic isentropic flow solution using the conservation form of the governing equations are theoretically the same as discussed in the Boundary Conditions subsection in Sec. 7.3.1; i.e., at the subsonic inflow boundary two properties are held fixed and one is allowed to float, and at the supersonic outflow boundary all properties are allowed to float. In the present formulation, as before, we hold  $\rho'$  and  $T'$  fixed at the inflow boundary, both equal to 1.0, and allow  $V'$  to float. By holding  $\rho'$  fixed, then  $U_1$  at grid point  $i = 1$  is fixed, independent of time, via  $U_1 = \rho' A'$ . That is,

$$U_{1(i=1)} = (\rho' A')_{i=1} = A'_{i=1} = \text{fixed value}$$

The floating value of  $V'$  at the inflow boundary is calculated at the end of each time step by linearly extrapolating  $U_2$  from the known values at the internal grid points  $i = 2$  and 3, that is,

$$U_{2(i=1)} = 2U_{2(i=2)} - U_{2(i=3)} \quad (7.116)$$

and then obtaining  $V'$  at  $i = 1$  from Eq. (7.103). Since  $V'$  floats at the inflow boundary, so does the value of  $U_3$ , which is given by

$$U_3 = \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) A' \quad (7.117)$$

Since  $\rho' A' = U_1$  and  $e' = T'$ , Eq. (7.117) is written as

$$U_3 = U_1 \left( \frac{T'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) \quad (7.118)$$

The value of  $U_3$  ( $i = 1$ ) is found by inserting the value of  $V'$  at  $i = 1$ , calculated above, as well as the *fixed* value  $T' = 1$ , into Eq. (7.118). Note that the values of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  calculated at grid point  $i = 1$  are used in turn to obtain the values of the flux terms  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  at grid point  $i = 1$ . These values of the flux terms at the inflow boundary are needed to form the rearward differences that appear in Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) during the corrector step of MacCormack’s technique. The values of  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  at the inflow boundary are calculated from Eqs. (7.108), (7.110), and (7.112), respectively, using  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  at grid point  $i = 1$ .

The flow properties at the downstream, supersonic outflow boundary are obtained by linear extrapolation from the two adjacent internal points. If  $N$  denotes the grid point at the outflow boundary, then

$$(U_1)_N = 2(U_1)_{N-1} - (U_1)_{N-2} \quad (7.119a)$$

$$(U_2)_N = 2(U_2)_{N-1} - (U_2)_{N-2} \quad (7.119b)$$

$$(U_3)_N = 2(U_3)_{N-1} - (U_3)_{N-2} \quad (7.119c)$$

The values of  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  at grid point  $i = N$  are obtained from the values of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  at point  $i = N$ , using Eqs. (7.108), (7.110), and (7.112), respectively. These flux values are needed to form the forward differences that appear in Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) during the predictor step of MacCormack's technique. Of course, the primitive variables at the downstream outflow boundary are obtained from Eqs. (7.102) to (7.105).

**INITIAL CONDITIONS.** Since the dependent variables being solved in Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) are  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$ , we need initial conditions for these same variables at time  $t = 0$  in order to start the finite-difference solution. The initial conditions for  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  also allow initial conditions for  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  to be obtained from Eqs. (7.108), (7.110), and (7.112), respectively. Such initial conditions for  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  are needed to form the  $x$  derivatives on the right-hand sides of Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) at the first time step.

For the present calculations the same nozzle shape as given by Eq. (7.73) is used. The initial conditions for  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  were synthesized by assuming the following variations of  $\rho'$  and  $T'$ :

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \rho' = 1.0 \\ T' = 1.0 \end{array} \right\} \text{for } 0 \leq x' \leq 0.5 \quad (7.120a)$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \rho' = 1.0 - 0.366(x' - 0.5) \\ T' = 1.0 - 0.167(x' - 0.5) \end{array} \right\} \text{for } 0.5 \leq x' \leq 1.5 \quad (7.120c)$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \rho' = 1.0 - 0.366(x' - 0.5) \\ T' = 1.0 - 0.167(x' - 0.5) \end{array} \right\} \text{for } 0.5 \leq x' \leq 1.5 \quad (7.120d)$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \rho' = 0.634 - 0.3879(x' - 1.5) \\ T' = 0.833 - 0.3507(x' - 1.5) \end{array} \right\} \text{for } 1.5 \leq x' \leq 3.5 \quad (7.120e)$$

$$(7.120f)$$

These variations are slightly more realistic than those assumed in the Nozzle Shape and Initial Conditions subsection of Sec. 7.3.1; this is in anticipation that the stability behavior of the finite-difference formulation using the conservation form of the governing equations might be slightly more sensitive, and therefore it is useful to start with more improved initial conditions than those given in Sec. 7.3.1 by Eqs. (7.74a) to (7.74c). The initial condition for the variation of  $V'$  is synthesized by taking advantage of the fact that one of the dependent variables in our governing equations, namely,  $U_2$ , is physically the local mass flow; that is,  $U_2 = \rho' A' V'$ . Therefore, *for the initial conditions only*, let us assume a constant mass flow through the nozzle and calculate  $V'$  as

$$V' = \frac{U_2}{\rho' A'} = \frac{0.59}{\rho' A'} \quad (7.121)$$

The value 0.59 is chosen for  $U_2$  because it is close to the exact analytical value of the steady-state mass flow (which for this case is 0.579). Therefore, the initial condition for  $V'$  as a function of  $x'$  is obtained by substituting the  $\rho'$  variation given by Eqs. (7.120a), (7.120c), and (7.120e) into Eq. (7.121). Finally, the initial conditions for  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ ,  $U_3$  are obtained by substituting the above variations for  $\rho'$ ,  $T'$ , and  $V'$  into the definitions given in Sec. 7.5.1, namely,

$$U_1 = \rho' A' \quad (7.122a)$$

$$U_2 = \rho' A' V' \quad (7.122b)$$

$$U_3 = \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) A' \quad (7.122c)$$

where  $e' = T'$ . Of course, for the initial conditions described above,  $V'$  is calculated such that  $U_2 = \rho' A' V' = 0.59$ .

**TIME STEP CALCULATION.** The governing equations for unsteady, quasi-one-dimensional flow in *conservation* form are hyperbolic partial differential equations, just as are the governing equations in *nonconservation* form which are employed in Sec. 7.3. Therefore, for an explicit finite-difference solution, the stability criterion for the time step increment  $\Delta t$  is specified by the CFL criterion. In turn, for the calculations in the present section, the value of  $\Delta t$  is obtained precisely as described in Sec. 7.3.1 and given by Eqs. (7.67) to (7.69). Hence, no further elaboration is given here.

### 7.5.3 Intermediate Calculations: The First Time Step

In the same spirit as Sec. 7.3.2, which gave some intermediate calculations using the nonconservation form of the governing equations, we carry out the same idea in the present section for the conservation form. Since the sequence of calculations is somewhat modified when the conservation form is used, it will be useful to go through some of the details of the computation for the first time step. As explained earlier, the presentation of these intermediate results will not only be instructional but they will also allow you to check the accuracy of your computer program, should you choose to write one for the solution of the present problem.

The nozzle shape and initial conditions for the present calculations are given in Table 7.9. The nozzle shape is the same as used for the calculations in Sec. 7.3 and is sketched in Fig. 7.8. The current initial conditions are different from those used in Sec. 7.3, principally to take advantage of the fact that  $U_2$  is the local mass flow, and following the adage that we should choose initial conditions as intelligently as possible, we assume an initial constant mass flow distribution through the nozzle. This is obvious from the column labeled  $\dot{m}$  in Table 7.9. Here,  $\dot{m}$  is nondimensional, denoted by  $\dot{m} = \rho A V / \rho_0 A^* a_0$ . The values of  $\rho'$ ,  $T'$ , and  $V'$  in Table 7.9 are obtained from Eqs. (7.120a) to (7.120f) and (7.121), respectively. Also shown in Table 7.9 are the corresponding initial conditions for  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$ , obtained from Eqs. (7.122a) to (7.122c), respectively.

**TABLE 7.9**  
Initial conditions for the case using the conservation form

$\frac{x}{L}$	$\frac{A}{A^*}$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{V}{a_0}$	$\frac{T}{T_0}$	$\dot{m}$	$U_1$	$U_2$	$U_3$
0.000	5.950	1.000	0.099	1.000	0.590	5.950	0.590	14.916
0.100	5.312	1.000	0.111	1.000	0.590	5.312	0.590	13.326
0.200	4.718	1.000	0.125	1.000	0.590	4.718	0.590	11.847
0.300	4.168	1.000	0.142	1.000	0.590	4.168	0.590	10.478
0.400	3.662	1.000	0.161	1.000	0.590	3.662	0.590	9.222
0.500	3.200	1.000	0.184	1.000	0.590	3.200	0.590	8.076
0.600	2.782	0.963	0.220	0.983	0.590	2.680	0.590	6.679
0.700	2.408	0.927	0.264	0.967	0.590	2.232	0.590	5.502
0.800	2.078	0.890	0.319	0.950	0.590	1.850	0.590	4.525
0.900	1.792	0.854	0.386	0.933	0.590	1.530	0.590	3.728
1.000	1.550	0.817	0.466	0.916	0.590	1.266	0.590	3.094
1.100	1.352	0.780	0.559	0.900	0.590	1.055	0.590	2.604
1.200	1.198	0.744	0.662	0.883	0.590	0.891	0.590	2.241
1.300	1.088	0.707	0.767	0.866	0.590	0.769	0.590	1.983
1.400	1.022	0.671	0.861	0.850	0.590	0.685	0.590	1.811
1.500	1.000	0.634	0.931	0.833	0.590	0.634	0.590	1.705
1.600	1.022	0.595	0.970	0.798	0.590	0.608	0.590	1.614
1.700	1.088	0.556	0.975	0.763	0.590	0.605	0.590	1.557
1.800	1.198	0.518	0.951	0.728	0.590	0.620	0.590	1.521
1.900	1.352	0.479	0.911	0.693	0.590	0.647	0.590	1.498
2.000	1.550	0.440	0.865	0.658	0.590	0.682	0.590	1.479
2.100	1.792	0.401	0.821	0.623	0.590	0.719	0.590	1.458
2.200	2.078	0.362	0.783	0.588	0.590	0.753	0.590	1.430
2.300	2.408	0.324	0.757	0.552	0.590	0.779	0.590	1.389
2.400	2.782	0.285	0.744	0.517	0.590	0.793	0.590	1.333
2.500	3.200	0.246	0.749	0.482	0.590	0.788	0.590	1.259
2.600	3.662	0.207	0.777	0.477	0.590	0.759	0.590	1.170
2.700	4.168	0.169	0.840	0.412	0.590	0.702	0.590	1.071
2.800	4.718	0.130	0.964	0.377	0.590	0.612	0.590	0.975
2.900	5.312	0.091	1.221	0.342	0.590	0.483	0.590	0.917
3.000	5.950	0.052	1.901	0.307	0.590	0.310	0.590	1.023

To illustrate the intermediate calculations, let us focus on grid point  $i = 16$ , which, as seen in Fig. 7.8, is at the throat of the nozzle. We will follow MacCormack's explicit predictor-corrector technique, described at length in previous sections.

**Predictor step.** To start the calculation, we use the initial conditions for  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  to calculate the initial values of  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  at grid points  $i = 16$  and 17. From Table 7.9, the initial values for the  $U$ 's are

$$(U_1)_{i=16} = 0.634 \quad (U_2)_{i=16} = 0.590 \quad (U_3)_{i=16} = 1.705$$

$$(U_1)_{i=17} = 0.608 \quad (U_2)_{i=17} = 0.590 \quad (U_3)_{i=17} = 1.614$$

From Eq. (7.108)

$$(F_1)_{i=16} = (U_2)_{i=16} = \boxed{0.590}$$

$$(F_1)_{i=17} = (U_2)_{i=17} = \boxed{0.590}$$

From Eq. (7.110)

$$\begin{aligned} (F_2)_{i=16} &= \left[ \frac{U_2^2}{U_1} + \frac{\gamma - 1}{\gamma} \left( U_3 - \frac{\gamma}{2} \frac{U_2^2}{U_1} \right) \right]_{i=16} \\ &= \frac{(0.590)^2}{0.634} + \frac{0.4}{1.4} \left[ 1.705 - 0.7 \frac{(0.590)^2}{0.634} \right] \\ &= \boxed{0.926} \\ (F_2)_{i=17} &= \frac{(0.590)^2}{0.608} + \frac{0.4}{1.4} \left[ 1.614 - 0.7 \frac{(0.590)^2}{0.608} \right] \\ &= \boxed{0.919} \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (7.112)

$$\begin{aligned} (F_3)_{i=16} &= \left[ \frac{\gamma U_2 U_3}{U_1} - \frac{\gamma(\gamma - 1)}{2} \frac{U_2^3}{U_1^2} \right]_{i=16} \\ &= \frac{1.4(0.590)(1.705)}{0.634} - \frac{1.4(0.4)(0.590)^3}{2(0.634)^2} \\ &= \boxed{2.078} \\ (F_3)_{i=17} &= \frac{1.4(0.590)(1.614)}{0.608} - \frac{1.4(0.4)(0.590)^3}{2(0.608)^2} \\ &= \boxed{2.036} \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (7.113) we have

$$J_2 = \frac{1}{\gamma} p' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'} = \frac{1}{\gamma} \rho' T' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'}$$

Hence  $(J_2)_{i=16} = \frac{1}{1.4} (0.634)(0.833) \left( \frac{1.022 - 1.0}{0.1} \right) = 0.083$

Note that by using Eq. (7.113) for  $J_2$  rather than the expression given by Eq. (7.115), we are breaking slightly with the purity of the governing equations as described in the first subsection of Sec. 7.5.2. This is being done for simplicity [Eq. (7.113) is much shorter than Eq. (7.115)]. The results are not compromised. The

value of  $\Delta x'$  is  $L/N$ , where  $L$  is the length of the nozzle and  $N$  is the number of increments along the nozzle, which for the present case is 30. Hence

$$\Delta x' = \frac{L}{N} = \frac{3.0}{30} = 0.1$$

From Eq. (7.101a), using forward differences for the  $x$  derivatives, we have

$$\left( \frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} = - \frac{(F_1)_{i=17} - (F_1)_{i=16}}{\Delta x'} = - \frac{0.590 - 0.590}{0.1} = \boxed{0}$$

From Eq. (7.101b), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} &= - \frac{(F_2)_{i=17} - (F_2)_{i=16}}{\Delta x'} + J_2 \\ &= - \frac{0.919 - 0.926}{0.1} + 0.083 = \boxed{0.156} \end{aligned}$$

(Please note: Once again, remember that since we are giving the numbers in the present section to three decimal places, if you are following along with a hand calculator using these three-place figures, some small numerical errors may result in your hand calculations. In the above, and throughout this section, the numbers that appear in boxes are the exact numbers that came from the author's Macintosh computer.) Finally, from Eq. (7.101c), we have

$$\left( \frac{\partial U_3}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} = - \frac{(F_3)_{i=17} - (F_3)_{i=16}}{\Delta x'} = - \frac{2.036 - 2.078}{0.1} = \boxed{0.416}$$

To obtain the predicted values of the flow quantities, we must first obtain the value of the time step  $\Delta t'$ . This is carried out as mentioned in the last subsection of Sec. 7.5.2 and as given by Eqs. (7.67) to (7.69) in Sec. 7.3.1. After scanning all the grid points from  $i = 1$  to  $i = 31$ , the minimum value of  $\Delta t'$  is found to be, using a Courant number of  $C = 0.5$ ,

$$\Delta t' = 0.0267$$

We proceed to find the predicted values of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$ , denoted by the barred quantities.

$$\begin{aligned} (\bar{U}_1)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= (U_1)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} \Delta t' \\ &= 0.634 + 0\Delta t' = \boxed{0.634} \\ (\bar{U}_2)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= (U_2)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} \Delta t' \\ &= 0.590 + 0.156(0.0267) = \boxed{0.594} \\ (\bar{U}_3)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= (U_3)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_3}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} \Delta t' \\ &= 1.705 + 0.416(0.0267) = \boxed{1.716} \end{aligned}$$

At this stage, the *predicted* values of the primitive variables can be decoded from  $\bar{U}_1$ ,  $\bar{U}_2$ , and  $\bar{U}_3$ , using Eqs. (7.102) to (7.105). For example, from Eq. (7.102),

$$(\bar{\rho}')_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} = \frac{(\bar{U}_1)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'}}{(A')_{i=16}} = \frac{0.634}{1.0} = \boxed{0.634}$$

and from Eqs. (7.103) and (7.104),

$$\begin{aligned} (\bar{T}')_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= (\gamma - 1) \left\{ \frac{(\bar{U}_3)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'}}{(\bar{U}_1)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'}} - \frac{\gamma}{2} \left[ \frac{(\bar{U}_2)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'}}{(\bar{U}_1)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'}} \right]^2 \right\} \\ &= 0.4 \left[ \frac{1.716}{0.634} - 0.7 \left( \frac{0.594}{0.634} \right)^2 \right] = \boxed{0.837} \end{aligned}$$

The above numbers for the predicted  $\rho'$  and  $T'$  will be needed on the corrector step. Before we move on to the corrector step, we need to find the predicted values of  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ , and  $F_3$  at grid points  $i = 15$  and  $16$ ; these values for  $i = 16$  are based on the predicted values of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  found above, and for  $i = 15$  are based on the predicted values of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  for  $i = 15$  (not recorded above in order to not let the length of this section get out of hand). The predicted fluxes, obtained from Eqs. (7.108), (7.110), and (7.112) using  $\bar{U}_1$ ,  $\bar{U}_2$ , and  $\bar{U}_3$ , are

$$\begin{aligned} (\bar{F}_1)_{i=16} &= 0.594 & (\bar{F}_2)_{i=16} &= 0.936 & (\bar{F}_3)_{i=16} &= 2.105 \\ (\bar{F}_1)_{i=15} &= 0.585 & (\bar{F}_2)_{i=15} &= 0.915 & (\bar{F}_3)_{i=15} &= 2.037 \end{aligned}$$

**Corrector step.** The predicted time derivatives of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  are obtained from Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c), respectively, using rearward differences for the  $x$  derivatives. From Eq. (7.101a)

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial \bar{U}_1}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= - \frac{(\bar{F}_1)_{i=16} - (\bar{F}_1)_{i=15}}{\Delta x'} \\ &= - \frac{0.594 - 0.585}{0.1} = \boxed{-0.0918} \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (7.101b)

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial \bar{U}_2}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= - \frac{(\bar{F}_2)_{i=16} - (\bar{F}_2)_{i=15}}{\Delta x'} + \frac{1}{\gamma} \bar{\rho}' \bar{T}' \frac{\partial A'}{\partial x'} \\ &= - \frac{0.936 - 0.915}{0.1} + \frac{1}{1.4} (0.634)(0.837) \left( \frac{1.0 - 1.022}{0.1} \right) \\ &= \boxed{-0.290} \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. (7.101c)

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial \bar{U}_3}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= - \frac{(\bar{F}_3)_{i=16} - (\bar{F}_3)_{i=15}}{\Delta x'} \\ &= - \frac{2.105 - 2.037}{0.1} = \boxed{-0.679} \end{aligned}$$

The average time derivatives are formed as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t} \right)_{av} &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial \bar{U}_1}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} \right] \\ &= 0.5(0 - 0.0918) = \boxed{-0.0459} \\ \left( \frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t} \right)_{av} &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial \bar{U}_2}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} \right] \\ &= 0.5(0.156 - 0.290) = \boxed{-0.0668} \\ \left( \frac{\partial U_3}{\partial t} \right)_{av} &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial U_3}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial \bar{U}_3}{\partial t'} \right)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} \right] \\ &= 0.5(0.416 - 0.679) = \boxed{-0.131} \end{aligned}$$

The final *corrected* values of  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  at time step  $t' + \Delta t'$  (here, since  $t' = 0$  to start with, we are calculating the final *corrected* values at time  $t' = \Delta t'$ ) are obtained from

$$\begin{aligned} (U_1)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= (U_1)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t'} \right)_{av} \Delta t \\ &= 0.634 + (-0.0459)(0.0267) = \boxed{0.633} \\ (U_2)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= (U_2)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t'} \right)_{av} \Delta t \\ &= 0.590 + (-0.0668)(0.0267) = \boxed{0.588} \\ (U_3)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= (U_3)_{i=16}^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_3}{\partial t'} \right)_{av} \Delta t \\ &= 1.705 + (-0.131)(0.0267) = \boxed{1.701} \end{aligned}$$

Finally, the corrected values of the primitive variables are obtained by decoding  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$ , obtained above, via Eqs. (7.102) to (7.105). That is, from Eq. (7.102),

$$(\rho')_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} = (U_1)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} = \frac{0.633}{1} = \boxed{0.633}$$

From Eq. (7.103)

$$(V')_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} = \left( \frac{U_2}{U_1} \right)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} = \frac{0.588}{0.633} = \boxed{0.930}$$

From Eq. (7.104)

$$\begin{aligned} (T')_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} &= (\gamma - 1) \left( \frac{U_3}{U_1} - \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right)_{i=16}^{t'+\Delta t'} \\ &= 0.4 \left[ \frac{1.701}{0.633} - 0.7(0.930)^2 \right] = \boxed{0.833} \end{aligned}$$

This brings to an end the calculations of the flow properties at grid point  $i = 16$  at time  $t' = \Delta t'$ . This process is repeated for all the interior grid points distributed along the nozzle. The properties at the inflow and outflow boundaries are calculated as described in the Boundary Conditions subsection of Sec. 7.5.2. By this stage, since you are most likely saturated with numbers, we will spare you the details.

For the sake of reference and so that you can check the numbers from your own computer program, the flow-field variables, including  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$ , obtained after the first time step at all the grid points are tabulated in Table 7.10. Comparing the numbers in Table 7.10 with the initial conditions given in Table 7.9, we see that the largest changes over the first time step have taken place near the exit of the nozzle and that the mass flow distribution, originally chosen as constant at  $t' = 0$ , is no longer constant after the first time step.

#### 7.5.4 Final Numerical Results: The Steady-State Solution

The steady-state results obtained from the time-marching solution of the governing equations in conservation form are essentially the same as those obtained using the nonconservation form (described in Sec. 7.3.3), with a few slight, but notable differences. The present converged solution is tabulated in Table 7.11, which are the results obtained after 1400 time steps. A quick comparison of the numbers given in Tables 7.11 (for conservation form) and 7.3 (for nonconservation form) show little material difference. We conclude that, for all practical purposes, both forms of the governing equations give the same results. This is as it should be; the flow problem studied in both tables is the isentropic, subsonic-supersonic flow through a nozzle, and for such a flow the choice of the form of equations is not important. However, as described in Sec. 2.10, an important numerical distinction between the nonconservation and conservation forms of the equations is related to problems dealing with shock capturing, and we are not capturing any shocks in the present problem.

Let us highlight some of the slight but notable differences mentioned above. The most dramatic difference is in the mass flow distribution. First of all, with the initial conditions assuming a constant mass flow, it is interesting to examine the variation of  $\dot{m}$  with  $x/L$  at a few different times during the convergence toward the

**TABLE 7.10**

Flow-field variables at the end of the first time step

$\frac{x}{L}$	$\frac{A}{A^*}$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{V}{a_0}$	$\frac{T}{T_0}$	$\frac{p}{p_0}$	$M$	$\dot{m}$	$U_1$	$U_2$	$U_3$
0.000	5.950	1.000	0.099	1.000	1.000	0.099	0.588	5.950	0.588	14.916
0.100	5.312	1.000	0.111	1.000	1.000	0.111	0.588	5.312	0.588	13.326
0.200	4.718	1.000	0.125	1.000	1.000	0.125	0.588	4.718	0.588	11.846
0.300	4.168	1.000	0.141	1.000	1.000	0.141	0.587	4.168	0.587	10.478
0.400	3.662	1.000	0.160	1.000	1.000	0.160	0.587	3.662	0.587	9.221
0.500	3.200	0.999	0.187	1.000	0.999	0.187	0.598	3.197	0.598	8.067
0.600	2.782	0.963	0.228	0.983	0.947	0.230	0.611	2.679	0.611	6.682
0.700	2.408	0.927	0.271	0.967	0.897	0.276	0.606	2.233	0.606	5.513
0.800	2.078	0.891	0.325	0.950	0.846	0.333	0.601	1.851	0.601	4.534
0.900	1.792	0.854	0.389	0.934	0.798	0.403	0.596	1.531	0.596	3.735
1.000	1.550	0.818	0.467	0.917	0.750	0.487	0.592	1.268	0.592	3.098
1.100	1.352	0.781	0.557	0.900	0.703	0.587	0.588	1.056	0.588	2.605
1.200	1.198	0.744	0.656	0.883	0.657	0.698	0.585	0.892	0.585	2.238
1.300	1.088	0.707	0.759	0.866	0.613	0.815	0.584	0.770	0.584	1.977
1.400	1.022	0.670	0.854	0.849	0.569	0.927	0.585	0.685	0.585	1.804
1.500	1.000	0.633	0.930	0.833	0.527	1.018	0.588	0.633	0.588	1.701
1.600	1.022	0.594	0.979	0.800	0.475	1.094	0.594	0.607	0.594	1.621
1.700	1.088	0.555	0.992	0.766	0.425	1.134	0.599	0.604	0.599	1.572
1.800	1.198	0.517	0.975	0.731	0.377	1.141	0.604	0.619	0.604	1.542
1.900	1.352	0.478	0.939	0.695	0.333	1.126	0.607	0.647	0.607	1.523
2.000	1.550	0.440	0.893	0.660	0.290	1.099	0.609	0.682	0.609	1.506
2.100	1.792	0.401	0.848	0.625	0.251	1.073	0.610	0.719	0.610	1.485
2.200	2.078	0.362	0.809	0.590	0.214	1.054	0.610	0.753	0.610	1.456
2.300	2.408	0.324	0.781	0.554	0.179	1.049	0.609	0.780	0.609	1.413
2.400	2.782	0.285	0.766	0.519	0.148	1.063	0.607	0.793	0.607	1.354
2.500	3.200	0.246	0.768	0.484	0.119	1.104	0.605	0.788	0.605	1.278
2.600	3.662	0.208	0.791	0.448	0.093	1.182	0.601	0.760	0.601	1.184
2.700	4.168	0.169	0.846	0.412	0.070	1.318	0.595	0.704	0.595	1.078
2.800	4.718	0.131	0.949	0.375	0.049	1.551	0.584	0.616	0.584	0.965
2.900	5.312	0.093	1.133	0.324	0.030	1.990	0.560	0.494	0.560	0.846
3.000	5.950	0.063	1.438	0.200	0.013	3.217	0.536	0.373	0.536	0.726

steady state. This is shown in Fig. 7.19, where the nondimensional mass flow is plotted versus  $x/L$  for several different values of time. The dashed line labeled  $0\Delta t$  represents the assumed initial conditions. Note that the transient mass flow deviates away from the initial conditions; the result after 100 time steps (labeled  $100\Delta t$ ) shows a somewhat “humped” distribution. After 200 time steps (labeled  $200\Delta t$ ), the mass flow distribution is becoming more constant, and after 700 time steps (labeled  $700\Delta t$ ), it is almost (but not quite) equal to a constant value. Moreover, it is quite close to the exact analytical value of 0.579. Comparing Fig. 7.19 with the corresponding results obtained with the nonconservation form of the equations as plotted in Fig. 7.11, we see that the present variations in mass flow are much less severe. Of course, this is comparing apples and oranges, because Figs. 7.11 and 7.19 correspond to different initial conditions. We can suppose that the milder behavior

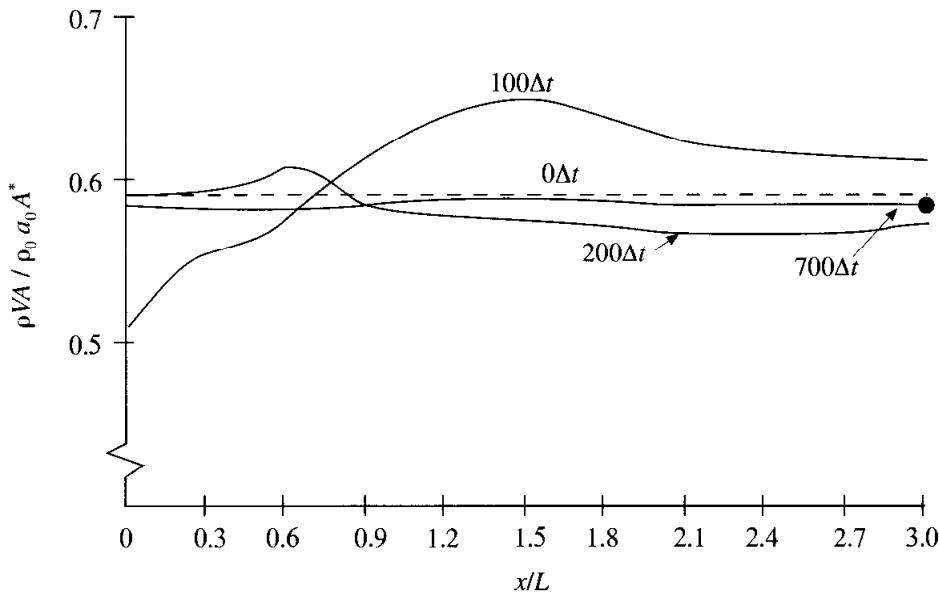
**TABLE 7.11**  
Steady-state results, using the conservation form

$\frac{x}{L}$	$\frac{A}{A^*}$	$\frac{\rho}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{V}{a_0}$	$\frac{T}{T_0}$	$\frac{p}{p_0}$	$M$	$\dot{m}$	$U_1$	$U_2$	$U_3$
0.000	5.950	1.000	0.098	1.000	1.000	0.098	0.583	5.950	0.583	14.915
0.100	5.312	0.999	0.110	0.999	0.998	0.110	0.583	5.306	0.583	13.301
0.200	4.718	0.997	0.124	0.999	0.996	0.124	0.583	4.704	0.583	11.798
0.300	4.168	0.995	0.141	0.998	0.993	0.141	0.583	4.147	0.583	10.404
0.400	3.662	0.992	0.161	0.997	0.989	0.161	0.583	3.633	0.583	9.118
0.500	3.200	0.988	0.184	0.995	0.983	0.185	0.583	3.161	0.583	7.941
0.600	2.782	0.982	0.213	0.993	0.975	0.214	0.583	2.732	0.583	6.869
0.700	2.408	0.974	0.249	0.989	0.964	0.250	0.584	2.345	0.584	5.903
0.800	2.078	0.962	0.292	0.985	0.948	0.294	0.584	2.000	0.584	5.043
0.900	1.792	0.946	0.344	0.978	0.926	0.348	0.584	1.696	0.584	4.287
1.000	1.550	0.923	0.408	0.969	0.894	0.415	0.584	1.431	0.584	3.632
1.100	1.352	0.891	0.485	0.955	0.851	0.496	0.585	1.205	0.585	3.075
1.200	1.198	0.847	0.577	0.935	0.792	0.596	0.585	1.015	0.585	2.609
1.300	1.088	0.789	0.682	0.909	0.718	0.715	0.585	0.859	0.585	2.231
1.400	1.022	0.718	0.798	0.874	0.628	0.854	0.586	0.734	0.586	1.932
1.500	1.000	0.648	0.904	0.839	0.544	0.987	0.586	0.648	0.586	1.730
1.600	1.022	0.548	1.046	0.783	0.429	1.182	0.586	0.560	0.586	1.525
1.700	1.088	0.462	1.164	0.731	0.338	1.361	0.585	0.503	0.585	1.396
1.800	1.198	0.384	1.272	0.679	0.261	1.544	0.585	0.460	0.585	1.301
1.900	1.352	0.316	1.368	0.628	0.198	1.726	0.585	0.427	0.585	1.231
2.000	1.550	0.260	1.452	0.581	0.151	1.905	0.584	0.402	0.584	1.178
2.100	1.792	0.214	1.524	0.538	0.115	2.077	0.584	0.383	0.584	1.138
2.200	2.078	0.177	1.586	0.500	0.088	2.243	0.583	0.368	0.583	1.107
2.300	2.408	0.148	1.639	0.466	0.069	2.402	0.583	0.356	0.583	1.083
2.400	2.782	0.124	1.685	0.436	0.054	2.554	0.583	0.346	0.583	1.064
2.500	3.200	0.106	1.725	0.409	0.043	2.698	0.583	0.338	0.583	1.048
2.600	3.662	0.090	1.760	0.384	0.035	2.838	0.582	0.331	0.582	1.035
2.700	4.168	0.078	1.790	0.363	0.028	2.969	0.582	0.325	0.582	1.025
2.800	4.718	0.068	1.817	0.344	0.023	3.100	0.582	0.320	0.582	1.015
2.900	5.312	0.060	1.840	0.327	0.019	3.216	0.582	0.316	0.582	1.008
3.000	5.950	0.052	1.863	0.310	0.016	3.345	0.582	0.312	0.582	1.001

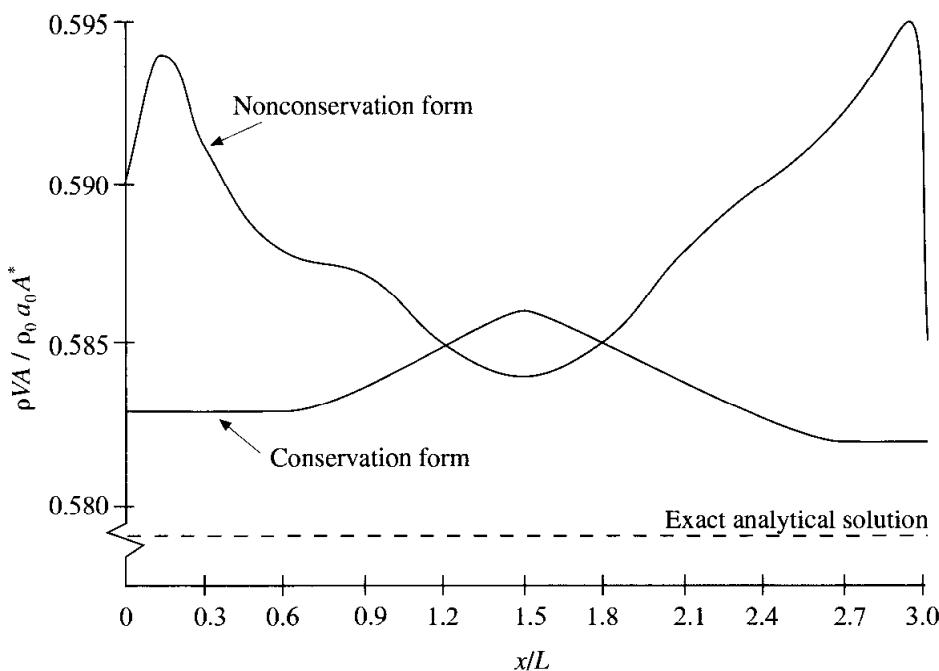
illustrated in Fig. 7.19 is due predominantly to our assumed initial condition of constant mass flow.

Let us compare the *steady-state* variations of mass flow obtained with the nonconservation and conservation forms of the governing equations (both after 1400 time steps—well beyond the time required to converge to the steady state). This comparison is shown in Fig. 7.20, in which the scale of the ordinate for mass flow is greatly magnified. Here we see that the steady-state mass flow distribution predicted by the *conservation* form of the equations is much more satisfactory than that obtained from the nonconservation form, on two accounts:

1. The conservation form gives a distribution that is much closer to being a constant. In contrast, the nonconservation results have (on the magnified scale) a

**FIG. 7.19**

Variation of mass flow distribution through the nozzle at different times during the time-marching process; solution of the conservation form of the governing equations. Circle indicates exact analytical value.

**FIG. 7.20**

A detailed comparison of the steady-state mass flow variations (on a magnified scale) obtained with the nonconservation and conservation forms of the governing flow equations.

sizeable variation, with some spurious oscillations at both the inflow and outflow boundaries. Of course, on a practical basis, when plotted on the scale shown in Fig. 7.11, these variations are not apparent, and the mass flow essentially appears to be a constant.

2. The steady-state mass flow results obtained with the conservation form are, on the whole, much closer to the exact analytical solution of  $\rho' A' V' = 0.579$ , shown in Fig. 7.20 by the dashed line.

The comparison shown in Fig. 7.20 illustrates a general advantage of the conservation form of the equations. The conservation form does a better job of preserving mass throughout the flow field, mainly because the mass flow itself is one of the dependent variables in the equations—the mass flow is a primary result from these equations. In contrast, the dependent variables in the nonconservation form of the equations are the primitive variables, and the mass flow is obtained only as a secondary result. Because the conservation form of the equations does a better job of conserving mass throughout the flow field, we can begin to understand why they are labeled the *conservation* form.

*Caution:* The above discussion does not necessarily establish a definite superiority of the conservation form results over the nonconservation form results. Quite the contrary, let us take a look at the *primitive* variables; in particular, temperature, pressure, and Mach number at the nozzle throat, as tabulated in Table 7.12. The first row gives the exact, analytical results. The second and third rows give the numerical results for the nonconservation and the conservation forms, respectively. Note that the *nonconservation form* results are distinctly closer to the exact values. The last row in Table 7.12 gives conservation form results for a grid with twice as many grid points (61 in comparison to 31 points). A comparison of the last two rows are an indication of *grid independence* for the conservation form results. Note that, by doubling the number of grid points, the steady-state numerical results are slightly closer to the exact, analytical values (but still not as close as the nonconservation form results with half as many grid points). For all practical purposes, we have grid independence with 31 grid points.

**TABLE 7.12**  
Comparison of steady-state results; conservation  
versus nonconservation form

	$\frac{\rho^*}{\rho_0}$	$\frac{T^*}{T_0}$	$\frac{p^*}{p_0}$	$M$
Exact analytical solution	0.634	0.833	0.528	1.000
Nonconservation form, numerical results (31 points)	0.639	0.836	0.534	0.999
Conservation form, numerical results (31 points)	0.648	0.839	0.544	0.987
Conservation form, numerical results (61 points)	0.644	0.838	0.540	0.989

The behavior of the residuals for the conservation form is not as good as that for the nonconservation form of the equations. For the nonconservation form, recall from Fig. 7.10 that at early times the residuals are on the order of  $10^{-1}$ , but they decay to about  $10^{-6}$  after 1400 time steps. In contrast, for the conservation form of the equations, the residuals at early times are on the order of  $10^{-1}$  but decay only to about  $10^{-3}$  after 1400 time steps. However, this is sufficient to produce the steady-state results, for all practical purposes.

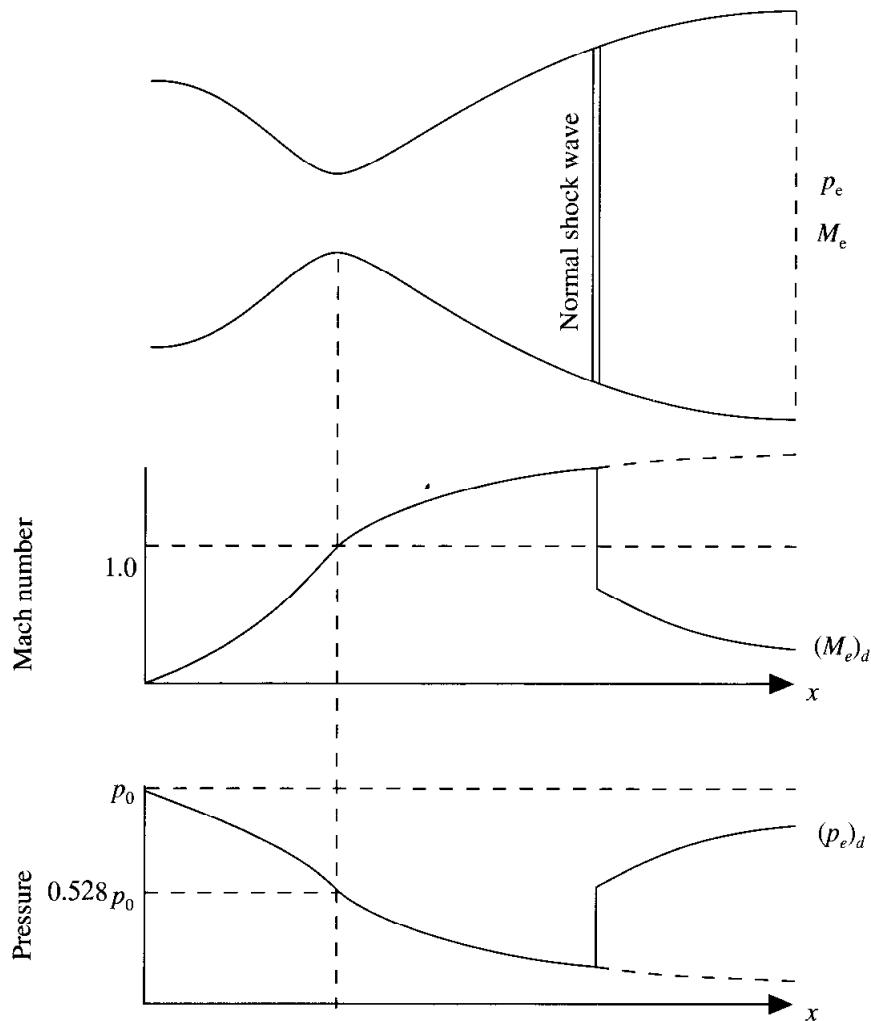
In summary, for the given flow problem, we cannot establish a clear superiority of the conservation form of the governing equations over the nonconservation form. In essence, from all our previous discussions, we can only make the following observations:

1. The conservation form yields a better mass flow distribution. The conservation form simply does a better job of conserving mass.
2. The nonconservation form leads to smaller residuals. The amount by which the residuals decay is often used as an index of “quality” of the numerical algorithm. In this sense, the nonconservation form does a better job.
3. There is no clear superiority of either form in terms of accuracy of the results. The nonconservation form seems to produce slightly more accurate results for the primitive variables, and the conservation form seems to produce slightly more accurate results for the flux variables. The results in either case are certainly satisfactory.
4. Comparing the amount of calculational effort to achieve a solution, as reflected in our extended discussions in Sec. 7.3 (nonconservation form) and Sec. 7.5 (conservation form), we note that the solution of the conservation form requires marginally more work. Most of this is due to the need to decode the primitive variables from the flux variables; such decoding is not necessary when you are solving the nonconservation form.

## 7.6 A CASE WITH SHOCK CAPTURING

In Sec. 7.2 we discussed the physical aspects of subsonic-supersonic isentropic flow. We emphasized that for a given nozzle shape there exists only one unique solution; the qualitative aspects of that solution are sketched in Fig. 7.2. Return to Fig. 7.2, and in particular focus on the pressure distribution shown in Fig. 7.2c. The pressure ratio across the nozzle,  $p_e/p_0$ , comes out as part of the solution; i.e., we do not have to *specify* it to obtain the solution. (On the other hand, in the laboratory we would have to make certain that this particular pressure ratio somehow is maintained across the nozzle, or else the subsonic-supersonic isentropic solution may not occur.) In contrast, in Sec. 7.4 we discussed the physical aspects of purely subsonic flow through the nozzle and emphasized the fact that there are an infinite number of possible isentropic flow solutions to this problem, each one corresponding to a specific value of the pressure ratio  $p_e/p_0$ . In this case, we *have to specify*  $p_e/p_0$  to obtain a unique solution. The qualitative behavior of such subsonic flow solutions is sketched in Fig. 7.13.

Return to Fig. 7.13, and let us ask the question: What happens when the exit pressure is reduced slightly *below* the value  $(p_e)_c$ ? The answer is that the nozzle becomes “choked;” i.e., the flow remains sonic at the throat, and the mass flow becomes a fixed value, no matter how much  $p_e$  is reduced below the value  $(p_e)_c$ . The flow downstream of the nozzle throat goes supersonic, following for a certain length the isentropic flow solution described in Fig. 7.2. Assume that the exit pressure is denoted by  $(p_e)_d$ , where  $(p_e)_d$  is less than  $(p_e)_c$  by a relatively small amount. In this case, a normal shock wave must form somewhere in the divergent portion of the nozzle, as sketched in Fig. 7.21. Upstream of the normal shock wave, the flow is given by the subsonic-supersonic isentropic solution. The flow, which is supersonic immediately in front of the shock, becomes subsonic immediately behind the shock. Further downstream, this subsonic flow slows within the divergent duct, with a corresponding increase in pressure. These variations are sketched in Fig. 7.21. The pressure at the exit of the nozzle is equal to  $(p_e)_d$ , which is the *imposed* pressure at the exit. The *location* of the normal shock wave within the nozzle is just right such that the static pressure increase across the shock wave plus the further static pressure

**FIG. 7.21**

Schematic of a nozzle flow with an internal normal shock wave.

increase downstream of the shock results in precisely  $(p_e)_d$  at the exit. (In contrast, the full subsonic-supersonic isentropic solution is shown by the dashed line in Fig. 7.21.) As in the case of the purely subsonic flow case, the present solution depends on the value of  $(p_e)_d$ . To have a unique solution,  $(p_e)_d$  must be *specified*. For more details on the physical nature of this type of flow, see the extensive discussion in Refs. 8 and 21.

In the present section, we will numerically solve a nozzle flow with  $p_e$  specified such that a normal shock wave will form within the nozzle. In terms of our overall development of the basics of CFD in this book, this case is important because it will illustrate the aspect of *shock capturing* within a numerical solution of the flow. The nature of shock capturing was described in Sec. 2.10. Make certain to review that section before progressing further; it is important for you to have clearly in mind the idea of shock capturing and why it is necessary to use the conservation form of the governing equations to numerically capture shock waves within a flow field. Also, reexamine Fig. 1.32c, which itemizes those various ideas that feed into this application.

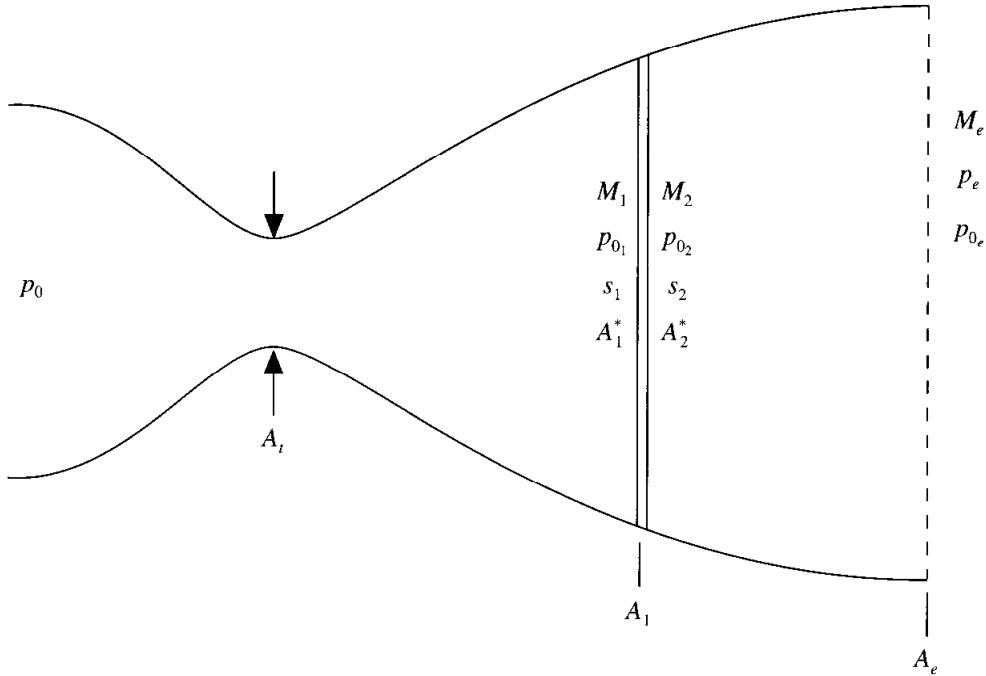
### 7.6.1 The Setup

Consider the nomenclature shown in Fig. 7.22. The normal shock wave is located at area  $A_1$ . Conditions immediately upstream of the shock are denoted with a subscript 1, and those immediately downstream of the shock are denoted with a subscript 2. The flow from the reservoir, where the pressure is  $p_0$ , to station 1 is isentropic (with constant entropy  $s_1$ ). Hence, the total pressure is constant in this flow; that is,  $p_{01} = p_0$ . The total pressure decreases across the shock (due to the entropy increase across the shock). The flow from station 2 downstream of the shock to the nozzle exit is also isentropic (with constant entropy  $s_2$ , where  $s_2 > s_1$ ). Hence the total pressure is constant in this portion of the flow, with  $(p_0)_e = p_{02}$ . Keep in mind that  $p_{02} < p_{01}$ . For the flow in front of the shock,  $A_1^*$  is a constant value, equal to the area of the sonic throat,  $A_1^* = A_t$ . However, due to the entropy increase across the shock, the value of  $A^*$  in the subsonic flow downstream of the shock, denoted by  $A_2^*$ , takes on the role of a reference value (just as in the purely subsonic case discussed in Sec. 7.4). Indeed,  $A_2^* > A_1^*$ .

In this section, we will numerically calculate the flow through a convergent-divergent nozzle under the condition where a normal shock wave exists in the divergent portion. The nozzle shape will be the same as used in Sec. 7.3, namely, that given by Eq. (7.73). We will use the governing equations in conservation form and will employ the philosophy of shock capturing. However, before jumping into the numerical solution, let us examine the exact analytical results.

**EXACT ANALYTICAL RESULTS.** For the nozzle shape specified by Eq. (7.73), the area of the exit is  $A_e/A_t = 5.95$ . Let us calculate the flow where  $p_e$  is *specified* as follows:

$$\frac{p_e}{p_{01}} = 0.6784 \quad (\text{specified}) \quad (7.123)$$

**FIG. 7.22**

Nomenclature for the normal shock case.

Note that this value is considerably below the values specified in Sec. 7.4 for the purely subsonic case; there, we specified, for example, that  $p_e/p_0 = 0.93$  and calculated the corresponding subsonic flow through the nozzle. Also note that the value  $p_e/p_{01} = 0.6784$  is considerably higher than that which came out of the subsonic-supersonic isentropic solution in Sec. 7.2, where we found that  $p_e/p_0 = 0.016$ . Hence, the value of  $p_e/p_{01} = 0.6784$  specified in the current section should be about right to force a normal shock wave to stand somewhere inside the divergent portion of the nozzle. Let us first calculate the precise location, i.e., the precise area ratio inside the nozzle, where the normal shock wave will be located, compatible with the specified exit pressure given in Eq. (7.123). This calculation can be done in a direct fashion as follows.

The mass flow through the nozzle can be expressed as

$$\dot{m} = \frac{p_{01}A_1^*}{\sqrt{T_0}} \sqrt{\frac{\gamma}{R}} \left( \frac{2}{\gamma + 1} \right)^{(\gamma+1)/(\gamma-1)} \quad (7.124)$$

See, for example, Refs. 8 and 21 for further discussion. That is, for a given  $T_0$ ,

$$\dot{m} \propto p_0 A^*$$

Since the mass flow is constant across the normal shock wave in Fig. 7.22, we have

$$p_{01}A_1^* = p_{02}A_2^* \quad (7.125)$$

(Keep in mind from our previous conversations that  $A^*$  is always defined as the *sonic* throat area; in the supersonic flow ahead of the shock,  $A_1^*$  is equal to the actual

throat area  $A_t$ , because the flow is actually sonic at  $A_t$ , whereas behind the shock  $A_2^*$  is the area the flow behind the shock would have to be reduced to in order to make it locally sonic. Since the flow behind the shock is always subsonic, then  $A_2^*$  never equals the actual physical throat area in the nozzle itself, because the entropy in region 2 is higher than in region 1.) Forming the ratio  $p_e A_e / p_{0_e} A_2^*$ , where  $A_e^* = A_2^*$ , and invoking Eq. (7.125), we have

$$\frac{p_e A_e}{p_{0_e} A_e^*} = \frac{p_e A_e}{p_{0_1} A_1^*} = \frac{p_e A_e}{p_{0_1} A_t} = \frac{p_e}{p_{0_1}} \frac{A_e}{A_t} \quad (7.126a)$$

The right-hand side of Eq. (7.126a) is known, because  $p_e/p_{0_1}$  is specified as 0.6784 and  $A_e/A_t = 5.95$ . Thus, from Eq. (7.126a)

$$\frac{p_e A_e}{p_{0_e} A_e^*} = 0.6784(5.95) = 4.03648 \quad (7.126b)$$

From the isentropic relations given by Eqs. (7.6) and (7.7), we have, respectively,

$$\frac{A_e}{A_e^*} = \frac{1}{M_e} \left[ \frac{2}{\gamma + 1} \left( 1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M_e^2 \right) \right]^{(\gamma+1)/2(\gamma-1)} \quad (7.127)$$

and  $\frac{p_e}{p_{0_e}} = \left( 1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M_e^2 \right)^{-\gamma/(\gamma-1)}$  (7.128)

Substituting Eqs. (7.127) and (7.128) in (7.126b), we have

$$\frac{1}{M_e} \left( \frac{2}{\gamma + 1} \right)^{(\gamma+1)/2(\gamma-1)} \left[ 1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} M_e^2 \right]^{-1/2} = 4.03648 \quad (7.129)$$

Solving Eq. (7.129) for  $M_e$ , we have

$$M_e = 0.1431 \quad (7.130)$$

From Eq. (7.128), we have

$$\frac{p_e}{p_{0_e}} = \left[ 1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2} (0.1431)^2 \right]^{-3.5} = 0.9858 \quad (7.131)$$

The total pressure ratio across the normal shock can be written as

$$\frac{p_{0_2}}{p_{0_1}} = \frac{p_{0_e}}{p_{0_1}} = \frac{p_{0_e}}{p_e} \frac{p_e}{p_{0_1}} \quad (7.132)$$

Substituting the numbers from Eqs. (7.123) and (7.131) into Eq. (7.132), we have

$$\frac{p_{0_2}}{p_{0_1}} = \frac{0.6784}{0.9858} = 0.6882 \quad (7.133)$$

The total pressure ratio across a normal shock is a function of  $M_1$  in front of the shock, given by (see Ref. 45)

$$\frac{p_{0_2}}{p_{0_1}} = \left[ \frac{(\gamma + 1)M_1^2}{(\gamma - 1)M_1^2 + 2} \right]^{\gamma/(\gamma-1)} \left[ \frac{\gamma + 1}{2\gamma M_1^2 - (\gamma - 1)} \right]^{1/(\gamma-1)} \quad (7.134)$$

Combining Eqs. (7.133) and (7.134) and solving for  $M_1$ , we have

$$M_1 = 2.07 \quad (7.135)$$

Substituting Eq. (7.135) into (7.6), we have

$$\frac{A_1}{A_1^*} = \frac{A_1}{A_t} = 1.790 \quad (7.136)$$

The exact, analytical location of the normal shock wave is now known—it stands at a location in the nozzle where the area ratio is 1.79. From Eq. (7.73) for our nozzle shape, this corresponds to a station of  $x/L = 2.1$ . All other properties across the shock wave now fall out from the result that  $M_1 = 2.07$ . For example, from Ref. 21, the static pressure ratio across the shock and the Mach number immediately behind the shock are obtained from

$$\frac{p_2}{p_1} = 1 + \frac{2\gamma}{\gamma + 1} (M_1^2 - 1) = 1 + 1.167[(2.07)^2 - 1] = 4.83 \quad (7.137)$$

and

$$M_2 = \left\{ \frac{1 + [(\gamma - 1)/2]M_1^2}{\gamma M_1^2 - (\gamma - 1)/2} \right\}^{1/2} = \left[ \frac{1 + 0.2(2.07)^2}{1.4(2.07)^2 - 0.2} \right]^{1/2} = 0.566 \quad (7.138)$$

The exact, analytical solution obtained above will be compared with the numerical solution in subsequent sections.

**BOUNDARY CONDITIONS.** The subsonic inflow boundary conditions are treated exactly as described in Sec. 7.5.2 and given by Eqs. (7.116) and (7.118); hence, no elaboration will be given here.

The outflow boundary condition for the present problem is also subsonic. A generic discussion of a subsonic outflow boundary was given in Sec. 7.4.1, where we emphasized that the exit pressure  $p_e$  must be specified, but all other properties are allowed to float. The same applies to the present calculation. However, in Sec. 7.4.1 we proceeded to couch the details of the numerical implementation of the subsonic outflow boundary condition in terms of the solution of the nonconservation form of the governing equations. In contrast, in the present calculation we are using the conservation form of the equations; hence the numerical implementation

is slightly different, as follows. Keep in mind that  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  are the primary dependent variables in the governing equations. Hence, we obtain  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  at the downstream boundary by linear extrapolation from the adjacent two interior points.

$$(U_1)_N = 2(U_1)_{N-1} - (U_1)_{N-2} \quad (7.139a)$$

$$(U_2)_N = 2(U_2)_{N-1} - (U_2)_{N-2} \quad (7.139b)$$

Next, we decode  $V'_N$  from  $(U_1)_N$  and  $(U_2)_N$  using Eq. (7.103).

$$V'_N = \frac{(U_2)_N}{(U_1)_N} \quad (7.140)$$

The value of  $U_3$  at grid point  $i = N$  is determined from the *specified* value of  $p'_N = 0.6784$  as follows. From the definition of  $U_3$ ,

$$U_3 = \rho' \left( \frac{e'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} V'^2 \right) A' \quad (7.141)$$

However,  $e' = T'$ , and from the equation of state,  $p' = \rho' T'$ . Hence, Eq. (7.141) becomes

$$U_3 = \frac{p' A'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} \rho' A' V'^2 \quad (7.142)$$

Since  $U_2 = \rho' A' V'$ , Eq. (7.142) becomes

$$U_3 = \frac{\rho' A'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} U_2 V' \quad (7.143)$$

Evaluating Eq. (7.143) at the downstream boundary, we have

$$(U_3)_N = \frac{p'_N A'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} (U_2)_N V'_N \quad (7.144)$$

Since  $p'_N$  is specified as 0.6784, Eq. (7.144) becomes

$$(U_3)_N = \frac{0.6784 A'}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{\gamma}{2} (U_2)_N V'_N \quad (7.145)$$

Equation (7.145) is the manner in which the specified exit pressure is folded into the numerical solution.

**INITIAL CONDITIONS.** For the present calculations, we choose the following initial conditions, which are qualitatively similar to the final solution. From  $x' = 0$  to 1.5, we use the same initial conditions as given by Eqs. (7.120a) to (7.120d). However, for  $x' > 1.5$ , we use

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \rho' &= 0.634 - 0.702(x' - 1.5) \\ T' &= 0.833 - 0.4908(x' - 1.5) \end{aligned} \right\} \text{for } 1.5 \leq x' \leq 2.1 \quad (7.146a)$$

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \rho' &= 0.5892 + 0.10228(x' - 2.1) \\ T' &= 0.93968 + 0.0622(x' - 2.1) \end{aligned} \right\} \text{for } 2.1 \leq x' \leq 3.0 \quad (7.146c)$$

As before, the initial condition for  $V'$  is determined by assuming a constant mass flow; it is calculated from Eq. (7.121).

### 7.6.2 The Intermediate Time-Marching Procedure: The Need For Artificial Viscosity

Perhaps the most dramatic distinction between the present shock-capturing case and our previous calculations in this chapter is the matter of artificial viscosity. Think back about our calculations so far; they have been carried out with no artificial viscosity explicitly added to the numerical calculations. The solutions of the subsonic-supersonic isentropic flow (Sec. 7.3) and the purely subsonic flow (Sec. 7.4) did not require additional numerical dissipation—there was enough dissipation inherent in the algorithm itself to yield stable and smooth solutions. Furthermore, it made no difference whether the governing equations were used in nonconservation form (Sec. 7.3 and 7.4) or in conservation form (Sec. 7.5). The requirement for artificial viscosity is essentially disconnected with which form of the equations is used. However, as we will see in the next section, when we practice the art of shock capturing, the smoothing and stabilization of the solution by the addition of some type of numerical dissipation is absolutely necessary. At this stage, return to Sec. 6.6 where the matter of artificial viscosity is introduced. Read this section again before proceeding further so that you can more fully understand what we have to do to obtain a reasonable solution for the nozzle flow with a normal shock wave standing inside the nozzle.

To proceed with this solution, we will add artificial viscosity in the manner described in Sec. 6.6. Specifically following Eq. (6.58), we form an expression

$$S'^i = \frac{C_x |(p')_{i+1}^{t'} - 2(p')_i^{t'} + (p')_{i-1}^{t'}|}{(p')_{i+1}^{t'} + 2(p')_i^{t'} + (p')_{i-1}^{t'}} (U_{i+1}^{t'} - 2U_i^{t'} + U_{i-1}^{t'}) \quad (7.147)$$

Whereas beforehand we would calculate a predicted value (using MacCormack's technique) from

$$\bar{U}_i^{t'+\Delta t'} = (U)_i^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U}{\partial t'} \right)_i^{t'} \Delta t'$$

we now replace this with

$$(\bar{U}_1)_i^{t'+\Delta t'} = (U_1)_i^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t'} \right)_i^{t'} \Delta t' + (S_1)_i^{t'} \quad (7.148)$$

$$(\bar{U}_2)_i^{t'+\Delta t'} = (U_2)_i^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t'} \right)_i^{t'} \Delta t' + (S_2)_i^{t'} \quad (7.149)$$

$$(\bar{U}_3)_i^{t'+\Delta t'} = (U_3)_i^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_3}{\partial t'} \right)_i^{t'} \Delta t' + (S_3)_i^{t'} \quad (7.150)$$

where  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  are our dependent variables in Eqs. (7.101a) to (7.101c) and  $S_1$ ,  $S_2$ , and  $S_3$  in Eqs. (7.148) to (7.150) are obtained from Eq. (7.147) by using, respectively,  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$ , and  $U_3$  on the right-hand side. Similarly, on the corrector step, whereas beforehand we would calculate the corrected values from

$$U_i^{t'+\Delta t'} = U_i' + \left( \frac{\partial U}{\partial t'} \right)_{av} \Delta t'$$

we now replace this with

$$(U_1)_i^{t'+\Delta t'} = (U_1)_i^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_1}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t' + (\bar{S}_1)_i^t \quad (7.151)$$

$$(U_2)_i^{t'+\Delta t'} = (U_2)_i^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t' + (\bar{S}_2)_i^t \quad (7.152)$$

$$(U_3)_i^{t'+\Delta t'} = (U_3)_i^{t'} + \left( \frac{\partial U_3}{\partial t} \right)_{av} \Delta t' + (\bar{S}_3)_i^t \quad (7.153)$$

where  $\bar{S}_1$ ,  $\bar{S}_2$ , and  $\bar{S}_3$  are obtained from an equation patterned after Eq. (6.59), namely,

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{S}_i^{t'+\Delta t'} &= \frac{C_x |(\bar{p}')_{i+1}^{t'+\Delta t'} - 2(\bar{p}')_i^{t'+\Delta t'} + (\bar{p}')_{i-1}^{t'+\Delta t'}|}{(\bar{p}')_{i+1}^{t'} + 2(\bar{p}')_i^{t'} + (\bar{p}')_{i-1}^{t'}} \\ &\quad \times [(\bar{U})_{i+1}^{t'+\Delta t'} - 2(\bar{U})_i^{t'+\Delta t'} + (\bar{U})_{i-1}^{t'+\Delta t'}] \end{aligned} \quad (7.154)$$

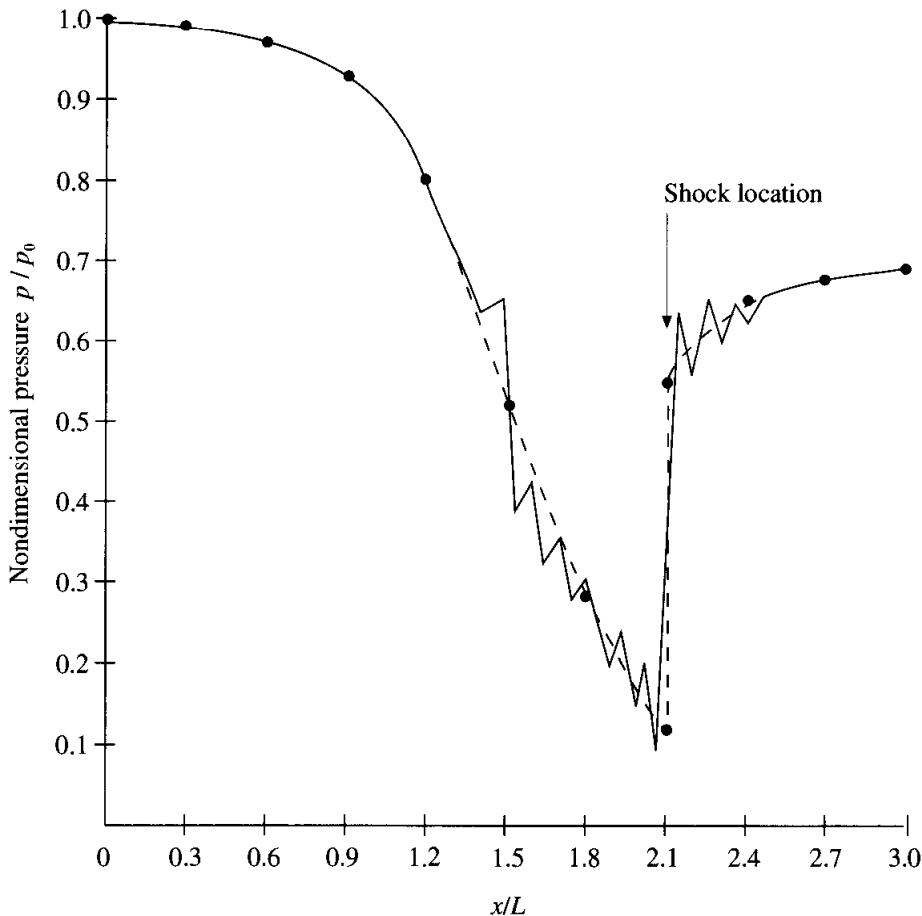
The values of  $\bar{S}_1$ ,  $\bar{S}_2$ , and  $\bar{S}_3$  are obtained from Eq. (7.154) by using, respectively, the values of  $\bar{U}_1$ ,  $\bar{U}_2$ , and  $\bar{U}_3$  on the right-hand side.

The rest of the shock-capturing solution proceeds in exactly the same manner as our previously described case in Sec. 7.5; hence no further elaboration will be given here. We will proceed directly to a discussion of the steady-state results.

### 7.6.3 Numerical Results

The following numerical results were obtained with 61 grid points distributed evenly through the nozzle rather than the 31-point grid used for most of our previous results. Since in the shock-capturing approach using MacCormack's finite-difference technique the captured shock wave is spread over several grid points, it is desirable to have a finer grid so as to more precisely define the location of the shock. Also, for the following results, a Courant number of 0.5 was employed. The conservation form of the governing flow equations was used in exactly the same manner as in Sec. 7.5 (except for the numerical implementation of the downstream boundary conditions, which has already been described in Sec. 7.6.1 and for the addition of artificial viscosity as described in Sec. 7.6.2). The pressure ratio at the nozzle exit is specified as  $p'_e = p_e/p_0 = 0.6784$  and is held fixed, invariant of time.

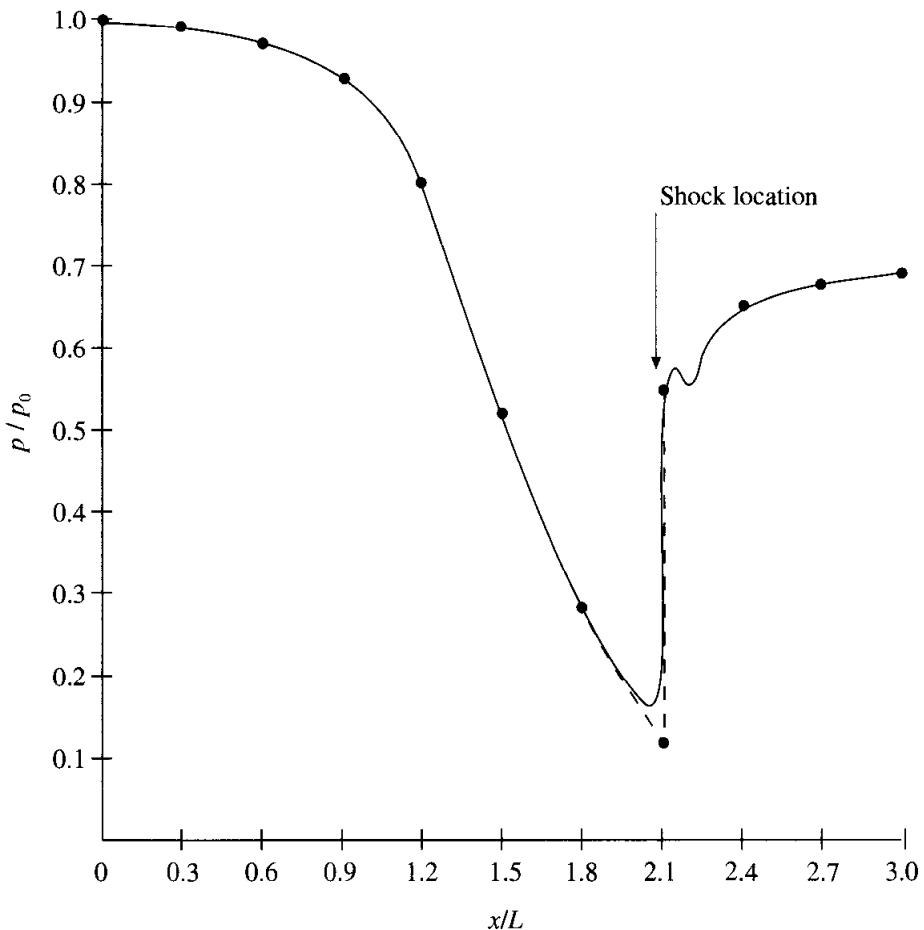
To begin with, it is instructional to examine what happens when *no* artificial viscosity is added to the calculations. Figure 7.23 shows the numerical solution for the pressure distribution through the nozzle (the solid line) compared with the exact,

**FIG. 7.23**

Shock-capturing numerical results (solid line) for the pressure distribution through the nozzle. No artificial viscosity. Results shown are for 1600 time steps. Comparison with the exact analytical results (solid circles connected by dashed curve).

analytical results (the solid circles connected by the dashed curve). The numerical solution is that obtained after 1600 time steps, corresponding to a nondimensional time of 17.2. No artificial viscosity has been added to this calculation. At 1600 time steps, the numerical results are not steady-state results. Although the numerical results are trying to capture the shock wave in about the right location, the residuals are still fairly large—on the order of  $10^{-1}$ . Moreover, as time progresses beyond 1600 time steps, the residuals start to grow instead of decreasing as they should. By 2800 time steps, the attempted solution has not blown up, but the oscillations have grown much more pronounced, and some of the residuals have grown to  $10^1$ . This is a totally unsatisfactory solution, and we will not discuss it further. It needs to be fixed by the addition of artificial viscosity, as discussed below.

When artificial viscosity is added to the calculation via Eqs. (7.147) to (7.154) and the adjustable constant  $C_x$  is set equal to 0.2, the following results are obtained. The steady-state pressure distribution through the nozzle is shown in Fig. 7.24. The numerical results (the solid curve) are shown after 1400 time steps—the converged, steady state. The exact, analytical results are given by the solid circles connected by the dashed curve. From Fig. 7.24, we make the following observations:

**FIG. 7.24**

Shock-capturing numerical results (solid curve) for the pressure distribution through the nozzle. With artificial viscosity;  $C_x = 0.2$ . Results shown are for 1400 time steps. Comparison with exact, analytical results (solid circles connected by dashed curve).

1. The addition of artificial viscosity has just about eliminated the oscillations that were encountered in the case with no artificial viscosity. The contrast between the numerical results in Fig. 7.24 (with  $C_x = 0.2$ ) and those in Fig. 7.23 (with  $C_x = 0.0$ ) is dramatic. This is what artificial viscosity does—smooth the results and decrease (if not virtually eliminate) the oscillations.
2. Close examination of Fig. 7.24 shows that the oscillations are not *completely* eliminated. There is a small oscillation in the pressure distribution just downstream of the shock; however, it is not that bothersome. Results obtained with more artificial viscosity ( $C_x = 0.3$ ) show that even this small oscillation virtually disappears. However, *too much* artificial viscosity can compromise other aspects of the solution, as noted below.
3. The numerical results in Fig. 7.24 show that artificial viscosity tends to smear the captured shock wave over more grid points. The more extreme changes across the shock that are predicted by the exact, analytical results are slightly diminished by the inclusion of artificial viscosity in the numerical results. This increased smearing of the shock wave due to increased artificial viscosity is one of the undesirable aspects of adding extra numerical dissipation to the